

luametatex

the manual

version 2.11.06

dev id 20241101

Contents

Introduction	7
1 Engines	10
1.1 Introduction	10
1.2 How it started	10
1.3 The engines	11
1.4 Usage	12
2 Constructions	15
2.1 Introduction	15
2.2 Boxes	15
2.3 Math style variants	17
2.4 Math scripts	17
2.5 Skewed fractions	20
2.6 Math fractions	21
2.7 Math radicals	21
2.8 Math accents	22
2.9 Math fences	22
3 Assumptions	24
3.1 Introduction	24
3.2 Virtual fonts	24
4 Internals	27
4.1 Introduction	27
4.2 A few basics	27
4.3 Memory words	30
4.4 Tokens	31
4.5 Nodes	33
4.6 The hash table	34
4.7 Save stack	36
4.8 Data types	37
4.9 Time flies	37
5 Primitives	42
5.1 Introduction	42
5.2 Rationale	52
5.3 Primitives	54
5.4 Obsolete	227
5.5 Syntax	228
5.6 To be checked primitives (new)	261
5.7 To be checked primitives (math)	262
5.8 To be checked primitives (old)	264
5.9 Indexed primitives	265

6	Callbacks	277
6.1	Introduction	277
6.2	Files	278
6.3	Running	279
6.4	Fonts	284
6.5	Typesetting	285
6.6	Tracing	294
6.7	Math	301
7	Fonts	304
7.1	Introduction	304
7.2	Primitives	304
7.3	Nodes	309
7.4	Loading	310
7.5	Helpers	315
7.6	Virtual fonts	318
7.7	Callbacks	319
7.8	Protrusion	319
7.9	Spaces	320
8	Languages	323
8.1	Introduction	323
8.2	Evolution	323
8.3	Characters, glyphs and discretionaries	324
8.4	Controlling hyphenation	329
8.5	The main control loop	330
8.6	Loading patterns and exceptions	331
8.7	Applying hyphenation	333
8.8	Applying ligatures and kerning	335
8.9	Breaking paragraphs into lines	335
8.10	The language library	336
8.11	Math	339
8.12	Tracing	339
9	Lua	342
9.1	Introduction	342
9.2	Initialization	342
9.3	Lua behaviour	344
9.4	Lua modules	345
9.5	Files	345
9.6	Testing	346
9.7	Helpers	346
10	Metapost	351
10.1	Introduction	351
10.2	Instances	351

11	\TeX	368
11.1	Introduction	368
11.2	Status information	368
11.3	Everything \TeX	378
11.4	The configuration	409
11.5	Input and output	410
12	Math	413
12.1	Introduction	413
12.2	Traditional alongside OpenType	413
12.3	Intermezzo	414
12.4	Unicode math characters	417
12.5	Math classes	418
12.6	Setting up the engine	418
12.7	Math styles	419
12.8	Math parameters	423
12.9	Math spacing	431
13	PDF	436
13.1	Introduction	436
13.2	Lua interfaces	436
14	Nodes	445
14.1	Introduction	445
14.2	Lua node representation	445
14.3	Main text nodes	446
14.4	Math nodes	468
14.5	Helpers	481
15	Tokens	514
15.1	Introduction	514
15.2	Lua token representation	514
15.3	Helpers	514
16	Libraries	547
16.1	Introduction	547
16.2	Third party	547
16.3	Core	547
16.4	Auxiliary	547
16.5	Optional	572

introduction

Introduction

The LuaMetaT_EX manual that is a variant of the LuaT_EX manual provides an overview similar to its parent. Instead of adding more and more to that one, an alternative take is provided. Here we start less from a historic perspective and treat the engine as independent development. The main reason for this is that we want to focus on ConT_EXt, if only because that is the macro package that uses it and also drives the development.

In LuaMetaT_EX we go further than in LuaT_EX. We extend the language, refactor most subsystems and assume that the macro package adapts to that. Of course we are compatible as much as possible with predecessors but we also take the freedom to tune some default behavior. For instance, moving on with math rendering means that we can make assumptions with respect to fonts and because the math fonts have issues that never will be solved we assume that the macro package is not only to feed the engine with tweaked fonts that can use the engine to its maximum extend. The same is true for more mechanism, like for instance the par builder, where we introduce multiple paragraph line break passes using features not present in other engines. Although extensions like these are not discussed here we do have to describe the underlying mechanisms and interfaces and thereby assume usage as in ConT_EXt.

A manual like this evolves over time and will take years to complete. These are volunteer efforts unless some project makes it possible to spend more time on it. In practice most work on T_EX development is unpaid for and therefore mostly driven by the joy of playing with typesetting and coming up with solutions for problems that users present us. Keep that in mind when reading and wondering why the focus is not on what you expect or what is best for marketing.

This manual replaces the older LuaMetaT_EX manual. It has some less and some more than its predecessor which was derived from the LuaT_EX manual. It will take some time to ‘complete’. Eventually I might add a few registers but it makes only sense when the manual is more stable and I have to be in the mood to spend time on it.

Author	Hans Hagen & friends
ConT _E Xt	2024.10.31 11:54
LuaMetaT _E X	2.11.06 (dev id: 20241101)
Support	contextgarden.net & tug.org

engines

1 Engines

1.1 Introduction

There are good reasons why we started the Lua \TeX and later LuaMeta \TeX projects. Here I will go into some of them. It is just short wrap up of how it started, how other engines influenced the process and how we see usage. There are plenty of documents out there that go into more detail. The main objective of this section is to put documentation into perspective.

1.2 How it started

When we started with Con \TeX t, hardware was rather limited compared to what we have today. A personal computer had some 640kB memory, possibly bumped to 1MB with help from a memory extender. This put some restrictions to how macro packages could be defined, also because that memory had to be shared with the baseline operating system. However, over time memory and runtime became less of an issue and the \TeX engine could be configured to use whatever was available. Extending the program other than increasing the available memory became more feasible.

As with any program, there is always something to wish for which is why the ε - \TeX variant came into view. Before those extensions could be used, pdf \TeX showed up. That variant simplified the ‘ \TeX plus separate backend driver’ model to a one-step process. Eventually ε - \TeX was merged into pdf \TeX , and that became the de facto standard engine. There was never a follow up on ε - \TeX , and more drastic deviations like Omega were never ready for production. At some point X \TeX came around but that was mostly a font specific extension. We were kind of stuck with a wish-list that never would be fulfilled but we occasionally pondered a follow up. We drafted an extended ε - \TeX proposal, played with some features related to pdf, improved a few things but that was it.

Having some experiences with Lua as extension language in Sci \TeX , I wondered what something like that would bring to \TeX and after discussing this with Hartmut he made variant of pdf \TeX that has some basic interfaces: we could access properties of registers and print something to \TeX as if it came from file. As is common with some variant, a new name was coined and Lua \TeX came into existence. We’re talking 2005.

Because Idris wanted to typeset high quality scholar manuscripts mixing Arabic and Latin we discussed how to do that in Con \TeX t and his experiences with Omega were such that alternatives had to be considered: the Oriental \TeX project was started and Lua \TeX was the starting point. Taco merged some parts of Aleph (a somewhat stable variant of Omega) into the code base and stepwise some primitives were added. It was overall a rather large and serious project that took a lot of our time. It was not commercially driven, mostly for Con \TeX t users and therefore also a lot of fun to do. As often with such projects, early adapters keep things going.

It took a while before Lua \TeX was stable in the sense that nothing more was added. Because the engine was developed alongside what is called Con \TeX t MkIV, we could easily adapt both to each other. Even better: users could use both in production. However, in order for other macro packages to use Lua \TeX (per request) it had to be frozen, and that happened around 2015, some 10 years after we started. However, we were not done yet and in order not to violate this stability principle the follow up was called LuaMeta \TeX . Because it was a more drastic extension project, and also a somewhat drastic separation of the code base from the complex Lua \TeX one, the related Con \TeX t code was also separated, this time tagged MkXL, or LMTX when we talk about the combination. The project started

around 2019 and soon again entered a state of combined development and use in production and most users switched to this variant.

There are more complete wrap ups of these developments and we systematically reported on them in various documents that are available in the distribution and/or published in user group journals.

1.3 The engines

Of course all starts with original $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. We want to be compatible so we keep that functionality. However, for practical reasons $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ omits two core components. Font loading is not present in the frontend and there is no backend. Both are supposed to be provided via Lua plugins. This makes sense because in the meantime font technologies have changed and keep changing and backend also are a moving target. In $\text{ConT}_{\text{E}}\text{Xt}$ we already did all that in Lua, so there was no need to keep that font and pdf generation code around in the engine. There are a few more deviations, like dropping some system specific features (terminal related) and in former times practical features like outer and long macros that no longer made sense and complicated integrating new features unnecessarily.

As mentioned in the introduction $\text{pdfT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ is the basis for $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ is where we started with $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. If we compare $\text{pdfT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ with traditional $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ the main additions are:

- There is an integrated pdf backend that also supports for instance hyperlinks and various annotations.
- Expansion of glyphs (aka hz) has been added to the engine and integrated in the par builder. The same is true for character protrusion (in the margin).
- There is, to some extend, support for inter-character kerning.
- There are some handy helpers, for instance for calculating hashes, randomization, etc.
- There is an extension to injection between lines (adjust).
- We have few more conditionals (like testing for a csname and absolute values).
- A few helpers like `\quitvmode` (that we liked to have in $\text{ConT}_{\text{E}}\text{Xt}$) were added.

Because $\text{pdfT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ was actively developed and maintained over many years, extensions showed up step-wise, also depending on usage and needs. That is also why the $\varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ extensions were included:

- More than 256 registers, including marks.
- Access to discarded material in the vertical splitting code.
- Protection against expansion of macros (the `\protected` prefix).
- A simple right to left typesetting mechanism.
- Access to some states, a limited set of last nodes, etc.
- There are some additional tracing features.
- One can reprocess tokens and produce detokenized lists.

In $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ we also looked at what Omega could bring:

- More than 256 registers.
- Multi-directional typesetting.
- Local boxes (in lines).
- Input processing.

If we combine these lists, we see font expansion and protrusion coming back in $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. However, already in $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ expansion and protrusion were dealt with a bit differently and even more so in $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, while protection in $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ is implemented differently. We also kept injection of vertical

material but in LuaMetaT_EX that done quite differently. Most if ε -T_EX is there but not right to left typesetting and the register approach. Of course we kept the additional conditionals but implemented them a bit different.

In LuaT_EX we took the Omega enlarged register approach and directional typesetting although that has been stripped down and redone to right to left only. Local boxes are there but redone in LuaMetaT_EX. There was no need for input processing because we have Lua. In the end there is little that we kept from the other engines which also means that one cannot take the manuals that come with these engines and simply assume that it is there.

We should of course mention MetaPost. That graphical subsystem was integrated in LuaT_EX and on the one hand stripped down (less backend) and extended (remove bottlenecks and add some functionality) in LuaMetaT_EX. With respect to Lua we moved to more recent versions and dropped support for just in time compilation.

There is of course a lot in LuaT_EX that can be found also in LuaMetaT_EX but the later one goes way beyond its predecessor. It actually provides what we always wanted (as ConT_EXt developers) but never showed up. And this brings us to a next topic.

1.4 Usage

Why is it that there has been little fundamental development around T_EX engines? One of the reasons is that macro packages have to be stable. New features can be added but if they are only available in one engine (and there are a few more around now, like X_YT_EX and the cjk specific ones) a macro package has to provide ways around them when they are not available. Risking some criticism I dare to say that in order to use LuaT_EX to its full potential, macro package has to be set up such that this is possible and ConT_EXt does just that. When we talk backends it's relatively easy, and when we talk fonts it's doable. But if you are not willing to adapt the core of your code dramatically (and conceptually) all you get from LuaT_EX is a built-in scripting language and some occasional messing around with node lists. In ConT_EXt we could transition rather well because the user interfaces permitted to do so without users noticing. Of course there were changes, for instance because encodings matter less, which is also true for e.g. X_YT_EX, and font technologies changed. But for macro packages other than ConT_EXt just the availability of Lua might be enough reasons to use that engine. That also means that documentation of the more intricate features is less important: one can just learn by example and ConT_EXt is that example.

With LuaMetaT_EX we go further because here one really has to make some fundamental choices. Again this could be done within the existing user interfaces, but here we are not only talking of fundamental improvements, like rendering math or breaking paragraphs into lines, but also of more flexible handling of alignments, inserts, adjusts, marks, par and page building, etc. Basically all mechanism got extended and opened up. In order to profit from this you have to be able to throw away existing solution and use these extensions to come up with better ones. If one can put sentiments aside, this also takes quite some time.

A very important aspect (at least for me) is that I want the macro code to look nice and in that respect stick to the T_EX syntax as much as possible. That means that we have more programming related primitives, enhanced macro argument parsing, more (flexible) conditionals, additional registers, extra expansion related features and so on. Instead of some intermediate layer (like the helpers in ConT_EXt) we can stick closer to the language itself. Of course this is not something that most users will notice. What users might notice, is that on the average ConT_EXt with LuaMetaT_EX performs better than with

Lua_{TEX} or even LuaMeta_{TEX}. Even with more performance critical components delegated to Lua (like the backend pdf generation) we gain and often can compete performance wise well with the faster eight bit pdf_{TEX} engine.

The fact that one has to make (and cannot make) drastic choices has a consequence for documentation. Most of what is new and interesting is discussed in articles and low level manuals. However, it is often discussed in the perspective of Con_{TEX}t. Although we do discuss and show generic solutions it makes little sense to go into details there simply because in the end only Con_{TEX}t will use them as intended. It's just a waste of time to implement variants that are more generic because they will never be used elsewhere, especially in situations where the solutions are considered 'standard' and will not change. In Con_{TEX}t we always followed the principle that if we can do better, we will do better, and interfaces are such that this can be done.

Of course that brings up the question "How do you know that these are the best solutions" and the answer is that we don't. However, we're not talking of quick and dirty solutions. For instance it took years to enhance math support: experiments, discussion, reconsideration, documenting, writing articles, looking at usage, fonts, etc. A wider discussion would not have brought better solutions, if at all. If that were the case, there would already have been successors. The same is true for most extensions: there was little need for them outside the Con_{TEX}t community. So in the end that's what those interested should look at: how is LuaMeta_{TEX} used in Con_{TEX}t. It is the combined development together with acceptance by users that makes this possible,

constructions

2 Constructions

2.1 Introduction

This is more a discussion of the way some constructs in for instance math work. It will never be exhausting and mostly is for our own usage. We don't discuss all the options bit many are interfaced in higher level macros in ConT_EXt. This chapter will gradually grow, depending on time and mood.

2.2 Boxes

Boxes are very important in T_EX. We have horizontal boxes and vertical boxes. When you look at a page of text, the page itself is a vertical box, and among other things it packs lines that are themselves horizontal boxes. The lines that make a paragraph are the result of breaking a long horizontal box in smaller pieces.

This is a vertical box. It has a few lines
of text that started out as one long line
but has been broken in pieces. Doing
this as good as possible is one of T _E X's
virtues.

There is a low level manual on boxes so here we can limit the discussion to basics. A box is in T_EX speak a node. In traditional T_EX it has a width, height, depth and shift.



Here we see a box and the gray line is called the baseline, the height goes up and the depth goes down. Normally the height and depth are determined by what goes in the box but they can be changed as we like.

```
\setbox\scratchboxone\ruledhpack{SHIFT 1}
```

```
\setbox\scratchboxtwo\ruledhpack{SHIFT 2}
```

```
\boxshift\scratchboxtwo 1ex \dontleavehmode \box\scratchboxone\box\scratchboxtwo
```

```
\setbox\scratchboxone\ruledvpack{SHIFT 3}
```

```
\setbox\scratchboxtwo\ruledvpack{SHIFT 4}
```

```
\boxshift\scratchboxtwo 1ex \box\scratchboxone\box\scratchboxtwo
```

In this example you'll notice that the shift depends on the box being horizontal or vertical. The primitives `\raise`, `\lower`, `\moveleft` and `\moveright` can be used to shift a box.

```
SHIFT 1
```

```
SHIFT 2
```

```
SHIFT 3
```

```
SHIFT 4
```

The reason why we have the shift property is that it is more efficient than wrapping a box in another box and shifting with kerns. In that case we also have to go via a box register so that we can manipulate the

final dimensions. Another advantage is that the engine can use shifts to position for instance elements in a math formula and even the par builder used shifts to deal with positioning the lines according to shape and margin. In LuaMetaTeX the later is no longer the case.

Inside a box there can be mark (think running headers), insert (think footnotes) and adjust (think injecting something before or after the current line) nodes. The par builder will move this from inside the box to between the lines but when boxes are nested too deeply this won't happen and they get lost. In LuaMetaTeX these objects do bubble up because we make them box properties. So, in addition to the dimensions and shift a box also has migration fields.

In the low level manuals you can find examples of accessing various properties of boxes so here we stick to a short description. The reason for mentioning them is that it gives you an idea of what goes on in the engine.

field	usage
width	the (used) width
height	the (used) height
depth	the (used) depth
shift_amount	the shift (right or down)
list	pointer to the content
glue_order	the calculated order of glue stretch of shrink
glue_sign	the determined sign of glue stretch of shrink
glue_set	the calculated multiplier for glue stretch or shrink
geometry	a bit set registering manipulations
orientation	positional manipulations
w_offset	used in horizontal movement calculations
h_offset	used in vertical movement calculations
d_offset	used in vertical movement calculations
x_offset	a horizontal shift independent of dimensions
y_offset	a vertical shift independent of dimensions
axis	the math axis
dir	the direction the box goes to (l2r or r2l)
package_state	a bitset indicating how the box came to be as it is
index	a (system dependent) identifier
pre_migrated	content bound to the box that eventually will be injected
post_migrated	idem
pre_adjusted	idem
post_adjusted	idem
source_anchor	an identifier bound to the box
target_anchor	idem
anchor	a bitset indicating where and how to anchor
except	carried information about additional virtual depth
exdepth	additional virtual depth taken into account in the page builder

We have the usual dimension but also extra ones that relate to `\boxxoffset` and `\boxyoffset` (these are virtual) as well as `\boxxmove` and `\boxymove` (these influence dimensions). The `\boxorientation` also gets registered. The state fields carry information that is used in various places, the pre and post

fields relate to the mentioned embedded content. Anchors are just there so that a macro package can play with this and excepts refer to an additional dimensions that is looked at in the page builder, for instance in order to prevent a page break at an unlucky spot. It all gives an indication of what we are dealing with.

2.3 Math style variants

The LuaMetaTeX math engine is a follow up on the one in LuaTeX. That one gradually became more configurable in order to deal with both traditional fonts and OpenType fonts. In LuaMetaTeX much has been redone, opened up and extended. New mechanisms and constructs have been added. In the process hard coded heuristics with regards to math styles inside constructions were made configurable, a feature that is probably not used much, apart from experimenting. A side effect is that we can show how the engine is set up, so we do that when applicable.

construct	value	preset name
<code>\Umathoverlinevariant</code>	0x11335577	cramped
<code>\Umathunderlinevariant</code>	0x01234567	normal
<code>\Umathoverdelimitervariant</code>	0x45456767	small
<code>\Umathunderdelimitervariant</code>	0x45456767	small
<code>\Umathdelimiterovervariant</code>	0x01234567	normal
<code>\Umathdelimiterundervariant</code>	0x01234567	normal
<code>\Umathhextensiblevvariant</code>	0x01234567	normal
<code>\Umathvextensiblevvariant</code>	0x01234567	normal
<code>\Umathfractionvariant</code>	0x11335577	cramped
<code>\Umathradicalvariant</code>	0x11335577	cramped
<code>\Umathaccentvariant</code>	0x11335577	cramped
<code>\Umathdegreevariant</code>	0x67676767	doublesuperscript
<code>\Umathtopaccentvariant</code>	0x11335577	cramped
<code>\Umathbottomaccentvariant</code>	0x11335577	cramped
<code>\Umathoverlayaccentvariant</code>	0x11335577	cramped
<code>\Umathnumeratorvariant</code>	0x23456767	numerator
<code>\Umathdenominatorvariant</code>	0x33557777	denominator
<code>\Umathsuperscriptvariant</code>	0x45456767	small
<code>\Umathsubscriptvariant</code>	0x55557777	subscript
<code>\Umathprimevariant</code>	0x45456767	small
<code>\Umathstackvariant</code>	0x23456767	numerator

2.4 Math scripts

The basic components in a math formula are characters, accents, fractions, radicals and fences. They are represented in the to be processed node list as noads and eventually are converted in glyph, kern, glue and list nodes. Each noad carries similar but also specific information about its purpose and intended rendering. In LuaMetaTeX that is quite a bit more than in traditional T_EX.

These noads are often called atoms. The center piece in a noad is called the nucleus. The fact that these noads also can have scripts attached makes them more like molecules. Scripts can be attached to the left and right, high or low. That makes fours of them: pre/post super/sub scripts. In LuaMetaTeX we also have a prime script, which comes on its own, above a post subscript or after the post superscript, if given.



Here the raised rectangle represents the prime. The large center piece is the nucleus. Four scripts are attached to the nucleus. The two smaller center pieces indicate follow up atoms. They make it possible to have multiple pre- and postscripts. For single scripts we get combinations like these:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} \text{c} \\ \text{d} \end{array} X \begin{array}{c} \text{a} \\ \text{b} \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \text{d} \\ \text{b} \end{array} X & \begin{array}{c} \text{c} \\ \text{a} \end{array} X \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{c} \\ \text{d} \end{array} X \begin{array}{c} \text{a}' \\ \text{b} \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \text{d} \\ \text{b} \end{array} X' & \begin{array}{c} \text{c} \\ \text{a}' \end{array} X \end{array}$$

And for multiple (there can be more than two) we get this assembly:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \\ \text{D} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{c} \\ \text{d} \end{array} X \begin{array}{c} \text{a} \\ \text{b} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{A} \\ \text{B} \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \text{D} \\ \text{B} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{d} \\ \text{b} \end{array} X & \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \\ \text{a} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{c} \\ \text{X} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{A} \\ \text{B} \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \\ \text{D} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{c} \\ \text{d} \end{array} X \begin{array}{c} \text{a}' \\ \text{b} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{A}' \\ \text{B}' \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \text{D} \\ \text{B}' \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{d} \\ \text{b} \end{array} X' & \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \\ \text{a}' \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{c} \\ \text{X} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{A}' \\ \text{B}' \end{array} \end{array}$$

It will be clear that there is quite a bit of code involved in dealing with this because these scripts are not only to be anchored relative to the nucleus but also to each other. The dimensions of the scripts determine for instance how close a combined super and subscript are positioned.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_p & X_p & X_p \end{array}$$

The rendering of scripts involves several parameters, of which some relate to font parameters. In LuaMetaTeX we have a few more variables and we also overload font parameters, if only because only a few make sense and it looks like font designers just copy values from the first available fonts so in the end we can as well use our own preferred values.

The following parameters play a role in rendering the shown assembly. The traditional TeX engine expects a math font to set quite some parameters for positioning the scripts but has no concept of prescripts and neither has OpenType. This is why we have extra parameters (and for completeness we also have them for the post scripts). One can wonder if font parameters make sense here because in the end we can decide for a better visual result with different ones. After all, assembling scripts is not really what fonts are about.

engine parameter	target	open type font	tex font
subscriptshiftdrop	post	SubscriptBaselineDropMin	subdrop
subscriptshiftdown	post	SubscriptShiftDown	sub1
subscriptsuperscriptshiftdown	post	SubscriptShiftDown[WithSuperscript]	sub2

subscriptsuperscriptvgap	post	SubSuperscriptGapMin	4 rulethickness
subscripttopmax	post	SubscriptTopMax	4/5 xheight
superscriptshiftdrop	post	SuperscriptBaselineDropMax	supdrop
superscriptbottommin	post	SuperscriptBottomMin	1/4 xheight
superscriptshiftup	post	SuperscriptShiftUp[Cramped]	sup1 sup2 sup3
superscriptsubscriptbottommax	post	SuperscriptBottomMaxWithSubscript	4/5 xheight
* primeraise	prime	PrimeRaisePercent	
* primeraisecomposed	prime	PrimeRaiseComposedPercent	
* primeshiftup	prime	PrimeShiftUp[Cramped]	
* primeshiftdrop	prime	PrimeBaselineDropMax	
* primespaceafter	prime	PrimeSpaceAfter	
spaceafterscript	post	SpaceAfterScript	\scriptspace
* spacebeforescript	post	SpaceBeforeScript	
* spacebetweenscript	multi	SpaceBetweenScript	
* extrasuperscriptshift	pre		
* extrasuperprescriptshift	pre		
* extrasubscriptshift	pre		
* extrasubprescriptshift	pre		
* extrasuperscriptspace	post		
* extrasubscriptspace	post		
* extrasuperprescriptspace	pre		
* extrasubprescriptspace	pre		

The parameters marked by a * are LuaMetaT_EX specific. Some have an associated font parameter but that is not official OpenType. For a very long time we had only a few math fonts but even today most of these fonts seem to use values that are similar to the ones T_EX uses. In that respect one can as well turn them into rendering specific ones. After all, changes are slim that a formula rendered by T_EX or e.g. MS Word are metric compatible and with the advanced spacing options in LuaMetaT_EX we're even further off. Also keep in mind that the T_EX font parameters could be overloaded at the T_EX end.

The spacing after a (combination of) postscript(s) is determined by 'space after script' and the spacing before a (combination of) prescript(s) by 'space before script'. If we have multi-scripts the 'space between script' kicks in and the space after the script is subtracted from it. The given space between is scaled with the **\scriptspacebetweenfactor** parameter.

The default style mapping that we use are the same as those (hard coded) in regular T_EX and those for prime scripts are the same as for superscripts.

subscriptvariant

current style	mapping	used style
display	0x55557777	crampedscript
crampeddisplay	0x55557777	crampedscript
text	0x55557777	crampedscript
crampedtext	0x55557777	crampedscript
script	0x55557777	crampedscriptscript
crampedscript	0x55557777	crampedscriptscript
scriptscript	0x55557777	crampedscriptscript
crampedscriptscript	0x55557777	crampedscriptscript

superscriptvariant

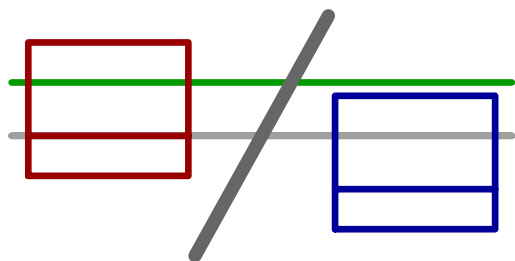
current style	mapping	used style
display	0x45456767	script
crampeddisplay	0x45456767	crampedscript
text	0x45456767	script
crampedtext	0x45456767	crampedscript
script	0x45456767	scriptscript
crampedscript	0x45456767	crampedscriptscript
scriptscript	0x45456767	scriptscript
crampedscriptscript	0x45456767	crampedscriptscript

primevariant

current style	mapping	used style
display	0x45456767	script
crampeddisplay	0x45456767	crampedscript
text	0x45456767	script
crampedtext	0x45456767	crampedscript
script	0x45456767	scriptscript
crampedscript	0x45456767	crampedscriptscript
scriptscript	0x45456767	scriptscript
crampedscriptscript	0x45456767	crampedscriptscript

2.5 Skewed fractions

Skewed fractions are native in LuaMetaTeX. Such a fraction is a horizontal construct with the numerator and denominator shifted up and down a bit. It looks like this:



The rendering is driven by some parameters that determine the horizontal and vertically shifts but we found that the ones given by the font make no sense (and are not that well defined in the standard either). The horizontal shift relates to the width (and angle) of the slash and the vertical relates to the math axis. We don't listen to 'skewed fraction hgap' nor to 'skewed fraction vgap' but use the width of the middle character, normally a slash, that can grow on demand and multiply that with a `hfactor` that can be passed with the fraction command. A `vfactor` is used a multiplier for the vertical shift over the axis. Examples of (more)) control can be found in the ConTeXt math manual. Here we just show a few examples that use `\vfrac` with its default values.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \frac{1}{2} & \frac{a}{b} & \frac{b}{a} \\
 x^2/x^3 & (x+1)/(x+2) & x+1/x+2
 \end{array}$$

The quality of the slashes differs per font, some lack granularity in sizes, others have inconsistent angles between the base character and larger variants.

The following commands are used:

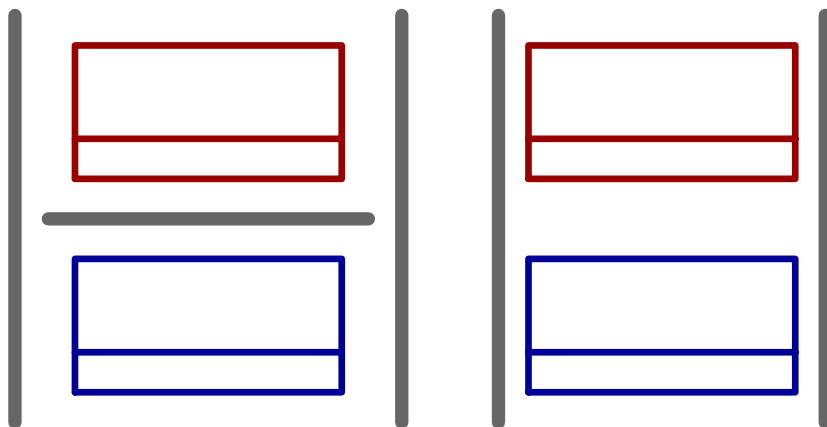
`\Uskewed`
`\Uskewedwithdelims`

There are some parameter involved:

`\Umathskeweddelimitertolerance`
`\Umathskewedfractionhgap`
`\Umathskewedfractionvgap`

2.6 Math fractions

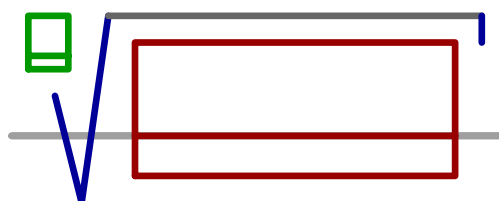
Fractions in $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ come in variants: with or without rule in the middle and with or without fences. The reason for the fenced ones is that they are not spaced like open and close class symbols. So, instead of open, fraction, close being three things, we have one thing. In $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ we can also use an extensible instead of the rule.



Because the rule is optional, we can have the following, which represents a so called binom construct.

2.7 Math radicals

Radicals indeed look like roots. But the radical mechanism basically is a wrapping construct: there's something at the left that in traditional $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ gets a rule appended. The left piece is an extensible, so it first grow with variant glyphs and when we run out if these we get an upward extensible with a repeated upward rule like symbol that then connect with the horizontal rule. In $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ the horizontal rule can be an extensible (repeated symbol) and we can also have a symbol at the right, which indeed can be a vertical extensible too.



Here are some aspects to take care of when rendering a radical like this:

- The radical symbol goes below the baseline of what it contains.
- There is some distance between the left symbol and the body.
- There is some distance between the top symbol and the body.
- There is some distance between the right symbol and the body.
- The degree has to be anchored properly and possibly can stick out left.
- The (upto) three elements have to overlap a little to avoid artifacts.
- Multiple radicals might have to be made consistent with respect to heights and depths.

Involved commands:

\Uradical
\Uroot
\Urooted

Relevant parameters:

\Umathradicaldegreeafter
\Umathradicaldegreebefore
\Umathradicaldegreeraise
\Umathradicalextensibleafter
\Umathradicalextensiblebefore
\Umathradicalkern
\Umathradicalrule
\Umathradicalvariant
\Umathradicalvgap

2.8 Math accents

todo

2.9 Math fences

todo

assumptions

3 Assumptions

3.1 Introduction

Because the engine provides no backend there is also no need to document it. However, in ConT_EXt we assume some features to be supported by its own backend. These will be collected here. This chapter is rather ConT_EXt specific, for instance we have extended what can be done with characters and that is pretty much up to a macro package to decide.

3.2 Virtual fonts

Virtual fonts are a nice extension to traditional T_EX fonts that originally was independent from the engine, which only needs dimensions from a tfm file. In LuaT_EX, because it has a backend built in, virtual fonts are handled by the engine but here we also can construct such fonts at runtime. The original set of commands is:

```
char      + chr sx sy
right     + amount
down      + amount
push      +
pop        +
font       + index
nop        +
special   - str
rule      + v h
```

The pdfT_EX engine added two more but these are not supported in ConT_EXt:

```
pdf        - str
pdfmode    - n
```

The LuaT_EX engine also added some but these are never found in loaded fonts, only in those constructed at runtime. Two are not supported in ConT_EXt.

```
lua        + code f(font,char,posh,posv,sx,sy)
image      - n
node       + n
scale      - sx sy
```

The LuaMetaT_EX engine has nothing on board and doesn't even carry the virtual commands around. The backend can just fetch them from the Lua end. An advantage is that we can easily extend the repertoire of commands:

```
slot       + index chr csx csy
use        + index chr ... chr
left       + amount
up         + amount
offset     + h v chr [csx [csy]]
stay       + chr (push/pop)
```

```

compose + h v chr
frame   + wd jt dp line outline advance baseline color
line     + wd ht dp color
inspect +
trace    +
<plugin> + f(posh,posv,packet)

```

There are some manipulations that don't need the virtual mechanism. In addition to the character properties like width, height and depth we also have:

advance		the width used in the backend
scale		an additional scale factor
xoffset		horizontal shift
yoffset		vertical shift
effect	slant	factor used for tilting
	extend	horizontal scale
	squeeze	vertical scale
	mode	special effects like outline
	weight	pen stroke width

internals

4 Internals

4.1 Introduction

If you look at \TeX as a programming language and are familiar with other languages, a natural question to ask is what data types there are and how is all managed. Here I will give a general overview of some concepts. The explanation below is not entirely accurate because it tries to avoid the sometimes messy details. More can be found in the other low level manuals. I assume that one knows at least how to process a simple document with a few commands.

It is not natural to start an explanation with how memory is laid out but by doing this it is easier to introduce the concepts. I will focus on what is called hash table, the stack, node memory and token memory. We leave fonts, languages, character properties, math, etc. out of the picture. There are details that we skip because it's the general picture that matters here.

I might add some more to this manual, depending on questions by users at meetings or on the mailing list. Some details might change over time but the principles remain the same.

4.2 A few basics

This is a reference manual and not a tutorial. This means that we discuss changes relative to traditional \TeX and also present new (or extended) functionality. As a consequence we will refer to concepts that we assume to be known or that might be explained later. Because the \LuaTeX and \LuaMetaTeX engines open up \TeX there's suddenly quite some more to explain, especially about the way a (to be) typeset stream moves through the machinery. However, discussing all that in detail makes not much sense, because deep knowledge is only relevant for those who write code not possible with regular \TeX and who are already familiar with these internals (or willing to spend time on figuring it out).

So, the average user doesn't need to know much about what is in this manual. For instance fonts and languages are normally dealt with in the macro package that you use. Messing around with node lists is also often not really needed at the user level. If you do mess around, you'd better know what you're dealing with. Reading “The \TeX Book” by Donald Knuth is a good investment of time then also because it's good to know where it all started. A more summarizing overview is given by “ \TeX by Topic” by Victor Eijkhout. You might want to peek in “The $\varepsilon\text{\TeX}$ manual” too.

But ... if you're here because of Lua, then all you need to know is that you can call it from within a run. If you want to learn the language, just read the well written Lua book. The macro package that you use probably will provide a few wrapper mechanisms but the basic `\directlua` command that does the job is:

```
\directlua{tex.print("Hi there")}
```

You can put code between curly braces but if it's a lot you can also put it in a file and load that file with the usual Lua commands. If you don't know what this means, you definitely need to have a look at the Lua book first.

If you still decide to read on, then it's good to know what nodes are, so we do a quick introduction here. If you input this text:

```
Hi There ...
```

eventually we will get a linked lists of nodes, which in ascii art looks like:

```
H <=> i <=> [glue] <=> T <=> h <=> e <=> r <=> e ...
```

When we have a paragraph, we actually get something like this, where a par node stores some meta-data and is followed by a hlist flagged as indent box:

```
[par] <=> [hlist] <=> H <=> i <=> [glue] <=> T <=> h <=> e <=> r <=> e ...
```

Each character becomes a so called glyph node, a record with properties like the current font, the character code and the current language. Spaces become glue nodes. There are many node types and nodes can have many properties but that will be discussed later. Each node points back to a previous node or next node, given that these exist. Sometimes multiple characters are represented by one glyph (shape), so one can also get:

```
[par] <=> [hlist] <=> H <=> i <=> [glue] <=> Th <=> e <=> r <=> e ...
```

And maybe some characters get positioned relative to each other, so we might see:

```
[par] <=> [hlist] <=> H <=> [kern] <=> i <=> [glue] <=> Th <=> e <=> r <=> e ...
```

Actually, the above representation is one view, because in LuaMetaTeX we can choose for this:

```
[par] <=> [glue] <=> H <=> [kern] <=> i <=> [glue] <=> Th <=> e <=> r <=> e ...
```

where glue (currently fixed) is used instead of an empty hlist (think of a `\hbox`). Options like this are available because want a certain view on these lists from the Lua end and the result being predicable is part of that.

It's also good to know beforehand that T_EX is basically centered around creating paragraphs and pages. The par builder takes a list and breaks it into lines. At some point horizontal blobs are wrapped into vertical ones. Lines are so called boxes and can be separated by glue, penalties and more. The page builder accumulates lines and when feasible triggers an output routine that will take the list so far. Constructing the actual page is not part of T_EX but done using primitives that permit manipulation of boxes. The result is handled back to T_EX and flushed to a (often pdf) file.

```
\setbox\scratchbox\ vbox\bgroup
```

```
line 1\par line 2
```

```
\egroup
```

```
\showbox\scratchbox
```

The above code produces the next log lines that reveal how the engines sees a paragraph (wrapped in a `\vbox`):

```
1:4: > \box257=
1:4: \vbox[normal][16=1,17=1,47=1], width 483.69687, height 27.58083, depth 0.1416, direction l2r
1:4: .\list
1:4: ..\hbox[line][16=1,17=1,47=1], width 483.69687, height 7.59766, depth 0.1416, glue 455.40097fil, direction l2r
1:4: ...list
1:4: ....glue[left hang][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....glue[left][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....glue[parfillsleft][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\par[newgraf][16=1,17=1,47=1], hangafter 1, hsize 483.69687, pretolerance 100, tolerance 3000, adjdemerits 10000, linepenalty 10
, doublehyphenemerits 10000, finalhyphenemerits 5000, clubpenalty 2000, widowpenalty 2000, brokenpenalty 100, emergencystretch 12.0,
parfillskip 0.0pt plus 1.0fil, hyphenationmode 499519
1:4: ....glue[indent][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
+00006C l
```

```

1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
+000069 i
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
+00006E n
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
+000065 e
1:4: ....\glue[space][16=1,17=1,47=1] 3.17871pt plus 1.58936pt minus 1.05957pt, font 30
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
+000031 l
1:4: ....\penalty[line][16=1,17=1,47=1] 10000
1:4: ....\glue[parfill][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt plus 1.0fil
1:4: ....\glue[right][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glue[right hang][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ..\glue[par][16=1,17=1,47=1] 5.44995pt plus 1.81665pt minus 1.81665pt
1:4: ..\glue[baseline][16=1,17=1,47=1] 6.79396pt
1:4: ..\hbox[line][16=1,17=1,47=1], width 483.69687, height 7.59766, depth 0.1416, glue 455.40097fil, direction l2r
1:4: ....\list
1:4: ....\glue[left hang][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glue[left][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glue[parfillleft][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\par[newgraf][16=1,17=1,47=1], hangafter 1, hsize 483.69687, pretolerance 100, tolerance 3000, adjdemerits 10000, linepenalty 10
, doublehyphenemerits 10000, finalhyphenemerits 5000, clubpenalty 2000, widowpenalty 2000, brokenpenalty 100, emergencystretch 12.0,
parfillskip 0.0pt plus 1.0fil, hyphenationmode 499519
1:4: ....\glue[indent][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
+00006C l
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
+000069 i
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
+00006E n
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
+000065 e
1:4: ....\glue[space][16=1,17=1,47=1] 3.17871pt plus 1.58936pt minus 1.05957pt, font 30
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
+000032 2
1:4: ....\penalty[line][16=1,17=1,47=1] 10000
1:4: ....\glue[parfill][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt plus 1.0fil
1:4: ....\glue[right][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glue[right hang][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt

```

The LuaMetaT_EX engine provides hooks for Lua code at nearly every reasonable point in the process: collecting content, hyphenating, applying font features, breaking into lines, etc. This means that you can overload T_EX's natural behavior, which still is the benchmark. When we refer to ‘callbacks’ we means these hooks. The T_EX engine itself is pretty well optimized but when you kick in much Lua code, you will notices that performance drops. Don't blame and bother the authors with performance issues. In ConT_EXt over 50% of the time can be spent in Lua, but so far we didn't get many complaints about efficiency. Adding more callbacks makes no sense, also because at some point the performance hit gets too large. There are plenty of ways to achieve goals. For that reason: take remarks about LuaMetaT_EX, features, potential, performance etc. with a natural grain of salt.

Where plain T_EX is basically a basic framework for writing a specific style, macro packages like ConT_EXt and L^AT_EX provide the user a whole lot of additional tools to make documents look good. They hide the dirty details of font management, language support, turning structure into typeset results, wrapping pages, including images, and so on. You should be aware of the fact that when you hook in your own code to manipulate lists, this can interfere with the macro package that you use. Each successive step expects a certain result and if you mess around to much, the engine eventually might bark and quit. It can even crash, because testing everywhere for what users can do wrong is no real option.

When you read about nodes in the following chapters it's good to keep in mind what commands relate to them. Here are a few:

command	node	explanation
\hbox	hlist	horizontal box

\vbox	vlist	vertical box with the baseline at the bottom
\vtop	vlist	vertical box with the baseline at the top
\hskip	glue	horizontal skip with optional stretch and shrink
\vskip	glue	vertical skip with optional stretch and shrink
\kern	kern	horizontal or vertical fixed skip
\discretionary	disc	hyphenation point (pre, post, replace)
\char	glyph	a character
\hrule	rule	a horizontal rule
\vrule	rule	a vertical rule
\textdirection	dir	a change in text direction

Whatever we feed into T_EX at some point becomes a token which is either interpreted directly or stored in a linked list. A token is just a number that encodes a specific command (operator) and some value (operand) that further specifies what that command is supposed to do. In addition to an interface to nodes, there is an interface to tokens, as later chapters will demonstrate.

Text (interspersed with macros) comes from an input medium. This can be a file, token list, macro body *cq.* arguments, some internal quantity (like a number), Lua, etc. Macros get expanded. In the process T_EX can enter a group. Inside the group, changes to registers get saved on a stack, and restored after leaving the group. When conditionals are encountered, another kind of nesting happens, and again there is a stack involved. Tokens, expansion, stacks, input levels are all terms used in the next chapters. Don't worry, they lose their magic once you use T_EX a lot. You have access to most of the internals and when not, at least it is possible to query some state we're in or level we're at.

When we talk about pack(ag)ing it can mean two things. When T_EX has consumed some tokens that represent text they are added to the current list. When the text is put into a so called **\hbox** (for instance a line in a paragraph) it (normally) first gets hyphenated, next ligatures are build, and finally kerns are added. Each of these stages can be overloaded using Lua code. When these three stages are finished, the dimension of the content is calculated and the box gets its width, height and depth. What happens with the box depends on what macros do with it.

The other thing that can happen is that the text starts a new paragraph. In that case some information is stored in a leading par node. Then indentation is appended and the paragraph ends with some glue. Again the three stages are applied but this time afterwards, the long line is broken into lines and the result is either added to the content of a box or to the main vertical list (the running text so to say). This is called par building. At some point T_EX decides that enough is enough and it will trigger the page builder. So, building is another concept we will encounter. Another example of a builder is the one that turns an intermediate math list into something typeset.

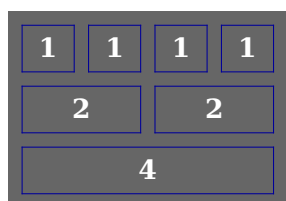
Wrapping something in a box is called packing. Adding something to a list is described in terms of contributing. The more complicated processes are wrapped into builders. For now this should be enough to enable you to understand the next chapters. The text is not as enlightening and entertaining as Don Knuths books, sorry.

4.3 Memory words

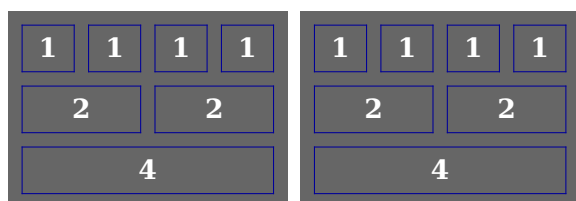
Before we come to know that T_EX manages most of its memory itself. It allocates arrays of (pairs of) 32 bit integers because that is what T_EX uses all over the place: integers. They store integer numbers of various ranges values, fixed point floats, pointers (indices in arrays), states, commands, and often groups of them travel around the system.

integer : mostly 8, 16, 24, 32 but we have odd packing too
 fixed point float : 16.16 used to represent dimensions
 boolean : simple state variables
 enumerations : a choice from a set, like operators and operands
 strings : an index in a string pool (character array)

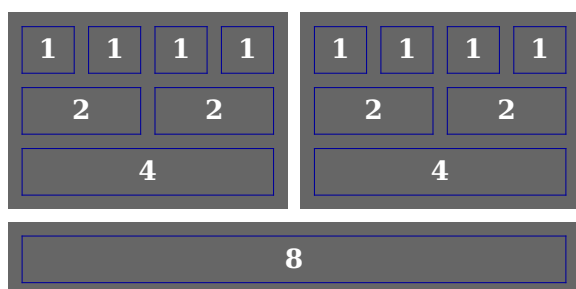
The main memory areas in $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ are therefore arrays integers or pairs of integers as we want to handle linked lists where in an element one integer has some data and the other points to another element. Keep in mind that when $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ showed up efficient memory management was best done by the application, especially when it had to be portable. This might seem odd now but is actually not that bad performance wise. One just has to get accustomed to the way $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ handles data.



Depending on usage we use four, two or one byte. Often a pair is used:



Such a pair is called a (memory) word and each component is a halfword that itself can have two quarterwords and four singlewords. In LuaMeta $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ we also can combine them:



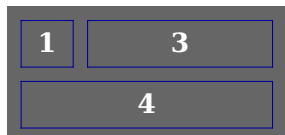
The eight byte field is used for pointers (to more dynamic structures) and double floats but that can only happen when multiple words are used as a combined data structure (as in a so called node, explained below). Quite often the second field is used as pointer to another pair. We could have changed that model in Lua $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and LuaMeta $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ but there is little gain in that and we want to stay close to the well documented original as much as possible. It also has the side effect of simplifying the code and retain performance.¹

4.4 Tokens

A token is a halfword, so a 32 bit integer as mentioned before. Here we use a one plus three model, not mentioned in the previous section. Sometimes we just look at the whole number, but quite often we

¹ In the source this is reflected in the names used: `vinfo` and `vlink` in these pairs but in LuaMeta $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ we often use more symbolic names.

look at the two smaller ones. The single byte is the so called command identifier (cmd), the second one traditionally is called character (chr), but what we're really talking about is an operator and operand kind of model. In a T_EX engine source you can find variable names like `cur_cmd`, `cur_chr` and `cur_tok` where the third one combines the first two.



Tokens travel through the system as integers and when some action is required the command part is consulted which then triggers some action further defined by the character part. The combination can either directly trigger some action but often that action has to look ahead in order to get some more details.

Consider the following input:

`\starttext`

Hi there!

This is a `\hbox{box}`.

`\stoptext`

Every character falls in a category, and there are 16 of them. The H is a ‘letter’, the empty line a newline. The backslash is an ‘escape’ that tells the parser to scan for a command where the name is from letters. That command is then looked up and a token is created: in this case a ‘call’ command with as operand the memory address (an index in the to be discussed hash) where the start of a list of stored tokens can be found.

The characters in the text also become tokens and here we get two ‘letter’ commands (with the Unicode slots as operand), one ‘space’ command, five more letter commands and an ‘other’ command, and so on.

Here every token is fed into the interpreter. The `\starttext` is a macro (control sequence) so it gets expanded and its stored tokens get interpreted. The letters become (to be discussed) nodes in a linked list of content. In this case the tokens are not stored and discarded as we read on.

The `\hbox` is also a control sequence but a built in primitive. The operator is `make_box` and the operand is `hbox`. It will trigger making a box of the given kind by reading an optional specification, the left curly brace (begin group) collects content, and when the right curly brace (end group) is seen wraps up by packaging the result. All that is hard coded, contrary to a macro, but one can of course define `\hbox` as macro, which normally is a bad idea.

As a side note: quite often T_EX reads a token, and then puts it back into the input. For instance, when it expects a number or keyword it keeps reading till it is satisfied and when it ends up in the unexpected it has to wrap up and go one step back. However, when we read from file we can't go back, which is why T_EX has a model of ‘input levels’. Pushing back boils down to creating a token list with this one token and then starts reading from that list. It is beyond this explanation to go into details but all you need to know is that T_EX has various input sources, for instance files, token lists, arguments to commands (also token lists) and Lua output, but in the end all provide tokens.²

² We could use a double linked list in which case we would have a three integer element which is odd for T_EX and has no real benefits as it would change the model completely.



So to wrap up tokens, we have either singular ones (just 32 bit integers encoding a command and value aka operator and operand) or a pair where the second one is a link. A token list starts at some index and the link is zero (end of list) or another index. Token memory is huge array of memory words like these. When token lists are constructed we take from this pool so there is an index indicating the first available token. When a list is discarded it gets appended to a list of free tokens. So in practice we first try to get a free token from this pool. In LuaMetaT_EX it the token array will grow on demand with a configurable chunk size.

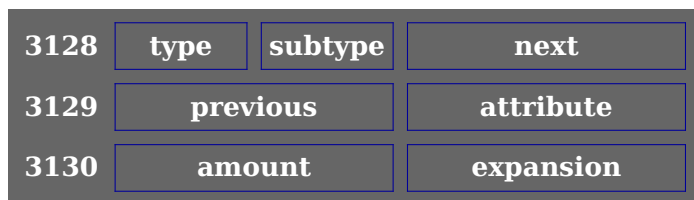
4.5 Nodes

We already mentioned nodes. These are slices from an array that hold some values that belong together. So again we have a large array of memory words but where a token is one pair a node is multiple. Nodes have different size. The first node starts at index 1 and when it needs four memory words the second node starts at index 5.

A character in the input that is typeset will become a glyph node of 112 bytes and a paragraph starts with a par node of 280 bytes. A space becomes a glue node of 56 bytes and every box that you (or T_EX) make is 128 bytes. Most nodes are way larger in LuaMetaT_EX than in traditional T_EX but we don't have the memory constraints of those times.

Here it is worth noticing that where T_EX has a dedicated subsystem for glue which make sharing space related glue efficient: the so called glue specifications are reference counted. In LuaT_EX we made these normal nodes which is slightly less efficient but fits better in the opened up (Lua) interface and also has some other advantages (we leave it to reader to guess what).

For instance, a kern node at the time of this writing needs three memory words (as with other nodes we might add some more fields, like options).



So here we take a slice of three memory words from the node array starting at index 3128. We mention this detail because sometimes (when tracing) you see these numbers. This doesn't mean that at that point we had 3128 nodes, because the next node taken from this pool will have number 3131. The numbers are indices!

In the source code we access thes enumber like this:

```
# define kern_amount(a)    vlink(a,2)
# define kern_expansion(a) vinfo(a,2)
```

So when $a = 3128$ the amount is found in the link field $a = 3128 + 2 = 3130$. The name link is somewhat weird here but that's the way these fields are called: `vlink` and `vinfo`. It could as well be first and second but by using macros we get away by abstraction. So now you can figure out what these references do:³

```
# define node_type(a)    vinfo0(a,0)
# define node_subtype(a) vinfo1(a,0)

# define node_next(a)    vlink(a,0)
# define node_prev(a)    vlink(a,1)
# define node_attr(a)    vinfo(a,1)
```

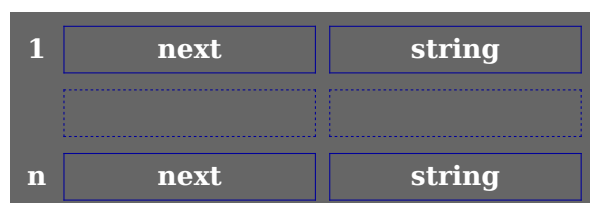
Not all nodes end up in a list that results in output, like paragraphs and pages. For instance `\parshape` and `\widowpenalties` also use nodes as storage container. Their common node is a specification node of 32 but with a pointer to a dynamically memory array.

Because the sizes differ one cannot simply have a list of free nodes (as with tokens) without some lookup mechanism that combines nodes when needed (they need to be next to each other) or split larger ones when we run out of nodes. In `LuaTeX` and `LuaMetaTeX` we keep a list of free nodes per size which in practice is more efficient and one seldom runs out of nodes because on the average a page has a similar distribution and when a page is flushed (or any box for that matter) nodes get freed. For instance right at this moment, we have 1120 nodes in use and 3178 glyphs in stock.⁴

4.6 The hash table

The engine has a lot of built-in commands and users can define additional ones. An example is macros, like the mentioned `\starttext` that refers to a token list that starts the typesetting process. When reading the input from file these commands and macros are looked up in a hash table. There are also built-in commands that generate a hash entry. For instance when you define a counter or a font, the given name becomes a hash entry that points to a memory location (again an index).

Here it gets more complex. A hash table is used to lookup primitive commands like `\hbox` and `\font` as well as `\starttext`. The string is converted into an integer within a specific range. That integer is then an index into a table like we saw before, with two halfwords per slot.



The hash value (integer calculated from string) point to a slot and the string is compared with the stored string. When the string is different, the next field points to a different slot (outside the hash range in the same table) and again the string is checked. When there is no next value set (zero), the index is used to determine what to do.

³ In what order these two fields end up in memory depends on the cpu being little or big endian.

⁴ And a while later (that is: here) these numbers are 1197 and 3101. These numbers can hardly be called dramatic as a page can only have so many glyph nodes: 1301 and 2997 were the numbers after the colon.

1	type	flags	level	value
n	type	flags	level	value

This table is called the table of equivalents. In LuaMetaT_EX this is implemented a bit different than in the other engines because we combine tables. The fields that you see here keep track of the type (so that we can optimize some bits and pieces), flags (so that we can implement overload protection), a level (so that we can restore values after the group ends and of course a value.

That value can be a pointer to (index of) a token list, or a pointer to (index of) a node. It can also be just some value, like a dimension, character reference or register entry.

Although there are similarities, the memory mapping in LuaMetaT_EX differs from LuaT_EX and that one differs from pdfT_EX which again differs from original T_EX.

In original T_EX table of equivalents is organized in six regions.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. active characters | math codes |
| 2. hash table | category codes |
| font identifiers | lowercase codes |
| 3. glue | uppercase codes |
| muglue | space factors |
| 4. token lists | 5. integers |
| boxes | delimiter codes |
| font names | 6. dimensions |

The internal dimension, integer, skip, muskip, token and box registers are part of this and for users there are 256 registers of each category. There are 256 active characters, and the mentioned codes and factors also have 256 entries.

In LuaMetaT_EX (like in LuaT_EX) we use Unicode, so there it makes no sense to store values in the table of equivalents. We use dedicated hashes instead. So there we have different regions. In LuaT_EX we roughly have this:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------|
| 1. hash table | 6. tokens |
| 2. frozen control sequences | 7. boxes |
| 3. font identifiers | 8. integers |
| 4. glue | 9. attributes |
| 5. muglue | 10. dimensions |

As we moved forward, LuaMetaT_EX has some more:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. hash table | 7. integers |
| 2. frozen control sequences | 8. attributes |
| 3. glue | 9. dimensions |
| 4. muglue | 10. posits |
| 5. tokens | 11. units |
| 6. boxes | 12. specifications |

In case one wonders, on top of built-in units users can define their own. Specifications are for instance

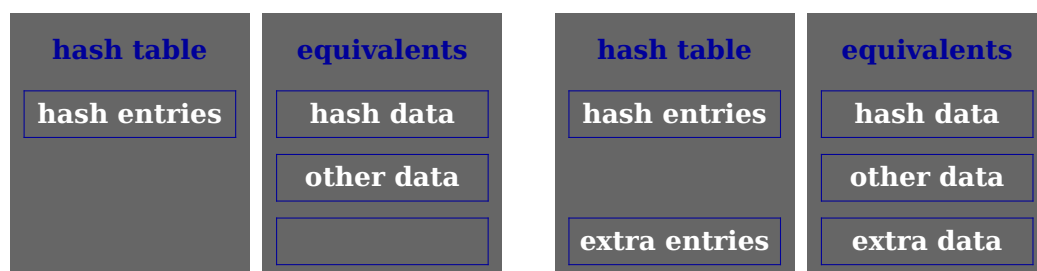
shape and penalty arrays. Fonts are not in here because we manage them in Lua.

In traditional \TeX a delimiter code needs two integers so there it uses both fields in a memory word and saves the state in a parallel array with quarterwords. We don't need this in \LuaMetaTeX because we store delimiters in a separate hash table (and actually don't need them at all, because we use OpenType fonts).

We need to keep some save/restore related state in the table but for integers and delimiter codes we need all four bytes of the value. Therefore original \TeX has a separate parallel table for this, which as side effect spoils some memory. In \LuaTeX we have way more registers so there the waste is larger.

In \LuaMetaTeX we got rid of this. We could also use less space for the type and store some extra data. A side effect is that we keep the type information which is handy for tracing, sparse dumping, and optimizing save and restore. This is why with more functionality we don't need less more memory than one would expect.

The hash table in original \TeX is a bit too small for larger macro packages which is why in practice engines took more than the default couple of thousands slots. But going too large makes no sense because one ends up with many misses and unused hash and equivalent space. That is why soon after \TeX showed up support for extra hash space was introduced. That space is allocated at the end of normal hash space and can be configured when the format file is made. This means that the hash table also grows to the size of the equivalents table:



Too much extra hash space also means too much equivalent space as these arrays run in parallel. In \LuaMetaTeX we can let hash memory grow on demand so there the penalty is less.

It makes sense to move the 'other data' to the beginning so that we can use a smaller hash but. That could potentially save 4MB memory, but when we decide to limit the maximum number of registers to 8K (instead of 64K) we are at 512KB so that might be easier as it avoids using offsets. And who knows how we can use the yet unused space later. Compared to \LuaTeX we already save much memory elsewhere.

4.7 Save stack

I only mention this here because it relates to the table of equivalents. Whenever a quantity (register, parameter, macro, you name it) changes the engine registers the old value on the save stack when the assignment is local. The equivalent is replaced and when found in the save stack restored afterwards. In order to let the save stack not grow too much we try to only save a state when there is a real change. We can do that because we have a bit more information available and otherwise do a bit more testing. This is specific for \LuaMetaTeX .

4.8 Data types

The long winding explanation explanation in the previous section shows that we have a curious mix of data to manage. We already saw tokens and nodes but here we also saw registers. However, integers, dimensions and attributes are all basically just 32 bit numbers. Even a posit (float) fits into that space. So if you enter 10pt internally it becomes a so called scaled (dimension). The skip registers point to a glue node and the token and box registers to a node list and those pointers are also numbers. So, what the user sees as a data type internally is just a number and its type (the command field in a token) tells what to do with it.

When tracing is turned on there can be mentioning of save stack, input levels, fonts, languages, hyphenation, various character related properties and so on. Here we have specialized data structures that have their own memory layout and management. Where terms like token, node, integer (count), dimension and glue indicate something that the user should grasp, the entries in a save stack are never presented other than in an message.

Manipulating data types is explained in various low level manuals, some relate to programming, and some to typesetting. It makes no sense to repeat that here. Take for instance macros: then come in variants (think of `\protected` and/or `\tolerant` ones) can take arguments (which effectively are token lists) and the flags in the mentioned table of equivalents control take care of that.

One aspect of token lists is worth mentioning: they start with a so called head token. So a list of length one actually has two tokens. The head keeps track of the fact that a list is a copy. Because a macro is also a token list, in LuaMetaTeX the head also has some information that permits a more efficient code path. Because token lists are used all over the place in the engine, sharing makes sense.

Attributes attached to a node are node lists themselves and these are also shared which not only saves memory but also is more performing. There are many places where LuaMetaTeX differs from its predecessors: there are more primitives, there is more data moved around but it got compensated by optimizing mechanisms. But as much as possible we stayed within the same paradigms.

4.9 Time flies

For those curious about how different the engines are when it comes to memory usage, here is a quote from TeX the program:

Since we are assuming 32-bit integers, a halfword must contain at least 16 bits, and a quarterword must contain at least 8 bits. But it doesn't hurt to have more bits; for example, with enough 36-bit words you might be able to have `mem_max` as large as 262142, which is eight times as much memory as anybody had during the first four years of TeX's existence.

N.B.: Valuable memory space will be dreadfully wasted unless TeX is compiled by a Pascal that packs all of the `memory_word` variants into the space of a single integer. This means, for example, that `glue_ratio` words should be `short_real` instead of `real` on some computers. Some Pascal compilers will pack an integer whose subrange is `0 .. 255` into an eight-bit field, but others insist on allocating space for an additional sign bit; on such systems you can get 256 values into a quarterword only if the subrange is `128 .. 127`.

The present implementation tries to accommodate as many variations as possible, so it makes few assumptions. If integers having the subrange `min_quarterword .. max_quarterword` can

be packed into a quarterword, and if integers having the subrange `min_halfword .. max_halfword` can be packed into a halfword, everything should work satisfactorily.

It is usually most efficient to have `min_quarterword = min_halfword = 0`, so one should try to achieve this unless it causes a severe problem. The values defined here are recommended for most 32-bit computers.

This still applies to pdf \TeX although there a memory word is two 32 bit integer, so each halfword in there spans 32 bits, and a quarterword 16 bits. So what does that mean for nodes? Here is what the original code says about char nodes.

A `char_node`, which represents a single character, is the most important kind of node because it accounts for the vast majority of all boxes. Special precautions are therefore taken to ensure that a `char_node` does not take up much memory space. Every such node is one word long, and in fact it is identifiable by this property, since other kinds of nodes have at least two words, and they appear in mem locations less than `hi_mem_min`. This makes it possible to omit the type field in a `char_node`, leaving us room for two bytes that identify a font and a character within that font.

Note that the format of a `char_node` allows for up to 256 different fonts and up to 256 characters per font; but most implementations will probably limit the total number of fonts to fewer than 75 per job, and most fonts will stick to characters whose codes are less than 128 (since higher codes are more difficult to access on most keyboards).

So, in order to save space these single size nodes use little memory. Even more interesting is the follow up on that explanation:

Extensions of \TeX intended for oriental languages will need even more than 256×256 possible characters, when we consider different sizes and styles of type. It is suggested that Chinese and Japanese fonts be handled by representing such characters in two consecutive `char_node` entries: The first of these has `font = font_base`, and its `link` points to the second; the second identifies the font and the character dimensions. The saving feature about oriental characters is that most of them have the same box dimensions. The character field of the first `char_node` is a `charext` that distinguishes between graphic symbols whose dimensions are identical for typesetting purposes. (See the MetaFont manual.) Such an extension of \TeX would not be difficult; further details are left to the reader.

In order to make sure that the character code fits in a quarterword, \TeX adds the quantity `min_quarterword` to the actual code.

What if that had been implemented right from the start? What if utf8 had been around at that time? Of course when 32 bit integers are used we can use these extra bit for a larger code range anyway.

When we flash forward to Lua \TeX we don't see that optimization and there are reasons for it. First of all content related nodes have an attribute list pointer as well as a `prev` field; lists are double linked. That means we don't reuse the type and subtype fields. The macros that define a glyph are:

```
# define glyph_node_size      7
# define character(a)         vinfo((a)+2)
# define font(a)              vlink((a)+2)
# define lang_data(a)         vinfo((a)+3)
# define lig_ptr(a)           vlink((a)+3)
```

```

# define x_displace(a)      vinfo((a)+4)
# define y_displace(a)      vlink((a)+4)
# define ex_glyph(a)        vinfo((a)+5) /* expansion factor (hz) */
# define glyph_node_data(a)  vlink((a)+5)
# define synctex_tag_glyph(a) vinfo((a)+6)
# define synctex_line_glyph(a) vlink((a)+6)

```

Instead of one memory word we use seven, and given the amount of characters on a page that adds quite a bit compared to the original. Of course it is irrelevant on today's machines. So how about LuaMetaTeX?

```

# define glyph_node_size      14
# define glyph_character(a)   vinfo(a,2)
# define glyph_font(a)        vlink(a,2) /*tex can be quarterword */
# define glyph_data(a)        vinfo(a,3) /*tex handy in context */
# define glyph_state(a)        vlink(a,3) /*tex handy in context */
# define glyph_language(a)    vinfo0(a,4)
# define glyph_script(a)       vinfo1(a,4)
# define glyph_control(a)      vlink0(a,4) /*tex we store 0xXXXX in the |\cccode| */
# define glyph_reserved(a)     vlink1(a,4)
# define glyph_options(a)      vinfo(a,5)
# define glyph_hyphenate(a)    vlink(a,5)
# define glyph_protected(a)    vinfo00(a,6)
# define glyph_lhmin(a)        vinfo01(a,6)
# define glyph_rhmin(a)        vinfo02(a,6)
# define glyph_discpart(a)     vinfo03(a,6)
# define glyph_expansion(a)    vlink(a,6)
# define glyph_x_scale(a)      vinfo(a,7)
# define glyph_y_scale(a)      vlink(a,7)
# define glyph_scale(a)        vinfo(a,8)
# define glyph_raise(a)        vlink(a,8)
# define glyph_left(a)         vinfo(a,9)
# define glyph_right(a)        vlink(a,9)
# define glyph_x_offset(a)     vinfo(a,10)
# define glyph_y_offset(a)     vlink(a,10)
# define glyph_weight(a)       vinfo(a,11)
# define glyph_slant(a)        vlink(a,11)
# define glyph_properties(a)   vinfo0(a,12) /*tex for math */
# define glyph_group(a)        vinfo1(a,12) /*tex for math */
# define glyph_index(a)        vlink(a,12) /*tex for math */
# define glyph_input_file(a)   vinfo(a,13)
# define glyph_input_line(a)   vlink(a,13)

```

We carry scaled, offsets, status information and various data around and consume twice what LuaTeX needs. In both cases there are the common fields:

```

# define node_type(a)         vinfo0(a,0)
# define node_subtype(a)      vinfo1(a,0)
# define node_next(a)         vlink(a,0)
# define node_prev(a)         vlink(a,1)

```

```
# define node_attr(a)    vinfo(a,1)
```

As you see, we still use the original \TeX `vinfo` and `vlink` identifications but in \LuaMetaTeX we have node specific verbose accessors because we no longer use the same slots for (for instance) width, height and depth. This of course has impact on the code base because now `width(n)` becomes a different accessor per node it applies to. We get less compact code but gain readability and we often need to distinguish anyway. Where \LuaTeX and predecessors we see:

```
w += width(n)
```

that covers boxes, glue and kerns. For glyphs we need to get the width from the font using the `font` and `char` fields. Actually, in \TeX82 that can be done directly because we know that these values are okay. In \LuaTeX however these values can be set in Lua and therefore we do need to check if they reference a loaded font and valid character slot. So in \LuaTeX we do need a dedicated function to get the glyph width.

In \LuaMetaTeX we have to be more granular and deal with each node type that has width independently:

```
switch (subtype(n) {
  case glyph_node:
    w += tex_glyph_width(s);
    break;
  case hlist_node:
  case vlist_node:
    w += box_width(n);
    break;
  case rule_node:
    w += rule_width(n);
    break;
  case glue_node:
    w += glue_amount(n);
    break;
  case kern_node:
    w += kern_amount(s);
    break;
  case math_node:
    if (tex_math_glue_is_zero(s)) {
      w += math_surround(s);
    } else {
      w -= math_amount(s);
    }
    break;
}
```

Because a glyph can have scaled set and similar features exist for glue we need to distinguish need to distinguish anyway. Watch the math node: we have to deal with either kern or glue.

primitives

5 Primitives

5.1 Introduction

Here I will discuss some of the new primitives in Lua \TeX and LuaMeta \TeX , the later being a successor that permits the Con \TeX t folks to experiment with new features. The order is arbitrary. When you compare Lua \TeX with pdf \TeX , there are actually quite some differences. Some primitives that pdf \TeX introduced have been dropped in Lua \TeX because they can be done better in Lua. Others have been promoted to core primitives that no longer have a pdf prefix. Then there are lots of new primitives, some introduce new concepts, some are a side effect of for instance new math font technologies, and then there are those that are handy extensions to the macro language. The LuaMeta \TeX engine drops quite some primitives, like those related to pdf \TeX specific f(r)ont or backend features. It also adds some new primitives, mostly concerning the macro language.

We also discuss the primitives that fit into the macro programming scope that are present in traditional \TeX and $\varepsilon\text{-}\TeX$ but there are for sure better of explanations out there already. Primitives that relate to typesetting, like those controlling math, fonts, boxes, attributes, directions, catcodes, Lua (functions) etc are not discussed or discussed in less detail here.

There are for instance primitives to create aliases to low level registers like counters and dimensions, as well as other (semi-numeric) quantities like characters, but normally these are wrapped into high level macros so that definitions can't clash too much. Numbers, dimensions etc can be advanced, multiplied and divided and there is a simple expression mechanism to deal with them. We don't go into these details here: it's mostly an overview of what the engine provides. If you are new to \TeX , you need to play a while with its mixed bag of typesetting and programming features in order to understand the difference between this macro language and other languages you might be familiar with.

5.3.1	<code>\<space></code>	54	5.3.21	<code>\aftergroup</code>	57
5.3.2	<code>\-</code>	54	5.3.22	<code>\aftergrouped</code>	57
5.3.3	<code>\/</code>	54	5.3.23	<code>\aliased</code>	58
5.3.4	<code>\Umathxscale</code>	54	5.3.24	<code>\aligncontent</code>	59
5.3.5	<code>\Umathyscale</code>	55	5.3.25	<code>\alignmark</code>	59
5.3.6	<code>\above</code>	55	5.3.26	<code>\alignmentcellsource</code>	59
5.3.7	<code>\abovedisplayshortskip</code>	55	5.3.27	<code>\alignmentwrapsource</code>	59
5.3.8	<code>\abovedisplayskip</code>	55	5.3.28	<code>\aligntab</code>	59
5.3.9	<code>\abovewithdelims</code>	55	5.3.29	<code>\allcrampedstyles</code>	59
5.3.10	<code>\accent</code>	55	5.3.30	<code>\alldisplaystyles</code>	59
5.3.11	<code>\additionalpageskip</code>	55	5.3.31	<code>\allmainstyles</code>	59
5.3.12	<code>\adjdemerits</code>	56	5.3.32	<code>\allmathstyles</code>	59
5.3.13	<code>\adjustspacing</code>	56	5.3.33	<code>\allscriptscriptstyles</code>	60
5.3.14	<code>\adjustspacingshrink</code>	56	5.3.34	<code>\allscriptstyles</code>	60
5.3.15	<code>\adjustspacingstep</code>	56	5.3.35	<code>\allsplitstyles</code>	60
5.3.16	<code>\adjustspacingstretch</code>	56	5.3.36	<code>\alltextstyles</code>	60
5.3.17	<code>\advance</code>	56	5.3.37	<code>\alluncrampedstyles</code>	60
5.3.18	<code>\advanceby</code>	56	5.3.38	<code>\allunsplittedstyles</code>	60
5.3.19	<code>\afterassigned</code>	56	5.3.39	<code>\amcode</code>	60
5.3.20	<code>\afterassignment</code>	57	5.3.40	<code>\associateunit</code>	60

5.3.41	<code>\atendoffile</code>	61	5.3.90	<code>\boxxoffset</code>	71
5.3.42	<code>\atendoffiled</code>	61	5.3.91	<code>\boxymove</code>	71
5.3.43	<code>\atendofgroup</code>	61	5.3.92	<code>\boxyoffset</code>	71
5.3.44	<code>\atendofgrouped</code>	62	5.3.93	<code>\brokenpenalties</code>	71
5.3.45	<code>\atop</code>	62	5.3.94	<code>\brokenpenalty</code>	71
5.3.46	<code>\atopwithdelims</code>	62	5.3.95	<code>\catcode</code>	71
5.3.47	<code>\attribute</code>	62	5.3.96	<code>\catcodetable</code>	72
5.3.48	<code>\attributedef</code>	62	5.3.97	<code>\cccode</code>	72
5.3.49	<code>\automaticdiscretionary</code>	62	5.3.98	<code>\cdef</code>	72
5.3.50	<code>\automatichyphenpenalty</code>	62	5.3.99	<code>\cdefcsname</code>	72
5.3.51	<code>\automigrationmode</code>	63	5.3.100	<code>\cfcode</code>	72
5.3.52	<code>\autoparagraphmode</code>	63	5.3.101	<code>\char</code>	72
5.3.53	<code>\badness</code>	63	5.3.102	<code>\chardef</code>	72
5.3.54	<code>\baselineskip</code>	63	5.3.103	<code>\cleaders</code>	73
5.3.55	<code>\batchmode</code>	63	5.3.104	<code>\clearmarks</code>	73
5.3.56	<code>\begincsname</code>	63	5.3.105	<code>\clubpenalties</code>	73
5.3.57	<code>\begingroup</code>	64	5.3.106	<code>\clubpenalty</code>	73
5.3.58	<code>\beginlocalcontrol</code>	64	5.3.107	<code>\constant</code>	73
5.3.59	<code>\beginmathgroup</code>	65	5.3.108	<code>\constrained</code>	73
5.3.60	<code>\beginsimplegroup</code>	65	5.3.109	<code>\copy</code>	73
5.3.61	<code>\belowdisplayshortskip</code>	65	5.3.110	<code>\copymathatomrule</code>	73
5.3.62	<code>\belowdisplayskip</code>	65	5.3.111	<code>\copymathparent</code>	73
5.3.63	<code>\binoppenalty</code>	66	5.3.112	<code>\copymathspacing</code>	74
5.3.64	<code>\botmark</code>	66	5.3.113	<code>\count</code>	74
5.3.65	<code>\botmarks</code>	66	5.3.114	<code>\countdef</code>	74
5.3.66	<code>\boundary</code>	66	5.3.115	<code>\cr</code>	74
5.3.67	<code>\box</code>	66	5.3.116	<code>\crampeddisplaystyle</code>	74
5.3.68	<code>\boxadapt</code>	66	5.3.117	<code>\crampedscriptscriptstyle</code>	75
5.3.69	<code>\boxanchor</code>	66	5.3.118	<code>\crampedscriptstyle</code>	75
5.3.70	<code>\boxanchors</code>	67	5.3.119	<code>\crampedtextstyle</code>	75
5.3.71	<code>\boxattribute</code>	67	5.3.120	<code>\crrcr</code>	75
5.3.72	<code>\boxdirection</code>	67	5.3.121	<code>\csactive</code>	75
5.3.73	<code>\boxfinalize</code>	67	5.3.122	<code>\csname</code>	75
5.3.74	<code>\boxfreeze</code>	68	5.3.123	<code>\csnamestring</code>	75
5.3.75	<code>\boxgeometry</code>	68	5.3.124	<code>\csstring</code>	75
5.3.76	<code>\boxlimit</code>	68	5.3.125	<code>\currentgrouplevel</code>	76
5.3.77	<code>\boxlimitate</code>	69	5.3.126	<code>\currentgrouptype</code>	76
5.3.78	<code>\boxlimitmode</code>	69	5.3.127	<code>\currentifbranch</code>	76
5.3.79	<code>\boxmaxdepth</code>	69	5.3.128	<code>\currentiflevel</code>	77
5.3.80	<code>\boxorientation</code>	69	5.3.129	<code>\currentifttype</code>	77
5.3.81	<code>\boxrepack</code>	69	5.3.130	<code>\currentloopiterator</code>	77
5.3.82	<code>\boxshift</code>	69	5.3.131	<code>\currentloopnesting</code>	78
5.3.83	<code>\boxshrink</code>	70	5.3.132	<code>\currentlysetmathstyle</code>	78
5.3.84	<code>\boxsource</code>	70	5.3.133	<code>\currentmarks</code>	78
5.3.85	<code>\boxstretch</code>	70	5.3.134	<code>\currentstacksize</code>	78
5.3.86	<code>\boxtarget</code>	70	5.3.135	<code>\day</code>	79
5.3.87	<code>\boxtotal</code>	70	5.3.136	<code>\dbox</code>	79
5.3.88	<code>\boxvadjust</code>	70	5.3.137	<code>\deadcycles</code>	80
5.3.89	<code>\boxxmove</code>	71	5.3.138	<code>\def</code>	80

5.3.139	<code>\defaultshyphenchar</code>	80	5.3.188	<code>\endmathgroup</code>	89
5.3.140	<code>\defaultskewchar</code>	81	5.3.189	<code>\endsimplegroup</code>	89
5.3.141	<code>\defcsname</code>	81	5.3.190	<code>\enforced</code>	89
5.3.142	<code>\deferred</code>	81	5.3.191	<code>\eofinput</code>	90
5.3.143	<code>\delcode</code>	81	5.3.192	<code>\eqno</code>	90
5.3.144	<code>\delimiter</code>	81	5.3.193	<code>\errhelp</code>	90
5.3.145	<code>\delimiterfactor</code>	81	5.3.194	<code>\errmessage</code>	90
5.3.146	<code>\delimitershortfall</code>	81	5.3.195	<code>\errorcontextlines</code>	90
5.3.147	<code>\detokened</code>	82	5.3.196	<code>\errorstopmode</code>	90
5.3.148	<code>\detokenize</code>	82	5.3.197	<code>\escapechar</code>	90
5.3.149	<code>\detokenized</code>	82	5.3.198	<code>\etoks</code>	90
5.3.150	<code>\dimen</code>	83	5.3.199	<code>\etoksapp</code>	90
5.3.151	<code>\dimendef</code>	83	5.3.200	<code>\etokspre</code>	91
5.3.152	<code>\dimensiondef</code>	83	5.3.201	<code>\eufactor</code>	91
5.3.153	<code>\dimexpr</code>	83	5.3.202	<code>\everybeforepar</code>	91
5.3.154	<code>\dimexpression</code>	83	5.3.203	<code>\everycr</code>	91
5.3.155	<code>\directlua</code>	84	5.3.204	<code>\everydisplay</code>	91
5.3.156	<code>\discretionary</code>	84	5.3.205	<code>\everyeof</code>	91
5.3.157	<code>\discretionaryoptions</code>	84	5.3.206	<code>\everyhbox</code>	92
5.3.158	<code>\displayindent</code>	84	5.3.207	<code>\everyjob</code>	92
5.3.159	<code>\displaylimits</code>	85	5.3.208	<code>\everymath</code>	92
5.3.160	<code>\displaystyle</code>	85	5.3.209	<code>\everymathatom</code>	92
5.3.161	<code>\displaywidowpenalties</code>	85	5.3.210	<code>\everypar</code>	92
5.3.162	<code>\displaywidowpenalty</code>	85	5.3.211	<code>\everytab</code>	92
5.3.163	<code>\displaywidth</code>	85	5.3.212	<code>\everyvbox</code>	92
5.3.164	<code>\divide</code>	85	5.3.213	<code>\exceptionpenalty</code>	93
5.3.165	<code>\divideby</code>	85	5.3.214	<code>\exhyphenchar</code>	93
5.3.166	<code>\doublehyphendemerits</code>	85	5.3.215	<code>\exhyphenpenalty</code>	93
5.3.167	<code>\doublepenaltymode</code>	86	5.3.216	<code>\expand</code>	93
5.3.168	<code>\dp</code>	86	5.3.217	<code>\expandactive</code>	93
5.3.169	<code>\dpack</code>	86	5.3.218	<code>\expandafter</code>	93
5.3.170	<code>\dsplit</code>	86	5.3.219	<code>\expandafterpars</code>	94
5.3.171	<code>\dump</code>	86	5.3.220	<code>\expandafterspaces</code>	94
5.3.172	<code>\edef</code>	86	5.3.221	<code>\expandcstoken</code>	94
5.3.173	<code>\edefcsname</code>	86	5.3.222	<code>\expanded</code>	95
5.3.174	<code>\edivide</code>	86	5.3.223	<code>\expandedafter</code>	95
5.3.175	<code>\edivideby</code>	87	5.3.224	<code>\expandeddetokenize</code>	96
5.3.176	<code>\efcode</code>	87	5.3.225	<code>\expandedendless</code>	96
5.3.177	<code>\else</code>	87	5.3.226	<code>\expandedloop</code>	96
5.3.178	<code>\emergencyextrastretch</code>	87	5.3.227	<code>\expandedrepeat</code>	96
5.3.179	<code>\emergencyleftskip</code>	87	5.3.228	<code>\expandparameter</code>	97
5.3.180	<code>\emergencyrightskip</code>	88	5.3.229	<code>\expandtoken</code>	97
5.3.181	<code>\emergencystretch</code>	88	5.3.230	<code>\expandtoks</code>	98
5.3.182	<code>\end</code>	88	5.3.231	<code>\explicitdiscretionary</code>	98
5.3.183	<code>\endcsname</code>	88	5.3.232	<code>\explicitshyphenpenalty</code>	98
5.3.184	<code>\endgroup</code>	88	5.3.233	<code>\explicititaliccorrection</code> ...	98
5.3.185	<code>\endinput</code>	88	5.3.234	<code>\explicitsspace</code>	98
5.3.186	<code>\endlinchar</code>	89	5.3.235	<code>\fam</code>	99
5.3.187	<code>\endlocalcontrol</code>	89	5.3.236	<code>\fi</code>	99

5.3.237	<code>\finalhyphendemerits</code>	99	5.3.286	<code>\globaldefs</code>	110
5.3.238	<code>\firstmark</code>	99	5.3.287	<code>\glueexpr</code>	110
5.3.239	<code>\firstmarks</code>	99	5.3.288	<code>\glueshrink</code>	110
5.3.240	<code>\firstvalidlanguage</code>	99	5.3.289	<code>\glueshrinkorder</code>	110
5.3.241	<code>\fitnessclasses</code>	99	5.3.290	<code>\gluespecdef</code>	110
5.3.242	<code>\float</code>	100	5.3.291	<code>\gluestretch</code>	110
5.3.243	<code>\floatdef</code>	101	5.3.292	<code>\gluestretchorder</code>	110
5.3.244	<code>\floatexpr</code>	101	5.3.293	<code>\gluetomu</code>	110
5.3.245	<code>\floatingpenalty</code>	101	5.3.294	<code>\glyph</code>	111
5.3.246	<code>\flushmarks</code>	101	5.3.295	<code>\glyphdatafield</code>	111
5.3.247	<code>\font</code>	101	5.3.296	<code>\glyphoptions</code>	111
5.3.248	<code>\fontcharba</code>	101	5.3.297	<code>\glyphscale</code>	111
5.3.249	<code>\fontchardp</code>	102	5.3.298	<code>\glyphscriptfield</code>	112
5.3.250	<code>\fontcharht</code>	102	5.3.299	<code>\glyphscriptscale</code>	112
5.3.251	<code>\fontcharic</code>	102	5.3.300	<code>\glyphscriptscriptscale</code>	112
5.3.252	<code>\fontcharta</code>	102	5.3.301	<code>\glyphslant</code>	112
5.3.253	<code>\fontcharwd</code>	102	5.3.302	<code>\glyphstatefield</code>	112
5.3.254	<code>\fontdimen</code>	102	5.3.303	<code>\glyphtextscale</code>	112
5.3.255	<code>\fontid</code>	103	5.3.304	<code>\glyphweight</code>	112
5.3.256	<code>\fontmathcontrol</code>	103	5.3.305	<code>\glyphxoffset</code>	112
5.3.257	<code>\fontname</code>	103	5.3.306	<code>\glyphxscale</code>	112
5.3.258	<code>\fontspecdef</code>	103	5.3.307	<code>\glyphxscaled</code>	112
5.3.259	<code>\fontspecid</code>	104	5.3.308	<code>\glyphyoffset</code>	113
5.3.260	<code>\fontspecifiedname</code>	104	5.3.309	<code>\glyphyscale</code>	113
5.3.261	<code>\fontspecifiedsize</code>	105	5.3.310	<code>\glyphyscaled</code>	113
5.3.262	<code>\fontspecscales</code>	105	5.3.311	<code>\gtoksapp</code>	113
5.3.263	<code>\fontspecslant</code>	105	5.3.312	<code>\gtokspre</code>	113
5.3.264	<code>\fontspecweight</code>	105	5.3.313	<code>\halign</code>	113
5.3.265	<code>\fontspecxscale</code>	105	5.3.314	<code>\hangafter</code>	114
5.3.266	<code>\fontspecyscale</code>	105	5.3.315	<code>\hangindent</code>	114
5.3.267	<code>\fonttextcontrol</code>	105	5.3.316	<code>\hbadness</code>	114
5.3.268	<code>\forcedleftcorrection</code>	106	5.3.317	<code>\hbox</code>	114
5.3.269	<code>\forcedrightcorrection</code>	106	5.3.318	<code>\hccode</code>	114
5.3.270	<code>\formatname</code>	106	5.3.319	<code>\hfil</code>	115
5.3.271	<code>\frozen</code>	106	5.3.320	<code>\hfill</code>	115
5.3.272	<code>\futurecsname</code>	106	5.3.321	<code>\hfilneg</code>	115
5.3.273	<code>\futuredef</code>	106	5.3.322	<code>\hfuzz</code>	115
5.3.274	<code>\futureexpand</code>	107	5.3.323	<code>\hjcode</code>	115
5.3.275	<code>\futureexpandis</code>	107	5.3.324	<code>\hkern</code>	115
5.3.276	<code>\futureexpandisap</code>	108	5.3.325	<code>\hmcode</code>	115
5.3.277	<code>\futurelet</code>	108	5.3.326	<code>\holdinginserts</code>	116
5.3.278	<code>\gdef</code>	108	5.3.327	<code>\holdingmigrations</code>	116
5.3.279	<code>\gdefcsname</code>	108	5.3.328	<code>\hpack</code>	116
5.3.280	<code>\givenmathstyle</code>	108	5.3.329	<code>\hpenalty</code>	116
5.3.281	<code>\gleaders</code>	108	5.3.330	<code>\hrule</code>	116
5.3.282	<code>\glet</code>	109	5.3.331	<code>\hsize</code>	116
5.3.283	<code>\gletcsname</code>	109	5.3.332	<code>\hskip</code>	117
5.3.284	<code>\glettonothing</code>	109	5.3.333	<code>\hss</code>	117
5.3.285	<code>\global</code>	109	5.3.334	<code>\ht</code>	118

5.3.335	<code>\hyphenation</code>	118	5.3.384	<code>\ifnumval</code>	129
5.3.336	<code>\hyphenationmin</code>	118	5.3.385	<code>\ifodd</code>	130
5.3.337	<code>\hyphenationmode</code>	118	5.3.386	<code>\ifparameter</code>	130
5.3.338	<code>\hyphenchar</code>	118	5.3.387	<code>\ifparameters</code>	130
5.3.339	<code>\hyphenpenalty</code>	118	5.3.388	<code>\ifrelax</code>	130
5.3.340	<code>\if</code>	118	5.3.389	<code>\iftok</code>	130
5.3.341	<code>\ifabsdim</code>	119	5.3.390	<code>\iftrue</code>	131
5.3.342	<code>\ifabsfloat</code>	119	5.3.391	<code>\ifvbox</code>	131
5.3.343	<code>\ifabsnum</code>	119	5.3.392	<code>\ifvmode</code>	131
5.3.344	<code>\ifarguments</code>	119	5.3.393	<code>\ifvoid</code>	131
5.3.345	<code>\ifboolean</code>	120	5.3.394	<code>\ifx</code>	131
5.3.346	<code>\ifcase</code>	120	5.3.395	<code>\ifzerodim</code>	132
5.3.347	<code>\ifcat</code>	120	5.3.396	<code>\ifzerofloat</code>	132
5.3.348	<code>\ifchkdim</code>	120	5.3.397	<code>\ifzeronum</code>	132
5.3.349	<code>\ifchkdimension</code>	121	5.3.398	<code>\ignorearguments</code>	132
5.3.350	<code>\ifchknum</code>	121	5.3.399	<code>\ignoredepthcriterion</code>	133
5.3.351	<code>\ifchknumber</code>	121	5.3.400	<code>\ignorenestedupto</code>	133
5.3.352	<code>\ifcondition</code>	121	5.3.401	<code>\ignorepars</code>	133
5.3.353	<code>\ifcramped</code>	122	5.3.402	<code>\ignorereset</code>	133
5.3.354	<code>\ifcsname</code>	123	5.3.403	<code>\ignorespaces</code>	134
5.3.355	<code>\ifcstok</code>	123	5.3.404	<code>\ignoreupto</code>	134
5.3.356	<code>\ifdefined</code>	123	5.3.405	<code>\immediate</code>	134
5.3.357	<code>\ifdim</code>	123	5.3.406	<code>\immutable</code>	134
5.3.358	<code>\ifdimexpression</code>	124	5.3.407	<code>\indent</code>	134
5.3.359	<code>\ifdimval</code>	124	5.3.408	<code>\indexedsubprescript</code>	134
5.3.360	<code>\ifempty</code>	124	5.3.409	<code>\indexedsubscript</code>	135
5.3.361	<code>\iffalse</code>	124	5.3.410	<code>\indexedsuperprescript</code>	135
5.3.362	<code>\ifflags</code>	125	5.3.411	<code>\indexedsuperscript</code>	135
5.3.363	<code>\iffloat</code>	125	5.3.412	<code>\indexofcharacter</code>	135
5.3.364	<code>\iffontchar</code>	125	5.3.413	<code>\indexofregister</code>	136
5.3.365	<code>\ifhaschar</code>	125	5.3.414	<code>\inherited</code>	136
5.3.366	<code>\ifhastok</code>	125	5.3.415	<code>\initcatcodetable</code>	136
5.3.367	<code>\ifhastoks</code>	126	5.3.416	<code>\initialpageskip</code>	137
5.3.368	<code>\ifhasxtoks</code>	126	5.3.417	<code>\initialtopskip</code>	137
5.3.369	<code>\ifhbox</code>	127	5.3.418	<code>\input</code>	137
5.3.370	<code>\ifhmode</code>	127	5.3.419	<code>\inputlineno</code>	137
5.3.371	<code>\iffinalignment</code>	127	5.3.420	<code>\insert</code>	137
5.3.372	<code>\ifincsname</code>	127	5.3.421	<code>\insertbox</code>	137
5.3.373	<code>\ifinner</code>	127	5.3.422	<code>\insertcopy</code>	137
5.3.374	<code>\ifinsert</code>	128	5.3.423	<code>\insertdepth</code>	137
5.3.375	<code>\ifintervaldim</code>	128	5.3.424	<code>\insertdistance</code>	137
5.3.376	<code>\ifintervalfloat</code>	128	5.3.425	<code>\insertheight</code>	138
5.3.377	<code>\ifintervalnum</code>	128	5.3.426	<code>\insertheights</code>	138
5.3.378	<code>\iflastnamedcs</code>	128	5.3.427	<code>\insertlimit</code>	138
5.3.379	<code>\ifmathparameter</code>	128	5.3.428	<code>\insertmaxdepth</code>	138
5.3.380	<code>\ifmathstyle</code>	128	5.3.429	<code>\insertmode</code>	138
5.3.381	<code>\ifmmode</code>	129	5.3.430	<code>\insertmultiplier</code>	138
5.3.382	<code>\ifnum</code>	129	5.3.431	<code>\insertpenalties</code>	138
5.3.383	<code>\ifnumexpression</code>	129	5.3.432	<code>\insertpenalty</code>	138

5.3.433	<code>\insertprogress</code>	138	5.3.482	<code>\lettolastnamedcs</code>	146
5.3.434	<code>\insertstorage</code>	138	5.3.483	<code>\lettonothing</code>	146
5.3.435	<code>\insertstoring</code>	139	5.3.484	<code>\limits</code>	146
5.3.436	<code>\insertunbox</code>	139	5.3.485	<code>\linebreakchecks</code>	146
5.3.437	<code>\insertuncopy</code>	139	5.3.486	<code>\linebreakoptional</code>	147
5.3.438	<code>\insertwidth</code>	139	5.3.487	<code>\linebreakpasses</code>	147
5.3.439	<code>\instance</code>	139	5.3.488	<code>\linedirection</code>	147
5.3.440	<code>\integerdef</code>	139	5.3.489	<code>\linepenalty</code>	147
5.3.441	<code>\interactionmode</code>	140	5.3.490	<code>\lineskip</code>	147
5.3.442	<code>\interlinepenalties</code>	140	5.3.491	<code>\lineskiplimit</code>	147
5.3.443	<code>\interlinepenalty</code>	140	5.3.492	<code>\localbreakpar</code>	147
5.3.444	<code>\jobname</code>	140	5.3.493	<code>\localbrokenpenalty</code>	147
5.3.445	<code>\kern</code>	140	5.3.494	<code>\localcontrol</code>	148
5.3.446	<code>\language</code>	140	5.3.495	<code>\localcontrolled</code>	148
5.3.447	<code>\lastarguments</code>	140	5.3.496	<code>\localcontrolledendless</code>	148
5.3.448	<code>\lastatomclass</code>	141	5.3.497	<code>\localcontrolledloop</code>	149
5.3.449	<code>\lastboundary</code>	141	5.3.498	<code>\localcontrolledrepeat</code>	149
5.3.450	<code>\lastbox</code>	141	5.3.499	<code>\localinterlinepenalty</code>	149
5.3.451	<code>\lastchkdimension</code>	141	5.3.500	<code>\localleftbox</code>	149
5.3.452	<code>\lastchknumber</code>	141	5.3.501	<code>\localleftboxbox</code>	149
5.3.453	<code>\lastkern</code>	141	5.3.502	<code>\localmiddlebox</code>	150
5.3.454	<code>\lastleftclass</code>	141	5.3.503	<code>\localmiddleboxbox</code>	150
5.3.455	<code>\lastlinefit</code>	141	5.3.504	<code>\localpretolerance</code>	150
5.3.456	<code>\lastloopiterator</code>	142	5.3.505	<code>\localrightbox</code>	150
5.3.457	<code>\lastnamedcs</code>	142	5.3.506	<code>\localrightboxbox</code>	150
5.3.458	<code>\lastnodesubtype</code>	142	5.3.507	<code>\localtolerance</code>	150
5.3.459	<code>\lastnodetype</code>	142	5.3.508	<code>\long</code>	150
5.3.460	<code>\lastpageextra</code>	142	5.3.509	<code>\looseness</code>	150
5.3.461	<code>\lastparcontext</code>	142	5.3.510	<code>\lower</code>	150
5.3.462	<code>\lastpartrigger</code>	143	5.3.511	<code>\lowercase</code>	150
5.3.463	<code>\lastpenalty</code>	143	5.3.512	<code>\lpcode</code>	151
5.3.464	<code>\lastrightclass</code>	143	5.3.513	<code>\luaboundary</code>	151
5.3.465	<code>\lastskip</code>	143	5.3.514	<code>\luabytecode</code>	151
5.3.466	<code>\lccode</code>	143	5.3.515	<code>\luabytecodecall</code>	151
5.3.467	<code>\leaders</code>	143	5.3.516	<code>\luacopyinputnodes</code>	151
5.3.468	<code>\left</code>	143	5.3.517	<code>\luadef</code>	151
5.3.469	<code>\lefthyphenmin</code>	143	5.3.518	<code>\luaescapestring</code>	152
5.3.470	<code>\leftmarginkern</code>	144	5.3.519	<code>\luafunction</code>	152
5.3.471	<code>\leftskip</code>	144	5.3.520	<code>\luafunctioncall</code>	152
5.3.472	<code>\lefttwindemerits</code>	144	5.3.521	<code>\luatexbanner</code>	153
5.3.473	<code>\leqno</code>	144	5.3.522	<code>\luatexrevision</code>	153
5.3.474	<code>\let</code>	144	5.3.523	<code>\luatexversion</code>	153
5.3.475	<code>\letcharcode</code>	144	5.3.524	<code>\mark</code>	153
5.3.476	<code>\letcsname</code>	144	5.3.525	<code>\marks</code>	153
5.3.477	<code>\letfrozen</code>	145	5.3.526	<code>\mathaccent</code>	153
5.3.478	<code>\letmathatomrule</code>	145	5.3.527	<code>\mathatom</code>	153
5.3.479	<code>\letmathparent</code>	145	5.3.528	<code>\mathatomglue</code>	153
5.3.480	<code>\letmathspacing</code>	145	5.3.529	<code>\mathatomskip</code>	154
5.3.481	<code>\letprotected</code>	145	5.3.530	<code>\mathbackwardpenalties</code>	154

5.3.531	<code>\mathbeginclass</code>	154	5.3.580	<code>\mathstack</code>	164
5.3.532	<code>\mathbin</code>	154	5.3.581	<code>\mathstackstyle</code>	164
5.3.533	<code>\mathboundary</code>	154	5.3.582	<code>\mathstyle</code>	165
5.3.534	<code>\mathchar</code>	154	5.3.583	<code>\mathstylefontid</code>	165
5.3.535	<code>\mathcharclass</code>	154	5.3.584	<code>\mathsurround</code>	165
5.3.536	<code>\mathchardef</code>	155	5.3.585	<code>\mathsurroundmode</code>	165
5.3.537	<code>\mathcharfam</code>	155	5.3.586	<code>\mathsurroundskip</code>	165
5.3.538	<code>\mathcharslot</code>	155	5.3.587	<code>\maththresold</code>	165
5.3.539	<code>\mathcheckfencesmode</code>	155	5.3.588	<code>\mathtolerance</code>	165
5.3.540	<code>\mathchoice</code>	155	5.3.589	<code>\maxdeadcycles</code>	165
5.3.541	<code>\mathclass</code>	155	5.3.590	<code>\maxdepth</code>	166
5.3.542	<code>\mathclose</code>	156	5.3.591	<code>\meaning</code>	166
5.3.543	<code>\mathcode</code>	156	5.3.592	<code>\meaningasis</code>	166
5.3.544	<code>\mathdictgroup</code>	156	5.3.593	<code>\meaningful</code>	166
5.3.545	<code>\mathdictionary</code>	156	5.3.594	<code>\meaningfull</code>	166
5.3.546	<code>\mathdictproperties</code>	156	5.3.595	<code>\meaningles</code>	166
5.3.547	<code>\mathdirection</code>	157	5.3.596	<code>\meaningless</code>	166
5.3.548	<code>\mathdiscretionary</code>	157	5.3.597	<code>\medmuskip</code>	167
5.3.549	<code>\mathdisplaymode</code>	157	5.3.598	<code>\message</code>	167
5.3.550	<code>\mathdisplaypenaltyfactor</code>	157	5.3.599	<code>\middle</code>	167
5.3.551	<code>\mathdisplayskipmode</code>	157	5.3.600	<code>\mkern</code>	167
5.3.552	<code>\mathdoublescriptmode</code>	158	5.3.601	<code>\month</code>	167
5.3.553	<code>\mathendclass</code>	158	5.3.602	<code>\moveleft</code>	167
5.3.554	<code>\matheqnogapstep</code>	158	5.3.603	<code>\moveright</code>	167
5.3.555	<code>\mathfontcontrol</code>	158	5.3.604	<code>\mskip</code>	167
5.3.556	<code>\mathforwardpenalties</code>	159	5.3.605	<code>\muexpr</code>	167
5.3.557	<code>\mathgluemode</code>	159	5.3.606	<code>\mugluespecdef</code>	167
5.3.558	<code>\mathgroupingmode</code>	160	5.3.607	<code>\multiply</code>	168
5.3.559	<code>\mathinlinepenaltyfactor</code>	160	5.3.608	<code>\multiplyby</code>	168
5.3.560	<code>\mathinner</code>	160	5.3.609	<code>\muskip</code>	168
5.3.561	<code>\mathleftclass</code>	160	5.3.610	<code>\muskipdef</code>	168
5.3.562	<code>\mathlimitsmode</code>	160	5.3.611	<code>\mutable</code>	168
5.3.563	<code>\mathmainstyle</code>	161	5.3.612	<code>\mutoglu</code>	168
5.3.564	<code>\mathnolimitsmode</code>	161	5.3.613	<code>\nestedloopiterator</code>	168
5.3.565	<code>\mathop</code>	162	5.3.614	<code>\newlinechar</code>	169
5.3.566	<code>\mathopen</code>	162	5.3.615	<code>\noalign</code>	169
5.3.567	<code>\mathord</code>	162	5.3.616	<code>\noaligned</code>	169
5.3.568	<code>\mathparentstyle</code>	162	5.3.617	<code>\noatomruling</code>	169
5.3.569	<code>\mathpenaltiesmode</code>	162	5.3.618	<code>\noboundary</code>	169
5.3.570	<code>\mathpretolerance</code>	163	5.3.619	<code>\noexpand</code>	169
5.3.571	<code>\mathpunct</code>	163	5.3.620	<code>\nohrule</code>	169
5.3.572	<code>\mathrel</code>	163	5.3.621	<code>\noindent</code>	170
5.3.573	<code>\mathrightclass</code>	163	5.3.622	<code>\nolimits</code>	170
5.3.574	<code>\mathrulesfam</code>	163	5.3.623	<code>\nomathchar</code>	170
5.3.575	<code>\mathrulesmode</code>	163	5.3.624	<code>\nonscript</code>	170
5.3.576	<code>\mathscale</code>	163	5.3.625	<code>\nonstopmode</code>	170
5.3.577	<code>\mathscriptsmode</code>	163	5.3.626	<code>\norelax</code>	170
5.3.578	<code>\mathslackmode</code>	164	5.3.627	<code>\normalizelinemode</code>	170
5.3.579	<code>\mathspacingmode</code>	164	5.3.628	<code>\normalizeparmode</code>	171

5.3.629	<code>\noscript</code>	171	5.3.678	<code>\pageshrink</code>	181
5.3.630	<code>\nospaces</code>	171	5.3.679	<code>\pagestretch</code>	182
5.3.631	<code>\nosubprescript</code>	172	5.3.680	<code>\pagetotal</code>	182
5.3.632	<code>\nosubscript</code>	172	5.3.681	<code>\pagevsize</code>	182
5.3.633	<code>\nosuperprescript</code>	172	5.3.682	<code>\par</code>	182
5.3.634	<code>\nosuperscript</code>	172	5.3.683	<code>\parametercount</code>	182
5.3.635	<code>\novrule</code>	172	5.3.684	<code>\parameterdef</code>	182
5.3.636	<code>\nulldelimiterspace</code>	172	5.3.685	<code>\parameterindex</code>	182
5.3.637	<code>\nullfont</code>	172	5.3.686	<code>\parametermark</code>	182
5.3.638	<code>\number</code>	172	5.3.687	<code>\parametermode</code>	183
5.3.639	<code>\numericyscale</code>	173	5.3.688	<code>\parattribute</code>	183
5.3.640	<code>\numericscaled</code>	173	5.3.689	<code>\pardirection</code>	183
5.3.641	<code>\numexpr</code>	173	5.3.690	<code>\parfillleftskip</code>	183
5.3.642	<code>\numexpression</code>	173	5.3.691	<code>\parfillrightskip</code>	183
5.3.643	<code>\omit</code>	175	5.3.692	<code>\parfillskip</code>	183
5.3.644	<code>\optionalboundary</code>	175	5.3.693	<code>\parindent</code>	183
5.3.645	<code>\or</code>	175	5.3.694	<code>\parinitleftskip</code>	183
5.3.646	<code>\orelse</code>	175	5.3.695	<code>\parinitrightskip</code>	183
5.3.647	<code>\orphanpenalties</code>	177	5.3.696	<code>\parpasses</code>	183
5.3.648	<code>\orunless</code>	177	5.3.697	<code>\parpassesexception</code>	184
5.3.649	<code>\outer</code>	177	5.3.698	<code>\parshape</code>	184
5.3.650	<code>\output</code>	177	5.3.699	<code>\parshapedimen</code>	184
5.3.651	<code>\outputbox</code>	177	5.3.700	<code>\parshapeindent</code>	184
5.3.652	<code>\outputpenalty</code>	177	5.3.701	<code>\parshapelength</code>	184
5.3.653	<code>\over</code>	177	5.3.702	<code>\parshapewidth</code>	184
5.3.654	<code>\overfullrule</code>	178	5.3.703	<code>\parskip</code>	184
5.3.655	<code>\overline</code>	178	5.3.704	<code>\patterns</code>	184
5.3.656	<code>\overloaded</code>	178	5.3.705	<code>\pausing</code>	184
5.3.657	<code>\overloadmode</code>	179	5.3.706	<code>\penalty</code>	184
5.3.658	<code>\overshoot</code>	179	5.3.707	<code>\permanent</code>	185
5.3.659	<code>\overwithdelims</code>	180	5.3.708	<code>\pettymuskip</code>	185
5.3.660	<code>\pageboundary</code>	180	5.3.709	<code>\positdef</code>	185
5.3.661	<code>\pagedepth</code>	180	5.3.710	<code>\postdisplaypenalty</code>	185
5.3.662	<code>\pagediscards</code>	180	5.3.711	<code>\postexhyphenchar</code>	185
5.3.663	<code>\pageexcess</code>	180	5.3.712	<code>\posthyphenchar</code>	185
5.3.664	<code>\pageextragoal</code>	180	5.3.713	<code>\postinlinepenalty</code>	186
5.3.665	<code>\pagefillllstretch</code>	180	5.3.714	<code>\postshortinlinepenalty</code>	186
5.3.666	<code>\pagefillstretch</code>	180	5.3.715	<code>\prebinoppenalty</code>	186
5.3.667	<code>\pagefilstretch</code>	180	5.3.716	<code>\predisplaydirection</code>	186
5.3.668	<code>\pagefistretch</code>	180	5.3.717	<code>\predisplaygapfactor</code>	186
5.3.669	<code>\pagegoal</code>	181	5.3.718	<code>\predisplaypenalty</code>	186
5.3.670	<code>\pagelastdepth</code>	181	5.3.719	<code>\predisplaysize</code>	186
5.3.671	<code>\pagelastfillllstretch</code>	181	5.3.720	<code>\preexhyphenchar</code>	186
5.3.672	<code>\pagelastfillstretch</code>	181	5.3.721	<code>\prehyphenchar</code>	186
5.3.673	<code>\pagelastfilstretch</code>	181	5.3.722	<code>\preinlinepenalty</code>	186
5.3.674	<code>\pagelastfistretch</code>	181	5.3.723	<code>\prerelpenalty</code>	187
5.3.675	<code>\pagelastheight</code>	181	5.3.724	<code>\preshortinlinepenalty</code>	187
5.3.676	<code>\pagelastshrink</code>	181	5.3.725	<code>\pretolerance</code>	187
5.3.677	<code>\pagelaststretch</code>	181	5.3.726	<code>\prevdepth</code>	187

5.3.727	<code>\prevgraf</code>	187	5.3.775	<code>\scaledmathemwidth</code>	196
5.3.728	<code>\previousloopiterator</code>	187	5.3.776	<code>\scaledmathexheight</code>	196
5.3.729	<code>\primescript</code>	187	5.3.777	<code>\scaledmathstyle</code>	196
5.3.730	<code>\protected</code>	188	5.3.778	<code>\scaledslantperpoint</code>	197
5.3.731	<code>\protecteddetokenize</code>	188	5.3.779	<code>\scantextokens</code>	197
5.3.732	<code>\protectedexpandeddetokenize</code>	188	5.3.780	<code>\scantokens</code>	197
5.3.733	<code>\protrudechars</code>	188	5.3.781	<code>\scriptfont</code>	197
5.3.734	<code>\protrusionboundary</code>	188	5.3.782	<code>\scriptscriptfont</code>	197
5.3.735	<code>\pxdimen</code>	188	5.3.783	<code>\scriptscriptstyle</code>	197
5.3.736	<code>\quitloop</code>	188	5.3.784	<code>\scriptspace</code>	198
5.3.737	<code>\quitloopnow</code>	188	5.3.785	<code>\scriptspaceafterfactor</code>	198
5.3.738	<code>\quitvmode</code>	189	5.3.786	<code>\scriptspacebeforefactor</code> ...	198
5.3.739	<code>\radical</code>	189	5.3.787	<code>\scriptspacebetweenfactor</code> .	198
5.3.740	<code>\raise</code>	189	5.3.788	<code>\scriptstyle</code>	198
5.3.741	<code>\rdivide</code>	189	5.3.789	<code>\scrollmode</code>	198
5.3.742	<code>\rdivideby</code>	190	5.3.790	<code>\semiexpand</code>	198
5.3.743	<code>\realign</code>	190	5.3.791	<code>\semiexpanded</code>	198
5.3.744	<code>\relax</code>	190	5.3.792	<code>\semiprotected</code>	198
5.3.745	<code>\relpenalty</code>	190	5.3.793	<code>\setbox</code>	199
5.3.746	<code>\resetlocalboxes</code>	190	5.3.794	<code>\setdefaultmathcodes</code>	199
5.3.747	<code>\resetmathspacing</code>	190	5.3.795	<code>\setfontid</code>	199
5.3.748	<code>\restorecatcodetable</code>	191	5.3.796	<code>\setlanguage</code>	199
5.3.749	<code>\retained</code>	193	5.3.797	<code>\setmathatomrule</code>	199
5.3.750	<code>\retokenized</code>	194	5.3.798	<code>\setmathdisplaypostpenalty</code>	200
5.3.751	<code>\right</code>	194	5.3.799	<code>\setmathdisplayprepenalty</code> .	200
5.3.752	<code>\righthyphenmin</code>	194	5.3.800	<code>\setmathignore</code>	200
5.3.753	<code>\rightmarginkern</code>	194	5.3.801	<code>\setmathoptions</code>	200
5.3.754	<code>\rightskip</code>	194	5.3.802	<code>\setmathpostpenalty</code>	201
5.3.755	<code>\righttwindemerits</code>	194	5.3.803	<code>\setmathprepenalty</code>	201
5.3.756	<code>\romannumeral</code>	194	5.3.804	<code>\setmathspacing</code>	201
5.3.757	<code>\rpcode</code>	195	5.3.805	<code>\sfcode</code>	202
5.3.758	<code>\savecatcodetable</code>	195	5.3.806	<code>\shapingpenaltiesmode</code>	202
5.3.759	<code>\savinghyphcodes</code>	195	5.3.807	<code>\shapingpenalty</code>	202
5.3.760	<code>\savingdiscards</code>	195	5.3.808	<code>\shipout</code>	202
5.3.761	<code>\scaledemwidth</code>	195	5.3.809	<code>\shortinlinemaththreshold</code> .	202
5.3.762	<code>\scaledexheight</code>	195	5.3.810	<code>\shortinlineorphanpenalty</code> .	202
5.3.763	<code>\scaledextraspaces</code>	195	5.3.811	<code>\show</code>	202
5.3.764	<code>\scaledfontcharba</code>	195	5.3.812	<code>\showbox</code>	202
5.3.765	<code>\scaledfontchardp</code>	195	5.3.813	<code>\showboxbreadth</code>	203
5.3.766	<code>\scaledfontcharht</code>	195	5.3.814	<code>\showboxdepth</code>	203
5.3.767	<code>\scaledfontcharic</code>	196	5.3.815	<code>\showcodestack</code>	203
5.3.768	<code>\scaledfontcharta</code>	196	5.3.816	<code>\showgroups</code>	203
5.3.769	<code>\scaledfontcharwd</code>	196	5.3.817	<code>\showifs</code>	203
5.3.770	<code>\scaledfontdimen</code>	196	5.3.818	<code>\showlists</code>	203
5.3.771	<code>\scaledinterwordshrink</code>	196	5.3.819	<code>\shownodedetails</code>	203
5.3.772	<code>\scaledinterwordspace</code>	196	5.3.820	<code>\showstack</code>	203
5.3.773	<code>\scaledinterwordstretch</code>	196	5.3.821	<code>\showthe</code>	204
5.3.774	<code>\scaledmathaxis</code>	196	5.3.822	<code>\showtokens</code>	204
			5.3.823	<code>\singlelinepenalty</code>	205

5.3.824	<code>\skewchar</code>	205	5.3.873	<code>\tolerance</code>	213
5.3.825	<code>\skip</code>	205	5.3.874	<code>\tolerant</code>	213
5.3.826	<code>\skipdef</code>	205	5.3.875	<code>\tomathstyle</code>	214
5.3.827	<code>\snapshotpar</code>	205	5.3.876	<code>\topmark</code>	214
5.3.828	<code>\spacechar</code>	206	5.3.877	<code>\topmarks</code>	214
5.3.829	<code>\spacefactor</code>	206	5.3.878	<code>\topskip</code>	214
5.3.830	<code>\spacefactor mode</code>	206	5.3.879	<code>\toscaled</code>	214
5.3.831	<code>\spacefactor overload</code>	206	5.3.880	<code>\tosparsedimension</code>	215
5.3.832	<code>\spacefactor shrink limit</code>	207	5.3.881	<code>\tosparse scaled</code>	215
5.3.833	<code>\spacefactor stretch limit</code> ...	207	5.3.882	<code>\tpack</code>	215
5.3.834	<code>\spaceskip</code>	207	5.3.883	<code>\tracingadjusts</code>	215
5.3.835	<code>\span</code>	207	5.3.884	<code>\tracingalignments</code>	215
5.3.836	<code>\specificationdef</code>	207	5.3.885	<code>\tracingassigns</code>	215
5.3.837	<code>\splitbotmark</code>	207	5.3.886	<code>\tracingcommands</code>	215
5.3.838	<code>\splitbotmarks</code>	207	5.3.887	<code>\tracingexpressions</code>	215
5.3.839	<code>\splitdiscards</code>	208	5.3.888	<code>\tracingfitness</code>	215
5.3.840	<code>\splitfirstmark</code>	208	5.3.889	<code>\tracingfullboxes</code>	215
5.3.841	<code>\splitfirstmarks</code>	208	5.3.890	<code>\tracinggroups</code>	216
5.3.842	<code>\splitmaxdepth</code>	208	5.3.891	<code>\tracinghyphenation</code>	216
5.3.843	<code>\splittopskip</code>	208	5.3.892	<code>\tracingifs</code>	216
5.3.844	<code>\srule</code>	208	5.3.893	<code>\tracinginserts</code>	216
5.3.845	<code>\string</code>	208	5.3.894	<code>\tracinglevels</code>	216
5.3.846	<code>\subprescript</code>	208	5.3.895	<code>\tracinglists</code>	216
5.3.847	<code>\subscript</code>	208	5.3.896	<code>\tracingloners</code>	216
5.3.848	<code>\superprescript</code>	208	5.3.897	<code>\tracinglooseness</code>	216
5.3.849	<code>\superscript</code>	209	5.3.898	<code>\tracinglostchars</code>	216
5.3.850	<code>\supmarkmode</code>	209	5.3.899	<code>\tracingmacros</code>	216
5.3.851	<code>\swapsvalues</code>	209	5.3.900	<code>\tracingmarks</code>	216
5.3.852	<code>\tabsize</code>	210	5.3.901	<code>\tracingmath</code>	217
5.3.853	<code>\tabskip</code>	210	5.3.902	<code>\tracingnesting</code>	217
5.3.854	<code>\textdirection</code>	210	5.3.903	<code>\tracingnodes</code>	217
5.3.855	<code>\textfont</code>	211	5.3.904	<code>\tracingonline</code>	217
5.3.856	<code>\textstyle</code>	211	5.3.905	<code>\tracingoutput</code>	217
5.3.857	<code>\the</code>	211	5.3.906	<code>\tracingpages</code>	217
5.3.858	<code>\thewithoutunit</code>	211	5.3.907	<code>\tracingparagraphs</code>	217
5.3.859	<code>\thickmuskip</code>	211	5.3.908	<code>\tracingpasses</code>	217
5.3.860	<code>\thinmuskip</code>	211	5.3.909	<code>\tracingpenalties</code>	217
5.3.861	<code>\time</code>	211	5.3.910	<code>\tracingrestores</code>	218
5.3.862	<code>\tinymuskip</code>	211	5.3.911	<code>\tracingstats</code>	218
5.3.863	<code>\tocharacter</code>	211	5.3.912	<code>\tsplit</code>	218
5.3.864	<code>\todderpenalties</code>	212	5.3.913	<code>\uccode</code>	218
5.3.865	<code>\todimension</code>	212	5.3.914	<code>\uchyph</code>	218
5.3.866	<code>\tohexadecimal</code>	212	5.3.915	<code>\uleaders</code>	218
5.3.867	<code>\tointeger</code>	212	5.3.916	<code>\unboundary</code>	220
5.3.868	<code>\tokenized</code>	212	5.3.917	<code>\undent</code>	220
5.3.869	<code>\toks</code>	213	5.3.918	<code>\underline</code>	220
5.3.870	<code>\toksapp</code>	213	5.3.919	<code>\unexpanded</code>	220
5.3.871	<code>\toksdef</code>	213	5.3.920	<code>\unexpandedendless</code>	221
5.3.872	<code>\tokspre</code>	213	5.3.921	<code>\unexpandedloop</code>	221

5.3.922	<code>\unexpandedrepeat</code>	222	5.3.947	<code>\virtualhrule</code>	225
5.3.923	<code>\unhbox</code>	222	5.3.948	<code>\virtualvrule</code>	225
5.3.924	<code>\unhcopy</code>	222	5.3.949	<code>\vkern</code>	225
5.3.925	<code>\unhpack</code>	222	5.3.950	<code>\vpack</code>	225
5.3.926	<code>\unkern</code>	222	5.3.951	<code>\vpenalty</code>	225
5.3.927	<code>\unless</code>	222	5.3.952	<code>\vrule</code>	225
5.3.928	<code>\unletfrozen</code>	222	5.3.953	<code>\vsize</code>	225
5.3.929	<code>\unletprotected</code>	222	5.3.954	<code>\vskip</code>	225
5.3.930	<code>\unpenalty</code>	223	5.3.955	<code>\vsplit</code>	226
5.3.931	<code>\unskip</code>	223	5.3.956	<code>\vss</code>	226
5.3.932	<code>\untraced</code>	223	5.3.957	<code>\vtop</code>	226
5.3.933	<code>\unvbox</code>	223	5.3.958	<code>\wd</code>	226
5.3.934	<code>\unvcopy</code>	224	5.3.959	<code>\widowpenalties</code>	226
5.3.935	<code>\unvpack</code>	224	5.3.960	<code>\widowpenalty</code>	226
5.3.936	<code>\uppercase</code>	224	5.3.961	<code>\wordboundary</code>	226
5.3.937	<code>\vadjust</code>	224	5.3.962	<code>\wrapuppar</code>	226
5.3.938	<code>\valign</code>	224	5.3.963	<code>\xdef</code>	226
5.3.939	<code>\variablefam</code>	224	5.3.964	<code>\xdefcsname</code>	227
5.3.940	<code>\vbadness</code>	224	5.3.965	<code>\xleaders</code>	227
5.3.941	<code>\vbox</code>	224	5.3.966	<code>\xspaceskip</code>	227
5.3.942	<code>\vcenter</code>	224	5.3.967	<code>\xtoks</code>	227
5.3.943	<code>\vfil</code>	224	5.3.968	<code>\xtoksapp</code>	227
5.3.944	<code>\vfill</code>	225	5.3.969	<code>\xtokspre</code>	227
5.3.945	<code>\vfilneg</code>	225	5.3.970	<code>\year</code>	227
5.3.946	<code>\vfuzz</code>	225			

In this document the section titles that discuss the original \TeX and $\varepsilon\text{-}\text{\TeX}$ primitives have a different color those explaining the \LuaTeX and \LuaMetaTeX primitives.

Primitives that extend typesetting related functionality, provide control over subsystems (like math), allocate additional data types and resources, deal with fonts and languages, manipulate boxes and glyphs, etc. are hardly discussed here, only mentioned. Math for instance is a topic of its own. In this document we concentrate on the programming aspects.

Most of the new primitives are discussed in specific manuals and often also original primitives are covered there but the best explanations of the traditional primitives can be found in *The \TeX book* by Donald Knuth and *\TeX by Topic* from Victor Eijkhout. I see no need to try to improve on those.

5.2 Rationale

Some words about the why and how it came. One of the early adopters of \ConTeXt was Taco Hoekwater and we spent numerous trips to \TeX meetings all over the globe. He was also the only one I knew who had read the \TeX sources. Because \ConTeXt has always been on the edge of what is possible and at that time we both used it for rather advanced rendering, we also ran into the limitations. I'm not talking of \TeX features here. Naturally old school \TeX is not really geared for dealing with images of all kind, colors in all kind of color spaces, highly interactive documents, input methods like xml, etc. The nice thing is that it offers some escapes, like specials and writes and later execution of programs that opened up lots of possibilities, so in practice there were no real limitations to what one could do. But coming up with a consistent and extensible (multi lingual) user interface was non trivial, because it had an impact in memory usage and performance. A lot could be done given some programming,

as ConT_EXt MkII proves, but it was not always pretty under the hood. The move to LuaT_EX and MkIV transferred some action to Lua, and because LuaT_EX effectively was a ConT_EXt related project, we could easily keep them in sync.

Our traveling together, meeting several times per year, and eventually email and intense LuaT_EX developments (lots of Skype sessions) for a couple of years, gave us enough opportunity to discuss all kind of nice features not present in the engine. The previous century we discussed lots of them, rejected some, stayed with others, and I admit that forgot about most of the arguments already. Some that we did was already explored in e_et_ex, some of those ended up in LuaT_EX, and eventually what we have in LuaMetaT_EX can be seen as the result of years of programming in T_EX, improving macros, getting more performance and efficiency out of existing ConT_EXt code and inspiration that we got out of the ConT_EXt community, a demanding lot, always willing to experiment with us.

Once I decided to work on LuaMetaT_EX and bind its source to the ConT_EXt distribution so that we can be sure that it won't get messed up and might interfere with the ConT_EXt expectations, some more primitives saw their way into it. It is very easy to come up with all kind of bells and whistles but it is equally easy to hurt performance of an engine and what might go unnoticed in simple tests can really affect a macro package that depends on stability. So, what I did was mostly looking at the ConT_EXt code and wondering how to make some of the low level macros look more natural, also because I know that there are users who look into these sources. We spend a lot of time making them look consistent and nice and the nicer the better. Getting a better performance was seldom an argument because much is already as fast as can be so there is not that much to gain, but less clutter in tracing was an argument for some new primitives. Also, the fact that we soon might need to fall back on our phones to use T_EX a smaller memory footprint and less byte shuffling also was a consideration. The LuaMetaT_EX memory footprint is somewhat smaller than the LuaT_EX footprint. By binding LuaMetaT_EX to ConT_EXt we can also guarantee that the combinations works as expected.

I'm aware of the fact that ConT_EXt is in a somewhat unique position. First of all it has always been kind of cutting edge so its users are willing to experiment. There are users who immediately update and run tests, so bugs can and will be fixed fast. Already for a long time the community has a convenient infrastructure for updating and the build farm for generating binaries (also for other engines) is running smoothly.

Then there is the ConT_EXt user interface that is quite consistent and permits extensions with staying backward compatible. Sometimes users run into old manuals or examples and then complain that ConT_EXt is not compatible but that then involves obsolete technology: we no longer need font and input encodings and font definitions are different for OpenType fonts. We always had an abstract backend model, but nowadays pdf is kind of dominant and drives a lot of expectations. So, some of the MkII commands are gone and MkIV has some more. Also, as MetaPost evolved that department in ConT_EXt also evolved. Think of it like cars: soon all are electric so one cannot expect a hole to poor in some fluid but gets a (often incompatible) plug instead. And buttons became touch panels. There is no need to use much force to steer or brake. Navigation is different, as are many controls. And do we need to steer ourselves a decade from now?

So, just look at T_EX and ConT_EXt in the same way. A system from the nineties in the previous century differs from one three decades later. Demands differ, input differs, resources change, editing and processing moves on, and so on. Manuals, although still being written are seldom read from cover to cover because online searching replaced them. And who buys books about programming? So LuaMetaT_EX, while still being T_EX also moves on, as do the way we do our low level coding. This makes sense because the original T_EX ecosystem was not made with a huge and complex macro package in mind, that just happened. An author was supposed to make a style for each document. An often

used argument for using another macro package over ConT_EXt was that the later evolved and other macro packages would work the same forever and not change from the perspective of the user. In retrospect those arguments were somewhat strange because the world, computers, users etc. do change. Standards come and go, as do software politics and preferences. In many aspects the T_EX community is not different from other large software projects, operating system wars, library devotees, programming language addicts, paradigm shifts. But, don't worry, if you don't like LuaMetaT_EX and its new primitives, just forget about them. The other engines will be there forever and are a safe bet, although LuaT_EX already stirred up the pot I guess. But keep in mind that new features in the latest greatest ConT_EXt version will more and more rely on LuaMetaT_EX being used; after all that is where it's made for. And this manual might help understand its users why, where and how the low level code differs between MkII, MkIV and LMTX.

Can we expect more new primitives than the ones introduced here? Given the amount of time I spent on experimenting and considering what made sense and what not, the answer probably is “no”, or at least “not that much”. As in the past no user ever requested the kind of primitives that were added, I don't expect users to come up with requests in the future either. Of course, those more closely related to ConT_EXt development look at it from the other end. Because it's there where the low level action really is, demands might still evolve.

Basically there are two areas where the engine can evolve: the programming part and the rendering. In this manual we focus on the programming and writing the manual sort of influences how details get filled in. Rendering is more complex because there heuristics and usage plays a more dominant role. Good examples are the math, par and page builder. They were extended and features were added over time but improved rendering came later. Not all extensions are critical, some are there (and got added) in order to write more readable code but there is only so much one can do in that area. Occasionally a feature pops up that is a side effect of a challenge. No matter what gets added it might not affect complexity too much and definitely not impact performance significantly!

5.3 Primitives

1 `\<space>`

This original T_EX primitive is equivalent to the more verbose `\explicit space`.

2 `\-`

This original T_EX primitive is equivalent to the more verbose `\explicit discretionary`.

3 `\/`

This original T_EX primitive is equivalent to the more verbose `\explicit italic correction`.

4 `\Umathxscale`

The `\Umathxscale` and `\Umathyscale` factors are applied to the horizontal and vertical parameters. They are set by style. There is no combined scaling primitive.

```
$\Umathxscale\textstyle 800 a + b + x + d + e = f $\par
$\Umathxscale\textstyle 1000 a + b + x + d + e = f $\par
```

`\Umathxscale\textstyle` 1200 $a + b + x + d + e = f$ `\blank`

`\Umathyscale\textstyle` 800 $\sqrt[2]{x+1}$ `\quad`

`\Umathyscale\textstyle` 1000 $\sqrt[2]{x+1}$ `\quad`

`\Umathyscale\textstyle` 1200 $\sqrt[2]{x+1}$ `\blank`

Normally only small deviations from 1000 make sense but here we want to show the effect and use a 20% scaling:

$$a + b + x + d + e = f$$

$$a + b + x + d + e = f$$

$$a + b + x + d + e = f$$

$$\sqrt[2]{x+1} \quad \sqrt[2]{x+1} \quad \sqrt[2]{x+1}$$

5 `\Umathyscale`

See `\Umathxscale`

6 `\above`

This is a variant of `\over` that doesn't put a rule in between.

7 `\abovedisplayskip`

The glue injected before a display formula when the line above it is not overlapping with the formula. Watch out for interference with `\baselineskip`. It can be controlled by `\displayskipmode`.

8 `\abovedisplayskip`

The glue injected before a display formula. Watch out for interference with `\baselineskip`. It can be controlled by `\displayskipmode`.

9 `\abovewithdelims`

This is a variant of `\atop` but with delimiters. It has a more advanced upgrade in `\Uabovewithdelims`.

10 `\accent`

This primitive is kind of obsolete in wide engines and takes two arguments: the indexes of an accent and a base character.

11 `\additionalpageskip`

This quantity will be added to the current page goal, stretch and shrink after which it will be set to zero.

12 `\adjdemerits`

When \TeX considers two lines to be incompatible it will add this penalty to its verdict when considering this breakpoint.

13 `\adjustspacing`

This parameter controls expansion (hz). A value 2 expands glyphs and font kerns and a value of 3 only glyphs. Expansion of kerns can have side effects when they are used for positioning by OpenType features.

14 `\adjustspacingshrink`

When set to a non zero value this overloads the shrink maximum in a font when expansion is applied. This is then the case for all fonts.

15 `\adjustspacingstep`

When set to a non zero value this overloads the expansion step in a font when expansion is applied. This is then the case for all fonts.

16 `\adjustspacingstretch`

When set to a non zero value this overloads the stretch maximum in a font when expansion is applied. This is then the case for all fonts.

17 `\advance`

Advances the given register by an also given value:

```
\advance\scratchdimen      10pt
\advance\scratchdimen      by 3pt
\advance\scratchcounterone \zerocount
\advance\scratchcounterone \scratchcountertwo
```

The by keyword is optional.

18 `\advanceby`

This is slightly more efficient variant of `\advance` that doesn't look for by and therefore, if one is missing, doesn't need to push back the last seen token. Using `\advance` with by is nearly as efficient but takes more tokens.

19 `\afterassigned`

The `\afterassignment` primitive stores a token to be injected (and thereby expanded) after an assignment has happened. Unlike `\aftergroup`, multiple calls are not accumulated, and changing that would be too incompatible. This is why we have `\afterassigned`, which can be used to inject a bunch of tokens. But in order to be consistent this one is also not accumulative.

```
\afterassigned{done}%
\afterassigned{{\bf done}}%
\scratchcounter=123
```

results in: **done** being typeset.

20 \afterassignment

The token following \afterassignment, a traditional T_EX primitive, is saved and gets injected (and then expanded) after a following assignment took place.

```
\afterassignment !\def\MyMacro {}\quad
\afterassignment !\let\MyMacro ?\quad
\afterassignment !\scratchcounter 123\quad
\afterassignment !%
\afterassignment ?\advance\scratchcounter by 1
```

The \afterassignments are not accumulated, the last one wins:

! ! ! ?

21 \aftergroup

The traditional T_EX \aftergroup primitive stores the next token and expands that after the group has been closed.

Multiple \aftergroups are combined:

```
before{ ! \aftergroup a\aftergroup f\aftergroup t\aftergroup e\aftergroup r}
```

before ! after

22 \aftergrouped

The in itself powerful \aftergroup primitives works quite well, even if you need to do more than one thing: you can either use it multiple times, or you can define a macro that does multiple things and apply that after the group. However, you can avoid that by using this primitive which takes a list of tokens.

```
regular
\bgroup
\aftergrouped{regular}%
\bf bold
\egroup
```

Because it happens after the group, we're no longer typesetting in bold.

regular **bold** regular

You can mix \aftergroup and \aftergrouped. Which one is more efficient depends on how many tokens are delayed. Picking up one token is faster than scanning a list.


```

{
  \aftergroup A \aftergroup B \aftergroup C
test 1 : }

{
  \aftergrouped{What comes next 1}
  \aftergrouped{What comes next 2}
  \aftergrouped{What comes next 3}
test 2 : }

{
  \aftergroup A \aftergrouped{What comes next 1}
  \aftergroup B \aftergrouped{What comes next 2}
  \aftergroup C \aftergrouped{What comes next 3}
test 3 : }

{
  \aftergrouped{What comes next 1} \aftergroup A
  \aftergrouped{What comes next 2} \aftergroup B
  \aftergrouped{What comes next 3} \aftergroup C
test 4 : }

```

This gives:

```

test 1 : ABC
test 2 : What comes next 1What comes next 2What comes next 3
test 3 : AWhat comes next 1BWhat comes next 2CWhat comes next 3
test 4 : What comes next 1AWhat comes next 2BWhat comes next 3C

```

23 \aliased

This primitive is part of the overload protection subsystem where control sequences can be tagged.

```

\permanent\def\foo{F00}
      \let\of\foo
\aliased \let\oof\foo

\meaningasis\foo
\meaningasis\of
\meaningasis\oof

```

gives:

```

\permanent \def \foo {F00}
\def \of {F00}
\permanent \def \oof {F00}

```

When a something is \let the ‘permanent’, ‘primitive’ and ‘immutable’ flags are removed but the \aliased prefix retains them.

```

\let\relaxed\relax

\meaningasis\relax

```

`\meaningasis\relaxed`

So in this example the `\relaxed` alias is not flagged as primitive:

```
\primitive \relax
\relax
```

24 `\aligncontent`

This is equivalent to a hash in an alignment preamble. Contrary to `\alignmark` there is no need to duplicate inside a macro definition.

25 `\alignmark`

When you have the `#` not set up as macro parameter character `cq. align mark`, you can use this primitive instead. The same rules apply with respect to multiple such tokens in (nested) macros and alignments.

26 `\alignmentcellsource`

This sets the source id (a box property) of the current alignment cell.

27 `\alignmentwrapsource`

This sets the source id (a box property) of the current alignment row (in a `\halign`) or column (in a `\valign`).

28 `\aligntab`

When you have the `&` not set up as align tab, you can use this primitive instead. The same rules apply with respect to multiple such tokens in (nested) macros and alignments.

29 `\allcrampedstyles`

A symbolic representation of `\crampeddisplaystyle`, `\crampedtextstyle`, `\crampedscriptstyle` and `\crampedscriptscriptstyle`; integer representation: 17.

30 `\alldisplaystyles`

A symbolic representation of `\displaystyle` and `\crampeddisplaystyle`; integer representation: 8.

31 `\allmainstyles`

A symbolic representation of `\displaystyle`, `\crampeddisplaystyle`, `\textstyle` and `\crampedtextstyle`; integer representation: 13.

32 `\allmathstyles`

A symbolic representation of `\displaystyle`, `\crampeddisplaystyle`, `\textstyle`, `\crampedtextstyle`, `\scriptstyle`, `\crampedscriptstyle`, `\scriptscriptstyle` and `\crampedscriptscriptstyle`; integer representation: 12.

33 `\allscriptscriptstyles`

A symbolic representation of `\scriptscriptstyle` and `\crampedscriptscriptstyle`; integer representation: 11.

34 `\allscriptstyles`

A symbolic representation of `\scriptstyle` and `\crampedscriptstyle`; integer representation: 10.

35 `\allsplitstyles`

A symbolic representation of `\displaystyle` and `\textstyle` but not `\scriptstyle` and `\scriptscriptstyle`; set versus reset; integer representation: 14.

36 `\alltextstyles`

A symbolic representation of `\textstyle` and `\crampedtextstyle`; integer representation: 9.

37 `\alluncrampedstyles`

A symbolic representation of `\displaystyle`, `\textstyle`, `\scriptstyle` and `\scriptscriptstyle`; integer representation: 16.

38 `\allunsplitstyles`

A symbolic representation of `\scriptstyle` and `\scriptscriptstyle`; integer representation: 15.

39 `\amcode`

40 `\associateunit`

The \TeX engine comes with some build in units, like pt (fixed) and em (adaptive). On top of that a macro package can add additional units, which is what we do in Con \TeX t. In figure 5.1 we show the current repertoire.

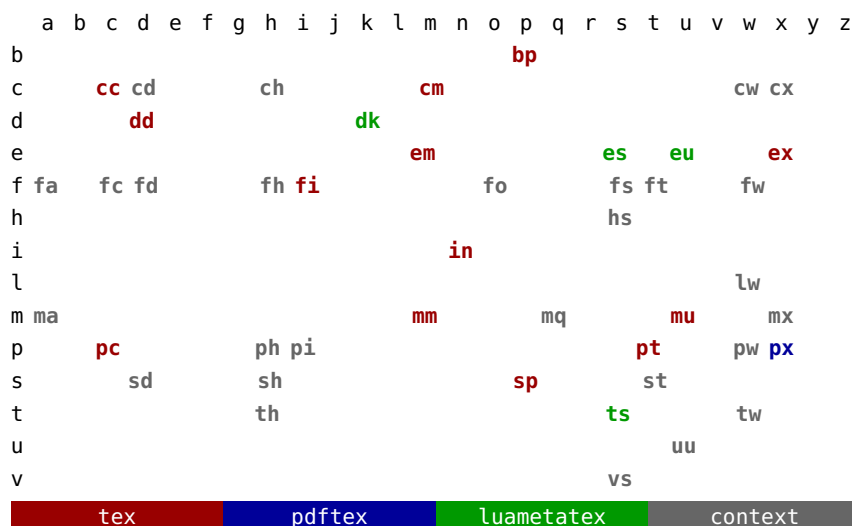


Figure 5.1 Available units

When this primitive is used in a context where a number is expected it returns the origin of the unit (in the color legend running from 1 upto 4). A new unit is defined as:

```
\newdimen\MyDimenZA \MyDimenZA=10pt
\protected\def\MyDimenAB{\dimexpr\hsize/2\relax}
\associateunit za \MyDimenZA
\associateunit zb \MyMacroZB
```

Possible associations are: macros that expand to a dimension, internal dimension registers, register dimensions (`\dimendef`, direct dimensions (`\dimensiondef`) and Lua functions that return a dimension.

One can run into scanning ahead issues where $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ expects a unit and a user unit gets expanded. This is why for instance in $\mathrm{ConT}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{Xt}$ we define the `ma` unit as:

```
\protected\def\mathaxisunit{\scaledmathaxis\mathstyle\norelax}
\associateunit ma \mathaxisunit % or \newuserunit \mathaxisunit ma
```

So that it can be used in rule specifications that themselves look ahead for keywords and therefore are normally terminated by a `\relax`. Adding the extra `\norelax` will make the scanner see one that doesn't get fed back into the input. Of course a macro package has to manage extra units in order to avoid conflicts.

41 `\atendoffile`

The `\everyeof` primitive is kind of useless because you don't know if a file (which can be a tokenlist processed as pseudo file) itself includes a file, which then results in nested application of this token register. One way around this is:

```
\atendoffile\SomeCommand
```

This acts on files the same way as `\atendofgroup` does. Multiple calls will be accumulated and are bound to the current file.

42 `\atendoffiled`

This is the multi token variant of `\atendoffile`. Multiple invocations are accumulated and by default prepended to the existing list. As with grouping this permits proper nesting. You can force an append by the optional keyword `reverse`.

43 `\atendofgroup`

The token provided will be injected just before the group ends. Because these tokens are collected, you need to be aware of possible interference between them. However, normally this is managed by the macro package.

```
\bgroup
\atendofgroup\unskip
\atendofgroup )%
```

(but it works okay

`\egroup`

Of course these effects can also be achieved by combining (extra) grouping with `\aftergroup` calls, so this is more a convenience primitives than a real necessity: (but it works okay), as proven here.

44 `\atendofgrouped`

This is the multi token variant of `\atendofgroup`. Of course the next example is somewhat naive when it comes to spacing and so, but it shows the purpose.

`\bgroup`

`\atendofgrouped{\bf QED}%`

`\atendofgrouped{ (indeed) }%`

This sometimes looks nicer.

`\egroup`

Multiple invocations are accumulated: This sometimes looks nicer. **QED (indeed)**.

45 `\atop`

This one stack two math elements on top of each other, like a fraction but with no rule. It has a more advanced upgrade in `\Uatop`.

46 `\atopwithdelims`

This is a variant of `\atop` but with delimiters. It has a more advanced upgrade in `\Uatopwithdelims`.

47 `\attribute`

The following sets an attribute(register) value:

`\attribute 999 = 123`

An attribute is unset by assigning -2147483647 to it. A user needs to be aware of attributes being used now and in the future of a macro package and setting them this way is very likely going to interfere.

48 `\attributedef`

This primitive can be used to relate a control sequence to an attribute register and can be used to implement a mechanism for defining unique ones that won't interfere. As with other registers: leave management to the macro package in order to avoid unwanted side effects!

49 `\automaticdiscretionary`

This is an alias for the automatic hyphen trigger `-`.

50 `\automatichyphenpenalty`

The penalty injected after an automatic discretionary `-`, when `\hyphenationmode` enables this.

51 `\automigrationmode`

This bitset determines what will bubble up to an outer level:

```
0x01 mark
0x02 insert
0x04 adjust
0x08 pre
0x10 post
```

The current value is 0xFFFF.

52 `\autoparagraphmode`

A paragraph can be triggered by an empty line, a `\par` token or an equivalent of it. This parameter controls how `\par` is interpreted in different scenarios:

```
0x01 text
0x02 macro
0x04 continue
```

The current value is 0x1 and setting it to a non-zero value can have consequences for mechanisms that expect otherwise. The text option uses the same code as an empty line. The macro option checks a token in a macro preamble against the frozen `\`

token. The last option ignores the `par` token.

53 `\badness`

This one returns the last encountered badness value.

54 `\baselineskip`

This is the maximum glue put between lines. The depth of the previous and height of the next line are subtracted.

55 `\batchmode`

This command disables (error) messages which can save some runtime in situations where \TeX 's character-by-character log output impacts runtime. It only makes sense in automated workflows where one doesn't look at the log anyway.

56 `\begincsname`

The next code creates a control sequence token from the given serialized tokens:

```
\csname mymacro\endcsname
```

When `\mymacro` is not defined a control sequence will be created with the meaning `\relax`. A side effect is that a test for its existence might fail because it now exists. The next sequence will *not* create an control sequence:

```
\begincsname mymacro\endcsname
```

This actually is kind of equivalent to:

```
\ifcsname mymacro\endcsname
  \csname mymacro\endcsname
\fi
```

57 **\begingroup**

This primitive starts a group and has to be ended with **\endgroup**. See **\beginsimplegroup** for more info.

58 **\beginlocalcontrol**

Once T_EX is initialized it will enter the main loop. In there certain commands trigger a function that itself can trigger further scanning and functions. In LuaMetaT_EX we can have local main loops and we can either enter it from the Lua end (which we don't discuss here) or at the T_EX end using this primitive.

```
\scratchcounter100

\edef\whatever{
  a
  \beginlocalcontrol
    \advance\scratchcounter 10
    b
  \endlocalcontrol
  \beginlocalcontrol
    c
  \endlocalcontrol
  d
  \advance\scratchcounter 10
}

\the\scratchcounter
\whatever
\the\scratchcounter
```

A bit of close reading probably gives an impression of what happens here:

```
b c

110 a d 120
```

The local loop can actually result in material being injected in the current node list. However, where normally assignments are not taking place in an **\edef**, here they are applied just fine. Basically we have a local T_EX job, be it that it shares all variables with the parent loop.

59 `\beginmathgroup`

In math mode grouping with `\begingroup` and `\endgroup` in some cases works as expected, but because the math input is converted in a list that gets processed later some settings can become persistent, like changes in style or family. The engine therefore provides the alternatives `\beginmathgroup` and `\endmathgroup` that restore some properties.

60 `\beginsimplegroup`

The original T_EX engine distinguishes two kind of grouping that at the user end show up as:

```
\begingroup \endgroup
\bgroup \egroup { }
```

where the last two pairs are equivalent unless the scanner explicitly wants to see a left and/or right brace and not an equivalent. For the sake of simplify we use the aliases here. It is not possible to mix these pairs, so:

```
\bgroup xxx\endgroup
\begingroup xxx\egroup
```

will in both cases issue an error. This can make it somewhat hard to write generic grouping macros without somewhat dirty trickery. The way out is to use the generic group opener `\beginsimplegroup`.

Internally LuaMetaT_EX is aware of what group it currently is dealing with and there we distinguish:

simple group	<code>\bgroup</code>	<code>\egroup</code>
semi simple group	<code>\begingroup</code>	<code>\endgroup \endsimplegroup</code>
also simple group	<code>\beginsimplegroup</code>	<code>\egroup \endgroup \endsimplegroup</code>
math simple group	<code>\beginmathgroup</code>	<code>\endmathgroup</code>

This means that you can say:

```
\beginsimplegroup xxx\endsimplegroup
\beginsimplegroup xxx\endgroup
\beginsimplegroup xxx\egroup
```

So a group started with `\beginsimplegroup` can be finished in three ways which means that the user (or calling macro) doesn't have take into account what kind of grouping was used to start with. Normally usage of this primitive is hidden in macros and not something the user has to be aware of.

61 `\belowdisplayshortskip`

The glue injected after a display formula when the line above it is not overlapping with the formula (T_EX can't look ahead). Watch out for interference with `\baselineskip`. It can be controlled by `\displayskipmode`.

62 `\belowdisplayskip`

The glue injected after a display formula. Watch out for interference with `\baselineskip`. It can be controlled by `\displayskipmode`.

63 `\binoppenalty`

This internal quantity is a compatibility feature because normally we will use the inter atom spacing variables.

64 `\botmark`

This is a reference to the last mark on the current page, it gives back tokens.

65 `\botmarks`

This is a reference to the last mark with the given id (a number) on the current page, it gives back tokens.

66 `\boundary`

Boundaries are signals added to the current list. This primitive injects a user boundary with the given (integer) value. Such a boundary can be consulted at the Lua end or with `\lastboundary`.

67 `\box`

This is the box register accessor. While other registers have one property a box has many, like `\wd`, `\ht` and `\dp`. This primitive returns the box and resets the register.

68 `\boxadapt`

Adapting will recalculate the dimensions with a scale factor for the glue:

```
\setbox 0 \hbox {test test test}
\setbox 2 \hbox {\red test test test} \boxadapt 0 200
\setbox 4 \hbox {\blue test test test} \boxadapt 0 -200
\ruledhbox{\box0} \vskip-\lineheight
\ruledhbox{\box0} \vskip-\lineheight
\ruledhbox{\box0}
```

Like `\boxfreeze` and `\boxrepack` this primitive has been introduced for experimental usage, although we do use some in production code.

test test test

69 `\boxanchor`

This feature is part of an (experimental) mechanism that relates boxes. The engine just tags a box and it is up to the macro package to deal with it.

```
\setbox0\hbox anchor "01010202 {test}\tohexadecimal\boxanchor0
```

This gives: 1010202. Of course this feature is very macro specific and should not be used across macro packages without coordination. An anchor has two parts each not exceeding 0x0FFF.

70 `\boxanchors`

This feature is part of an (experimental) mechanism that relates boxes. The engine just tags a box and it is up to the macro package to deal with it.

```
\setbox0\hbox anchors "0101 "0202 {test}\tohexadecimal\boxanchors0
```

This gives: 1010202. Of course this feature is very macro specific and should not be used across macro packages without coordination. An anchor has two parts each not exceeding 0x0FFF.

71 `\boxattribute`

Every node, and therefore also every box gets the attributes set that are active at the moment of creation. Additional attributes can be set too:

```
\darkred
\setbox0\hbox attr 9999 1 {whatever}
\the\boxattribute 0 \colorattribute
\the\boxattribute 0 9998
\the\boxattribute 0 9999
```

A macro package should make provide a way define attributes that don't clash the ones it needs itself, like, in ConT_EXt, the ones that can set a color

```
4
-2147483647
1
```

The number -2147483647 (-7FFFFFFF) indicates an unset attribute.

72 `\boxdirection`

The direction of a box defaults to l2r but can be explicitly set:

```
\setbox0\hbox direction 1 {this is a test}\textdirection1
\setbox2\hbox direction 0 {this is a test}\textdirection0
\the\boxdirection0: \box0
\the\boxdirection2: \box2
```

The `\textdirection` does not influence the box direction:

```
1: tset a si siht
0: this is a test
```

73 `\boxfinalize`

This is special version of `\boxfreeze` which we demonstrate with an example:

```
\boxlimitate 0 0 % don't recurse
\boxfreeze 2 0 % don't recurse
\boxfinalize 4 500 % scale glue multiplier by .50
\boxfinalize 6 250 % scale glue multiplier by .25
```

```
\boxfinalize 8 100 % scale glue multiplier by .10
```

```
\hpack\bgroup
```

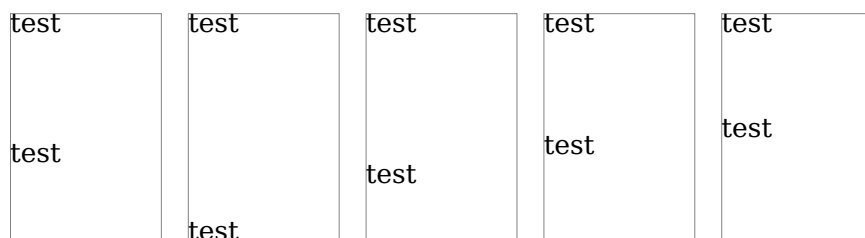
```
\copy0\quad\copy2\quad\copy4\quad\copy6\quad\copy8
```

```
\egroup
```

where the boxes are populated with:

```
\setbox0\ruledvbox to 3cm{\hsize 2cm test\vskip10pt plus 10pt test}
```

```
\setbox2\copy0\setbox4\copy0\setbox6\copy0\setbox8\copy0
```



74 \boxfreeze

Glue in a box has a fixed component that will always be used and stretch and shrink that kicks in when needed. The effective value (width) of the glue is driven by some box parameters that are set by the packaging routine. This is why we can unbox: the original value is kept. It is the backend that calculates the effective value. The `\boxfreeze` primitive can do the same: turn the flexible glue into a fixed one.

```
\setbox 0 \hbox to 6cm {\hss frost}
```

```
\setbox 2 \hbox to 6cm {\hss frost}
```

```
\boxfreeze 2 0
```

```
\ruledhbox{\unhbox 0}
```

```
\ruledhbox{\unhbox 2}
```

The second parameter to `\boxfreeze` determines recursion. We don't recurse here so just freeze the outer level:

```
frost
```

```
_____frost
```

75 \boxgeometry

A box can have an orientation, offsets and/or anchors. These are stored independently but for efficiency reasons we register if one or more of these properties is set. This primitive accesses this state; it is a bitset:

```
0x01 offset
```

```
0x02 orientation
```

```
0x04 anchor
```

76 \boxlimit

This primitive will freeze the glue in a box but only when there is glue marked with the limit option.

77 `\boxlimitate`

This primitive will freeze the glue in a box. It takes two arguments, a box number and an number that when set to non-zero will recurse into nested lists.

78 `\boxlimitmode`

This variable controls if boxes with glue marked ‘limit’ will be checked and frozen.

79 `\boxmaxdepth`

You can limit the depth of boxes being constructed. It's one of these parameters that should be used with care because when that box is filled nested boxes can be influenced.

80 `\boxorientation`

The orientation field can take quite some values and is discussed in one of the low level ConT_EXt manuals. Some properties are dealt with in the T_EX engine because they influence dimensions but in the end it is the backend that does the work.

81 `\boxrepack`

When a box of to wide or tight we can tweak it a bit with this primitive. The primitive expects a box register and a dimension, where a positive number adds and a negative subtracts from the current box with.

```
\setbox 0 \hbox {test test test}
\setbox 2 \hbox {\red test test test} \boxrepack0 +.2em
\setbox 4 \hbox {\green test test test} \boxrepack0 -.2em
\ruledhbox{\box0} \vskip-\lineheight
\ruledhbox{\box0} \vskip-\lineheight
\ruledhbox{\box0}
```

testtesttest

We can also use this primitive to check the natural dimensions of a box:

```
\setbox 0 \hbox spread 10pt {test test test}
\ruledhbox{\box0} (\the\boxrepack0,\the\wd0)
```

In this context only one argument is expected.

testtesttest

(0.0pt,0.0pt)

82 `\boxshift`

Returns or sets how much the box is shifted: up or down in horizontally mode, left or right in vertical mode.

83 \boxshrink

Returns the amount of shrink found (applied) in a box:

```
\setbox0\hbox to 4em {m m m m}
\the\boxshrink0
```

gives: 3.17871pt

84 \boxsource

This feature is part of an (experimental) mechanism that relates boxes. The engine just tags a box and it is up to the macro package to deal with it.

```
\setbox0\hbox source 123 {m m m m}
\the\boxsource0
```

This gives: 123. Of course this feature is very macro specific and should not be used across macro packages without coordination.

85 \boxstretch

Returns the amount of stretch found (applied) in a box:

```
\setbox0\hbox to 6em {m m m m}
\the\boxstretch0
```

gives: 4.76807pt

86 \boxtarget

This feature is part of an (experimental) mechanism that relates boxes. The engine just tags a box and it is up to the macro package to deal with it.

```
\setbox0\hbox source 123 {m m m m}
\the\boxsource0
```

This gives: 123. Of course this feature is very macro specific and should not be used across macro packages without coordination.

87 \boxtotal

Returns the total of height and depth of the given box.

88 \boxvadjust

When used as query this returns a bitset indicating the associated adjust and migration (marks and inserts) data:

```
0x1  pre adjusted
0x2  post adjusted
```

0x4 pre migrated
0x8 post migrated

When used as a setter it directly adds adjust data to the box and it accepts the same keywords as `\vadjust`.

89 `\boxxmove`

This will set the vertical offset and adapt the dimensions accordingly.

90 `\boxxoffset`

Returns or sets the horizontal offset of the given box.

91 `\boxymove`

This will set the vertical offset and adapt the dimensions accordingly.

92 `\boxyoffset`

Returns or sets the vertical offset of the given box.

93 `\brokenpenalties`

Together with `\widowpenalties` and `\clubpenalties` this one permits discriminating left- and right page (doublesided) penalties. For this one needs to also specify `\options 4` and provide penalty pairs. Where the others accept multiple pairs, this primitives expects a count value one.

94 `\brokenpenalty`

This penalty is added after a line that ends with a hyphen; it can help to discourage a page break (or split in a box).

95 `\catcode`

Every character can be put in a category, but this is typically something that the macro package manages because changes can affect behavior. Also, once passed as an argument, the catcode of a character is frozen. There are 16 different values:

<code>\escapecatcode</code>	0	<code>\begingroupcatcode</code>	1
<code>\endgroupcatcode</code>	2	<code>\mathshiftcatcode</code>	3
<code>\alignmentcatcode</code>	4	<code>\endoflinecatcode</code>	5
<code>\parametercatcode</code>	6	<code>\superscriptcatcode</code>	7
<code>\subscriptcatcode</code>	8	<code>\ignorecatcode</code>	9
<code>\spacecatcode</code>	10	<code>\lettercatcode</code>	11
<code>\othercatcode</code>	12	<code>\activecatcode</code>	13
<code>\commentcatcode</code>	14	<code>\invalidcatcode</code>	15

The first column shows the constant that ConT_EXt provides and the name indicates the purpose. Here are two examples:

```
\catcode123=\beginroupcatcode
\catcode125=\endroupcatcode
```

96 \catcodetable

The catcode table with the given index will become active.

97 \cccode

This is an experimental feature that can set some processing options. The character specific code is stored in the glyph node and consulted later. An example of such option is ‘ignore twin’, bit one, which we set for a few punctuation characters.

98 \cdef

This primitive is like \edef but in some usage scenarios is slightly more efficient because (delayed) expansion is ignored which in turn saves building a temporary token list.

```
\edef\FooA{this is foo} \meaningfull\FooA\crlf
\cdef\FooB{this is foo} \meaningfull\FooB\par
```

```
macro:this is foo
constant macro:this is foo
```

99 \cdefcsname

This primitive is like \edefcsame but in some usage scenarios is slightly more efficient because (delayed) expansion is ignored which in turn saves building a temporary token list.

```
\edefcsname FooA\endcsname{this is foo} \meaningasis\FooA\crlf
\cdefcsname FooB\endcsname{this is foo} \meaningasis\FooB\par
```

```
\def \FooA {this is foo}
\constant \def \FooB {this is foo}
```

100 \cfcode

This primitive is a companion to \efcode and sets the compression factor. It takes three values: font, character code, and factor.

101 \char

This appends a character with the given index in the current font.

102 \chardef

The following definition relates a control sequence to a specific character:

\chardef\copyrightsign"A9

However, because in a context where a number is expected, such a `\chardef` is seen as valid number, there was a time when this primitive was used to define constants without overflowing the by then limited pool of count registers. In ε -T_EX aware engines this was less needed, and in LuaMetaT_EX we have `\integerdef` as a more natural candidate.

103 \cleaders

See `\gleaders` for an explanation.

104 \clearmarks

This primitive is an addition to the multiple marks mechanism that originates in ε -T_EX and reset the mark registers of the given category (a number).

105 \clubpenalties

This is an array of penalty put before the first lines in a paragraph. High values discourage (or even prevent) a lone line at the end of a page. This command expects a count value indicating the number of entries that will follow. The first entry is ends up after the first line.

106 \clubpenalty

This is the penalty put before a club line in a paragraph. High values discourage (or even prevent) a lone line at the end of a next page.

107 \constant

This prefix tags a macro (without arguments) as being constant. The main consequence is that in some cases expansion gets delayed which gives a little performance boost and less (temporary) memory usage, for instance in `\csname` like scenarios.

108 \constrained

See previous section about `\retained`.

109 \copy

This is the box register accessor that returns a copy of the box.

110 \copymathatomrule

This copies the rule bitset from the parent class (second argument) to the target class (first argument). The bitset controls the features that apply to atoms.

111 \copymathparent

This binds the given class (first argument) to another class (second argument) so that one doesn't need to define all properties.

112 \copymathspacing

This copies an class spacing specification to another one, so in

`\copymathspacing 34 2`

class 34 (a user one) get the spacing from class 2 (binary).

113 \count

This accesses a count register by index. This is kind of ‘not done’ unless you do it local and make sure that it doesn't influence macros that you call.

`\count4023=10`

In standard T_EX the first 10 counters are special because they get reported to the console, and `\count0` is then assumed to be the page counter.

114 \countdef

This primitive relates a control sequence to a count register. Compare this to the example in the previous section.

`\countdef\MyCounter4023`
`\MyCounter=10`

However, this is also ‘not done’. Instead one should use the allocator that the macro package provides.

`\newcount\MyCounter`
`\MyCounter=10`

In LuaMetaT_EX we also have integers that don't rely on registers. These are assigned by the primitive `\integerdef`:

`\integerdef\MyCounterA 10`

Or better `\newinteger`.

`\newinteger\MyCounterB`
`\MyCounterN10`

There is a lowlevel manual on registers.

115 \cr

This ends a row in an alignment. It also ends an alignment preamble.

116 \crampeddisplaystyle

A less spacy alternative of `\displaystyle`; integer representation: 4.

117 \crampedscriptscriptstyle

A less spacy alternative of \scriptscriptstyle; integer representation: 6.

118 \crampedscriptstyle

A less spacy alternative of \scriptstyle; integer representation: 4.

119 \crampedtextstyle

A less spacy alternative of \textstyle; integer representation: 2.

120 \crrcr

This ends a row in an alignment when it hasn't ended yet.

121 \csactive

Because LuaT_EX (and LuaMetaT_EX) are Unicode engines active characters are implemented a bit differently. They don't occupy a eight bit range of characters but are stored as control sequence with a special prefix U+FFFF which never shows up in documents. The \csstring primitive injects the name of a control sequence without leading escape character, the \csactive injects the internal name of the following (either of not active) character. As we cannot display the prefix: `\csactive~` will inject the utf sequences for U+FFFF and U+007E, so here we get the bytes EFBFBF7E. Basically the next token is preceded by \string, so when you don't provide a character you are in for a surprise.

122 \csname

This original T_EX primitive starts the construction of a control sequence reference. It does a lookup and when no sequence with than name is found, it will create a hash entry and defaults its meaning to \relax.

`\csname` letters and other characters `\endcsname`

123 \csnamestring

This is a companion of \lastnamedcs that injects the name of the found control sequence. When used inside a csname constructor it is more efficient than repeating a token list, compare:

```
\csname\ifcsname whatever\endcsname\csnamestring\endcsname % referenced
\csname\ifcsname whatever\endcsname      whatever\endcsname % scanned
```

124 \csstring

This primitive returns the name of the control sequence given without the leading escape character (normally a backslash). Of course you could strip that character with a simple helper but this is more natural.

`\csstring\mymacro`

We get the name, not the meaning: `mymacro`.

125 `\currentgrouplevel`

The next example gives: `[1][2][3][2][1]`.

```
[\the\currentgrouplevel] \bgroup
  [\the\currentgrouplevel] \bgroup
    [\the\currentgrouplevel]
      \egroup [\the\currentgrouplevel]
\egroup [\the\currentgrouplevel]
```

126 `\currentgrouptype`

The next example gives: `[22][1][22][1][1][23][1][1]`.

```
[\the\currentgrouptype] \bgroup
  [\the\currentgrouptype] \begingroup
    [\the\currentgrouptype]
  \endgroup [\the\currentgrouptype]
  [\the\currentgrouptype] \beginmathgroup
    [\the\currentgrouptype]
  \endmathgroup [\the\currentgrouptype]
[\the\currentgrouptype] \egroup
```

The possible values depend in the engine and for LuaMetaTeX they are:

0 bottomlevel	9 output	18 mathoperator	27 mathnumber
1 simple	10 mathsubformula	19 mathradical	28 localbox
2 hbox	11 mathstack	20 mathchoice	29 splitoff
3 adjustedhbox	12 mathcomponent	21 alsosimple	30 splitkeep
4 vbox	13 discretionary	22 semisimple	31 preamble
5 vtop	14 insert	23 mathsimple	32 alignset
6 dbx	15 vadjust	24 mathfence	33 finishrow
7 align	16 vcenter	25 mathinline	34 lua
8 noalign	17 mathfraction	26 mathdisplay	

127 `\currentifbranch`

The next example gives: `[0][1][-1][1][0]`.

```
[\the\currentifbranch] \iftrue
  [\the\currentifbranch] \iffalse
    [\the\currentifbranch]
  \else
    [\the\currentifbranch]
  \fi [\the\currentifbranch]
\fi [\the\currentifbranch]
```

So when in the ‘then’ branch we get plus one and when in the ‘else’ branch we end up with a minus one.

128 \currentiflevel

The next example gives: [0] [1][2] [3] [2] [1] [0].

```
[\the\currentiflevel] \iftrue
  [\the\currentiflevel]\iftrue
    [\the\currentiflevel] \iftrue
      [\the\currentiflevel]
    \fi [\the\currentiflevel]
  \fi [\the\currentiflevel]
\fi [\the\currentiflevel]
```

129 \currentifttype

The next example gives: [-1] [25][25] [25] [25] [25] [-1].

```
[\the\currentifttype] \iftrue
  [\the\currentifttype]\iftrue
    [\the\currentifttype] \iftrue
      [\the\currentifttype]
    \fi [\the\currentifttype]
  \fi [\the\currentifttype]
\fi [\the\currentifttype]
```

The values are engine dependent:

0 char	7 absfloat	14 odd	21 vbox	28 chknunber
1 cat	8 zerofloat	15 vmode	22 tok	29 numval
2 num	9 intervalfloat	16 hmode	23 cstoken	30 cmpnum
3 absnum	10 dim	17 mmode	24 x	31 chkdim
4 zeronum	11 absdim	18 inner	25 true	32 chkdimension
5 intervalnum	12 zerodim	19 void	26 false	33 dimval
6 float	13 intervaldim	20 hbox	27 chknum	34 cmpdim

130 \currentloopiterator

Here we show the different expanded loop variants:

```
\edef\testA{\expandedloop 1 10 1{!}}
\edef\testB{\expandedrepeat 10 {!}}
\edef\testC{\expandedendless {\ifnum\currentloopiterator>10 \quitloop\else !\fi}}
\edef\testD{\expandedendless {\ifnum#I>10 \quitloop\else !\fi}}
```

All these give the same result:

```
\def \testA {!!!!!!!!!!!!}
```

```
\def \testB {!!!!!!!}
\def \testC {!!!!!!!}
\def \testD {!!!!!!!}
```

The `#I` is a shortcut to the current loop iterator; other shortcuts are `#P` for the parent iterator value and `#G` for the grand parent.

131 `\currentloopnesting`

This integer reports how many nested loops are currently active. Of course in practice the value only has meaning when you know at what outer level your nested loop started.

```
\expandedloop 1 10 1 {%
  \ifodd\currentloopiterator\else
    [\expandedloop 1 \currentloopiterator 1 {%
      \the\currentloopnesting
    }]
  \fi
}
```

Here we use the two numeric state primitives `\currentloopiterator` and `\currentloopnesting`. This results in:

```
[22] [2222] [222222] [22222222] [2222222222]
```

132 `\currentlysetmathstyle`

TODO

133 `\currentmarks`

Marks only get updated when a page is split off or part of a box using `\vsplit` gets wrapped up. This primitive gives access to the current value of a mark and takes the number of a mark class.

134 `\currentstacksize`

This is more diagnostic feature than a useful one but we show it anyway. There is some basic overhead when we enter a group:

```
\bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
  \bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
    \bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
      [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
    [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
  [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
```

```
[180] [181] [182] [182] [181] [180]
```

As soon as we define something or change a value, the stack gets populated by information needed for recovery after the group ends.

```

\bggroup [\the\currentstacksize]
  \scratchcounter 1
  \bggroup [\the\currentstacksize]
    \scratchdimen 1pt
    \scratchdimen 2pt
    \bggroup [\the\currentstacksize]
      \scratchcounter 2
      \scratchcounter 3
      [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
    [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
  [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup

```

[180] [182] [184] [185] [183] [181]

The stack also keeps some state information, for instance when a box is being built. In LuaMetaT_EX that is quite a bit more than in other engines but it is compensated by more efficient save stack handling elsewhere.

```

\hbox \bggroup [\the\currentstacksize]
  \hbox \bggroup [\the\currentstacksize]
    \hbox \bggroup [\the\currentstacksize]
      [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
    [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
  [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup

```

[189] [199] [209] [209] [199] [189]

135 \day

This internal number starts out with the day that the job started.

136 \dbox

A `\dbox` is just a `\vbox` (baseline at the bottom) but it has the property ‘dual baseline’ which means that in some cases it will behave like a `\vtop` (baseline at the top) too. Like:

<code>\dbox</code>	<code>\vbox</code>		
<code>\dbox</code>	<code>\vbox</code>		<code>\vcenter</code>
<code>\dbox</code>	<code>\vbox</code>	<code>\vtop</code>	<code>\vcenter</code>
		<code>\vtop</code>	<code>\vcenter</code>
		<code>\vtop</code>	

A `\dbox` behaves like a `\vtop` when it's appended to a vertical list which means that the height of the first box or rule determines the (base)line correction that gets applied.

```

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
The Earth, as a habitat for animal life, is in old age
and has a fatal illness. Several, in fact. It would
be happening whether humans had ever evolved or
not. But our presence is like the effect of an old-age
patient who smokes many packs of cigarettes per
day—and we humans are the cigarettes.
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

```

`\vbox`

```

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
The Earth, as a habitat for animal life, is in old age
and has a fatal illness. Several, in fact. It would
be happening whether humans had ever evolved or
not. But our presence is like the effect of an old-age
patient who smokes many packs of cigarettes per
day—and we humans are the cigarettes.
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

```

`\vtop`

```

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
The Earth, as a habitat for animal life, is in old age
and has a fatal illness. Several, in fact. It would
be happening whether humans had ever evolved or
not. But our presence is like the effect of an old-age
patient who smokes many packs of cigarettes per
day—and we humans are the cigarettes.
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

```

`\dbox`

137 `\deadcycles`

This counter is incremented every time the output routine is entered. When `\maxdeadcycles` is reached \TeX will issue an error message, so you'd better reset its value when a page is done.

138 `\def`

This is the main definition command, as in:

```
\def\foo{l me}
```

with companions like `\gdef`, `\edef`, `\xdef`, etc. and variants like:

```
\def\foo#1{... #1...}
```

where the hash is used in the preamble and for referencing. More about that can be found in the low level manual about macros.

In the Con \TeX t distribution you can find explanations about how LuaMeta \TeX extends the argument parser. When defining a macro you can do this:

```
\def\foo(#1)#2{...}
```

Here the first argument between parentheses is mandate. But the magic prefix `\tolerant` makes that limitation go away:

```
\tolerant\def\foo(#1)#2{...}
```

A variant is this:

```
\tolerant\def\foo(#1)*(#2){...}
```

Here we have two optional arguments, possibly be separated by spaces. There are more parsing options, that we just mention:

+	keep the braces
-	discard and don't count the argument
/	remove leading an trailing spaces and pars
=	braces are mandate
_	braces are mandate and kept
^	keep leading spaces
1-9	an argument
0	discard but count the argument
*	ignore spaces
.	ignore pars and spaces
,	push back space when no match
:	pick up scanning here
;	quit scanning

139 `\defaultthyphenchar`

When a font is loaded its hyphen character is set to this value. It can be changed afterwards. However, in LuaMeta \TeX font loading is under Lua control so these properties can be set otherwise.

140 `\defaultskewchar`

When a font is loaded its skew character is set to this value. It can be changed afterwards. However, in LuaMetaTeX font loading is under Lua control so these properties can be set otherwise. Also, OpenType math fonts have top anchor instead.

141 `\defcsname`

We now get a series of log clutter avoidance primitives. It's fine if you argue that they are not really needed, just don't use them.

```
\expandafter\def\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
      \defcsname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
```

The fact that TeX has three (expanded and global) companions can be seen as a signal that less verbosity makes sense. It's just that macro packages use plenty of `\csname`'s.

142 `\deferred`

This is mostly a compatibility prefix and it can be checked at the Lua end when there is a Lua based assignment going on. It is the counterpart of `\immediate`. In the traditional engines a `\write` is normally deferred (turned into a node) and can be handled `\immediate`, while a `\special` does the opposite.

143 `\delcode`

This assigns delimiter properties to an eight bit character so it has little use in an OpenType math setup. When the assigned value is hex encoded, the first byte denotes the small family, then we have two bytes for the small index, followed by three similar bytes for the large variant.

144 `\delimiter`

This command inserts a delimiter with the given specification. In OpenType math we use a different command so it is unlikely that this primitive is used in LuaMetaTeX. It takes a number that can best be coded hexadecimal: one byte for the class, one for the small family, two for the small index, one for the large family and two for the large index. This demonstrates that it can't handle wide fonts. Also, in OpenType math fonts the larger sizes and extensible come from the same font as the small symbol. On top of that, in LuaMetaTeX we have more classes than fit in a byte.

145 `\delimiterfactor`

This is one of the parameters that determines the size of a delimiter: at least this factor times the formula height divided by 1000. In OpenType math different properties and strategies are used.

146 `\delimitershortfall`

This is one of the parameters that determines the size of a delimiter: at least the formula height minus this parameter. In OpenType math different properties and strategies are used.

147 \detokened

The following token will be serialized into characters with category ‘other’.

```
\toks0{123}
\def\foo{let's be \relax'd}
\def\oof#1{let's see #1}
\detokened\toks0
\detokened\foo
\detokened\oof
\detokened\setbox
\detokened X
```

Gives:

```
123
let's be \relax 'd
\oof
\setbox
X
```

Macros with arguments are not shown.

148 \detokenize

This ε -TeX primitive turns the content of the provides list will become characters, kind of verbatim.

```
\expandafter\let\expandafter\temp\detokenize{1} \meaning\temp
\expandafter\let\expandafter\temp\detokenize{A} \meaning\temp
```

```
the character U+0031 1
the character U+0041 A
```

149 \detokenized

The following (single) token will be serialized into characters with category ‘other’.

```
\toks0{123}
\def\foo{let's be \relax'd}
\def\oof#1{let's see #1}
\detokenized\toks0
\detokenized\foo
\detokenized\oof
\detokenized\setbox
\detokenized X
```

Gives:

```
\toks 0
\foo
\oof
\setbox
```

X

It is one of these new primitives that complement others like `\detokened` and such, and they are often mostly useful in experiments of some low level magic, which made them stay.

150 `\dimen`

Like `\count` this is a register accessor which is described in more detail in a low level manual.

`\dimen0=10pt`

While \TeX has some assumptions with respect to the first ten count registers (as well as the one that holds the output, normally 255), all dimension registers are treated equal. However, you need to be aware of clashes with other usage. Therefore you can best use the predefined scratch registers or define dedicate ones with the `\newdimen` macro.

151 `\dimendef`

This primitive is used by the `\newdimen` macro when it relates a control sequence with a specific register. Only use it when you know what you're doing.

152 `\dimensiondef`

A variant of `\integerdef` is:

`\dimensiondef\MyDimen = 1234pt`

The properties are comparable to the ones described in the section `\integerdef`.

153 `\dimexpr`

This primitive is similar to of `\numexpr` but operates on dimensions instead. Integer quantities are interpreted as dimensions in scaled points.

`\the\dimexpr (1pt + 2pt - 5pt) * 10 / 2 \relax`

gives: -10.0pt. You can mix in symbolic integers and dimensions. This doesn't work:

because the engine scans for a dimension and only for an integer (or equivalent) after a `*` or `/`.

154 `\dimexpression`

This command is like `\numexpression` but results in a dimension instead of an integer. Where `\dimexpr` doesn't like `2 * 10pt` this expression primitive is quite happy with it.

You can get an idea what the engines sees by setting `\tracingexpressions` to a value larger than zero. It shows the expression in rpn form.

```
\dimexpression 4pt * 2    + 6pt    \relax
\dimexpression 2    * 4pt + 6pt    \relax
\dimexpression 4pt * 2.5 + 6pt    \relax
```

```

\dimexpression 2.5 * 4pt + 6pt \relax
\numexpression 2 * 4 + 6 \relax
\numexpression (1 + 2) * (3 + 4) \relax

```

The `\relax` is mandate simply because there are keywords involved so the parser needs to know where to stop scanning. It made no sense to be more clever and introduce fuzziness (so there is no room for exposing in-depth \TeX insight and expertise here). In case you wonder: the difference in performance between the ε - \TeX expression mechanism and the more extended variant will normally not be noticed, probably because they both use a different approach and because the ε - \TeX variant also has been optimized.

155 `\directlua`

This is the low level interface to Lua:

Gives: “Greetings from the lua end!” as expected. In Lua we have access to all kind of internals of the engine. In `LuaMetaTeX` the interfaces have been polished and extended compared to `LuaTeX`. Although many primitives and mechanisms were added to the \TeX frontend, the main extension interface remains Lua. More information can be found in documents that come with `ConTeXt`, in presentations and in articles.

156 `\discretionary`

The three snippets given with this command determine the pre, post and replace component of the injected discretionary node. The `penalty` keyword permits setting a penalty with this node. The `postword` keyword indicates that this discretionary starts a word, and `preword` ends it. With `break` the line break algorithm will prefer a pre or post component over a replace, and with `nobreak` replace will win over pre. With `class` you can set a math class that will determine spacing and such for discretions used in math mode.

157 `\discretionaryoptions`

Processing of discretions is controlled by this bitset:

```

0x00000000 normalword
0x00000001 preword
0x00000002 postword
0x00000010 preferbreak
0x00000020 prefernobreak
0x00000040 noitaliccorrection
0x00000080 nozeroitaliccorrection
0x00010000 userfirst
0x40000000 userlast

```

These can also be set on `\discretionary` using the `options` key.

158 `\displayindent`

The `\displaywidth`, `\displayindent` and `\predisplaysize` parameters are set by the line break routine (but can be adapted by the user), so that mid-par display formula can adapt itself to hanging

indentation and par shapes. In order to calculate these values and adapt the line break state afterwards such a display formula is assumed to occupy three lines, so basically a rather compact formula.

159 `\displaylimits`

By default in math display mode limits are placed on top while in inline mode they are placed like scripts, after the operator. Placement can be forced with the `\limits` and `\nolimits` modifiers (after the operator). Because there can be multiple of these in a row there is `\displaylimits` that forces the default placement, so effectively it acts here as a reset modifier.

160 `\displaystyle`

One of the main math styles; integer representation: 0.

161 `\displaywidowpenalties`

This is a math specific variant of `\widowpenalties`.

162 `\displaywidowpenalty`

This is a math specific variant of `\widowpenalty`.

163 `\displaywidth`

This parameter determines the width of the formula and normally defaults to the `\hsize` unless we are in the middle of a paragraph in which case it is compensated for hanging indentation or the par shape.

164 `\divide`

The `\divide` operation can be applied to integers, dimensions, float, attribute and glue quantities. There are subtle rounding differences between the divisions in expressions and `\divide`:

```
\scratchcounter 1049 \numexpr\scratchcounter / 10\relax : 105
\scratchcounter 1049 \numexpr\scratchcounter : 10\relax : 104
\scratchcounter 1049 \divide\scratchcounter by 10      : 104
```

The `:` divider in `\dimexpr` is something that we introduced in LuaTeX.

165 `\divideby`

This is slightly more efficient variant of `\divide` that doesn't look for `by`. See previous section.

166 `\doublehyphendemerits`

This penalty will be added to the penalty assigned to a breakpoint that results in two lines ending with a hyphen.

167 \doublepenaltymode

When set to one this parameter signals the backend to use the alternative (left side) penalties of the pairs set on \widowpenalties, \clubpenalties and \brokenpenalties. For more information on this you can consult manuals (and articles) that come with ConT_EXt.

168 \dp

Returns the depth of the given box.

169 \dpack

This does what \dbox does but without callback overhead.

170 \dsplit

This is the dual baseline variant of \vsplit (see \dbox for what that means).

171 \dump

This finishes an (ini) run and dumps a format (basically the current state of the engine).

172 \edef

This is the expanded version of \def.

```
\def \foo{foo}      \meaning\foo
\def \ofo{\foo\foo} \meaning\ofo
\edef\oof{\foo\foo} \meaning\oof
```

Because \foo is unprotected it will expand inside the body definition:

```
macro:foo
macro:\foo \foo
macro:foofoo
```

173 \edefcsname

This is the companion of \edef:

```
\expandafter\edef\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
      \edefcsname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
```

174 \edivide

When expressions were introduced the decision was made to round the divisions which is incompatible with the way \divide works. The expression scanners in LuaMetaT_EX compensates that by providing a : for integer division. The \edivide does the opposite: it rounds the way expressions do.

```
\the\dimexpr .4999pt : 2 \relax =.24994pt
```

```

\the\dimexpr .4999pt / 2 \relax =.24995pt
\scratchdimen.4999pt \divide \scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen=.24994pt
\scratchdimen.4999pt \edivide\scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen=.24995pt

\the\numexpr 1001 : 2 \relax =500
\the\numexpr 1001 / 2 \relax =501
\scratchcounter1001 \divide \scratchcounter 2 \the\scratchcounter=500
\scratchcounter1001 \edivide\scratchcounter 2 \the\scratchcounter=501

```

Keep in mind that with dimensions we have a fractional part so we actually rounding applies to the fraction. For that reason we also provide `\rdivide`.

```

0.24994pt=.24994pt
0.24995pt=.24995pt
0.24994pt=.24994pt
0.24995pt=.24995pt

```

```

500=500
501=501
500=500
501=501

```

175 `\edivideby`

This the by-less variant of `\edivide`.

176 `\efcode`

This primitive originates in pdf \TeX and can be used to set the expansion factor of a glyph (characters). This primitive is obsolete because the values can be set in the font specification that gets passed via Lua to \TeX . Keep in mind that setting font properties at the \TeX end is a global operation and can therefore influence related fonts. In LuaMeta \TeX the `\cf` code can be used to specify the compression factor independent from the expansion factor. The primitive takes three values: font, character code, and factor.

177 `\else`

This traditional primitive is part of the condition testing mechanism. When a condition matches, \TeX will continue till it sees an `\else` or `\or` or `\orelse` (to be discussed later). It will then do a fast skipping pass till it sees an `\fi`.

178 `\emergencyextrastretch`

This is one of the extended parbuilder parameters. You can use it so temporary increase the permitted stretch without knowing or messing with the normal value.

179 `\emergencyleftskip`

This is one of the extended parbuilder parameters (playground). It permits going ragged left in case of a too bad result.

180 \emergencyrightskip

This is one of the extended parbuilder parameters (playground). It permits going ragged right in case of a too bad result.

181 \emergencystretch

When set the par builder will run a third pass in order to fit the set criteria.

182 \end

This ends a \TeX run, unless of course this primitive is redefined.

183 \endcsname

This primitive is used in combination with `\csname`, `\ifcsname` and `\begincsname` where its end the scanning for the to be constructed control sequence token.

184 \endgroup

This is the companion of the `\begingroup` primitive that opens a group. See `\beginsimplegroup` for more info.

185 \endinput

The engine can be in different input modes: reading from file, reading from a token list, expanding a macro, processing something that comes back from Lua, etc. This primitive quits reading from file:

```
this is seen
\endinput
here we're already quit
```

There is a catch. This is what the above gives:

```
this is seen
but how about this:

this is seen
before \endinput after
here we're already quit
```

Here we get:

```
this is seen before after
```

Because a token list is one line, the following works okay:

```
\def\quitrn{\ifsomething \endinput \fi}
```

but in a file you'd have to do this when you quit in a conditional:

```
\ifsomething
  \expandafter \endinput
\fi
```

While the one-liner works as expected:

```
\ifsomething \endinput \fi
```

186 \endlinechar

This is an internal integer register. When set to positive value the character with that code point will be appended to the line. The current value is 13. Here is an example:

```
\endlinechar\hyphenasciicode
line 1
line 2
```

line 1-line 2-

If the character is active, the property is honored and the command kicks in. The maximum value is 127 (the maximum character code a single byte utf character can carry.)

187 \endlocalcontrol

See \beginlocalcontrol.

188 \endmathgroup

This primitive is the counterpart of \beginmathgroup.

189 \endsimplegroup

This one ends a simple group, see \beginsimplegroup for an explanation about grouping primitives.

190 \enforced

The engine can be set up to prevent overloading of primitives and macros defined as \permanent or \immutable. However, a macro package might want to get around this in controlled situations, which is why we have a \enforced prefix. This prefix is interpreted differently in so called ‘ini’ mode when macro definitions can be dumped in the format. Internally they get an always flag as indicator that in these places an overload is possible.

```
\permanent\def\foo{original}

\def\oof          {\def\foo{fails}}
\def\oof{\enforced\def\foo{succeeds}}
```

Of course this only has an effect when overload protection is enabled.

191 \eofinput

This is a variant on `\input` that takes a token list as first argument. That list is expanded when the file ends. It has companion primitives `\atendoffile` (single token) and `\atendoffiled` (multiple tokens).

192 \eqno

This primitive stores the (typeset) content (presumably a number) and when the display formula is wrapped that number will end up right of the formula.

193 \errhelp

This is additional help information to `\errmessage` that triggers an error and shows a message.

194 \errmessage

This primitive expects a token list and shows its expansion on the console and/or in the log file, depending on how \TeX is configured. After that it will enter the error state and either goes on or waits for input, again depending on how \TeX is configured. For the record: we don't use this primitive in \ConTeXt .

195 \errorcontextlines

This parameter determines the number on lines shown when an error is triggered.

196 \errorstopmode

This directive stops at every opportunity to interact. In \ConTeXt we overload the actions in a callback and quit the run because we can assume that a successful outcome is unlikely.

197 \escapechar

This internal integer has the code point of the character that get prepended to a control sequence when it is serialized (for instance in tracing or messages).

198 \etoks

This assigns an expanded token list to a token register:

```
\def\temp{less stuff}
\etoks\scratchtoks{a bit \temp}
```

The original value of the register is lost.

199 \etoksapp

A variant of `\toksapp` is the following: it expands the to be appended content.

```
\def\temp{more stuff}
```

```
\etoksapp\scratchtoks{some \temp}
```

200 \etokspre

A variant of \tokspre is the following: it expands the to be prepended content.

```
\def\temp{less stuff}
\etokspre\scratchtoks{a bit \temp}
```

201 \eufactor

When we introduced the es (2.5cm) and ts (2.5mm) units as metric variants of the in we also added the eu factor. One eu equals one tenth of a es times the \eufactor. The ts is a convenient offset in test files, the es a convenient ones for layouts and image dimensions and the eu permits definitions that scale nicely without the need for dimensions. They also were a prelude to what later became possible with \associateunit.

202 \everybeforepar

This token register is expanded before a paragraph is triggered. The reason for triggering is available in \lastpartrigger.

203 \everycr

This token list gets expanded when a row ends in an alignment. Normally it will use \noalign as wrapper

```
{\everycr{\noalign{H}} \halign{#\cr test\cr test\cr}}
{\everycr{\noalign{V}} \hsize 4cm \valign{#\cr test\cr test\cr}}
```

Watch how the \cr ending the preamble also get this treatment:

H
test

H
test

H
Vtest Vtest V

204 \everydisplay

This token list gets expanded every time we enter display mode. It is a companion of \everymath.

205 \everyeof

The content of this token list is injected when a file ends but it can only be used reliably when one is really sure that no other file is loaded in the process. So in the end it is of no real use in a more complex macro package.

206 \everyhbox

This token list behaves similar to `\everyvbox` so look there for an explanation.

207 \everyjob

This token list register is injected at the start of a job, or more precisely, just before the main control loop starts.

208 \everymath

Often math needs to be set up independent from the running text and this token list can be used to do that. There is also `\everydisplay`.

209 \everymathatom

When a math atom is seen this tokenlist is expanded before content is processed inside the atom body. It is basically a math companion for `\everyhbox` and friends and it is therefore probably just as useless. The next example shows how it works:

```
\everymathatom
{\begingroup
 \scratchcounter\lastatomclass
 \everymathatom{}}%
 \mathghost{\hbox to 0pt yoffset -1ex{\smallinfofont \setstrut\strut \the
 \scratchcounter\hss}}}%
\endgroup}
```

```
$ a = \mathatom class 4 {b} + \mathatom class 5 {c} $
```

We get a formula with open- and close atom spacing applied to b and c :

$$a = b + c$$

This example shows bit of all: we want the number to be invisible to the math machinery so we ghost it. So, we need to make sure we don't get recursion due to nested injection and expansion of `\everymathatom` and of course we need to store the number. The `\lastatomclass` state variable is only meaningful inside an explicit atom wrapper like `\mathatom` and `\mathatom`.

210 \everypar

When a paragraph starts this tokenlist is expanded before content is processed.

211 \everytab

This token list gets expanded every time we start a table cell in `\halign` or `\valign`.

212 \everyvbox

This token list gets expanded every time we start a vertical box. Like `\everyhbox` this is not that useful unless you are certain that there are no nested boxes that don't need this treatment. Of course you can wipe this register in this expansion, like:

```
\everyvbox{\kern10pt\everyvbox{}}
```

213 \exceptionpenalty

In exceptions we can indicate a penalty by [digit] in which case a penalty is injected set by this primitive, multiplied by the digit.

214 \exhyphenchar

The character that is used as pre component of the related discretionary.

215 \exhyphenpenalty

The penalty injected after - or \- unless \hyphenationmode is set to force the dedisated penalties.

216 \expand

Beware, this is not a prefix but a directive to ignore the protected characters of the following macro.

```
\protected \def \testa{\the\scratchcounter}
\edef\testb{\testa}
\edef\testc{\expand\testa}
```

The meaning of the three macros is:

```
protected macro:\the \scratchcounter
macro:\testa
macro:123
```

217 \expandactive

This a bit of an outlier and mostly there for completeness.

```
\meaningasis~
\edef\foo{~} \meaningasis\foo
\edef\foo{\expandactive~} \meaningasis\foo
```

There seems to be no difference but the real meaning of the first \foo is ‘active character 126’ while the second \foo ‘protected call ’ is.

```
\protected \def ~ {\nobreakspace }
\def \foo {~}
\def \foo {~}
```

Of course the definition of the active tilde is ConT_EXt specific and situation dependent.

218 \expandafter

This original T_EX primitive stores the next token, does a one level expansion of what follows it, which actually can be an not expandable token, and reinjects the stored token in the input. Like:

```
\expandafter\let\csname my weird macro name\endcsname{m w m n}
```

Without `\expandafter` the `\csname` primitive would have been let to the left brace (effectively then a begin group). Actually in this particular case the control sequence with the weird name is injected and when it didn't yet exist it will get the meaning `\relax` so we sort of have two assignments in a row then.

219 \expandafterpars

Here is another gobbler: the next token is reinjected after following spaces and par tokens have been read. So:

```
[\expandafterpars 1 2]
[\expandafterpars 3
4]
[\expandafterpars 5
6]
```

gives us: [12] [34] [56], because empty lines are like `\par` and therefore ignored.

220 \expandafterspaces

This is a gobbler: the next token is reinjected after following spaces have been read. Here is a simple example:

```
[\expandafterspaces 1 2]
[\expandafterspaces 3
4]
[\expandafterspaces 5
6]
```

We get this typeset: [12] [34] [5

6], because a newline normally is configured to be a space (and leading spaces in a line are normally being ignored anyway).

221 \expandcstoken

The rationale behind this primitive is that when we `\let` a single token like a character it is hard to compare that with something similar, stored in a macro. This primitive pushes back a single token alias created by `\let` into the input.

```
\let\tempA + \meaning\tempA
```

```
\let\tempB X \meaning\tempB \crlf
```

```
\let\tempC $ \meaning\tempC \par
```

```
\edef\temp      {\tempA} \doifelse{\temp}{+}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \crlf
\edef\temp      {\tempB} \doifelse{\temp}{X}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \crlf
\edef\temp      {\tempC} \doifelse{\temp}{X}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \par
```

```

\edef\temp{\expandcstoken\tempA} \doifelse{\temp}{+}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \crlf
\edef\temp{\expandcstoken\tempB} \doifelse{\temp}{X}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \crlf
\edef\temp{\expandcstoken\tempC} \doifelse{\temp}{$}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \par

\doifelse{\expandcstoken\tempA}{+}{Y}{N}
\doifelse{\expandcstoken\tempB}{X}{Y}{N}
\doifelse{\expandcstoken\tempC}{$}{Y}{N} \par

```

The meaning of the `\let` macros shows that we have a shortcut to a character with (in this case) catcode letter, other (here ‘other character’ gets abbreviated to ‘character’), math shift etc.

the character U+002B ‘plus sign’

the letter U+0058 X

math shift character U+0024 ‘dollar sign’

N macro:\tempA

N macro:\tempB

N macro:\tempC

Y macro:+

Y macro:X

Y macro:\$

Y Y Y

Here we use the ConT_EXt macro `\doifelse` which can be implemented in different ways, but the only property relevant to the user is that the expanded content of the two arguments is compared.

222 \expanded

This primitive complements the two expansion related primitives mentioned in the previous two sections. This time the content will be expanded and then pushed back into the input. Protected macros will not be expanded, so you can use this primitive to expand the arguments in a call. In ConT_EXt you need to use `\normalexpanded` because we already had a macro with that name. We give some examples:

```

\def\A{!}
      \def\B#1{\string#1}
      \def\B#1{\string#1} \normalexpanded{\noexpand\B{\A}}
\protected\def\B#1{\string#1}
\B{\A}
!
\A

```

223 \expandedafter

The following two lines are equivalent:

```

\def\foo{123}
\expandedafter[\expandedafter[\expandedafter\secondofthreearguments\foo]]

```

```
\expandedafter{[[\secondofthreearguments]\foo]}
```

In ConT_EXt MkIV the number of times that one has multiple `\expandafters` is much larger than in ConT_EXt LMTX thanks to some of the new features in LuaMetaT_EX, and this primitive is not really used yet in the core code.

```
[[2]]
```

```
[[2]]
```

224 `\expandeddetokenize`

This is a companion to `\detokenize` that expands its argument:

```
\def\foo{12#H3}
\def\oof{\foo}
\detokenize      {\foo} \detokenize      {\oof}
\expandeddetokenize{\foo} \expandeddetokenize{\oof}
\edef\of{\expandeddetokenize{\foo}} \meaningless\of
\edef\of{\expandeddetokenize{\oof}} \meaningless\of
```

This is a bit more convenient than

```
\detokenize \expandafter {\normalexpanded {\foo}}
```

kind of solutions. We get:

```
\foo \oof
12#3 12#3
12#3
12#3
```

225 `\expandedendless`

This one loops forever but because the loop counter is not set you need to find a way to quit it.

226 `\expandedloop`

This variant of the previously introduced `\localcontrolledloop` doesn't enter a local branch but immediately does its work. This means that it can be used inside an expansion context like `\edef`.

```
\edef\whatever
  {\expandedloop 1 10 1
   {\scratchcounter=\the\currentloopiterator\relax}}

\meaningasis\whatever
```

```
\def \whatever {\scratchcounter =1\relax \scratchcounter =2\relax \scratchcounter =3\relax \scratchcounter
=4\relax \scratchcounter =5\relax \scratchcounter =6\relax \scratchcounter =7\relax \scratchcounter =8\relax
\scratchcounter =9\relax \scratchcounter =10\relax }
```

227 `\expandedrepeat`

This one takes one instead of three arguments which is sometimes more convenient.

228 \expandparameter

This primitive is a predecessor of \parameterdef so we stick to a simple example.

```
\def\foo#1#2%
  {\integerdef\MyIndexOne\parameterindex\plusone % 1
   \integerdef\MyIndexTwo\parameterindex\plustwo % 2
   \oof{P}\oof{Q}\oof{R}\norelax}

\def\oof#1%
  {<1:\expandparameter\MyIndexOne><1:\expandparameter\MyIndexOne>%
   #1%
   <2:\expandparameter\MyIndexTwo><2:\expandparameter\MyIndexTwo>}}

\foo{A}{B}
```

In principle the whole parameter stack can be accessed but often one never knows if a specific macro is called nested. The original idea behind this primitive was tracing but it can also be used to avoid passing parameters along a chain of calls.

```
<1:A><1:A>P<2:B><2:B><1:A><1:A>Q<2:B><2:B><1:A><1:A>R<2:B><2:B>
```

229 \expandtoken

This primitive creates a token with a specific combination of catcode and character code. Because it assumes some knowledge of T_EX we can show it using some \expandafter magic:

```
\expandafter\let\expandafter\temp\expandtoken 11 `X \meaning\temp
\expandafter\let\expandafter\temp\expandtoken 12 `X \meaning\temp
```

The meanings are:

```
the letter U+0058 X
the character U+0058 X
```

Using other catcodes is possible but the results of injecting them into the input directly (or here by injecting \temp) can be unexpected because of what T_EX expects. You can get messages you normally won't get, for instance about unexpected alignment interference, which is a side effect of T_EX using some catcode/character combinations as signals and there is no reason to change those internals. That said:

```
\xdef\tempA{\expandtoken 9 `X} \meaning\tempA
\xdef\tempB{\expandtoken 10 `X} \meaning\tempB
\xdef\tempC{\expandtoken 11 `X} \meaning\tempC
\xdef\tempD{\expandtoken 12 `X} \meaning\tempD
```

are all valid and from the meaning you cannot really deduce what's in there:

```
macro:X
macro:X
macro:X
macro:X
```


But you can be assured that:

```
[AB: \ifx\tempA\tempB Y\else N\fi]
[AC: \ifx\tempA\tempC Y\else N\fi]
[AD: \ifx\tempA\tempD Y\else N\fi]
[BC: \ifx\tempB\tempC Y\else N\fi]
[BD: \ifx\tempB\tempD Y\else N\fi]
[CD: \ifx\tempC\tempD Y\else N\fi]
```

makes clear that they're different: [AB: N] [AC: N] [AD: N] [BC: N] [BD: N] [CD: N], and in case you wonder, the characters with catcode 10 are spaces, while those with code 9 are ignored.

230 \expandtoks

This is a more efficient equivalent of \the applied to a token register, so:

```
\scratchtoks{just some tokens}
\edef\TestA{[\the \scratchtoks]}
\edef\TestB{[\expandtoks\scratchtoks]}
[\the \scratchtoks] [\TestA] \meaning\TestA
[\expandtoks\scratchtoks] [\TestB] \meaning\TestB
```

does the expected:

```
[just some tokens] [[just some tokens]] macro:[just some tokens]
[just some tokens] [[just some tokens]] macro:[just some tokens]
```

The \expandtoken primitive avoid a copy into the input when there is no need for it.

231 \explicitdiscretionary

This is the verbose alias for one of T_EX's single character control sequences: \-.

232 \explicitthyphenpenalty

The penalty injected after an automatic discretionary \-, when \hyphenationmode enables this.

233 \explicititaliccorrection

This is the verbose alias for one of T_EX's single character control sequences: \/. Italic correction is a character property specific to T_EX and the concept is not present in modern font technologies. There is a callback that hooks into this command so that a macro package can provide its own solution to this (or alternatively it can assign values to the italic correction field).

234 \explicitspace

This is the verbose alias for one of T_EX's single character control sequences: \ . A space is inserted with properties according the space related variables. There is look-back involved in order to deal with space factors.

When `\nospaces` is set to 1 no spaces are inserted, when its value is 2 a zero space is inserted.

235 `\fam`

In a numeric context it returns the current family number, otherwise it sets the given family. The number of families in a traditional engine is 16, in Lua \TeX it is 256 and in LuaMeta \TeX we have at most 64 families. A future version can lower that number when we need more classes.

236 `\fi`

This traditional primitive is part of the condition testing mechanism and ends a test. So, we have:

```
\ifsomething ... \else ... \fi
\ifsomething ... \or ... \or ... \else ... \fi
\ifsomething ... \orelse \ifsomething ... \else ... \fi
\ifsomething ... \or ... \orelse \ifsomething ... \else ... \fi
```

The `\orelse` is new in LuaMeta \TeX and a continuation like we find in other programming languages (see later section).

237 `\finalhyphendemerits`

This penalty will be added to the penalty assigned to a breakpoint when that break results in a pre-last line ending with a hyphen.

238 `\firstmark`

This is a reference to the first mark on the (split off) page, it gives back tokens.

239 `\firstmarks`

This is a reference to the first mark with the given id (a number) on the (split off) page, it gives back tokens.

240 `\firstvalidlanguage`

Language id's start at zero, which makes it the first valid language. You can set this parameter to indicate the first language id that is actually a language. The current value is 1, so lower values will not trigger hyphenation.

241 `\fitnessclasses`

We can have more fitness classes than traditional \TeX that has ‘very loose’, ‘loose’, ‘decent’ and ‘tight’. In Con \TeX t we have ‘veryloose’, ‘loose’, ‘almostloose’, ‘barelyloose’, ‘decent’, ‘barelytight’, ‘almosttight’, ‘tight’ and ‘verytight’. Although we can go up to 31 this is already more than enough. The default is the same as in regular \TeX .

The `\fitnessclasses` can be used to set the criteria and like other specification primitives (like `\parshape` and `\widowpenalties`, it expects a count. With `\adjacentdemerits` one can set the demerits

that are added depending on the distance between classes (in traditional \TeX that is `adjdemerits` for all distances larger than one. With the `double` option the demerits come in pairs because we can go up or down in the list of fitness classes.

242 `\float`

In addition to integers and dimensions, which are fixed 16.16 integer floats we also have ‘native’ floats, based on 32 bit posit unums.

```
\float0 = 123.456           \the\float0
\float2 = 123.456           \the\float0
\advance \float0 by 123.456 \the\float0
\advance \float0 by \float2 \the\float0
\divideby\float0 3          \the\float0
```

They come with the same kind of support as the other numeric data types:

```
123.45600032806396484
123.45600032806396484
246.91200065612792969
370.36800384521484375
123.45600128173828125
```

We leave the subtle differences between floats and dimensions to the user to investigate:

```
\dimen00 = 123.456pt        \the\dimen0
\dimen02 = 123.456pt        \the\dimen0
\advance \dimen0 by 123.456pt \the\dimen0
\advance \dimen0 by \dimen2   \the\dimen0
\divideby\dimen0 3           \the\dimen0
```

The nature of posits is that they are more accurate around zero (or smaller numbers in general).

```
123.456pt
123.456pt
246.91199pt
370.36798pt
123.456pt
```

This also works:

```
\float0=123.456e4
\float2=123.456   \multiply\float2 by 10000
\the\float0
\the\float2
```

The values are (as expected) the same:

```
1234560
1234560
```

243 `\floatdef`

This primitive defines a symbolic (macro) alias to a float register, just like `\countdef` and friends do.

244 `\floatexpr`

This is the companion of `\numexpr`, `\dimexpr` etc.

```
\scratchcounter 200
\the \floatexpr 123.456/456.123 \relax
\the \floatexpr 1.2*\scratchcounter \relax
\the \floatexpr \scratchcounter/3 \relax
\number\floatexpr \scratchcounter/3 \relax
```

Watch the difference between `\the` and `\number`:

```
0.27066383324563503265
240
66.666666984558105469
67
```

245 `\floatingpenalty`

When an insertion is split (across pages) this one is added to to accumulated `\insertpenalties`. In LuaMetaTeX this penalty can be stored per insertion class.

246 `\flushmarks`

This primitive is an addition to the multiple marks mechanism that originates in ϵ -TeX and inserts a reset signal for the mark given category that will perform a clear operation (like `\clearmarks` which operates immediately).

247 `\font`

This primitive is either a symbolic reference to the current font or in the perspective of an assignment is used to trigger a font definitions with a given name (cs) and specification. In LuaMetaTeX the assignment will trigger a callback that then handles the definition; in addition to the filename an optional size specifier is checked (at or scaled).

In LuaMetaTeX *all* font loading is delegated to Lua, and there is no loading code built in the engine. Also, instead of `\font` in ConTeXt one uses dedicated and more advanced font definition commands.

248 `\fontcharba`

Fetches the bottom anchor of a character in the given font, so:

results in: 1.8275pt. However, this anchor is only available when it is set and it is not part of OpenType; it is something that ConTeXt provides for math fonts.

249 \fontchardp

Fetches the depth of a character in the given font, so:

results in: 2.22168pt.

250 \fontcharht

Fetches the width of a character in the given font, so:

results in: 5.33203pt.

251 \fontcharic

Fetches the italic correction of a character in the given font, but because it is not an OpenType property it is unlikely to return something useful. Although math fonts have such a property in ConT_EXt we deal with it differently.

252 \fontcharta

Fetches the top anchor of a character in the given font, so:

results in: 1.8275pt. This is a specific property of math characters because in text mark anchoring is driven by a feature.

253 \fontcharwd

Fetches the width of a character in the given font, so:

results in: 6.40137pt.

254 \fontdimen

A traditional T_EX font has a couple of font specific dimensions, we only mention the seven that come with text fonts:

1. The slant (slope) is an indication that we have an italic shape. The value divided by 65.536 is a fraction that can be compared with for instance the `slanted` operator in MetaPost. It is used for positioning accents, so actually not limited to oblique fonts (just like italic correction can be a property of any character). It is not relevant in the perspective of OpenType fonts where we have glyph specific top and bottom anchors.
2. Unless is it overloaded by `\spaceskip` this determines the space between words (or actually anything separated by a space).
3. This is the stretch component of `\fontdimen 2(space)`.
4. This is the shrink component of `\fontdimen 2(space)`.
5. The so called ex-height is normally the height of the ‘x’ and is also accessible as `em` unit.
6. The so called em-width or in T_EX speak quad width is about the width of an ‘M’ but in many fonts just matches the font size. It is also accessible as `em` unit.
7. This is a very T_EX specific property also known as extra space. It gets *added* to the regular space after punctuation when `\spacefactor` is 2000 or more. It can be overloaded by `\xspaceskip`.

This primitive expects a a number and a font identifier. Setting a font dimension is a global operation as it directly pushes the value in the font resource.

255 `\fontid`

Returns the (internal) number associated with the given font:

```
{\bf \xdef\MyFontA{\the\fontid\font}}
{\sl \xdef\MyFontB{\setfontid\the\fontid\font}}
```

with:

```
test {\setfontid\MyFontA test} test {\MyFontB test} test
```

gives: test **test** test *test* test.

256 `\fontmathcontrol`

The `\fontmathcontrol` parameter controls how the engine deals with specific font related properties and possibilities. It is set at the \TeX end. It makes it possible to fine tune behavior in this mixed traditional and not perfect OpenType math font arena. One can also set this bitset when initializing (loading) the font (at the Lua end) and the value set there is available in `\fontmathcontrol`. The bits set in the font win over those in `\fontmathcontrol`. There are a few cases where we set these options in the (so called) goodie files. For instance we ignore font kerns in Libertinus, Antykwa and some more.

```
modern          0x0
pagella         0x0
antykwa         0x37EF3FF
libertinus      0x37EF3FF
```

257 `\fontname`

Depending on how the font subsystem is implemented this gives some information about the used font:

```
{\tf \fontname\font}
{\bf \fontname\font}
{\sl \fontname\font}
```

DejaVuSerif at 10.0pt

DejaVuSerif-Bold at 10.0pt

DejaVuSerif-Italic at 10.0pt

258 `\fontspecdef`

This primitive creates a reference to a specification that when triggered will change multiple parameters in one go.

```
\fontspecdef\MyFontSpec
\fontid\font
```

```

scale 1200
xscale 1100
yscale 800
weight 200
slant 500

```

```
\relax
```

is equivalent to:

```

\fontspecdef\MyFontSpec
  \fontid\font
  all 1200 1100 800 200 500
\relax

```

while

```

\fontspecdef\MyFontSpec
  \fontid\font
  all \glyphscale \glyphxscale \glyphyscale \glyphslant \glyphweight
\relax

```

is the same as

```

\fontspecdef\MyFontSpec
  \fontid\font
\relax

```

The engine adapts itself to these glyph parameters but when you access certain quantities you have to make sure that you use the scaled ones. The same is true at the Lua end. This is somewhat fundamental in the sense that when one uses these sort of dynamic features one also need to keep an eye on code that uses font specific dimensions.

259 \fontspecid

Internally a font reference is a number and this primitive returns the number of the font bound to the specification.

260 \fontspecifiedname

Depending on how the font subsystem is implemented this gives some information about the (original) definition of the used font:

```

{\tf \fontspecifiedname\font}
{\bf \fontspecifiedname\font}
{\sl \fontspecifiedname\font}

```

Serif sa 1

SerifBold sa 1

SerifSlanted sa 1

261 `\fontspecifiedsize`

Depending on how the font subsystem is implemented this gives some information about the (original) size of the used font:

```
{\tf \the\fontspecifiedsize\font : \the\glyphscale}
{\bfa \the\fontspecifiedsize\font : \the\glyphscale}
{\slx \the\fontspecifiedsize\font : \the\glyphscale}
```

Depending on how the font system is setup, this is not the real value that is used in the text because we can use for instance `\glyphscale`. So the next lines depend on what font mode this document is typeset.

10.0pt: 1000

10.0pt: 1200

10.0pt: 800

262 `\fontspecscale`

This returns the scale factor of a fontspec where as usual 1000 means scaling by 1.

263 `\fontspecslant`

This returns the slant factor of a font specification, usually between zero and 1000 with 1000 being maximum slant.

264 `\fontspecweight`

This returns the weight of the font specification. Reasonable values are between zero and 500.

265 `\fontspecxscale`

This returns the scale factor of a font specification where as usual 1000 means scaling by 1.

266 `\fontspecyscale`

This returns the scale factor of a font specification where as usual 1000 means scaling by 1.

267 `\fonttextcontrol`

This returns the text control flags that are set on the given font, here 0x208. Bits that can be set are:

```
0x01 collapsehyphens
0x02 baseligaturing
0x04 basekerning
0x08 noneprotected
0x10 hasitalics
0x20 autoitalics
```


268 \forcedleftcorrection

This is a callback driven left correction signal similar to italic corrections.

269 \forcedrightcorrection

This is a callback driven right correction signal similar to italic corrections.

270 \formatname

It is in the name: cont-en, but we cheat here by only showing the filename and not the full path, which in a ConT_EXt setup can span more than a line in this paragraph.

271 \frozen

You can define a macro as being frozen:

```
\frozen\def\MyMacro{...}
```

When you redefine this macro you get an error:

```
! You can't redefine a frozen macro.
```

This is a prefix like \global and it can be combined with other prefixes.⁵

272 \futurecsname

In order to make the repertoire of def, let and futurelet primitives complete we also have:

```
\futurecsname MyMacro:1\endcsname\MyAction
```

273 \futuredef

We elaborate on the example of using \futurelet in the previous section. Compare that one with the next:

```
\def\MySpecialToken{[]}  
\def\DoWhatever{\ifx\NextToken\MySpecialToken YES\else NOP\fi : }  
\futurelet\NextToken\DoWhatever [A]\crlf  
\futurelet\NextToken\DoWhatever (A)\par
```

This time we get:

```
NOP: [A]
```

```
NOP: (A)
```

It is for that reason that we now also have \futuredef:

```
\def\MySpecialToken{[]}
```

⁵ The \outer and \long prefixes are no-ops in LuaMetaT_EX and LuaT_EX can be configured to ignore them.

```
\def\DoWhatever{\ifx\NextToken\MySpecialToken YES\else NOP\fi : }
\futuredef\NextToken\DoWhatever [A]\crlf
\futuredef\NextToken\DoWhatever (A)\par
```

So we're back to what we want:

YES: [A]

NOP: (A)

274 \futureexpand

This primitive can be used as an alternative to a \futurelet approach, which is where the name comes from.⁶

```
\def\variantone<#1>{(#1)}
\def\varianttwo#1{#1}
\futureexpand<\variantone\varianttwo<one>
\futureexpand<\variantone\varianttwo{two}
```

So, the next token determines which of the two variants is taken:

(one) [two]

Because we look ahead there is some magic involved: spaces are ignored but when we have no match they are pushed back into the input. The next variant demonstrates this:

```
\def\variantone<#1>{(#1)}
\def\varianttwo{}
\def\temp{\futureexpand<\variantone\varianttwo}
[\temp <one>]
[\temp {two}]
[\expandafter\temp\space <one>]
[\expandafter\temp\space {two}]
```

This gives us:

[(one)] [two] [(one)] [two]

275 \futureexpandis

We assume that the previous section is read. This variant will not push back spaces, which permits a consistent approach i.e. the user can assume that macro always gobbles the spaces.

```
\def\variantone<#1>{(#1)}
\def\varianttwo{}
\def\temp{\futureexpandis<\variantone\varianttwo}
[\temp <one>]
[\temp {two}]
[\expandafter\temp\space <one>]
[\expandafter\temp\space {two}]
```

⁶ In the engine primitives that have similar behavior are grouped in commands that are then dealt with together, code wise.


```
xMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMx
xx MMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMM xx
```

```
xMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMx
xxMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMxx
```

```
xMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMx
xx MMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMM xx
```

Leaders fill the available space. The `\leaders` command starts at the left edge and stops when there is no more space. The blobs get centered when we use `\cleaders`: excess space is distributed before and after a blob while `\xleaders` also puts space between the blobs.

When a rule is given the advance (width or height and depth) is ignored, so these are equivalent.

```
x\leaders \hrule \hfill x
x\leaders \hrule width 1cm \hfill x
```

When a box is used one will normally have some alignment in that box.

```
x\leaders \hbox {\hss.\hss} \hfill x
x\leaders \hbox {\hss.\hss} \hskip 6cm \relax x
```

The reference point is the left edge of the current (outer) box and the effective glue (when it has stretch or shrink) depends on that box. The `\gleaders` variant takes the page as reference. That makes it possible to ‘align’ across boxes.

282 `\glet`

This is the global companion of `\let`. The fact that it is not an original primitive is probably due to the expectation for it not it not being used (as) often (as in ConT_EXt).

283 `\gletcsname`

Naturally LuaMetaT_EX also provides a global variant:

```
\expandafter\global\expandafter\let\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname\relax
\expandafter \glet\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname\relax
\gletcsname MyMacro:1\endcsname\relax
```

So, here we save even more.

284 `\glettonothing`

This is the global companion of `\lettonothing`.

285 `\global`

This is one of the original prefixes that can be used when we define a macro of change some register.

```
\bgroup
\def\MyMacroA{a}
```

```

\global\def\MyMacroB{a}
    \gdef\MyMacroC{a}
\egroup

```

The macro defined in the first line is forgotten when the groups is left. The second and third definition are both global and these definitions are retained.

286 \globaldefs

When set to a positive value, this internal integer will force all definitions to be global, and in a complex macro package that is not something a user will do unless it is very controlled.

287 \glueexpr

This is a more extensive variant of `\dimexpr` that also handles the optional stretch and shrink components.

288 \glueshrink

This returns the shrink component of a glue quantity. The result is a dimension so you need to apply `\the` when applicable.

289 \glueshrinkorder

This returns the shrink order of a glue quantity. The result is a integer so you need to apply `\the` when applicable.

290 \gluespecdef

A variant of `\integerdef` and `\dimensiondef` is:

```
\gluespecdef\MyGlue = 3pt plus 2pt minus 1pt
```

The properties are comparable to the ones described in the previous sections.

291 \gluestretch

This returns the stretch component of a glue quantity. The result is a dimension so you need to apply `\the` when applicable.

292 \gluestretchorder

This returns the stretch order of a glue quantity. The result is a integer so you need to apply `\the` when applicable.

293 \gluetomu

The sequence `\the\gluetomu 20pt plus 10pt minus 5pt` gives 20.0mu plus 10.0mu minus 5.0mu.

294 `\glyph`

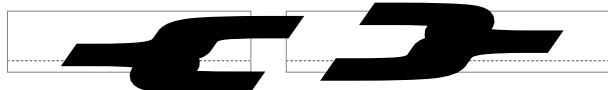
This is a more extensive variant of `\char` that permits setting some properties if the injected character node.

```
\ruledhbox{\glyph
  scale 2000 xscale 9000 yscale 1200
  slant 700 weight 200
  xoffset 10pt yoffset -5pt left 10pt right 20pt
  123}
```

`\quad`

```
\ruledhbox{\glyph
  scale 2000 xscale 9000 yscale 1200
  slant 700 weight 200
  125}
```

In addition one can specify font (symbol), id (valid font id number), an options (bit set) and raise.



When no parameters are set, the current ones are used. More details and examples of usage can be found in the ConT_EXt distribution.

295 `\glyphdatafield`

The value of this parameter is assigned to data field in glyph nodes that get injected. It has no meaning in itself but can be used at the Lua end.

296 `\glyphoptions`

The value of this parameter is assigned to the options field in glyph nodes that get injected.

0x00000000	normal	0x00000400	mathdiscretionary
0x00000001	noleftligature	0x00000800	mathsitalicstoo
0x00000002	norightligature	0x00001000	mathartifact
0x00000004	noleftkern	0x00002000	weightless
0x00000008	norightkern	0x00004000	spacefactoroverload
0x00000010	noexpansion	0x00008000	checktoddler
0x00000020	noprotrusion	0x00010000	checktwin
0x00000040	noitaliccorrection	0x00020000	istoddler
0x00000080	nozeroitaliccorrection	0x00100000	userfirst
0x00000100	applyxoffset	0x40000000	userlast
0x00000200	applyyoffset		

297 `\glyphscale`

An integer parameter defining the current glyph scale, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list.

298 \glyphscriptfield

The value of this parameter is assigned to script field in glyph nodes that get injected. It has no meaning in itself but can be used at the Lua end.

299 \glyphscriptscale

This multiplier is applied to text font and glyph dimension properties when script style is used.

300 \glyphscriptscriptscale

This multiplier is applied to text font and glyph dimension properties when script script style is used.

301 \glyphslant

An integer parameter defining the current glyph slant, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list.

302 \glyphstatefield

The value of this parameter is assigned to script state in glyph nodes that get injected. It has no meaning in itself but can be used at the Lua end.

303 \glyphtextscale

This multiplier is applied to text font and glyph dimension properties when text style is used.

304 \glyphweight

An integer parameter defining the current glyph weight, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list.

305 \glyphxoffset

An integer parameter defining the current glyph x offset, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list. Normally this will only be set when one explicitly works with glyphs and defines a specific sequence.

306 \glyphxscale

An integer parameter defining the current glyph x scale, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list.

307 \glyphxscaled

This primitive returns the given dimension scaled by the \glyphscale and \glyphxscale.

308 \glyphyoffset

An integer parameter defining the current glyph x offset, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list. Normally this will only be set when one explicitly works with glyphs and defines a specific sequence.

309 \glyphyscale

An integer parameter defining the current glyph y scale, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list.

310 \glyphyscaled

This primitive returns the given dimension scaled by the \glyphyscale and \glyphyscale.

311 \gtoksapp

This is the global variant of \toksapp.

312 \gtokspre

This is the global variant of \tokspre.

313 \halign

This command starts horizontally aligned material. Macro packages use this command in table mechanisms and math alignments. It starts with a preamble followed by entries (rows and columns). There are some related primitives, for instance \alignmark duplicates the functionality of # inside alignment preambles, while \alignstab duplicates the functionality of &. The \aligncontent primitive directly refers to an entry so that one does not get repeated.

Alignments can be traced with \tracingalignments. When set to 1 basics usage is shown, for instance of \noalign but more interesting is 2 or more: you then get the preambles reported.

The \halign (tested) and \valign (yet untested) primitives accept a few keywords in addition to to and spread:

keyword	explanation
attr	set the given attribute to the given value
callback	trigger the alignment_filter callback
discard	discard zero \tabskip's
noskips	don't even process zero \tabskip's
reverse	reverse the final rows

In the preamble the \tabsize primitive can be used to set the width of a column. By doing so one can avoid using a box in the preamble which, combined with the sparse tabskip features, is a bit easier on memory when you produce tables that span hundreds of pages and have a dozen columns.

The \everytab complements the \everycr token register but is sort of experimental as it might become more selective and powerful some day.

The two primitives `\alignmentcellsource` and `\alignmentwrapsource` that associate a source id (integer) to the current cell and row (line). Sources and targets are experimental and are being explored in ConT_EXt so we'll see where that ends up in.

314 `\hangafter`

This parameter tells the par builder when indentation specified with `\hangindent` starts. A negative value does the opposite and starts indenting immediately. So, a value of `-2` will make the first two lines indent.

315 `\hangindent`

This parameter relates to `\hangafter` and sets the amount of indentation. When larger than zero indentation happens left, otherwise it starts at the right edge.

316 `\hbadness`

This sets the threshold for reporting a horizontal badness value, its current value is 0.

317 `\hbox`

This constructs a horizontal box. There are a lot of optional parameters so more details can be found in dedicated manuals. When the content is packed a callback can kick in that can be used to apply for instance font features.

318 `\hccode`

The T_EX engine is good at hyphenating but traditionally that has been limited to hyphens. Some languages however use different characters. You can set up a different `\hyphenchar` as well as pre and post characters, but there's also a dedicated code for controlling this.

```
\hccode"2013 "2013
```

```
\hsize 50mm test\char"2013test\par
```

```
\hsize 1mm test\char"2013test\par
```

```
\hccode"2013 `!
```

```
\hsize 50mm test\char"2013test\par
```

```
\hsize 1mm test\char"2013test\par
```

This example shows that we can mark a character as hyphen-like but also can remap it to something else:

```
test-test
```

```
test-
```

```
test
```

```
test-test
```

```
test!
```

```
test
```

319 \hfil

This is a shortcut for `\hskip plus 1 fil` (first order filler).

320 \hfill

This is a shortcut for `\hskip plus 1 fill` (second order filler).

321 \hfilneg

This is a shortcut for `\hskip plus - 1 fil` so it can compensate `\hfil`.

322 \hfuzz

This dimension sets the threshold for reporting horizontal boxes that are under- or overfull. The current value is 0.1pt.

323 \hjcode

The so called lowercase code determines if a character is part of a to-be-hyphenated word. In Lua_{TEX} we introduced the ‘hyphenation justification’ code as replacement. When a language is saved and no `\hjcode` is set the `\lccode` is used instead. This code serves a second purpose. When the assigned value is greater than 0 but less than 32 it indicated the to be used length when checking for left- and righthyphenmin. For instance it make sense to set the code to 2 for characters like *œ*.

324 \hkern

This primitive is like `\kern` but will force the engine into horizontal mode if it isn't yet.

325 \hmcode

The `hm` stands for ‘hyphenation math’. When bit 1 is set the characters will be repeated on the next line after a break. The second bit concerns italic correction but is of little relevance now that we moved to a different model in Con_{TEX}t. Here are some examples, we also show an example of `\mathdiscretionary` because that is what this code triggers:

```
test $ \dorecurse {50} {
  a \discretionary class 2 {$\darkred +}{$\darkgreen +}{$\darkblue +}
} b$
```

```
test $ a \mathdiscretionary class 1 {-}{-}{-} b$
```

\bgroup

```
\hmcode"002B=1 % +
```

```
\hmcode"002D=1 % -
```

```
\hmcode"2212=1 % -
```

```
test $ \dorecurse{50}{a + b - } c$
```

\egroup


```
\hsize 40pt \setbox0\ vbox{x} hsize: \the\wd0
\setbox0\ vbox{\hsize 40pt x} hsize: \the\wd0
```

In both cases we get the same size reported but the first one will also influence the current paragraph when used ungrouped.

```
hsize:
40.0pt
hsize:
40.0pt
```

332 \hskip

The given glue is injected in the horizontal list. If possible horizontal mode is entered.

333 \hss

In traditional T_EX glue specifiers are shared. This makes a lot of sense when memory has to be saved. For instance spaces in a paragraph of text are often the same and a glue specification has at least an amount, stretch, shrink, stretch order and shrink order field plus a leader pointer; in LuaMetaT_EX we have even more fields. In LuaT_EX these shared (and therefore referenced) glue spec nodes became just copies.

```
x\hbox to 0pt{\hskip 0pt plus 1 fil minus 1 fil\relax test}x
x\hbox to 0pt{\hss test}x
x\hbox to 0pt{test\hskip 0pt plus 1 fil minus 1 fil\relax}x
x\hbox to 0pt{test\hss}x
```

The \hss primitives injects a glue node with one order stretch and one order shrink. In traditional T_EX this is a reference to a shared specification, and in LuaT_EX just a copy of a predefined specifier. The only gain is now in tokens because one could just be explicit or use a glue register with that value because we have plenty glue registers.

```
testx
testx
xtest
xtest
```

We could have this:

```
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\hss
{\hskip0pt plus 1 fil minus 1 fil\relax}
```

or this:

```
\gluespecdef\hssglue 0pt plus 1 fil minus 1 fil

\permanent\protected\untraced\def\hss
{\hskip\hssglue}
```

but we just keep the originals around.

334 \ht

Returns the height of the given box.

335 \hyphenation

The list passed to this primitive contains hyphenation exceptions that get bound to the current language. In LuaMetaTeX this can be managed at the Lua end. Exceptions are not stored in the format file.

336 \hyphenationmin

This property (that also gets bound to the current language) sets the minimum length of a word that gets hyphenated.

337 \hyphenationmode

TODO

338 \hyphenchar

This is one of the font related primitives: it returns the number of the hyphen set in the given font.

339 \hyphenpenalty

Discretionary nodes have a related default penalty. The `\hyphenpenalty` is injected after a regular discretionary, and `\exhyphenpenalty` after `\-` or `-`. The later case is called an automatic discretionary. In LuaMetaTeX we have two extra penalties: `\explicitlyhyphenpenalty` and `\automaticallyhyphenpenalty` and these are used when the related bits are set in `\hyphenationmode`.

340 \if

This traditional TeX conditional checks if two character codes are the same. In order to understand unexpanded results it is good to know that internally TeX groups primitives in a way that serves the implementation. Each primitive has a command code and a character code, but only for real characters the name character code makes sense. This condition only really tests for character codes when we have a character, in all other cases, the result is true.

```
\def\A{A}\def\B{B} \chardef\C=`C \chardef\D=`D \def\AA{AA}

[\if AA YES \else NOP \fi] [\if AB YES \else NOP \fi]
[\if \A\B YES \else NOP \fi] [\if \A\A YES \else NOP \fi]
[\if \C\D YES \else NOP \fi] [\if \C\C YES \else NOP \fi]
[\if \count\dimen YES \else NOP \fi] [\if \AA\A YES \else NOP \fi]
```

The last example demonstrates that the tokens get expanded, which is why we get the extra A:

```
[ YES ] [NOP ] [NOP ] [YES ] [YES ] [YES ] [YES ] [AYES ]
```

341 \ifabsdim

This test will negate negative dimensions before comparison, as in:

```
\def\TestA#1{\ifdim #1<2pt too small\orelse\ifdim #1>4pt too large\else okay\fi}
\def\TestB#1{\ifabsdim#1<2pt too small\orelse\ifabsdim#1>4pt too large\else okay\fi}

\TestA {1pt}\quad\TestA {3pt}\quad\TestA {5pt}\crlf
\TestB {1pt}\quad\TestB {3pt}\quad\TestB {5pt}\crlf
\TestB{-1pt}\quad\TestB{-3pt}\quad\TestB{-5pt}\par
```

So we get this:

```
too small  okay  too large
too small  okay  too large
too small  okay  too large
```

342 \ifabsfloat

This test will negate negative floats before comparison, as in:

```
\def\TestA#1{\iffloat #1<2.46 small\orelse\iffloat #1>4.68 large\else medium\fi}
\def\TestB#1{\ifabsfloat#1<2.46 small\orelse\ifabsfloat#1>4.68 large\else medium\fi}

\TestA {1.23}\quad\TestA {3.45}\quad\TestA {5.67}\crlf
\TestB {1.23}\quad\TestB {3.45}\quad\TestB {5.67}\crlf
\TestB{-1.23}\quad\TestB{-3.45}\quad\TestB{-5.67}\par
```

So we get this:

```
small  medium  large
small  medium  large
small  medium  large
```

343 \ifabsnum

This test will negate negative numbers before comparison, as in:

```
\def\TestA#1{\ifnum #1<100 too small\orelse\ifnum #1>200 too large\else okay\fi}
\def\TestB#1{\ifabsnum#1<100 too small\orelse\ifabsnum#1>200 too large\else okay\fi}

\TestA {10}\quad\TestA {150}\quad\TestA {210}\crlf
\TestB {10}\quad\TestB {150}\quad\TestB {210}\crlf
\TestB{-10}\quad\TestB{-150}\quad\TestB{-210}\par
```

Here we get the same result each time:

```
too small  okay  too large
too small  okay  too large
too small  okay  too large
```

344 \ifarguments

This is a variant of \ifcase where the selector is the number of arguments picked up. For example:

```

\def\MyMacro#1#2#3{\ifarguments\0\or1\or2\or3\else ?\fi} \MyMacro{A}{B}{C}
\def\MyMacro#1#0#3{\ifarguments\0\or1\or2\or3\else ?\fi} \MyMacro{A}{B}{C}
\def\MyMacro#1#-#2{\ifarguments\0\or1\or2\or3\else ?\fi} \MyMacro{A}{B}{C}\par

```

Watch the non counted, ignored, argument in the last case. Normally this test will be used in combination with `\ignorearguments`.

3 3 2

345 `\ifboolean`

This tests a number (register or equivalent) and any nonzero value represents true, which is nicer than using an `\unless\ifcase`.

346 `\ifcase`

This numeric \TeX conditional takes a counter (literal, register, shortcut to a character, internal quantity) and goes to the branch that matches.

```
\ifcase 3 zero\or one\or two\or three\or four\else five or more\fi
```

Indeed: three equals three. In later sections we will see some LuaMeta \TeX primitives that behave like an `\ifcase`.

347 `\ifcat`

Another traditional \TeX primitive: what happens with what gets read in depends on the catcode of a character, think of characters marked to start math mode, or alphabetic characters (letters) versus other characters (like punctuation).

```

\def\A{A}\def\B{,} \chardef\C=`C \chardef\D=` , \def\AA{AA}

[\ifcat $! YES \else NOP \fi] [\ifcat () YES \else NOP \fi]
[\ifcat AA YES \else NOP \fi] [\ifcat AB YES \else NOP \fi]
[\ifcat \A\B YES \else NOP \fi] [\ifcat \A\A YES \else NOP \fi]
[\ifcat \C\D YES \else NOP \fi] [\ifcat \C\C YES \else NOP \fi]
[\ifcat \count\dimen YES \else NOP \fi] [\ifcat \AA\A YES \else NOP \fi]

```

Close reading is needed here:

```
[NOP ] [ YES ] [ YES ] [ YES ] [NOP ] [YES ] [YES ] [YES ] [YES ] [AYES ]
```

This traditional \TeX condition as well as the one in the previous section are hardly used in Con \TeX t, if only because they expand what follows and we seldom need to compare characters.

348 `\ifchkdim`

A variant on the checker in the previous section is a dimension checker:

```

\ifchkdim oeps \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchkdim 12 \or okay\else error\fi\quad

```

```
\ifchkdim 12pt      \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchkdim 12pt or more\or okay\else error\fi
```

We get:

```
error error okay okay
```

349 \ifchkdimension

COntrary to \ifchkdim this test doesn't accept trailing crap:

```
\ifchkdimension oeps      \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchkdimension 12        \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchkdimension 12pt      \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchkdimension 12pt or more\or okay\else error\fi
```

reports:

```
error error okay error
```

350 \ifchknum

In ConT_EXt there are quite some cases where a variable can have a number or a keyword indicating a symbolic name of a number or maybe even some special treatment. Checking if a valid number is given is possible to some extent, but a native checker makes much sense too. So here is one:

```
\ifchknum oeps      \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknum 12        \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknum 12pt      \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknum 12pt or more\or okay\else error\fi
```

The result is as expected:

```
error okay okay okay
```

351 \ifchknumber

This check is more restrictive than \ifchknum discussed in the previous section:

```
\ifchknumber oeps      \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknumber 12        \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknumber 12pt      \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknumber 12pt or more\or okay\else error\fi
```

Here we get:

```
error okay error error
```

352 \ifcondition

The conditionals in T_EX are hard coded as primitives and although it might look like \newif creates one, it actually just defined three macros.


```

\newif\ifMyTest
\meaning\MyTesttrue \crlf
\meaning\MyTestfalse \crlf
\meaning\ifMyTest \crlf \MyTesttrue
\meaning\ifMyTest \par

protected macro:\always \let \ifMyTest \iftrue
protected macro:\always \let \ifMyTest \iffalse
\iffalse
\iftrue

```

This means that when you say:

```
\ifMytest ... \else ... \fi
```

You actually have one of:

```

\iftrue ... \else ... \fi
\iffalse ... \else ... \fi

```

and because these are proper conditions nesting them like:

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter > 0 \ifMyTest A\else B\fi \fi
```

will work out well too. This is not true for macros, so for instance:

```

\scratchcounter = 1
\unexpanded\def\ifMyTest{\iftrue}
\ifnum\scratchcounter > 0 \ifMyTest A\else B\fi \fi

```

will make a run fail with an error (or simply loop forever, depending on your code). This is where `\ifcondition` enters the picture:

```

\def\MyTest{\iftrue} \scratchcounter0
\ifnum\scratchcounter > 0
  \ifcondition\MyTest A\else B\fi
\else
  x
\fi

```

This primitive is seen as a proper condition when $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ is in “fast skipping unused branches” mode but when it is expanding a branch, it checks if the next expanded token is a proper tests and if so, it deals with that test, otherwise it fails. The main condition here is that the `\MyTest` macro expands to a proper true or false test, so, a definition like:

```
\def\MyTest{\ifnum\scratchcounter<10 }
```

is also okay. Now, is that neat or not?

353 \ifcramped

Depending on the given math style this returns true of false:

```
\ifcramped\mathstyle no \fi
```

```

\ifcramped\crampedtextstyle yes \fi
\ifcramped\textstyle          no  \fi
\ifcramped\displaystyle       yes \fi

```

gives: yes.

354 \ifcsname

This is an ε -T_EX conditional that complements the one on the previous section:

```

\expandafter\ifx\csname MyMacro\endcsname\relax ... \else ... \fi
\ifcsname MyMacro\endcsname ... \else ... \fi

```

Here the first one has the side effect of defining the macro and defaulting it to `\relax`, while the second one doesn't do that. Just think of checking a few million different names: the first one will deplete the hash table and probably string space too.

In LuaMetaT_EX the construction stops when there is no letter or other character seen (T_EX expands on the go so expandable macros are dealt with). Instead of an error message, the match is simply false and all tokens till the `\endcsname` are gobbled.

355 \ifcstok

A variant on the primitive mentioned in the previous section is one that operates on lists and macros:

```

\def\A{a} \def\B{b} \def\C{c}

```

This:

```

\ifcstok\A\B Y\else N\fi\space
\ifcstok\A\C Y\else N\fi\space
\ifcstok{\A}\C Y\else N\fi\space
\ifcstok{A}\C Y\else N\fi

```

will give us: N Y Y Y.

356 \ifdefined

In traditional T_EX checking for a macro to exist was a bit tricky and therefore ε -T_EX introduced a convenient conditional. We can do this:

```

\ifx\MyMacro\undefined ... \else ... \fi

```

but that assumes that `\undefined` is indeed undefined. Another test often seen was this:

```

\expandafter\ifx\csname MyMacro\endcsname\relax ... \else ... \fi

```

Instead of comparing with `\undefined` we need to check with `\relax` because the control sequence is defined when not yet present and defaults to `\relax`. This is not pretty.

357 \ifdim

Dimensions can be compared with this traditional T_EX primitive.

```
\scratchdimen=1pt \scratchcounter=65536
```

```
\ifdim\scratchdimen=\scratchcounter sp YES \else NOP\fi
\ifdim\scratchdimen=1 pt YES \else NOP\fi
```

The units are mandate:

YES YES

358 \ifdimexpression

The companion of the previous primitive is:

This matches when the result is non zero, and you can mix calculations and tests as with normal expressions. Contrary to the number variant units can be used and precision kicks in.

359 \ifdimval

This conditional is a variant on \ifchkdim and provides some more detailed information about the value:

```
[-12pt : \ifdimval-12pt\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
[0pt : \ifdimval 0pt\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
[12pt : \ifdimval 12pt\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
[oeps : \ifdimval oeps\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]
```

This gives:

```
[-12pt : negative] [0pt : zero] [12pt : positive] [oeps : error]
```

360 \ifempty

This conditional checks if a control sequence is empty:

```
is \ifempty\MyMacro \else not \fi empty
```

It is basically a shortcut of:

```
is \ifx\MyMacro\empty \else not \fi empty
```

with:

```
\def\empty{}
```

Of course this is not empty at all:

```
\def\notempty#1{}
```

361 \iffalse

Here we have a traditional T_EX conditional that is always false (therefore the same is true for any macro that is \let to this primitive).

362 \ifflags

This test primitive relates to the various flags that one can set on a control sequence in the perspective of overload protection and classification.

```
\protected\untraced\tolerant\def\foo[#1]{...#1...}
\permanent\constant      \def\oof{okay}
```

flag	\foo	\oof	flag	\foo	\oof
frozen	N	N	permanent	N	Y
immutable	N	N	mutable	N	N
noaligned	N	N	instance	N	N
untraced	Y	N	global	N	N
tolerant	Y	N	constant	N	Y
protected	Y	N	semiprotected	N	N

Instead of checking against a prefix you can test against a bitset made from:

0x1	frozen	0x2	permanent	0x4	immutable	0x8	primitive
0x10	mutable	0x20	noaligned	0x40	instance	0x80	untraced
0x100	global	0x200	tolerant	0x400	protected	0x800	overloaded
0x1000	aliased	0x2000	immediate	0x4000	conditional	0x8000	value
0x10000	semiprotected	0x20000	inherited	0x40000	constant	0x80000	deferred

363 \iffloat

This test does for floats what \ifnum, \ifdim do for numbers and dimensions: comparing two of them.

364 \iffontchar

This is an ε -TeX conditional. It takes a font identifier and a character number. In modern fonts simply checking could not be enough because complex font features can swap in other ones and their index can be anything. Also, a font mechanism can provide fallback fonts and characters, so don't rely on this one too much. It just reports true when the font passed to the frontend has a slot filled.

365 \ifhaschar

This one is a simplified variant of the above:

```
\ifhaschar !{this ! works} yes \else no \fi
```

and indeed we get: yes! Of course the spaces in this this example code are normally not present in such a test.

366 \ifhastok

This conditional looks for occurrences in token lists where each argument has to be a proper list.

```
\def\scratchtoks{x}
```

```
\ifhastoks{yz}      {xyz} Y\else N\fi\quad
\ifhastoks\scratchtoks {xyz} Y\else N\fi
```

We get:

Y Y

367 \ifhastoks

This test compares two token lists. When a macro is passed it's meaning gets used.

```
\def\x {x}
\def\xyz{xyz}

(\ifhastoks {x} {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhastoks {\x} {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhastoks \x {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhastoks {y} {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhastoks {yz} {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhastoks {yz} {\xyz}Y\else N\fi)
```

(Y) (N) (Y) (Y) (Y) (N)

368 \ifhasxtoks

This primitive is like the one in the previous section but this time the given lists are expanded.

```
\def\x {x}
\def\xyz{\x yz}

(\ifhasxtoks {x} {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhasxtoks {\x} {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhasxtoks \x {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhasxtoks {y} {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhasxtoks {yz} {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhasxtoks {yz} {\xyz}Y\else N\fi)
```

(Y) (Y) (Y) (Y) (Y) (Y)

This primitive has some special properties.

```
\edef\+{\expandtoken 9 `+}

\ifhasxtoks {xy} {xyz}Y\else N\fi\quad
\ifhasxtoks {x\+y} {xyz}Y\else N\fi
```

Here the first argument has a token that has category code ‘ignore’ which means that such a character will be skipped when seen. So the result is:

Y Y

This permits checks like these:

```
\edef\,{\expandafter \9 ` ,}

\ifhasxtoks{\,x\,} {,x,y,z,}Y\else N\fi\quad
\ifhasxtoks{\,y\,} {,x,y,z,}Y\else N\fi\quad
\ifhasxtoks{\,z\,} {,x,y,z,}Y\else N\fi\quad
\ifhasxtoks{\,x\,} {,xy,z,}Y\else N\fi
```

I admit that it needs a bit of a twisted mind to come up with this, but it works ok:

Y Y Y N

369 \ifhbox

This traditional conditional checks if a given box register or internal box variable represents a horizontal box.

370 \ifhmode

This traditional conditional checks we are in (restricted) horizontal mode.

371 \ifinalignment

As the name indicates, this primitive tests for being in an alignment. Roughly spoken, the engine is either in a state of align, handling text or dealing with math.

372 \ifincsname

This conditional is sort of obsolete and can be used to check if we're inside a `\csname` or `\ifcsname` construction. It's not used in `ConTeXt`.

373 \ifinner

This traditional one can be confusing. It is true when we are in restricted horizontal mode (a box), internal vertical mode (a box), or inline math mode.

```
test \ifhmode \ifinner INNER\fi HMODE\fi\crlf
\hbox{test \ifhmode \ifinner INNER \fi HMODE\fi} \par

\ifvmode \ifinner INNER\fi VMODE \fi\crlf
\vbox{\ifvmode \ifinner INNER \fi VMODE\fi} \crlf
\vbox{\ifinner INNER \ifvmode VMODE \fi \fi} \par
```

Watch the last line: because we typeset `INNER` we enter horizontal mode:

```
test HMODE
test INNER HMODE
```

```
VMODE
INNER VMODE
INNER
```

374 \ifinsert

This is the equivalent of \ifvoid for a given insert class.

375 \ifintervalldim

This conditional is true when the intervals around the values of two dimensions overlap. The first dimension determines the interval.

```
[\ifintervalldim1pt 20pt 21pt \else no \fi overlap]
[\ifintervalldim1pt 18pt 20pt \else no \fi overlap]
```

So here: [overlap] [no overlap]

376 \ifintervalfloat

This one does with floats what we described under \ifintervalldim.

377 \ifintervalnum

This one does with integers what we described under \ifintervalldim.

378 \iflastnamedcs

When a \csname is constructed and succeeds the last one is remembered and can be accessed with \lastnamedcs. It can however be an undefined one. That state can be checked with this primitive. Of course it also works with the \ifcurname and \begincurname variants.

379 \ifmathparameter

This is an \ifcase where the value depends on if the given math parameter is zero, (0), set (1), or unset (2).

```
\ifmathparameter\Umathpunctclosespacing\displaystyle
  zero      \or
  nonzero   \or
  unset     \fi
```

380 \ifmathstyle

This is a variant of \ifcase where the number is one of the seven possible styles: display, text, cramped text, script, cramped script, script script, cramped script script.

```
\ifmathstyle
  display
\or
  text
\or
  cramped text
\else
```

normally smaller than text

\fi

381 \ifmmode

This traditional conditional checks we are in (inline or display) math mode mode.

382 \ifnum

This is a frequently used conditional: it compares two numbers where a number is anything that can be seen as such.

```
\scratchcounter=65 \chardef\A=65
```

```
\ifnum65=\A YES \else NOP\fi
```

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter=65 YES \else NOP\fi
```

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter=\A YES \else NOP\fi
```

Unless a number is an unexpandable token it ends with a space or `\relax`, so when you end up in the true branch, you'd better check if T_EX could determine where the number ends.

YES YES YES

On top of these ascii combinations, the engine also accepts some Unicode characters. This brings the full repertoire to:

character	operation	
0x003C	<	less
0x003D	=	equal
0x003E	>	more
0x2208	∈	element of
0x2209	∉	not element of
0x2260	≠ !=	not equal
0x2264	≤ !>	less equal
0x2265	≥ !<	greater equal
0x2270	≧	not less equal
0x2271	≨	not greater equal

This also applied to `\ifdim` although in the case of element we discard the fractional part (read: divide the numeric representation by 65536).

383 \ifnumexpression

Here is an example of a conditional using expressions:

This matches when the result is non zero, and you can mix calculations and tests as with normal expressions.

384 \ifnumval

This conditional is a variant on `\ifchknum`. This time we get some more detail about the value:


```
[-12 : \ifnumval -12\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
[0 : \ifnumval 0\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
[12 : \ifnumval 12\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
[oeps : \ifnumval oeps\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]
```

This gives:

```
[-12 : negative] [0 : zero] [12 : positive] [oeps : error]
```

385 \ifodd

One reason for this condition to be around is that in a double sided layout we need test for being on an odd or even page. It scans for a number the same was as other primitives,

```
\ifodd65 YES \else NO\fi &
\ifodd`B YES \else NO\fi .
```

So: YES & NO.

386 \ifparameter

In a macro body `#1` is a reference to a parameter. You can check if one is set using a dedicated parameter condition:

```
\tolerant\def\foo[#1]*[#2]%
  {\ifparameter#1\or one\else no one\fi\enspace
   \ifparameter#2\or two\else no two\fi\emspace}

\foo
\foo[1]
\foo[1][2]
```

We get:

```
no one no two  one no two  one two
```

387 \ifparameters

This is equivalent to an `\ifcase` with as value the number of parameters passed to the current macro.

388 \ifrelax

This is a convenient shortcut for `\ifx\relax` and the motivation for adding this one is (as with some others) to get less tracing.

389 \iftok

When you want to compare two arguments, the usual way to do this is the following:

```
\edef\tempA{#1}
\edef\tempb{#2}
```

```

\ifx\tempA\tempB
  the same
\else
  different
\fi

```

This works quite well but the fact that we need to define two macros can be considered a bit of a nuisance. It also makes macros that use this method to be not so called ‘fully expandable’. The next one avoids both issues:

```

\iftok{#1}{#2}
  the same
\else
  different
\fi

```

Instead of direct list you can also pass registers, so given:

```

\scratchtoks{a}%
\toks0{a}%

```

This:

```

\iftok 0 \scratchtoks      Y\else N\fi\space
\iftok{a}\scratchtoks     Y\else N\fi\space
\iftok\scratchtoks\scratchtoks Y\else N\fi

```

gives: Y Y Y.

390 \iftrue

Here we have a traditional T_EX conditional that is always true (therefore the same is true for any macro that is \let to this primitive).

391 \ifvbox

This traditional conditional checks if a given box register or internal box variable represents a vertical box,

392 \ifvmode

This traditional conditional checks we are in (internal) vertical mode.

393 \ifvoid

This traditional conditional checks if a given box register or internal box variable has any content.

394 \ifx

We use this traditional T_EX conditional a lot in ConT_EXt. Contrary to \if the two tokens that are compared are not expanded. This makes it possible to compare the meaning of two macros. Depending

on the need, these macros can have their content expanded or not. A different number of parameters results in false.

Control sequences are identical when they have the same command code and character code. Because a `\let` macro is just a reference, both `let` macros are the same and equal to `\relax`:

```
\let\one\relax \let\two\relax
```

The same is true for other definitions that result in the same (primitive) or meaning encoded in the character field (think of `\chardefs` and so).

395 `\ifzerodim`

This tests for a `dimen` (dimension) being zero so we have:

```
\ifdim<dimension>=0pt
\ifzerodim<dimension>
\ifcase<dimension register>
```

396 `\ifzerofloat`

As the name indicated, this tests for a zero float value.

```
[\scratchfloat\zerofloat \ifzerofloat\scratchfloat \else not \fi zero]
[\scratchfloat\plusone \ifzerofloat\scratchfloat \else not \fi zero]
[\scratchfloat 0.01 \ifzerofloat\scratchfloat \else not \fi zero]
[\scratchfloat 0.0e0 \ifzerofloat\scratchfloat \else not \fi zero]
[\scratchfloat \zeropoint\ifzerofloat\scratchfloat \else not \fi zero]
```

So: [zero] [not zero] [not zero] [zero] [zero]

397 `\ifzeronum`

This tests for a number (integer) being zero so we have these variants now:

```
\ifnum<integer or equivalent>=0
\ifzeronum<integer or equivalent>
\ifcase<integer or equivalent>
```

398 `\ignorearguments`

This primitive will quit argument scanning and start expansion of the body of a macro. The number of grabbed arguments can be tested as follows:

```
\def\MyMacro[#1][#2][#3]%
{\ifarguments zero\or one\or two\or three \else hm\fi}

\MyMacro \ignorearguments \quad
\MyMacro [1]\ignorearguments \quad
\MyMacro [1][2]\ignorearguments \quad
\MyMacro [1][2][3]\ignorearguments \par
```

zero one two three

Todo: explain optional delimiters.

399 `\ignoredepthcriterion`

When setting the `\prevdepth` (either by `TEX` or by the current user) of the current vertical list the value 1000pt is a signal for special treatment of the skip between ‘lines’. There is an article on that in the distribution. It also demonstrates that `\ignoredepthcriterion` can be used to change this special signal, just in case it is needed.

400 `\ignorenestedupto`

This primitive gobbles following tokens and can deal with nested ‘environments’, for example:

```
\def\startfoo{\ignorenestedupto\startfoo\stopfoo}
```

```
(before
\startfoo
  test \startfoo test \stopfoo
  {test \startfoo test \stopfoo}
\stopfoo
after)
```

delivers:

```
(before after)
```

401 `\ignorepars`

This is a variant of `\ignorespaces`: following spaces *and* `\par` equivalent tokens are ignored, so for instance:

```
one + \ignorepars
```

```
two = \ignorepars \par
three
```

renders as: one + two = three. Traditionally `TEX` has been sensitive to `\par` tokens in some of its building blocks. This has to do with the fact that it could indicate a runaway argument which in the times of slower machines and terminals was best to catch early. In `LuaMetaTEX` we no longer have long macros and the mechanisms that are sensitive can be told to accept `\par` tokens (and `ConTEX` set them such that this is the case).

402 `\ignorerest`

An example shows what this primitive does:

```
\tolerant\def\foo[#1]#* [#2]%
  {1234
  \ifparameter#1\or\else
```

```

    \expandafter\ignorereset
\fi
/#1/
\ifparameter#2\or\else
    \expandafter\ignorereset
\fi
/#2/ }

```

```
\foo test \foo[456] test \foo[456][789] test
```

As this likely makes most sense in conditionals you need to make sure the current state is properly finished. Because `\expandafter` bumps the input state, here we actually quit two levels; this is because so called ‘backed up text’ is intercepted by this primitive.

```
1234 test 1234 /456/ test 1234 /456/ /789/ test
```

403 `\ignorespaces`

This traditional \TeX primitive signals the scanner to ignore the following spaces, if any. We mention it because we show a companion in the next section.

404 `\ignoreupto`

This ignores everything upto the given token, so

```
\ignoreupto \foo not this but\foo only this
```

will give: only this.

405 `\immediate`

This one has no effect unless you intercept it at the Lua end and act upon it. In original \TeX `immediate` is used in combination with read from and write to file operations. So, this is an old primitive with a new meaning.

406 `\immutable`

This prefix flags what follows as being frozen and is usually applied to for instance `\integerdef`'d control sequences. In that respect is is like `\permanent` but it makes it possible to distinguish quantities from macros.

407 `\indent`

In engines other than \LuaMetaTeX a paragraph starts with an indentation box. The width of that (empty) box is determined by `\parindent`. In \LuaMetaTeX we can use a dedicated indentation skip instead (as part of paragraph normalization). An indentation can be zero'd with `\undent`.

408 `\indexedsuprescript`

This primitive (or `\script`) puts a flag on the script but renders the same:

```
$
x \indexedsuperprescript{2} \subprescript      {2} +
x \superprescript      {2} \indexedsubprescript{2} +
x \superprescript      {2} _____ {2} =
x \superprescript      {2} \subprescript      {2}
```

Gives: $\frac{2}{2}x + \frac{2}{2}x + \frac{2}{2}x = \frac{2}{2}x$.

409 \indexedsubscript

This primitive (or `__`) puts a flag on the script but renders the same:

```
$
x \indexedsuperscript{2} \subscript      {2} +
x \superscript      {2} \indexedsubscript{2} +
x \superscript      {2} ____ {2} =
x \superscript      {2} \subscript      {2}
```

Gives: $x_2^2 + x_2^2 + x_2^2 = x_2^2$.

410 \indexedsuperprescript

This primitive (or `^^^`) puts a flag on the script but renders the same:

```
$
x \indexedsuperprescript{2} \subprescript      {2} +
x ^^^^ {2} \subprescript      {2} +
x \superprescript      {2} \indexedsubprescript{2} =
x \superprescript      {2} \subprescript      {2}
```

Gives: $\frac{2}{2}x + \frac{2}{2}x + \frac{2}{2}x = \frac{2}{2}x$.

411 \indexedsuperscript

This primitive (or `^^`) puts a flag on the script but renders the same:

```
$
x \indexedsuperscript{2} \subscript      {2} +
x ^^ {2} \subscript      {2} +
x \superscript      {2} \indexedsubscript{2} =
x \superscript      {2} \subscript      {2}
```

Gives: $x_2^2 + x_2^2 + x_2^2 = x_2^2$.

412 \indexofcharacter

This primitive is more versatile variant of the backward quote operator, so instead of:

```
\number`|
\number`~
\number`\a
\number`\q
```

you can say:

```
\the\indexofcharacter |
\the\indexofcharacter ~
\the\indexofcharacter \a
\the\indexofcharacter \q
```

In both cases active characters and unknown single character control sequences are valid. In addition this also works:

```
\chardef \foo 128
\mathchardef\oof 130

\the\indexofcharacter \foo
\the\indexofcharacter \oof
```

An important difference is that `\indexofcharacter` returns an integer and not a serialized number. A negative value indicates no valid character.

413 `\indexofregister`

You can use this instead of `\number` for determining the index of a register but it also returns a number when a register value is seen. The result is an integer, not a serialized number.

When you have defined a register with one of the `\...def` primitives but for some reasons needs to know the register index you can query that:

```
\the\indexofregister \scratchcounterone,
\the\indexofregister \scratchcountertwo,
\the\indexofregister \scratchwidth,
\the\indexofregister \scratchheight,
\the\indexofregister \scratchdepth,
\the\indexofregister \scratchbox
```

We lie a little here because in ConT_EXt the box index `\scratchbox` is actually defined as: `\permanent\constant integer 257` but it still is a number so it fits in.

```
0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 257
```

414 `\inherited`

When this prefix is used in a definition using `\let` the target will inherit all the properties of the source.

415 `\initcatcodetable`

This initializes the catcode table with the given index.

416 \initialpageskip

When a page starts the value of this register are used to initialize `\pagetotal`, `\pagestretch` and `\pageshrink`. This make nicer code than using a `\topskip` with weird values.

417 \initialtopskip

When set this one will be used instead of `\topskip`. The rationale is that the `\topskip` is often also used for side effects and compensation.

418 \input

There are several ways to use this primitive:

```
\input test
\input {test}
\input "test"
\input 'test'
```

When no suffix is given, \TeX will assume the suffix is `.tex`. The second one is normally used.

419 \inputlineno

This integer holds the current linenumber but it is not always reliable.

420 \insert

This stores content in the insert container with the given index. In \LuaMetaTeX inserts bubble up to outer boxes so we don't have the ‘deeply buried insert issue’.

421 \insertbox

This is the accessor for the box (with results) of an insert with the given index. This is equivalent to the `\box` in the traditional method.

422 \insertcopy

This is the accessor for the box (with results) of an insert with the given index. It makes a copy so the original is kept. This is equivalent to a `\copy` in the traditional method.

423 \insertdepth

This is the (current) depth of the inserted material with the given index. It is comparable to the `\dp` in the traditional method.

424 \insertdistance

This is the space before the inserted material with the given index. This is equivalent to `\glue` in the traditional method.

425 `\insertheight`

This is the (current) depth of the inserted material with the given index. It is comparable to the `\ht` in the traditional method.

426 `\insertheights`

This is the combined height of the inserted material.

427 `\insertlimit`

This is the maximum height that the inserted material with the given index can get. This is equivalent to `\dimen` in the traditional method.

428 `\insertmaxdepth`

This is the maximum depth that the inserted material with the given index can get.

429 `\insertmode`

In traditional \TeX inserts are controlled by a `\box`, `\dimen`, `\glue` and `\count` register with the same index. The allocators have to take this into account. When this primitive is set to one a different model is followed with its own namespace. There are more abstract accessors to interface to this.⁷

430 `\insertmultiplier`

This is the height (contribution) multiplier for the inserted material with the given index. This is equivalent to `\count` in the traditional method.

431 `\insertpenalties`

This dual purpose internal counter holds the sum of penalties for insertions that got split. When we're the output routine in reports the number of insertions that is kept in store.

432 `\insertpenalty`

This is the insert penalty associated with the inserted material with the given index.

433 `\insertprogress`

This returns the current accumulated insert height of the insert with the given index.

434 `\insertstorage`

The value passed will enable (one) or disable (zero) the insert with the given index.

⁷ The old model might be removed at some point.

435 `\insertstoring`

The value passed will enable (one) or disable (zero) inserts.

436 `\insertunbox`

This is the accessor for the box (with results) of an insert with the given index. It makes a copy so the original is kept. The content is unpacked and injected. This is equivalent to an `\unvbox` in the traditional method.

437 `\insertuncopy`

This is the accessor for the box (with results) of an insert with the given index. It makes a copy so the original is kept. The content is unpacked and injected. This is equivalent to the `\uncopy` in the traditional method.

438 `\insertwidth`

This is the (current) width of the inserted material with the given index. It is comparable to the `\wd` in the traditional method.

439 `\instance`

This prefix flags a macro as an instance which is mostly relevant when a macro package want to categorize macros.

440 `\integerdef`

You can alias to a count (integer) register with `\countdef`:

```
\countdef\MyCount134
```

Afterwards the next two are equivalent:

```
\MyCount = 99
```

```
\count1234 = 99
```

where `\MyCount` can be a bit more efficient because no index needs to be scanned. However, in terms of storage the value (here 99) is always in the register so `\MyCount` has to get there. This indirectness has the benefit that directly setting the value is reflected in the indirect accessor.

```
\integerdef\MyCount = 99
```

This primitive also defines a numeric equivalent but this time the number is stored with the equivalent. This means that:

```
\let\MyCopyOfCount = \MyCount
```

will store the *current* value of `\MyCount` in `\MyCopyOfCount` and changing either of them is not reflected in the other.

The usual `\advance`, `\multiply` and `\divide` can be used with these integers and they behave like any number. But compared to registers they are actually more a constant.

441 `\interactionmode`

This internal integer can be used to set or query the current interaction mode:

```
\batchmode      0  omits all stops and terminal output
\nonstopmode    1  omits all stops
\scrollmode     2  omits error stops
\errorstopmode  3  stops at every opportunity to interact
```

442 `\interlinepenalties`

This is a more granular variant of `\interlinepenalty`: an array of penalties to be put between successive line from the start of a paragraph. The list starts with the number of penalties that gets passed.

443 `\interlinepenalty`

This is the penalty that is put between lines.

444 `\jobname`

This gives the current job name without suffix: `luametatex`.

445 `\kern`

A kern is injected with the given dimension. For variants that switch to a mode we have `\hkern` and `\vkern`.

446 `\language`

Sets (or returns) the current language, a number. In `LuaTeX` and `LuaMetaTeX` the current language is stored in the glyph nodes.

447 `\lastarguments`

```
\def\MyMacro    #1{\the\lastarguments (#1) }           \MyMacro{1}      \crlf
\def\MyMacro    #1#2{\the\lastarguments (#1) (#2)}     \MyMacro{1}{2}      \crlf
\def\MyMacro#1#2#3{\the\lastarguments (#1) (#2) (#3)} \MyMacro{1}{2}{3} \par

\def\MyMacro    #1{(#1)                               \the\lastarguments} \MyMacro{1}      \crlf
\def\MyMacro    #1#2{(#1) (#2)                         \the\lastarguments} \MyMacro{1}{2}      \crlf
\def\MyMacro#1#2#3{(#1) (#2) (#3) \the\lastarguments} \MyMacro{1}{2}{3} \par
```

The value of `\lastarguments` can only be trusted in the expansion until another macro is seen and expanded. For instance in these examples, as soon as a character (like the left parenthesis) is seen,

horizontal mode is entered and `\everypar` is expanded which in turn can involve macros. You can see that in the second block (that is: unless we changed `\everypar` in the meantime).

```
1(1)
2(1) (2)
3(1) (2) (3)
```

```
(1) 0
(1) (2) 2
(1) (2) (3) 3
```

448 `\lastatomclass`

This returns the class number of the last atom seen in the math input parser.

449 `\lastboundary`

This primitive looks back in the list for a user boundary injected with `\boundary` and when seen it returns that value or otherwise zero.

450 `\lastbox`

When issued this primitive will, if possible, pull the last box from the current list.

451 `\lastchkdimension`

When the last check for a dimension with `\ifchkdimension` was successful this primitive returns the value.

452 `\lastchknumber`

When the last check for an integer with `\ifchknumber` was successful this primitive returns the value.

453 `\lastkern`

This returns the last kern seen in the list (if possible).

454 `\lastleftclass`

This variable registers the first applied math class in a formula.

455 `\lastlinefit`

The ε -TeX manuals explains this parameter in detail but in practice it is enough to know that when set to 1000 spaces in the last line might match those in the previous line. Basically it counters the strong push of a `\parfillskip`.

456 `\lastloopiterator`

In addition to `\currentloopiterator` we have a variant that stores the value in case an unexpanded loop is used:

```
\localcontrolledrepeat 8 { [\the\currentloopiterator\eq\the\lastloopiterator] }
\expandedrepeat        8 { [\the\currentloopiterator\eq\the\lastloopiterator] }
\unexpandedrepeat      8 { [\the\currentloopiterator\ne\the\lastloopiterator] }
```

```
[1=1] [2=2] [3=3] [4=4] [5=5] [6=6] [7=7] [8=8]
[1=1] [2=2] [3=3] [4=4] [5=5] [6=6] [7=7] [8=8]
[0≠1] [0≠2] [0≠3] [0≠4] [0≠5] [0≠6] [0≠7] [0≠8]
```

457 `\lastnamedcs`

The example code in the previous section has some redundancy, in the sense that there to be looked up control sequence name `mymacro` is assembled twice. This is no big deal in a traditional eight bit T_EX but in a Unicode engine multi-byte sequences demand some more processing (although it is unlikely that control sequences have many multi-byte utf8 characters).

```
\ifcsname mymacro\endcsname
  \csname mymacro\endcsname
\fi
```

Instead we can say:

```
\ifcsname mymacro\endcsname
  \lastnamedcs
\fi
```

Although there can be some performance benefits another advantage is that it uses less tokens and parsing. It might even look nicer.

458 `\lastnodesubtype`

When possible this returns the subtype of the last node in the current node list. Possible values can be queried (for each node type) via Lua helpers.

459 `\lastnodetype`

When possible this returns the type of the last node in the current node list. Possible values can be queried via Lua helpers.

460 `\lastpageextra`

This reports the last applied (permitted) overshoot.

461 `\lastparcontext`

When a paragraph is wrapped up the reason is reported by this state variable. Possible values are:

0x00	normal	0x04	dbbox	0x08	output	0x0C	math
0x01	vmode	0x05	vcenter	0x09	align	0x0D	lua
0x02	vbox	0x06	vadjust	0x0A	noalign	0x0E	reset
0x03	vtop	0x07	insert	0x0B	span		

462 `\lastpartrigger`

There are several reasons for entering a paragraphs and some are automatic and triggered by other commands that force \TeX into horizontal mode.

0x00	normal	0x04	mathchar	0x08	math	0x0C	valign
0x01	force	0x05	char	0x09	kern	0x0D	vrule
0x02	indent	0x06	boundary	0x0A	hskip		
0x03	noindent	0x07	space	0x0B	unhbox		

463 `\lastpenalty`

This returns the last penalty seen in the list (if possible).

464 `\lastrightclass`

This variable registers the last applied math class in a formula.

465 `\lastskip`

This returns the last glue seen in the list (if possible).

466 `\lccode`

When the `\lowercase` operation is applied the lowercase code of a character is used for the replacement. This primitive is used to set that code, so it expects two character number. The code is also used to determine what characters make a word suitable for hyphenation, although in $\text{Lua}\TeX$ we introduced the `\hj` code for that.

467 `\leaders`

See `\gleaders` for an explanation.

468 `\left`

Inserts the given delimiter as left fence in a math formula.

469 `\lefthyphenmin`

This is the minimum number of characters after the last hyphen in a hyphenated word.

470 `\leftmarginkern`

The dimension returned is the protrusion kern that has been added (if at all) to the left of the content in the given box.

471 `\leftskip`

This skip will be inserted at the left of every line.

472 `\lefttwindemerits`

Additional demerits for a glyph sequence at the left edge when a previous line also has that sequence.

473 `\leqno`

This primitive stores the (typeset) content (presumably a number) and when the display formula is wrapped that number will end up left of the formula.

474 `\let`

Where a `\def` creates a new macro, either or not with argument, a `\let` creates an alias. You are not limited to aliasing macros, basically everything can be aliased.

475 `\letcharcode`

Assigning a meaning to an active character can sometimes be a bit cumbersome; think of using some documented uppercase magic that one tends to forget as it's used only a few times and then never looked at again. So we have this:

```
{\letcharcode 65 1 \catcode 65 13 A : \meaning A}\crlf
{\letcharcode 65 2 \catcode 65 13 A : \meaning A}\par
```

here we define A as an active charcter with meaning 1 in the first line and 2 in the second.

```
1 : the character U+0031 1
2 : the character U+0032 2
```

Normally one will assign a control sequence:

```
{\letcharcode 66 \bf \catcode 66 13 {B bold}: \meaning B}\crlf
{\letcharcode 73 \it \catcode 73 13 {I italic}: \meaning I}\par
```

Of course `\bf` and `\it` are ConT_EXt specific commands:

```
bold: protected macro:\ifmmode \expandafter \mathbf \else \expandafter \normalbf \fi
italic: protected macro:\ifmmode \expandafter \mathit \else \expandafter \normalit \fi
```

476 `\letcsname`

It is easy to see that we save two tokens when we use this primitive. As with the `..defcs..` variants it also saves a push back of the composed macro name.

```
\expandafter\let\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname\relax
\letcsname MyMacro:1\endcsname\relax
```

477 \letfrozen

You can explicitly freeze an unfrozen macro:

```
\def\MyMacro{...}
\letfrozen\MyMacro
```

A redefinition will now give:

! You can't redefine a frozen macro.

478 \letmathatomrule

You can change the class for a specific style. This probably only makes sense for user classes. It's one of those features that we used when experimenting with more control.

```
\letmathatomrule 4 = 4 4 0 0
\letmathatomrule 5 = 5 5 0 0
```

This changes the classes 4 and 5 into class 0 in the two script styles and keeps them the same in display and text. We leave it to the reader to ponder how useful this is.

479 \letmathparent

This primitive takes five arguments: the target class, and four classes that determine the pre penalty class, post penalty class, options class and a dummy class for future use.

480 \letmathspacing

By default inter-class spacing inherits from the ordinary class but you can remap specific combinations is you want:

```
\letmathspacing \mathfunctioncode
\mathordinarycode \mathordinarycode
\mathordinarycode \mathordinarycode
```

The first value is the target class, and the nest four tell how it behaves in display, text, script and script script style. Here `\mathfunctioncode` is a ConT_EXt specific class (26), one of the many.

481 \letprotected

Say that you have these definitions:

```
\def \MyMacroA{alpha}
\protected \def \MyMacroB{beta}
\edef \MyMacroC{\MyMacroA\MyMacroB}
\letprotected \MyMacroA
\edef \MyMacroD{\MyMacroA\MyMacroB}
```



```
\meaning      \MyMacroC\crlf
\meaning      \MyMacroD\par
```

The typeset meaning in this example is:

```
macro:alpha\MyMacroB
macro:\MyMacroA \MyMacroB
```

482 \lettolastnamedcs

The `\lastnamedcs` primitive is somewhat special as it is a (possible) reference to a control sequence which is why we have a dedicated variant of `\let`.

```
\csname relax\endcsname\let      \foo\lastnamedcs \meaning\foo
\csname relax\endcsname\expandafter\let\expandafter \oof\lastnamedcs \meaning\oof
\csname relax\endcsname\lettolastnamedcs      \ofo      \meaning\ofo
```

These give the following where the first one obviously is not doing what we want and the second one is kind of cumbersome.

```
\lastnamedcs
\relax
\relax
```

483 \lettonothing

This one let's a control sequence to nothing. Assuming that `\empty` is indeed empty, these two lines are equivalent.

```
\let      \foo\empty
\lettonothing\oof
```

484 \limits

This is a modifier: it flags the previous math atom to have its scripts above and below the (summation, product, integral etc.) symbol. In LuaMetaTeX this can be any atom (that is: any class). In display mode the location defaults to above and below.

Like any modifier it looks back for a math specific element. This means that the following will work well:

```
\sum \limits ^2 _3
\sum ^2 \limits _3
\sum ^2 _3 \limits
\sum ^2 _3 \limits \nolimits \limits
```

because scripts are bound to these elements so looking back just sees the element.

485 \linebreakchecks

The value of this parameter is passed to the linebreak callback so that one can act on it if needed.

486 \linebreakoptional

This selects the optional text range that is to be used. Optional content is marked with optional boundary nodes.

487 \linebreakpasses

When set to a positive value it will apply additional line break runs defined with \parpasses until the criteria set in there are met.

488 \linedirection

This sets the text direction (1 for r2l) to the given value but keeps preceding glue into the range.

489 \linepenalty

Every line gets this penalty attached, so normally it is a small value, like here: 10.

490 \lineskip

This is the amount of glue that gets added when the distance between lines falls below \lineskiplimit.

491 \lineskiplimit

When the distance between two lines becomes less than \lineskiplimit a \lineskip glue item is added.

```
\ruledvbox{
  \lineskiplimit 0pt \lineskip3pt \baselineskip0pt
  \ruledhbox{line 1}
  \ruledhbox{line 2}
  \ruledhbox{\textcolor{red}{line 3}}
}
```

Normally the \baselineskip kicks in first but here we've set that to zero, so we get two times a 3pt glue injected.

```
line 1
line 2
line 3
```

492 \localbreakpar

This forces a newline in a paragraph without side effects so that for instance \widowpenalties work as expected in scenarios where using a \

would have been the solution. This is an experimental primitive!

493 \localbrokenpenalty

TODO

494 \localcontrol

This primitive takes a single token:

```
\edef\testa{\scratchcounter123 \the\scratchcounter}
\edef\testc{\testa \the\scratchcounter}
\edef\testd{\localcontrol\testa \the\scratchcounter}
```

The three meanings are:

123

```
\testa macro:\scratchcounter 123 123
\testc macro:\scratchcounter 123 123123
\testd macro:123
```

The \localcontrol makes that the following token gets expanded so we don't see the yet to be expanded assignment show up in the macro body.

495 \localcontrolled

The previously described local control feature comes with two extra helpers. The \localcontrolled primitive takes a token list and wraps this into a local control sidetrack. For example:

```
\edef\testa{\scratchcounter123 \the\scratchcounter}
\edef\testb{\localcontrolled{\scratchcounter123}\the\scratchcounter}
```

The two meanings are:

```
\testa macro:\scratchcounter 123 123
\testb macro:123
```

The assignment is applied immediately in the expanded definition.

496 \localcontrolledendless

As the name indicates this will loop forever. You need to explicitly quit the loop with \quitloop or \quitloopnow. The first quitter aborts the loop at the start of a next iteration, the second one tries to exit immediately, but is sensitive for interference with for instance nested conditionals. Of course in the next case one can just adapt the final iterator value instead. Here we step by 2:

```
\expandedloop 1 20 2 {%
  \ifnum\currentloopiterator>10
    \quitloop
  \else
    [!]
  \fi
}
```

This results in:

```
[!] [!] [!] [!] [!]
```

497 `\localcontrolledloop`

As with more of the primitives discussed here, there is a manual in the ‘lowlevel’ subset that goes into more detail. So, here a simple example has to do:

```
\localcontrolledloop 1 100 1 {%
  \ifnum\currentloopiterator>6\relax
    \quitloop
  \else
    [ \number\currentloopnesting:\number\currentloopiterator]
    \localcontrolledloop 1 8 1 {%
      (\number\currentloopnesting:\number\currentloopiterator)
    }\par
  \fi
}
```

Here we see the main loop primitive being used nested. The code shows how we can `\quitloop` and have access to the `\currentloopiterator` as well as the nesting depth `\currentloopnesting`.

```
[1:1] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)
[1:2] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)
[1:3] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)
[1:4] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)
[1:5] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)
[1:6] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)
```

Be aware of the fact that `\quitloop` will end the loop at the *next* iteration so any content after it will show up. Normally this one will be issued in a condition and we want to end that properly. Also keep in mind that because we use local control (a nested T_EX expansion loop) anything you feed back can be injected out of order.

The three numbers can be separated by an equal sign which is a trick to avoid look ahead issues that can result from multiple serialized numbers without spaces that indicate the end of sequence of digits.

498 `\localcontrolledrepeat`

This one takes one instead three arguments which looks a bit better in simple looping.

499 `\localinterlinepenalty`

TODO

500 `\localleftbox`

This sets the box that gets injected at the left of every line.

501 `\localleftboxbox`

This returns the box set with `\localleftbox`.

502 `\localmiddlebox`

This sets the box that gets injected at the left of every line but its width is ignored.

503 `\localmiddleboxbox`

This returns the box set with `\localmiddlebox`.

504 `\localpretolerance`

TODO

505 `\localrightbox`

This sets the box that gets injected at the right of every line.

506 `\localrightboxbox`

This returns the box set with `\localrightbox`.

507 `\localtolerance`

TODO

508 `\long`

This original prefix gave the macro being defined the property that it could not have `\par` (or the often equivalent empty lines) in its arguments. It was mostly a protection against a forgotten right curly brace, resulting in a so called run-away argument. That mattered on a paper terminal or slow system where such a situation should be caught early. In LuaTeX it was already optional, and in LuaMetaTeX we dropped this feature completely (so that we could introduce others).

509 `\looseness`

The number of lines in the current paragraph will be increased by given number of lines. For this to succeed there need to be enough stretch in the spacing to make that happen. There is some wishful thinking involved.

510 `\lower`

This primitive takes two arguments, a dimension and a box. The box is moved down. The operation only succeeds in horizontal mode.

511 `\lowercase`

This token processor converts character tokens to their lowercase counterparts as defined per `\lc-code`. In order to permit dirty tricks active characters are also processed. We don't really use this primitive in ConTeXt, but for consistency we let it respond to `\expand`:⁸

⁸ Instead of providing `\lowercased` and `\uppercased` primitives that would clash with macros anyway.

```

\edef      \foo      {\lowercase{tex TeX \TEX}} \meaningless\foo
\lowercase{\edef\foo      {tex TeX \TEX}} \meaningless\foo
\edef      \foo{\expand\lowercase{tex TeX \TEX}} \meaningless\foo

```

Watch how `\lowercase` is not expandable but can be forced to. Of course, as the logo macro is protected the \TeX logo remains mixed case.

```

\lowercase {tex TeX \TEX }
tex tex \TEX
tex tex \TEX

```

512 `\lcode`

This one can be used to set the left protrusion factor of a glyph in a font and takes three arguments: font, character code and factor. It is kind of obsolete because we can set up vectors at definition time and tweaking from \TeX can have side effects because it globally adapts the font.

513 `\luaboundary`

This primitive inserts a boundary that takes two integer values. Some mechanisms (like math constructors) can trigger a callback when preceded by such a boundary. As we go more mechanisms might do such a check but we don't want a performance hit on Con \TeX t as we do so (nor unwanted interference).

514 `\luaopcode`

This behaves like `\luafunction` but here the number is a byte code register. These bytecodes are in the `lua.bytecode` array.

515 `\luaopcodecall`

This behaves like `\luafunctioncall` but here the number is a byte code register. These bytecodes are in the `lua.bytecode` array.

516 `\luacopyinputnodes`

When set to a positive value this will ensure that when nodes are printed from Lua to \TeX copies are used.

517 `\luaodef`

This command relates a (user) command to a Lua function registered in the `lua.luaolib_get_functions_table()`, so after:

```

\luaodef\foo123

```

the `\foo` command will trigger the function at index 123. Of course a macro package has to make sure that these definitions are unique.⁹

⁹ Plain \TeX established a norm for allocating registers, like `\newdimen` but there is no such convention for Lua functions.

This command is accompanied by `\luafunctioncall` and `\luafunction`. When we have function 123 defined as

```
function() tex.sprint("!") end
```

the following:

```
(\luafunctioncall \foocode ?)
(\normalluafunction\foocode ?)
(\foo ?)
```

gives three times (!?). But this:

```
\edef\oof{\foo } \meaning\oof % protected
\edef\oof{\luafunctioncall \foocode} \meaning\oof % protected
\edef\oof{\normalluafunction\foocode} \meaning\oof % expands
```

returns:

```
macro:!
macro:\luafunctioncall 1740
macro:!
```

Because the definition command is like any other

```
\permanent\protected\luadef\foo123
```

boils down to:

```
permanent protected luacall 123
```

518 \luaescapestring

This command converts the given (token) list into something that is acceptable for Lua. It is inherited from LuaTeX and not used in ConTeXt.

```
\directlua { tex.print ("\"luaescapestring {\tt This is a "test".})" }
```

Results in: This is a "test". (Watch the grouping.)

519 \luafunction

The integer passed to this primitive is the index in the table returned by `lua.lualib_get_functions_table()`. Of course a macro package has to provide reliable management for this. This is a so called convert command so it expands in an expansion context (like an `\edef`).

520 \luafunctioncall

The integer passed to this primitive is the index in the table returned by `lua.lualib_get_functions_table()`. Of course a macro package has to provide reliable management for this. This primitive doesn't expand in an expansion context (like an `\edef`).

521 \luatexbanner

This gives: This is LuaMetaTeX, Version 2.11.06.

522 \luatexrevision

This is an integer. The current value is: 11.

523 \luatexversion

This is an integer. The current value is: 2.

524 \mark

The given token list is stored in a node in the current list and might become content of \topmark, \botmark or \firstmark when a page split off, or in the case of a box split in \splitbotmark or \splitfirstmark. In LuaMetaTeX deeply burried marks bubbly up to an outer box level.

525 \marks

This command is similar to \mark but first expects a number of a mark register. Multiple marks were introduced in ε -TeX.

526 \mathaccent

This takes a number and a math object to put the accent on. The four byte number has a dummy class byte, a family byte and two index bytes. It is replaced by \Umathaccent that handles wide fonts.

527 \mathatom

This operation wraps following content in a atom with the given class. It is part of LuaMetaTeX's extended math support. There are three class related key/values: class, leftclass and rightclass (or all for all of them). When none is given this command expects a class number before scanning the content. The options key expects a bitset but there are also direct option keys, like limits, nolimits, unpack, unroll, single, nooverflow, void and phantom. A source id can be set, one or more attr assigned, and for specific purposes textfont and mathfont directives are accepted. Features like this are discussed in dedicated manuals.

528 \mathatomglue

This returns the glue that will be inserted between two atoms of a given class for a specific style.

```
\the\mathatomglue \textstyle 1 1
\the\mathatomglue \textstyle 0 2
\the\mathatomglue \scriptstyle 1 1
\the\mathatomglue \scriptstyle 0 2
```

1.66667mu

2.22223mu plus 1.11111mu minus 1.11111mu

1.66667mu
 0.55556mu minus 0.27777mu

529 `\mathatomskip`

This injects a glue with the given style and class pair specification: $xx\ x\ x\ x\ x\ xx\ xx$.

```
$x\ x$
$x\ \mathatomskip\ \textstyle 1\ 1\ x$
$x\ \mathatomskip\ \textstyle 0\ 2\ x$
$x\ \mathatomskip\ \scriptstyle 1\ 1\ x$
$x\ \mathatomskip\ \scriptstyle 0\ 2\ x$
```

530 `\mathbackwardpenalties`

See `\mathforwardpenalties` for an explanation.

531 `\mathbeginclass`

This variable can be set to signal the class that starts the formula (think of an imaginary leading atom).

532 `\mathbin`

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘binary’.

533 `\mathboundary`

This primitive is part of an experiment with granular penalties in math. When set nested fences will use the `\mathdisplaypenaltyfactor` or `\mathinlinepenaltyfactor` to increase nested penalties. A bit more control is possible with `\mathboundary`:

```
0 begin factor 1000
1 end factor 1000
2 begin given factor
3 end given factor
```

These will be used when the mentioned factors are zero. The last two variants expect factor to be given.

534 `\mathchar`

Replaced by `\Umathchar` this old one takes a four byte number: one byte for the class, one for the family and two for the index. The specified character is appended to the list.

535 `\mathcharclass`

Returns the slot (in the font) of the given math character.

```
\the\mathcharclass\Umathchar 4 2 123
```

The first passed number is the class, so we get: 4.

536 `\mathchardef`

Replaced by `\Umathchardef` this primitive relates a control sequence with a four byte number: one byte for the class, one for the family and two for the index. The defined command will insert that character.

537 `\mathcharfam`

Returns the family number of the given math character.

`\the\mathcharfam\Umathchar 4 2 123`

The second passed number is the family, so we get: 2.

538 `\mathcharslot`

Returns the slot (or index in the font) of the given math character.

`\the\mathcharslot\Umathchar 4 2 123`

The third passed number is the slot, so we get: 123.

539 `\mathcheckfencesmode`

When set to a positive value there will be no warning if a right fence (`\right` or `\Uright`) is missing.

540 `\mathchoice`

This command expects four subformulas, for display, text, script and scriptscript and it will eventually use one of them depending on circumstances later on. Keep in mind that a formula is first scanned and when that is finished the analysis and typesetting happens.

541 `\mathclass`

There are built in classes and user classes. The first possible user class is 20 and the last one is 60. You can better not touch the special classes ‘all’ (61), ‘begin’ (62) and ‘end’ (63). The basic 8 classes that original \TeX provides are of course also present in $\text{LuaMeta}\TeX$. In addition we have some that relate to constructs that the engine builds.

ordinary	ord	0	the default
operator	op	1	small and large operators
binary	bin	2	
relation	rel	3	
open		4	
close		5	
punctuation	punct	6	
variable		7	adapts to the current family
active		8	character marked as such becomes active

inner	9	this class is not possible for characters
<hr/>		
under	10	
over	11	
fraction	12	
radical	13	
middle	14	
accent	16	
fenced	17	
ghost	18	
vcenter	19	

There is no standard for user classes but ConT_EXt users should be aware of quite some additional ones that are set up. The engine initialized the default properties of classes (spacing, penalties, etc.) the same as original T_EX.

Normally characters have class bound to them but you can (temporarily) overload that one. The `\mathclass` primitive expects a class number and a valid character number or math character and inserts the symbol as if it were of the given class; so the original class is replaced.

`\ruledhbox{(x)}` and `\ruledhbox{$\mathclass 1 `(x\mathclass 1 `)$}`

Changing the class is likely to change the spacing, compare \boxed{x} and \boxed{x} .

542 `\mathclose`

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘close’.

543 `\mathcode`

This maps a character to one in a family: the assigned value has one byte for the class, one for the family and two for the index. It has little use in an OpenType math setup.

544 `\mathdictgroup`

This is an experimental feature that in due time will be explored in ConT_EXt. It currently has no consequences for rendering.

545 `\mathdictionary`

This is an experimental feature that in due time will be explored in ConT_EXt. It currently has no consequences for rendering.

546 `\mathdictproperties`

This is an experimental feature that in due time will be explored in ConT_EXt. It currently has no consequences for rendering.

547 `\mathdirection`

When set to 1 this will result in r2l typeset math formulas but of course you then also need to set up math accordingly (which is the case in ConT_EXt).

548 `\mathdiscretionary`

The usual `\discretionary` command is supported in math mode but it has the disadvantage that one needs to make sure that the content triplet does the math right (especially the style). This command takes an optional class specification.

```
\mathdiscretionary          {+} {+} {+}
\mathdiscretionary class \mathbinarycode {+} {+} {+}
```

It uses the same logic as `\mathchoice` but in this case we handle three snippets in the current style.

A fully automatic mechanism kicks in when a character has a `\hmcode` set:

bit	meaning	explanation
1	normal	a discretionary is created with the same components
2	italic	following italic correction is kept with the component

So we can say:

```
\hmcode `+ 3
```

When the italic bit is set italic correction is kept at a linebreak.

549 `\mathdisplaymode`

Display mode is entered with two dollars (other characters can be used but the dollars are a convention). Mid paragraph display formulas get a different treatment with respect to the width and indentation than stand alone. When `\mathdisplaymode` is larger than zero the double dollars (or equivalents) will behave as inline formulas starting out in `\displaystyle` and with `\everydisplay` expanded.

550 `\mathdisplaypenaltyfactor`

This one is similar to `\mathinlinepenaltyfactor` but is used when we're in display style.

551 `\mathdisplayskipmode`

A display formula is preceded and followed by vertical glue specified by `\abovedisplayskip` and `\belowdisplayskip` or `\abovedisplayshortskip` and `\belowdisplayshortskip`. Spacing 'above' is always inserted, even when zero, but the spacing 'below' is only inserted when it is non-zero. There's also `\baselineskip` involved. The way spacing is handled can be influenced with `\mathdisplayskipmode`, which takes the following values:

value	meaning
0	does the same as any T _E X engine

- 1 idem
 - 2 only insert spacing when it is not zero
 - 3 never insert spacing
-

552 `\mathdoublescriptmode`

When this parameter has a negative value double scripts trigger an error, so with `\superscript`, `\nosuperscript`, `\indexedsuperscript`, `\superprescript`, `\nosuperprescript`, `\indexedsuperprescript`, `\subscript`, `\nosubscript`, `\indexedsubscript`, `\subprescript`, `\nosubprescript`, `\indexedsubprescript` and `\primescript`, as well as their (multiple) `_` and `^` aliases.

A value of zero does the normal and inserts a dummy atom (basically a `{}`) but a positive value is more interesting. Compare these:

```
\mathdoublescriptmode 0      $x_x_x$}
\mathdoublescriptmode"000000 $x_x_x$}
\mathdoublescriptmode"030303 $x_x_x$}
{$x_x_x$}
```

The three pairs of bytes indicate the main class, left side class and right side class of the inserted atom, so we get this: $x_{xx} x_{xx} x_x x_{xx}$. The last line gives what `ConTEXt` is configured for.

553 `\mathendclass`

This variable can be set to signal the class that ends the formula (think of an imaginary trailing atom).

554 `\matheqnogapstep`

The display formula number placement heuristic puts the number on the same line when there is place and then separates it by a quad. In `LuaTEX` we decided to keep that quantity as it can be tight into the math font metrics but introduce a multiplier `\matheqnogapstep` that defaults to 1000.

555 `\mathfontcontrol`

This bitset controls how the math engine deals with fonts, and provides a way around dealing with inconsistencies in the way they are set up. The `\fontmathcontrol` makes it possible to bind options of a specific math font. In practice, we just set up the general approach which is possible because we normalize the math fonts and ‘fix’ issues at runtime.

```
0x00000001 usefontcontrol
0x00000002 overrule
0x00000004 underrule
0x00000008 radicalrule
0x00000010 fractionrule
0x00000020 accentskewhalf
0x00000040 accentskewapply
0x00000080 applyordinarykernpair
0x00000100 applyverticalitalickern
0x00000200 applyordinaryitalickern
0x00000400 applycharitalickern
```

```

0x00000800 reboxcharitalickern
0x00001000 applyboxeditalickern
0x00002000 staircasekern
0x00004000 applytextitalickern
0x00008000 checktextitalickern
0x00010000 checkspaceitalickern
0x00020000 applyscriptitalickern
0x00040000 analyzescrptnucleuschar
0x00080000 analyzescrptnucleuslist
0x00100000 analyzescrptnucleusbox
0x00200000 accenttopskewwithoffset
0x00400000 ignorekerndimensions
0x00800000 ignoreflataccents
0x01000000 extendaccents
0x02000000 extenddelimiters

```

556 \mathforwardpenalties

Inline math can have multiple atoms and constructs and one can configure the penalties between then bases on classes. In addition it is possible to configure additional penalties starting from the beginning or end using `\mathforwardpenalties` and `\mathbackwardpenalties`. This is one the features that we added in the perspective of breaking paragraphs heavy on math into lines. It not that easy to come up with useable values.

These penalties are added to the regular penalties between atoms. Here is an example, as with other primitives that take more arguments the first number indicates how much follows.

```

$ a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h = x $ \par
\mathforwardpenalties 3 300 200 100
\mathbackwardpenalties 3 250 150 50
$ a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h = x $ \par

```

You'll notice that we apply more severe penalties at the edges:

$a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h = x$

$a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h = x$

557 \mathgluemode

We can influence the way math glue is handled. By default stretch and shrink is applied but this variable can be used to change that. The limit option ensures that the stretch and shrink doesn't go beyond their natural values.

```

0x01 stretch
0x02 shrink
0x04 limit

```

558 `\mathgroupingmode`

Normally a `{}` or `\bgroup-\egroup` pair in math create a math list. However, users are accustomed to using it also for grouping and then a list being created might not be what a user wants. As an alternative to the more verbose `\begingroup-\endgroup` or even less sensitive `\beginmathgroup-\endmathgroup` you can set the math grouping mode to a non zero value which makes curly braces (and the aliases) behave as expected.

559 `\mathinlinenpenaltyfactor`

A math formula can have nested (sub)formulas and one might want to discourage a line break inside those. If this value is non zero it becomes a multiplier, so a value of 1000 will make an inter class penalty of 100 into 200 when at nesting level 2 and 500 when at level 5.

560 `\mathinner`

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘inner’. In LuaMetaTeX we have more classes and this general wrapper one is therefore kind of redundant.

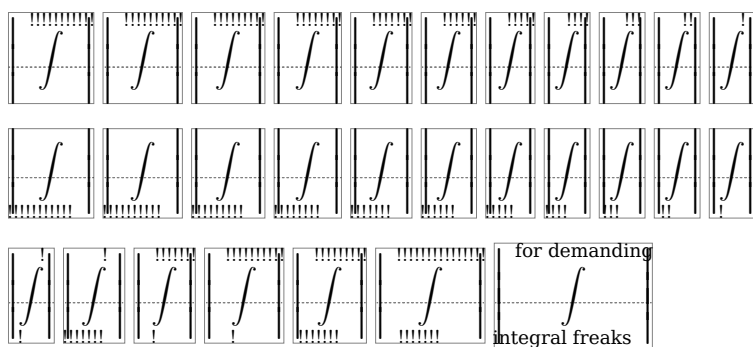
561 `\mathleftclass`

When set this class will be used when a formula starts.

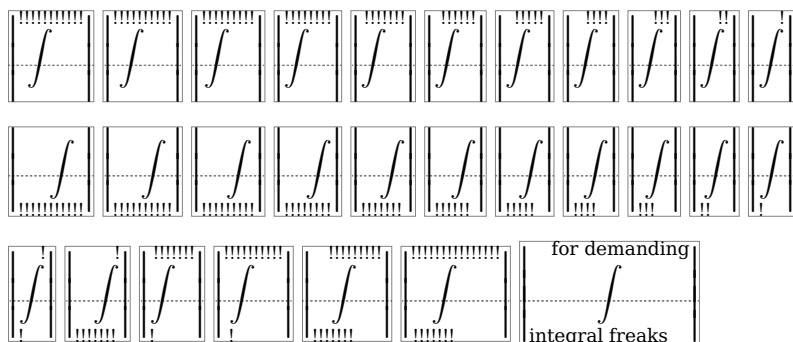
562 `\mathlimitsmode`

When this parameter is set to a value larger than zero real dimensions are used and longer limits will not stick out, which is a traditional T_EX feature. We could have more advanced control but this will do.

Compare the zero setting:



with the positive variant:



Here we switched to Latin Modern because it's font dependent how serious this issue is. In Pagella all is fine in both modes.

563 `\mathmainstyle`

This inspector returns the outermost math style (contrary to `\mathstyle`), as we can see in the next examples where use these snippets:

```
\def\foo{(\the\mathmainstyle,\the\mathstyle)}
\def\oof{\sqrt{\foo}{\foo}}
\def\ofo{\frac{\foo}{\foo}}
\def\fof{\mathchoice{\foo}{\foo}{\foo}{\foo}}
```

When we use the regular math triggers we get this:

```
$\displaystyle \foo + \oof + \ofo$
$\textstyle \foo + \oof + \ofo$
$\displaystyle \foo + \fof$
$\textstyle \foo + \fof$
$\scriptstyle \foo + \fof$
$\scriptscriptstyle \foo + \fof$
```

```
(2, 0) + (2, 0)√(2, 0) + (2, 5)
(2, 2) + (2, 2)√(2, 2) + (2, 5)
(2, 0) + (2, 0)
(2, 2) + (2, 2)
(2, 4)+(2, 4)
(2, 6)+(2, 6)
```

But we can also do this:

```
\Ustartmathmode \displaystyle \foo + \oof + \ofo \Ustopmathmode
\Ustartmathmode \textstyle \foo + \oof + \ofo \Ustopmathmode
\Ustartmathmode \displaystyle \foo + \fof \Ustopmathmode
\Ustartmathmode \textstyle \foo + \fof \Ustopmathmode
\Ustartmathmode \scriptstyle \foo + \fof \Ustopmathmode
\Ustartmathmode \scriptscriptstyle \foo + \fof \Ustopmathmode
```

```
(0, 0) + (0, 0)√(0, 0) + (0, 5)
(2, 2) + (2, 2)√(2, 2) + (2, 5)
(0, 0) + (0, 0)
(2, 2) + (2, 2)
(4, 4)+(4, 4)
(6, 6)+(6, 6)
```

564 `\mathnolimitsmode`

This parameter influences the placement of scripts after an operator. The reason we have this lays in the fact that traditional T_EX uses italic correction and OpenType math does the same but fonts are not consistent in how they set this up. Actually, in OpenType math it's the only reason that there is italic correction. Say that we have a shift δ determined by the italic correction:

mode	top	bottom
0	0	$-\delta$
1	$\delta \times f_t$	$\delta \times f_b$
2	0	0
3	0	$-\delta/2$
4	$\delta/2$	$-\delta/2$
> 15	0	$-n \times \delta/1000$

Mode 1 uses two font parameters: f_b : `\Umathnolimitsubfactor` and f_t : `\Umathnolimitsupfactor`.

565 `\mathop`

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘operator’.

566 `\mathopen`

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘open’.

567 `\mathord`

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘ordinary’.

568 `\mathparentstyle`

This inspector returns the math style used in a construct, so is is either equivalent to `\mathmainstyle` or a nested `\mathstyle`. For instance in a nested fraction we get this (in ConT_EXt) in display formulas:

$$\frac{\frac{(0,1,5)}{\frac{(0,1,5)}{(0,1,5)}}}{(0,1,5)} + (0,0,0)$$

but this in inline formulas:

$$\frac{\frac{(2,5,7)}{\frac{(2,5,7)}{(2,5,7)}}}{(2,5,7)} + (2,2,2)$$

where the first element in a nested fraction.

569 `\mathpenaltiesmode`

Normally the T_EX math engine only inserts penalties when in `textstyle`. You can force penalties in `displaystyle` with this parameter. In inline math we always honor penalties, with mode 0 and mode 1 we get this:

$$\begin{array}{l} x + 2x = 0 \\ x + 2x = 1 \end{array}$$

However in ConT_EXt, where all is done in inline math mode, we set this this parameter to 1, otherwise we wouldn't get these penalties, as shown next:

$$x + 2x = 0$$

$$x + 2x = 1$$

If one uses a callback it is possible to force penalties from there too.

570 `\mathpretolerance`

This is used instead of `\pretolerance` when a breakpoint is calculated when a math formula starts.

571 `\mathpunct`

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘punctuation’.

572 `\mathrel`

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘relation’.

573 `\mathrightclass`

When set this class will be used when a formula ends.

574 `\mathrulesfam`

When set, this family will be used for setting rule properties in fractions, under and over.

575 `\mathrulesmode`

When set to a non zero value rules (as in fractions and radicals) will be based on the font parameters in the current family.

576 `\mathscale`

In LuaMetaTeX we can either have a family of three (text, script and scriptscript) fonts or we can use one font that we scale and where we also pass information about alternative shapes for the smaller sizes. When we use this more compact mode this primitive reflects the scale factor used.

What gets reported depends on how math is implemented, where in ConTeXt we can have either normal or compact mode: 1000 700 550 1000 700 550. In compact mode we have the same font three times so then it doesn't matter which of the three is passed.

577 `\mathscriptsmode`

There are situations where you don't want TeX to be clever and optimize the position of super- and subscripts by shifting. This parameter can be used to influence this.

$0: x_2^2 + y_x^x + z_2 + w^2$	$0: x_2^2 + y_x^x + z_2 + w^2$	$2: x_2^2 + y_x^x + z_2 + w^2$
$0: x_f^f + y_x^x + z_f + w^f$	$0: x_f^f + y_x^x + z_f + w^f$	$2: x_f^f + y_x^x + z_f + w^f$
1 over 0	2 over 0	2 over 1

The next table shows what parameters kick in when:

	or (1)	and (2)	otherwise
super	sup shift up	sup shift up	sup shift up, sup bot min
sub	sub shift down	sub sup shift down	sub shift down, sub top max
both	sub shift down	sub sup shift down	sub sup shift down, sub sup vgap, sup sub bot max

578 `\mathslackmode`

When positive this parameter will make sure that script spacing is discarded when there is no reason to add it.

$x^2 + x^2 x^2$	$x^2 + x^2 x^2$	$x^2 + x^2 x^2$
disabled (0)	enabled (1)	enabled over disabled

579 `\mathspacingmode`

Zero inter-class glue is not injected but setting this parameter to a positive value bypasses that check. This can be handy when checking (tracing) how (and what) spacing is applied. Keep in mind that glue in math is special in the sense that it is not a valid breakpoint. Line breaks in (inline) math are driven by penalties.

580 `\mathstack`

There are a few commands in $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ that can behave confusing due to the way they are scanned. Compare these:

```
$ 1 \over 2 $
$ 1 + x \over 2 + x $
$ {1 + x} \over {2 + x} $
$ {{1 + x} \over {2 + x}} $
```

A single 1 is an atom as is the curly braced $1 + x$. The two arguments to `\over` eventually will get typeset in the style that this fraction constructor uses for the numerator and denominator but one might actually also like to relate that to the circumstances. It is comparable to using a `\mathchoice`. In order not to waste runtime on four variants, which itself can have side effects, for instance when counters are involved, $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ introduced `\mathstack`, used like:

```
$\mathstack {1 \over 2}$
```

This `\mathstack` command will scan the next brace and opens a new math group with the correct (in this case numerator) math style. The `\mathstackstyle` primitive relates to this feature that defaults to ‘smaller unless already scriptscript’.

581 `\mathstackstyle`

This returns the (normally) numerator style but the engine can be configured to default to another style. Although all these in the original $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ engines hard coded style values can be changed in $\text{Lua-MetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ it is unlikely to happen. So this primitive will normally return the (current) style ‘smaller unless already scriptscript’.

582 `\mathstyle`

This returns the current math style, so `\the\mathstyle` gives 2.

583 `\mathstylefontid`

This returns the font id (a number) of a style/family combination. What you get back depends on how a macro package implements math fonts.

```
(\the\mathstylefontid\textstyle      \fam)
(\the\mathstylefontid\scriptstyle    \fam)
(\the\mathstylefontid\scriptscriptstyle\fam)
```

In ConT_EXt gives: (2) (2) (2).

584 `\mathsurround`

The kern injected before and after an inline math formula. In practice it will be set to zero, if only because otherwise nested math will also get that space added. We also have `\mathsurroundskip` which, when set, takes precedence. Spacing is controlled by `\mathsurroundmode`.

585 `\mathsurroundmode`

The possible ways to control spacing around inline math formulas in other manuals and mostly serve as playground.

586 `\mathsurroundskip`

When set this one wins over `\mathsurround`.

587 `\maththreshold`

This is a glue parameter. The amount determines what happens: when it is non zero and the inline formula is less than that value it will become a special kind of box that can stretch and/ or shrink within the given specification. The par builder will use these stretch and/ or shrink components but it is up to one of the Lua callbacks to deal with the content eventually (if at all). As this is somewhat specialized, more details can be found on ConT_EXt documentation.

588 `\mathtolerance`

This is used instead of `\tolerance` when a breakpoint is calculated when a math formula starts.

589 `\maxdeadcycles`

When the output routine is called this many times and no page is shipped out an error will be triggered. You therefore need to reset its companion counter `\deadcycles` if needed. Keep in mind that LuaMetaT_EX has no real `\shipout` because providing a backend is up to the macro package.

590 \maxdepth

The depth of the page is limited to this value.

591 \meaning

We start with a primitive that will be used in the following sections. The reported meaning can look a bit different than the one reported by other engines which is a side effect of additional properties and more extensive argument parsing.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaning\foo
```

```
tolerant protected macro:[#1]#*[#2]->(#1)(#2)
```

592 \meaningasis

Although it is not really round trip with the original due to information being lost this primitive tries to return an equivalent definition.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaningasis\foo
```

```
\permanent \tolerant \protected \def \foo [#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)}
```

593 \meaningful

This one reports a bit less than \meaningful.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaningful\foo
```

```
permanent tolerant protected macro
```

594 \meaningfull

This one reports a bit more than \meaning.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaningfull\foo
```

```
permanent tolerant protected macro:[#1]#*[#2]->(#1)(#2)
```

595 \meaningless

This one reports a bit less than \meaningless.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaningless\foo
```

```
[#1]#*[#2]
```

596 \meaningless

This one reports a bit less than \meaning.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaningless\foo
```

`[#1]#*[#2]->(#1)(#2)`

597 `\medmuskip`

A predefined mu skip register that can be used in math (inter atom) spacing. The current value is 4.0μ plus 2.0μ minus 2.0μ . In traditional \TeX most inter atom spacing is hard coded using the predefined registers.

598 `\message`

Prints the serialization of the (tokenized) argument to the log file and/or console.

599 `\middle`

Inserts the given delimiter as middle fence in a math formula. In $\text{LuaMeta}\text{\TeX}$ it is a full blown fence and not (as in $\varepsilon\text{-}\text{\TeX}$) variation of `\open`.

600 `\mkern`

This one injects a kern node in the current (math) list and expects a value in so called mu units.

601 `\month`

This internal number starts out with the month that the job started.

602 `\moveleft`

This primitive takes two arguments, a dimension and a box. The box is moved to the left. The operation only succeeds in vertical mode.

603 `\moveright`

This primitive takes two arguments, a dimension and a box. The box is moved to the right. The operation only succeeds in vertical mode.

604 `\mskip`

The given math glue (in mu units) is injected in the horizontal list. For this to succeed we need to be in math mode.

605 `\muexpr`

This is a companion of `\glueexpr` so it handles the optional stretch and shrink components. Here math units (μ) are expected.

606 `\mugluespecdef`

A variant of `\gluespecdef` that expects mu units is:

`\mugluespecdef\MyGlue = 3mu plus 2mu minus 1mu`

The properties are comparable to the ones described in the previous sections.

607 `\multiply`

The given quantity is multiplied by the given integer (that can be preceded by the keyword ‘by’, like:

`\scratchdimen=10pt \multiply\scratchdimen by 3`

608 `\multiplyby`

This is slightly more efficient variant of `\multiply` that doesn't look for by. See previous section.

609 `\muskip`

This is the accessor for an indexed muskip (muglue) register.

610 `\muskipdef`

This command associates a control sequence with a muskip (math skip) register (accessed by number).

611 `\mutable`

This prefix flags what follows can be adapted and is not subjected to overload protection.

612 `\mutoglue`

The sequence `\the\mutoglue 20mu plus 10mu minus 5mu` gives 20.0pt plus 10.0pt minus 5.0pt.

613 `\nestedloopiterator`

This is one of the accessors of loop iterators:

```
\expandedrepeat 2 {%
  \expandedrepeat 3 {%
    (n=\the\nestedloopiterator 1,
     p=\the\previousloopiterator1,
     c=\the\currentloopiterator)
  }%
}%
```

Gives:

(n=1, p=1, c=1) (n=2, p=1, c=2) (n=3, p=1, c=3) (n=1, p=2, c=1) (n=2, p=2, c=2) (n=3, p=2, c=3)

Where a nested iterator starts relative to innermost loop, the previous one is relative to the outer loop (which is less predictable because we can already be in a loop).

614 \newlinechar

When something is printed to one of the log channels the character with this code will trigger a linebreak. That also resets some counters that deal with suppressing redundant ones and possible indentation. Contrary to other engines LuaMetaTeX doesn't bother about the length of lines.

615 \noalign

The token list passed to this primitive signals that we don't enter a table row yet but for instance in a \halign do something between the lines: some calculation or injecting inter-row material. In LuaMetaTeX this primitive can be used nested.

616 \noaligned

The alignment mechanism is kind of special when it comes to expansion because it has to look ahead for a \noalign. This interferes with for instance protected macros, but using this prefix we get around that. Among the reasons to use protected macros inside an alignment is that they behave better inside for instance \expanded.

617 \noatomruling

Spacing in math is based on classes and this primitive inserts a signal that there is no ruling in place here. Basically we have a zero skip glue tagged as non breakable because in math mode glue is not a valid breakpoint unless we have configured inter-class penalties.

618 \noboundary

This inserts a boundary node with no specific property. It can still serve as boundary but is not interpreted in special ways, like the others.

619 \noexpand

This prefix prevents expansion in a context where expansion happens. Another way to prevent expansion is to define a macro as \protected.

```

\def\foo{foo} \edef\oof{we expanded \foo} \meaning\oof
\def\foo{foo} \edef\oof{we keep \noexpand\foo} \meaning\oof
\protected\def\foo{foo} \edef\oof{we keep \foo} \meaning\oof

```

macro:we expanded foo

macro:we keep \foo

macro:we keep \foo

620 \nohrule

This is a rule but flagged as empty which means that the dimensions kick in as for a normal rule but the backend can decide not to show it.

621 \noindent

This starts a paragraph. In Lua \TeX (and LuaMeta \TeX) a paragraph starts with a so called par node (see `\indent` on how control that. After that comes either `\parindent` glue or a horizontal box. The `\indent` makes gives them some width, while `\noindent` keeps that zero.

622 \nolimits

This is a modifier: it flags the previous math atom to have its scripts after the the atom (contrary to `\limits`. In LuaMeta \TeX this can be any atom (that is: any class). In display mode the location defaults to above and below.

623 \nomathchar

This can be used when a math character is expected but not available (or needed).

624 \nonscript

This prevents \TeX from adding inter-atom glue at this spot in script or scriptscript mode. It actually is a special glue itself that serves as signal.

625 \nonstopmode

This directive omits all stops.

626 \norelax

The rationale for this command can be shown by a few examples:

```
\dimen0 1pt \dimen2 1pt \dimen4 2pt
\edef\testa{\ifdim\dimen0=\dimen2\norelax N\else Y\fi}
\edef\testb{\ifdim\dimen0=\dimen2\relax N\else Y\fi}
\edef\testc{\ifdim\dimen0=\dimen4\norelax N\else Y\fi}
\edef\testd{\ifdim\dimen0=\dimen4\relax N\else Y\fi}
\edef\teste{\norelax}
```

The five meanings are:

```
\testa macro:N
\testb macro:\relax N
\testc macro:Y
\testd macro:Y
\teste macro:
```

So, the `\norelax` acts like `\relax` but is not pushed back as usual (in some cases).

627 \normalizelinemode

The \TeX engine was not designed to be opened up, and therefore the result of the linebreak effort can differ depending on the conditions. For instance not every line gets the left- or rightskip. The first and

last lines have some unique components too. When LuaT_EX made it possible too get the (intermediate) result manipulating the result also involved checking what one encountered, for instance glue and its origin. In LuaMetaT_EX we can normalize lines so that they have for instance balanced skips.

0x0001	normalizeline	0x0040	clipwidth
0x0002	parindentskip	0x0080	flattendiscretionaries
0x0004	swaphangindent	0x0100	discardzerotabskips
0x0008	swapparshape	0x0200	flattenhleaders
0x0010	breakafterdir	0x0400	balanceinlinemath
0x0020	removemarginkerns		

The order in which the skips get inserted when we normalize is as follows:

<code>\lefthangskip</code>	the hanging indentation (or zero)
<code>\leftskip</code>	the value even when zero
<code>\parfillleftskip</code>	only on the last line
<code>\parinitleftskip</code>	only on the first line
<code>\indentskip</code>	the amount of indentation
...	the (optional) content
<code>\parinitrightskip</code>	only on the first line
<code>\parfillrightskip</code>	only on the last line
<code>\correctionskip</code>	the correction needed to stay within the <code>\hsize</code>
<code>\rightskip</code>	the value even when zero
<code>\righthangskip</code>	the hanging indentation (or zero)

The init and fill skips can both show up when we have a single line. The correction skip replaces the traditional juggling with the right skip and shift of the boxed line.

For now we leave the other options to your imagination. Some of these can be achieved by callbacks (as we did in older versions of ConT_EXt) but having the engine do the work we get a better performance.

628 `\normalizemode`

For now we just mention the few options available. It is also worth mentioning that LuaMetaT_EX tries to balance the direction nodes.

0x01	normalizepar	0x04	limitprevgraf
0x02	flattenvleaders	0x08	keepinterlinepenalties

629 `\noscript`

In math we can have multiple pre- and postscript. These get typeset in pairs and this primitive can be used to skip one. More about multiple scripts (and indices) can be found in the ConT_EXt math manual.

630 `\nospaces`

When `\nospaces` is set to 1 no spaces are inserted, when its value is 2 a zero space is inserted. The default value is 0 which means that spaces become glue with properties depending on the font,

specific parameters and/or space factors determined preceding characters. A value of 3 will inject a glyph node with code `\spacechar`.

631 `\nosubprescript`

This processes the given script in the current style, so:

comes out as: ${}_2x + {}_2x + {}_2x$.

632 `\nosubscript`

This processes the given script in the current style, so:

comes out as: $x_2 + x_2 + x_2$.

633 `\nosuperprescript`

This processes the given script in the current style, so:

comes out as: ${}^2x + {}^2x + {}^2x$.

634 `\nosuperscript`

This processes the given script in the current style, so:

comes out as: $x^2 + {}^2x + {}^2x$.

635 `\novrule`

This is a rule but flagged as empty which means that the dimensions kick in as for a normal rule but the backend can decide not to show it.

636 `\nulldelimiterspace`

In fenced math delimiters can be invisible in which case this parameter determines the amount of space (width) that ghost delimiter takes.

637 `\nullfont`

This a symbolic reference to a font with no glyphs and a minimal set of font dimensions.

638 `\number`

This \TeX primitive serializes the next token into a number, assuming that it is indeed a number, like

`\number`A`

`\number65`

`\number\scratchcounter`

For counters and such the `\the` primitive does the same, but when you're not sure if what follows is a verbose number or (for instance) a counter the `\number` primitive is a safer bet, because `\the 65` will not work.

639 `\numericsscale`

This primitive can best be explained by a few examples:

```
\the\numericsscale 1323
\the\numericsscale 1323.0
\the\numericsscale 1.323
\the\numericsscale 13.23
```

In several places \TeX uses a scale but due to the lack of floats it then uses 1000 as 1.0 replacement. This primitive can be used for ‘real’ scales:

```
1323000
1323000
1323
13230
```

640 `\numERICscaled`

This is a variant if `\numericsscale`:

```
\scratchcounter 1000
\the\numERICscaled 1323 \scratchcounter
\the\numERICscaled 1323.0 \scratchcounter
\the\numERICscaled 1.323 \scratchcounter
\the\numERICscaled 13.23 \scratchcounter
```

The second number gets multiplied by the first fraction:

```
1323000
1323000
1323
13230
```

641 `\numexpr`

This primitive was introduced by $\varepsilon\text{-TeX}$ and supports a simple expression syntax:

```
\the\numexpr 10 * (1 + 2 - 5) / 2 \relax
```

gives: -10. You can mix in symbolic integers and dimensions.

642 `\numexpression`

The normal `\numexpr` primitive understands the `+`, `-`, `*` and `/` operators but in \LuaMetaTeX we also can use `:` for a non rounded integer division (think of Lua's `//`). if you want more than that, you can use the new expression primitive where you can use the following operators.

add	+	
subtract	-	
multiply	*	
divide	/ :	
mod	%	mod
band	&	band
bxor	^	bxor
bor	v	bor
and	&&	and
or		or
setbit	<undecided>	bset
resetbit	<undecided>	breset
left	<<	
right	>>	
less	<	
lessequal	<=	
equal	= ==	
moreequal	>=	
more	>	
unequal	<> != ~=	
not	! ~	not

An example of the verbose bitwise operators is:

```
\scratchcounter = \numexpression
"00000 bor "00001 bor "00020 bor "00400 bor "08000 bor "F0000
\relax
```

In the table you might have notices that some operators have equivalents. This makes the scanner a bit less sensitive for catcode regimes.

When \tracingexpressions is set to one or higher the intermediate ‘reverse polish notation’ stack that is used for the calculation is shown, for instance:

```
4:8: {numexpression rpn: 2 5 > 4 5 > and}
```

When you want the output on your console, you need to say:

```
\tracingexpressions 1
\tracingonline      1
```

Here are some things that \numexpr is not suitable for but \numexpression can handle:

```
\scratchcounter = \numexpression
"00000 bor "00001 bor "00020 bor "00400 bor "08000 bor "F0000
\relax

\ifcase \numexpression
  (\scratchcounterone > 5) && (\scratchcountertwo > 5)
\relax yes\else nop\fi
```

643 \omit

This primitive cancels the template set for the upcoming cell. Often it is used in combination with `\span`.

644 \optionalboundary

This boundary is used to mark optional content. An positive `\optionalboundary` starts a range and a zero one ends it. Nesting is not supported. Optional content is considered when an additional paragraph pass enables it as part of its recipe.

645 \or

This traditional primitive is part of the condition testing mechanism and relates to an `\ifcase` test (or a similar test to be introduced in later sections). Depending on the value, \TeX will do a fast scanning till the right `\or` is seen, then it will continue expanding till it sees a `\or` or `\else` or `\orelse` (to be discussed later). It will then do a fast skipping pass till it sees an `\fi`.

646 \orelse

This primitive provides a convenient way to flatten your conditional tests. So instead of

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter<-10
  too small
\else\ifnum\scratchcounter>10
  too large
\else
  just right
\fi\fi
```

You can say this:

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter<-10
  too small
\orelse\ifnum\scratchcounter>10
  too large
\else
  just right
\fi
```

You can mix tests and even the case variants will work in most cases¹⁰

```
\ifcase\scratchcounter      zero
\or                          one
\or                          two
\orelse\ifnum\scratchcounter<10 less than ten
\else                        ten or more
\fi
```

¹⁰ I just play safe because there are corner cases that might not work yet.

Performance wise there are no real benefits although in principle there is a bit less housekeeping involved than with nested checks. However you might like this:

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter<-10
  \expandafter\toosmall
\orelse\ifnum\scratchcounter>10
  \expandafter\toolarge
\else
  \expandafter\justright
\fi
```

over:

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter<-10
  \expandafter\toosmall
\else\ifnum\scratchcounter>10
  \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\toolarge
\else
  \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\justright
\fi\fi
```

or the more ConT_EXt specific:

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter<-10
  \expandafter\toosmall
\else\ifnum\scratchcounter>10
  \doubleexpandafter\toolarge
\else
  \doubleexpandafter\justright
\fi\fi
```

But then, some T_EXies like complex and obscure code and throwing away working old code that took ages to perfect and get working and also showed that one masters T_EX might hurt.

There is a nice side effect of this mechanism. When you define:

```
\def\quitcondition{\orelse\iffalse}
```

you can do this:

```
\ifnum\count0<10
  less
\orelse\ifnum\count0=10
  equal
  \quitcondition
  indeed
\else
  more
\fi
```

Of course it is only useful at the right level, so you might end up with cases like

```
\ifnum\count0<10
```

```

less
\orelse\ifnum\count0=10
  equal
  \ifnum\count2=30
    \expandafter\quitcondition
  \fi
  indeed
\else
  more
\fi

```

647 \orphanpenalties

This is a (single entry) array parameter: first the size is given followed by that amount of penalties. These penalties are injected before spaces, going backward from the end of a paragraph. When we see a math node with a penalty set then we take the max and jump over a (preceding) skip.

648 \orunless

This is the negated variant of \orelse (prefixing that one with \unless doesn't work well).

649 \outer

An outer macro is one that can only be used at the outer level. This property is no longer supported. Like \long, the \outer prefix is now an no-op (and we don't expect this to have unfortunate side effects).

650 \output

This token list register holds the code that will be expanded when T_EX enters the output routine. That code is supposed to do something with the content in the box with number \outputbox. By default this is box 255 but that can be changed with \outputbox.

651 \outputbox

This is where the split off page content ends up when the output routine is triggered.

652 \outputpenalty

This is the penalty that triggered the output routine.

653 \over

This math primitive is actually a bit of a spoiler for the parser as it is one of the few that looks back. The \Uover variant is different and takes two arguments. We leave it to the user to predict the results of:

```
$ {1} \over {x} $
```



```
$ 1 \over x $
$ 12 \over x / y $
$ a + 1 \over {x} $
```

and:

```
$ \textstyle 1 \over x $
$ {\textstyle 1} \over x $
$ \textstyle {1 \over x} $
```

It's one of the reasons why macro packages provide `\frac`.

654 `\overfullrule`

When an overfull box is encountered a rule can be shown in the margin and this parameter sets its width. For the record: ConT_EXt does it different.

655 `\overline`


This is a math specific primitive that draws a line over the given content. It is a poor mans replacement for a delimiter. The thickness is set with `\Umathoverbarrule`, the distance between content and rule is set by `\Umathoverbarvgap` and `\Umathoverbarkern` is added above the rule. The style used for the content under the rule can be set with `\Umathoverlinevariant`.

Because ConT_EXt set up math in a special way, the following example:

```
\normaloverline {
  \blackrule[color=red, height=1ex,depth=0ex,width=2cm]%
  \kern-2cm
  \blackrule[color=blue,height=0ex,depth=.5ex,width=2cm]
  x + x
}
```

gives:  `x + x`, while:

```
\mathfontcontrol\zerocount
\Umathoverbarkern\allmathstyles10pt
\Umathoverbarvgap\allmathstyles5pt
\Umathoverbarrule\allmathstyles2.5pt
\Umathoverlinevariant\textstyle\scriptstyle
```

gives this:  `x + x`. We have to disable the related `\mathfontcontrol` bits because otherwise the thickness is taken from the font. The variant is just there to overload the (in traditional T_EX engines) default.

656 `\overloaded`

This prefix can be used to overload a frozen macro.

657 `\overloadmode`

The overload protection mechanism can be used to prevent users from redefining a control sequence. The mode can have several values, the higher the more strict we are:

		immutable	permanent	primitive	frozen	instance
1	warning	+	+	+		
2	error	+	+	+		
3	warning	+	+	+	+	
4	error	+	+	+	+	
5	warning	+	+	+	+	+
6	error	+	+	+	+	+

When you set a high error value, you can of course temporary lower or even zero the mode. In ConT_EXt all macros and quantities are tagged so there setting the mode to 6 gives a proper protection against overloading. We need to zero the mode when we load for instance tikz, so when you use that generic package, you loose some.

658 `\overshoot`

This primitive is a companion to `\badness` and reports how much a box overflows.

```
\setbox0\hbox to 1em {mmm} \the\badness\quad\the\overshoot
\setbox0\hbox {mm} \the\badness\quad\the\overshoot
\setbox0\hbox to 3em {m} \the\badness\quad\the\overshoot
```

This reports:

```
1000000 18.44727pt
0 0.0pt
10000 0.0pt
```

And:

```
\hbox to 2cm {does it fit} \the\overshoot
\hbox to 2cm {does it fit in here} \the\overshoot
\hbox to 2cm {how much does fit in here} \the\overshoot
```

gives:

```
does it fit
0.0pt
does it fit in here
25.64333pt
how much does fit in here
69.53004pt
```

When traditional T_EX wraps up the lines in a paragraph it uses a mix of shift (a box property) to position the content suiting the hanging indentation and/or paragraph shape, and fills up the line using right skip glue, also in order to silence complaints in packaging. In LuaMetaT_EX the lines can be normalized so that they all have all possible skips to the left and right (even if they're zero). The `\overshoot` primitive fits into this picture and is present as a compensation glue. This all fits better in a situation where the internals are opened up via Lua.

659 `\overwithdelims`

This is a variant of `\over` but with delimiters. It has a more advanced upgrade in `\Uoverwithdelims`.

660 `\pageboundary`

In order to avoid side effects of triggering the page builder with a specific penalty we can use this primitive which expects a value that actually gets inserted as zero penalty before triggering the page builder callback. Think of adding a no-op to the contribution list. We fake a zero penalty so that all gets processed. The main rationale is that we get a better indication of what we do. Of course a callback can remove this node so that it is never seen. Triggering from the callback is not doable. Consider this experimental code (which is actually used in ConT_EXt anyway).

661 `\pagedepth`

This page property holds the depth of the page.

662 `\pagediscards`

The left-overs after a page is split of the main vertical list when glue and penalties are normally discarded. The discards can be pushed back in (for instance) trial runs.

663 `\pageexcess`

This page property hold the amount of overflow when a page break occurs.

664 `\pageextragoal`

This (experimental) dimension will be used when the page overflows but a bit of overshoot is considered okay.

665 `\pagefillllstretch`

The accumulated amount of third order stretch on the current page.

666 `\pagefillstretch`

The accumulated amount of second order stretch on the current page.

667 `\pagefilstretch`

The accumulated amount of first order stretch on the current page.

668 `\pagefistretch`

The accumulated amount of zero order stretch on the current page.

669 \pagegoal

The target height of a page (the running text). This value will be decreased by the height of inserts something to keep into mind when messing around with this and other (pseudo) page related parameters like \pagetotal.

670 \pagelastdepth

The accumulated depth of the current page.

671 \pagelastfilllstretch

The accumulated amount of third order stretch on the current page. Contrary to \pagefilllstretch this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

672 \pagelastfillstretch

The accumulated amount of second order stretch on the current page. Contrary to \pagefillstretch this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

673 \pagelastfilstretch

The accumulated amount of first order stretch on the current page. Contrary to \pagefilstretch this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

674 \pagelastfistretch

The accumulated amount of zero order stretch on the current page. Contrary to \pagefistretch this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

675 \pagelastheight

The accumulated height of the current page.

676 \pagelastshrink

The accumulated amount of shrink on the current page. Contrary to \pageshrink this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

677 \pagelaststretch

The accumulated amount of stretch on the current page. Contrary to \pagestretch this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

678 \pageshrink

The accumulated amount of shrink on the current page.

679 \pagestretch

The accumulated amount of stretch on the current page.

680 \pagetotal

The accumulated page total (height) of the current page.

681 \pagevsize

This parameter, when set, is used as the target page height. This lessens the change of \vsize interfering.

682 \par

This is the explicit ‘finish paragraph’ command. Internally we distinguish a par triggered by a new line, as side effect of another primitive or this \par command.

683 \parametercount

The number of parameters passed to the current macro.

684 \parameterdef

Here is an example of binding a variable to a parameter. The alternative is of course to use an \edef.

```
\def\foo#1#2%
  {\parameterdef\MyIndexOne\plusone % 1
   \parameterdef\MyIndexTwo\plustwo % 2
   \oof{P}\oof{Q}\oof{R}\norelax}

\def\oof#1%
  {<1:\MyIndexOne><1:\MyIndexOne>%
   #1%
   <2:\MyIndexTwo><2:\MyIndexTwo>}

\foo{A}{B}
```

The outcome is:

```
<1:A><1:A>P<2:B><2:B><1:A><1:A>Q<2:B><2:B><1:A><1:A>R<2:B><2:B>
```

685 \parameterindex

This gives the zero based position on the parameter stack. One reason for introducing \parameterdef is that the position remains abstract so there we don't need to use \parameterindex.

686 \parametermark

The meaning of primitive \parametermark is equivalent to # in a macro definition, just like \alignmark is in an alignment. It can be used to circumvent catcode issues. The normal “duplicate them when nesting” rules apply.

```
\def\foo\parametermark1%
  {\def\oof\parametermark\parametermark1%
    {[\parametermark1:\parametermark\parametermark1]}}
```

Here `\foo{X}\oof{Y}` gives: [X:Y].

687 `\parametermode`

Setting this internal integer to a positive value (best use 1 because future versions might use bit set) will enable the usage of `#` for escaped in the main text and body of macros.

688 `\parattribute`

This primitive takes an attribute index and value and sets that attribute on the current paragraph.

689 `\pardirection`

This set the text direction for the whole paragraph which in the case of `r2l` (1) makes the right edge the starting point.

690 `\parfillleftskip`

The glue inserted at the start of the last line.

691 `\parfillrightskip`

The glue inserted at the end of the last line (aka `\parfillskip`).

692 `\parfillskip`

The glue inserted at the end of the last line.

693 `\parindent`

The amount of space inserted at the start of the first line. When bit 2 is set in `\normalizelinemode` a glue is inserted, otherwise an empty `\hbox` with the given width is inserted.

694 `\parinitleftskip`

The glue inserted at the start of the first line.

695 `\parinitrightskip`

The glue inserted at the end of the first line.

696 `\parpasses`

Specifies one or more recipes for additional second linebreak passes. Examples can be found in the ConT_EXt distribution.

697 \parpassesexception

Specifies an alternative parpass to use in the upcoming paragraph, for instance one with a specific looseness that then demands for instance more emergency stretch.

698 \parshape

Stores a shape specification. The first argument is the length of the list, followed by that amount of indentation-width pairs (two dimensions).

699 \parshapedimen

This oddly named (ϵ -TeX) primitive returns the width component (dimension) of the given entry (an integer). Obsoleted by \parshapewidth.

700 \parshapeindent

Returns the indentation component (dimension) of the given entry (an integer).

701 \parshapelength

Returns the number of entries (an integer).

702 \parshapewidth

Returns the width component (dimension) of the given entry (an integer).

703 \parskip

This is the amount of glue inserted before a new paragraph starts.

704 \patterns

The argument to this primitive contains hyphenation patterns that are bound to the current language. In LuaTeX and LuaMetaTeX we can also manage this at the Lua end. In LuaMetaTeX we don't store patterns in the format file.

705 \pausing

In LuaMetaTeX this variable is ignored but in other engines it can be used to single step through the input file by setting it to a positive value.

706 \penalty

The given penalty (a number) is inserted at the current spot in the horizontal or vertical list. We also have \vpenalty and \hpenalty that first change modes.

707 \permanent

This is one of the prefixes that is part of the overload protection mechanism. It is normally used to flag a macro as being at the same level as a primitive: don't touch it. primitives are flagged as such but that property cannot be set on regular macros. The similar `\immutable` flag is normally used for variables.

708 \pettymuskip

A predefined mu skip register that can be used in math (inter atom) spacing. The current value is 1.0μ minus 0.5μ . This one complements `\thinmuskip`, `\medmuskip`, `\thickmuskip` and the new `\tinymuskip`.

709 \positdef

The engine uses 32 bit integers for various purposes and has no (real) concept of a floating point quantity. We get around this by providing a floating point data type based on 32 bit unums (posits). These have the advantage over native floats of more precision in the lower ranges but at the cost of a software implementation.

The `\positdef` primitive is the floating point variant of `\integerdef` and `\dimensiondef`: an efficient way to implement named quantities other than registers.

```
\positdef      \MyFloatA 5.678
\positdef      \MyFloatB 567.8
[\the\MyFloatA] [\todimension\MyFloatA] [\tointeger\MyFloatA]
[\the\MyFloatB] [\todimension\MyFloatB] [\tointeger\MyFloatB]
```

For practical reasons we can map posit (or float) onto an integer or dimension:

```
[5.6780000030994415283] [5.678pt] [6]
[567.8000030517578125] [567.80005pt] [568]
```

710 \postdisplaypenalty

This is the penalty injected after a display formula.

711 \posttexhyphenchar

This primitive expects a language number and a character code. A negative character code is equivalent to ignore. In case of an explicit discretionary the character is injected at the beginning of a new line.

712 \postthyphenchar

This primitive expects a language number and a character code. A negative character code is equivalent to ignore. In case of an automatic discretionary the character is injected at the beginning of a new line.

713 `\postinlinepenalty`

When set this penalty is inserted after an inline formula unless we have a short formula and `\postshortinlinepenalty` is set.

714 `\postshortinlinepenalty`

When set this penalty is inserted after a short inline formula. The criterium is set by `\shortinline-maththreshold` but only applied when it is enabled for the class involved.

715 `\prebinoppenalty`

This internal quantity is a compatibility feature because normally we will use the inter atom spacing variables.

716 `\predisplaydirection`

This is the direction that the math sub engine will take into account when dealing with right to left typesetting.

717 `\predisplaygapfactor`

The heuristics related to determine if the previous line in a formula overlaps with a (display) formula are hard coded but in Lua \TeX to be two times the quad of the current font. This parameter is a multiplier set to 2000 and permits you to change the overshoot in this heuristic.

718 `\predisplaypenalty`

This is the penalty injected before a display formula.

719 `\predisplaysize`

This parameter holds the length of the last line in a paragraph when a display formula is part of it.

720 `\preexhyphenchar`

This primitive expects a language number and a character code. A negative character code is equivalent to ignore. In case of an explicit discretionary the character is injected at the end of the line.

721 `\prehyphenchar`

This primitive expects a language number and a character code. A negative character code is equivalent to ignore. In case of an automatic discretionary the character is injected at the end of the line.

722 `\preinlinepenalty`

When set this penalty is inserted before an inline formula unless we have a short formula and `\preshortinlinepenalty` is set. These are not real penalties but properties of the math begin and end markers. Just as with spacing as such property, these penalties are not visible as nodes in the list.

723 `\prerelpenalty`

This internal quantity is a compatibility feature because normally we will use the inter atom spacing variables.

724 `\preshortinlinepenalty`

When set this penalty is inserted before a short inline formula. The criterium is set by `\shortinline-maththreshold` but only applied when it is enabled for the class involved.

725 `\pretolerance`

When the badness of a line in a paragraph exceeds this value a second linebreak pass will be enabled.

726 `\prevdepth`

The depth of current list. It can also be set to special (signal) values in order to inhibit line corrections. It is not an internal dimension but a (current) list property.

727 `\prevgraf`

The number of lines in a previous paragraph.

728 `\previousloopiterator`

```
\edef\testA{
  \expandedrepeat 2 {%
    \expandedrepeat 3 {%
      (\the\previousloopiterator1:\the\currentloopiterator)
    }%
  }%
}
\edef\testB{
  \expandedrepeat 2 {%
    \expandedrepeat 3 {%
      (#P:#I) % #G is two levels up
    }%
  }%
}
```

These give the same result:

```
\def \testA { (1:1) (1:2) (1:3) (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) }
\def \testB { (1:1) (1:2) (1:3) (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) }
```

The number indicates the number of levels we go up the loop chain.

729 `\primescript`

This is a math script primitive dedicated to primes (which are somewhat troublesome on math). It complements the six script primitives (like `\subscript` and `\presuperscript`).

730 `\protected`

A protected macro is one that doesn't get expanded unless it is time to do so. For instance, inside an `\edef` it just stays what it is. It often makes sense to pass macros as-is to (multi-pass) file (for tables of contents).

In ConT_EXt we use either `\protected` or `\unexpanded` because the later was the command we used to achieve the same results before ε -T_EX introduced this protection primitive. Originally the `\protected` macro was also defined but it has been dropped.

731 `\protecteddetokenize`

This is a variant of `\protecteddetokenize` that uses some escapes encoded as body parameters, like `#H` for a hash.

732 `\protectedexpandeddetokenize`

This is a variant of `\expandeddetokenize` that uses some escapes encoded as body parameters, like `#H` for a hash.

733 `\protrudechars`

This variable controls protrusion (into the margin). A value 2 is comparable with other engines, while a value of 3 does a bit more checking when we're doing right-to-left typesetting.

734 `\protrusionboundary`

This injects a boundary with the given value:

```
0x00 skipnone
0x01 skipnext
0x02 skipprevious
0x03 skipboth
```

This signal makes the protrusion checker skip over a node.

735 `\pxdimen`

The current numeric value of this dimension is 65781, 1.00374pt: one bp. We kept it around because it was introduced in pdfT_EX and made it into LuaT_EX, where it relates to the resolution of included images. In ConT_EXt it is not used.

736 `\quitloop`

There are several loop primitives and they can be quit with `\quitloop` at the next the *next* iteration. An immediate quit is possible with `\quitloopnow`. An example is given with `\localcontrolledloop`.

737 `\quitloopnow`

There are several loop primitives and they can be quit with `\quitloopnow` at the spot.

738 \quitvmode

This primitive forces horizontal mode but has no side effects when we're already in that mode.

739 \radical

This old school radical constructor is replaced by `\Uradical`. It takes a number where the first byte is the small family, the next two index of this symbol from that family, and the next three the family and index of the first larger variant.

740 \raise

This primitive takes two arguments, a dimension and a box. The box is moved up. The operation only succeeds in horizontal mode.

741 \rdivide

This is variant of `\divide` that rounds the result. For integers the result is the same as `\edivide`.

```
\the\dimexpr .4999pt          : 2 \relax          =.24994pt
\the\dimexpr .4999pt          / 2 \relax          =.24995pt
\the\dimexpr .4999pt          ; 2 \relax          =.00002pt
\scratchdimen.4999pt \divide \scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen =.24994pt
\scratchdimen.4999pt \edivide\scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen =.24995pt
\scratchdimen 4999pt \rdivide\scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen =2500.0pt
\scratchdimen 5000pt \rdivide\scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen =2500.0pt
```

```
\the\numexpr 1001             : 2 \relax          =500
\the\numexpr 1001             / 2 \relax          =501
\the\numexpr 1001             ; 2 \relax          =1
\scratchcounter1001 \divide \scratchcounter 2 \the\scratchcounter=500
\scratchcounter1001 \edivide\scratchcounter 2 \the\scratchcounter=501
\scratchcounter1001 \rdivide\scratchcounter 2 \the\scratchcounter=501
```

```
0.24994pt=.24994pt
0.24995pt=.24995pt
0.00002pt=.00002pt
0.24994pt=.24994pt
0.24995pt=.24995pt
2500.0pt=2500.0pt
2500.0pt=2500.0pt
```

```
500=500
501=501
1=1
500=500
501=501
501=501
```

The integer division `:` and modulo `;` are an addition to the ε -T_EX compatible expressions.

742 \rdivideby

This is the by-less companion to \rdivide.

743 \realign

Where \omit suspends a preamble template, this one overloads is for the current table cell. It expects two token lists as arguments.

744 \relax

This primitive does nothing and is often used to end a verbose number or dimension in a comparison, for example:

```
\ifnum \scratchcounter = 123\relax
```

which prevents a lookahead. A variant would be:

```
\ifnum \scratchcounter = 123 %
```

assuming that spaces are not ignored. Another application is finishing an expression like \numexpr or \dimexpr. It is also used to prevent lookahead in cases like:

```
\vrule height 3pt depth 2pt width 5pt\relax  
\hskip 5pt plus 3pt minus 2pt\relax
```

Because \relax is not expandable the following:

```
\edef\foo{\relax} \meaningfull\foo  
\edef\oof{\norelax} \meaningfull\oof
```

gives this:

```
macro:\relax  
macro:
```

A \norelax disappears here but in the previously mentioned scenarios it has the same function as \relax. It will not be pushed back either in cases where a lookahead demands that.

745 \relpenalty

This internal quantity is a compatibility feature because normally we will use the inter atom spacing variables.

746 \resetlocalboxes

Its purpose should be clear from the name.

747 \resetmathspacing

This initializes all parameters to their initial values.

748 \restorecatcodetable

This is an experimental feature that should be used with care. The next example shows usage. It was added when debugging and exploring a side effect.

```
\tracingonline1
```

```
\bgroup
```

```
\catcode`6 = 11 \catcode`7 = 11
```

```
\bgroup
```

```
\tracingonline1
```

```
current: \the\catcodetable
```

```
original: \the\catcode`6\quad \the\catcode`7
```

```
\catcode`6 = 11 \catcode`7 = 11
```

```
\showcodestack\catcode
```

```
assigned: \the\catcode`6\quad \the\catcode`7
```

```
\showcodestack\catcode
```

```
\catcodetable\ctxcatcodes switched: \the\catcodetable
```

```
stored: \the\catcode`6\quad \the\catcode`7
```

```
\showcodestack\catcode
```

```
\restorecatcodetable\ctxcatcodes
```

```
\showcodestack\catcode
```

```
restored: \the\catcode`6\quad \the\catcode`7
```

```
\showcodestack\catcode
```

```
\egroup
```

```
\catcodetable\ctxcatcodes
```

```
inner: \the\catcode`6\quad\the\catcode`7
```

```
\egroup
```

```
outer: \the\catcode`6\quad\the\catcode`7
```

In ConT_EXt this typesets:

```
current: 9
```

```
original: 11 11
```

```
assigned: 11 11
```

```
switched: 9
```

```

stored: 11 11
restored: 12 12
inner: 11 11
outer; 12 12

```

and on the console we see:

```

3:3: [codestack 1, size 3]
3:3: [1: level 2, code 54, value 12]
3:3: [2: level 2, code 55, value 12]
3:3: [3: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [4: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [codestack 1 bottom]
3:3: [codestack 1, size 3]
3:3: [1: level 2, code 54, value 12]
3:3: [2: level 2, code 55, value 12]
3:3: [3: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [4: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [codestack 1 bottom]
3:3: [codestack 1, size 3]
3:3: [1: level 2, code 54, value 12]
3:3: [2: level 2, code 55, value 12]
3:3: [3: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [4: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [codestack 1 bottom]
3:3: [codestack 1, size 7]
3:3: [1: level 2, code 54, value 12]
3:3: [2: level 2, code 55, value 12]
3:3: [3: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [4: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [5: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [6: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [7: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [8: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [codestack 1 bottom]
3:3: [codestack 1, size 7]
3:3: [1: level 2, code 54, value 12]
3:3: [2: level 2, code 55, value 12]
3:3: [3: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [4: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [5: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [6: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [7: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [8: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [codestack 1 bottom]

```

So basically `\restorecatcodetable` brings us (temporarily) back to the global settings.

749 \retained

When a value is assigned inside a group T_EX pushes the current value on the save stack in order to be able to restore the original value after the group has ended. You can reach over a group by using the \global prefix. A mix between local and global assignments can be achieved with the \retained primitive.

```
\MyDim 15pt \bgroup \the\MyDim \space
\bgroup
  \bgroup
    \bgroup \advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \bgroup \advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
  \egroup
  \bgroup
    \bgroup \advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \bgroup \advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
  \egroup
\egroup
\egroup \the\MyDim

\MyDim 15pt \bgroup \the\MyDim \space
\bgroup
  \bgroup
    \bgroup \global\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \bgroup \global\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
  \egroup
  \bgroup
    \bgroup \global\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \bgroup \global\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
  \egroup
\egroup
\egroup \the\MyDim

\MyDim 15pt \bgroup \the\MyDim \space
  \constrained\MyDim\zeropoint
  \bgroup
    \bgroup \retained\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \bgroup \retained\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
  \egroup
  \bgroup
    \bgroup \retained\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \bgroup \retained\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
  \egroup
\egroup \the\MyDim
```

These lines result in:

```
15.0pt 25.0pt 25.0pt 25.0pt 25.0pt 15.0pt
15.0pt 25.0pt 35.0pt 45.0pt 55.0pt 55.0pt
15.0pt 10.0pt 20.0pt 30.0pt 40.0pt 15.0pt
```


Because LuaMetaTeX avoids redundant stack entries and reassignments this mechanism is a bit fragile but the `\constrained` prefix makes sure that we do have a stack entry. If it is needed depends on the usage pattern.

750 `\retokenized`

This is a companion of `\tokenized` that accepts a catcode table, so the whole repertoire is:

```
\tokenized                {test $x$ test: current}
\tokenized catcodetable \ctxcatcodes {test $x$ test: context}
\tokenized catcodetable \vrbcacodes  {test $x$ test: verbatim}
\retokenized              \ctxcatcodes {test $x$ test: context}
\retokenized              \vrbcacodes  {test $x$ test: verbatim}
```

Here we pass the numbers known to ConTeXt and get:

```
test x test: current
test x test: context
test $x$ test: verbatim
test x test: context
test $x$ test: verbatim
```

751 `\right`

Inserts the given delimiter as right fence in a math formula.

752 `\righthyphenmin`

This is the minimum number of characters before the first hyphen in a hyphenated word.

753 `\rightmarginkern`

The dimension returned is the protrusion kern that has been added (if at all) to the left of the content in the given box.

754 `\rightskip`

This skip will be inserted at the right of every line.

755 `\righttwindemerits`

Additional demerits for a glyph sequence at the right edge when a previous line also has that sequence.

756 `\romannumeral`

This converts a number into a sequence of characters representing a roman numeral. Because the Romans had no zero, a zero will give no output, a fact that is sometimes used for hacks and showing off ones macro coding capabilities. A large number will for sure result in a long string because after thousand we start duplicating.

757 \rpcode

This is the companion of \lpcode (see there) and also takes three arguments: font, character code and factor.

758 \savecatcodetable

This primitive stores the currently set catcodes in the current table.

759 \savingshyphcodes

When set to non-zero, this will trigger the setting of \hjcodes from \lccodes for the current font. These codes determine what characters are taken into account when hyphenating words.

760 \savingsdiscards

When set to a positive value the page builder will store the discarded items (like glues) so that they can later be retrieved and pushed back if needed with \pagediscards or \splitdiscards.

761 \scaledemwidth

Returns the current (font specific) emwidth scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphxscale.

762 \scaledexheight

Returns the current (font specific) exheight scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphyscale.

763 \scaledextraspacer

Returns the current (font specific) extra space value scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphxscale.

764 \scaledfontcharba

Returns the bottom accent position of the given font-character pair scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphyscale.

765 \scaledfontchardp

Returns the depth of the given font-character pair scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphyscale.

766 \scaledfontcharht

Returns the height of the given font-character pair scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphyscale.

767 \scaledfontcharic

Returns the italic correction of the given font-character pair scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale`. This property is only real for traditional fonts.

768 \scaledfontcharta

Returns the top accent position of the given font-character pair scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale`.

769 \scaledfontcharwd

Returns width of the given font-character pair scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale`.

770 \scaledfontdimen

Returns value of a (numeric) font dimension of the given font-character pair scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale` and/or `\glyphyscale`.

771 \scaledinterwordshrink

Returns the current (font specific) shrink of a space value scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale`.

772 \scaledinterwordspace

Returns the current (font specific) space value scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale`.

773 \scaledinterwordstretch

Returns the current (font specific) stretch of a space value scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale`.

774 \scaledmathaxis

This primitive returns the math axis of the given math style. It's a dimension.

775 \scaledmathemwidth

Returns the emwidth of the given style scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale`.

776 \scaledmathexheight

Returns the exheight of the given style scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphyscale`.

777 \scaledmathstyle

This command inserts a signal in the math list that tells how to scale the (upcoming) part of the formula.

```
$ x + {\scaledmathstyle900 x} + x$
```

We get: $x + x + x$. Of course using this properly demands integration in the macro packages font system.

778 \scaledslantperpoint

This primitive is equivalent to `\scaledfontdimen1\font` where ‘scaled’ means that we multiply by the glyph scales.

779 \scantextokens

This primitive scans the input as if it comes from a file. In the next examples the `\detokenize` primitive turns tokenized code into verbatim code that is similar to what is read from a file.

```
\edef\whatever{\detokenize{This is {\bf bold} and this is not.}}
\detokenize {This is {\bf bold} and this is not.}\crlf
\scantextokens{This is {\bf bold} and this is not.}\crlf
\scantextokens{\whatever}\crlf
\scantextokens\expandafter{\whatever}\par
```

This primitive does not have the end-of-file side effects of its precursor `\scantokens`.

This is `{\bf bold}` and this is not.

This is **bold** and this is not.

This is `{\bf bold}` and this is not.

This is **bold** and this is not.

780 \scantokens

Just forget about this ε -TeX primitive, just take the one in the next section.

781 \scriptfont

This primitive is like `\font` but with a family number as (first) argument so it is specific for math. It is the middle one of the three family members; its relatives are `\textfont` and `\scriptscriptfont`.

782 \scriptscriptfont

This primitive is like `\font` but with a family number as (first) argument so it is specific for math. It is the smallest of the three family members; its relatives are `\textfont` and `\scriptfont`.

783 \scriptscriptstyle

One of the main math styles, normally one size smaller than `\scriptstyle`: integer representation: 6.

784 `\scriptspace`

The math engine will add this amount of space after subscripts and superscripts. It can be seen as compensation for the often too small widths of characters (in the traditional engine italic correction is used too). It prevents scripts from running into what follows.

785 `\scriptspaceafterfactor`

This is a (1000 based) multiplier for `\Umathspaceafterscript`.

786 `\scriptspacebeforefactor`

This is a (1000 based) multiplier for `\Umathspacebeforescript`.

787 `\scriptspacebetweenfactor`

This is a (1000 based) multiplier for `\Umathspacebetweenascript`.

788 `\scriptstyle`

One of the main math styles, normally one size smaller than `\displaystyle` and `\textstyle`; integer representation: 4.

789 `\scrollmode`

This directive omits error stops.

790 `\semiexpand`

This command expands the next macro when it is protected with `\semiprotected`. See that primitive there for an example.

791 `\semiexpanded`

This command expands the tokens in the given list including the macros protected by with `\semiprotected`. See that primitive there for an example.

792 `\semiprotected`

The working of this prefix can best be explained with an example. We define a few macros first:

```

\def\TestA{A}
\semiprotected\def\TestB{B}
\protected\def\TestC{C}

\edef\TestD{\TestA          \TestB          \TestC}
\edef\TestE{\TestA\semiexpand\TestB\semiexpand\TestC}
\edef\TestF{\TestA\expand   \TestB\expand   \TestC}
```

```
\edef\TestG{\normalexpanded    {\TestA\TestB\TestC}}
\edef\TestH{\normalsemiexpanded{\TestA\TestB\TestC}}
```

The meaning of the macros that are made from the other three are:

Here we use the `\normal`... variants because (currently) we still have the macro with the `\expanded` in the ConT_EXt core.

```
A\TestB \TestC
AB\TestC
ABC
A\TestB \TestC
AB\TestC
```

793 `\setbox`

This important primitive is used to set a box register. It expects a number and a box, like `\hbox` or `\box`. There is no `\boxdef` primitive (analogue to other registers) because it makes no sense but numeric registers or equivalents are okay as register value.

794 `\setdefaultmathcodes`

This sets the math codes of upper- and lowercase alphabet and digits and the delimiter code of the period. It's not so much a useful feature but more just an accessor to the internal initializer.

795 `\setfontid`

Internally a font instance has a number and this number is what gets assigned to a glyph node. You can get the number with `\fontid` and set it with `\setfontid`.

`\setfontid\fontid\font`

The code above shows both primitives and effectively does nothing useful but shows the idea.

796 `\setlanguage`

In LuaT_EX and LuaMetaT_EX this is equivalent to `\language` because we carry the language in glyph nodes instead of putting triggers in the list.

797 `\setmathatomrule`

The math engine has some built in logic with respect to neighboring atoms that change the class. The following combinations are intercepted and remapped:

old first	old second	new first	new second
begin	binary	ordinary	ordinary
operator	binary	operator	ordinary
open	binary	open	ordinary
punctuation	binary	punctuation	ordinary

binary	end	ordinary	ordinary
binary	binary	binary	ordinary
binary	close	ordinary	close
binary	punctuation	ordinary	punctuation
binary	relation	ordinary	relation
relation	binary	relation	ordinary
relation	close	ordinary	close
relation	punctuation	ordinary	punctuation

You can change this logic if needed, for instance:

```
\setmathatomrule 1 2 \allmathstyles 1 1
```

Keep in mind that the defaults are what users expect. You might set them up for additional classes that you define but even then you probably clone an existing class and patch its properties. Most extra classes behave like ordinary anyway.

798 \setmathdisplaypostpenalty

This penalty is inserted after an item of a given class but only in inline math when display style is used, for instance:

```
\setmathdisplayprepenalty 2 750
```

799 \setmathdisplayprepenalty

This penalty is inserted before an item of a given class but only in inline math when display style is used, for instance:

```
\setmathdisplayprepenalty 2 750
```

800 \setmathignore

You can flag a math parameter to be ignored, like:

```
\setmathignore \Umathxscale          2
\setmathignore \Umathyscale          2
\setmathignore \Umathspacebeforescript 1
\setmathignore \Umathspacebetweenscript 1
\setmathignore \Umathspaceafterscript  1
```

A value of two will not initialize the variable, so its old value (when set) is kept. This is somewhat experimental and more options might show up.

801 \setmathoptions

This primitive expects a class (number) and a bitset.

0x00000001	nopreslack	0x00004000	raiseprime
0x00000002	nopostslack	0x00008000	carryoverlefttopkern
0x00000004	lefttopkern	0x00010000	carryoverrighttopkern
0x00000008	righttopkern	0x00020000	carryoverleftbottomkern
0x00000010	leftbottomkern	0x00040000	carryoverrightbottomkern
0x00000020	rightbottomkern	0x00080000	preferdelimterdimensions
0x00000040	lookaheadforend	0x00100000	autoinject
0x00000080	noitaliccorrection	0x00200000	removeitaliccorrection
0x00000100	checkligature	0x00400000	operatoritaliccorrection
0x00000200	checkitaliccorrection	0x00800000	shortinline
0x00000400	checkkernpair	0x01000000	pushnesting
0x00000800	flatten	0x02000000	popnesting
0x00001000	omitpenalty	0x04000000	obeynesting
0x00002000	unpack		

802 `\setmathpostpenalty`

This penalty is inserted after an item of a given class but only in inline math when text, script or scriptscript style is used, for instance:

```
\setmathpostpenalty 2 250
```

803 `\setmathprepenalty`

This penalty is inserted before an item of a given class but only in inline math when text, script or scriptscript style is used, for instance:

```
\setmathprepenalty 2 250
```

804 `\setmathspacing`

More details about this feature can be found in ConT_EXt but it boils down to registering what spacing gets inserted between a pair of classes. It can be defined per style or for a set of styles, like:

```
\inherited\setmathspacing
  \mathimplicationcode \mathbinarycode
  \alldisplaystyles \thickermuskip
\inherited\setmathspacing
  \mathradicalcode \mathmiddlecode
  \allunsplitstyles \pettymuskip
```

Here the `\inherited` prefix signals that a change in for instance `\pettymuskip` is reflected in this spacing pair. In ConT_EXt there is a lot of granularity with respect to spacing and it took years of experimenting (and playing with examples) to get at the current stage. In general users are not invited to mess around too much with these values, although changing the bound registers (here `\pettymuskip` and `\thickermuskip`) is no problem as it consistently makes related spacing pairs follow.

805 \sfcode

You can set a space factor on a character. That factor is used when a space factor is applied (as part of spacing). It is (mostly) used for adding a different space (glue) after punctuation. In some languages different punctuation has different factors.

806 \shapingpenaltiesmode

Shaping penalties are inserted after the lines of a `\parshape` and accumulate according to this mode, a bitset of:

```
0x01 interlinepenalty
0x02 widowpenalty
0x04 clubpenalty
0x08 brokenpenalty
```

807 \shapingpenalty

In order to prevent a `\parshape` to break in unexpected ways we can add a dedicated penalty, specified by this parameter.

808 \shipout

Because there is no backend, this is not supposed to be used. As in traditional \TeX a box is grabbed but instead of it being processed it gets shown and then wiped. There is no real benefit of turning it into a callback.

809 \shortinlinemaththreshold

This parameter determines when an inline formula is considered to be short. This criterium is used for `\preshortinlinepenalty` and `\postshortinlinepenalty`.

810 \shortinlineorphanpenalty

Short formulas at the end of a line are normally not followed by something other than punctuation. This penalty will discourage a break before a short inline formula. In practice one can set this penalty to e.g. a relatively low 200 to get the desired effect.

811 \show

Prints to the console (and/or log) what the token after it represents.

812 \showbox

The given box register is shown in the log and on the console (depending on `\tracingonline`). How much is shown depends on `\showboxdepth` and `\showboxbreadth`. In \LuaMetaTeX we show more detailed information than in the other engines; some specific information is provided via callbacks.

813 \showboxbreadth

This primitive determines how much of a box is shown when asked for or when tracing demands it.

814 \showboxdepth

This primitive determines how deep tracing a box goes into the box. Some boxes, like the ones that has the assembled page.

815 \showcodestack

This inspector is only useful for low level debugging and reports the current state of for instance the current catcode table: `\showcodestack\catcode`. See `\restorecatcodes` for an example.

816 \showgroups

This primitive reports the group nesting. At this spot we have a not so impressive nesting:

```
2:3: simple group entered at line 9375:
1:3: semisimple group: \begingroup
0:3: bottomlevel
```

817 \showifs

This primitive will show the conditional stack in the log file or on the console (assuming `\tracingonline` being non-zero). The shown data is different from other engines because we have more conditionals and also support a more flat nesting model

818 \showlists

This shows the currently built list.

819 \shownodedetails

When set to a positive value more details will be shown of nodes when applicable. Values larger than one will also report attributes. What gets shown depends on related callbacks being set.

820 \showstack

This tracer is only useful for low level debugging of macros, for instance when you run out of save space or when you encounter a performance hit.

```
test\scratchcounter0 \showstack
{test\scratchcounter1 \showstack}
{{test\scratchcounter1 \showstack}}
```

reports

```
1:3: [savestack size 0]
1:3: [savestack bottom]
```

```
2:3: [savestack size 2]
2:3: [1: restore, level 1, cs \scratchcounter=integer 1]
2:3: [0: boundary, group 'bottomlevel', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 0]
2:3: [savestack bottom]
```

```
3:3: [savestack size 3]
3:3: [2: restore, level 1, cs \scratchcounter=integer 1]
3:3: [1: boundary, group 'simple', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 12]
3:3: [0: boundary, group 'bottomlevel', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 0]
3:3: [savestack bottom]
```

while

```
test\scratchcounter1 \showstack
{test\scratchcounter1 \showstack}
{{test\scratchcounter1 \showstack}}
```

shows this:

```
1:3: [savestack size 0]
1:3: [savestack bottom]

2:3: [savestack size 1]
2:3: [0: boundary, group 'bottomlevel', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 0]
2:3: [savestack bottom]

3:3: [savestack size 2]
3:3: [1: boundary, group 'simple', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 16]
3:3: [0: boundary, group 'bottomlevel', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 0]
3:3: [savestack bottom]
```

Because in the second example the value of `\scratchcounter` doesn't really change inside the group there is no need for a restore entry on the stack. In LuaMetaTeX there are checks for that so that we consume less stack space. We also store some states (like the line number and current attribute list pointer) in a stack boundary.

821 `\showthe`

Prints to the console (and/or log) the value of token after it.

822 `\showtokens`

This command expects a (balanced) token list, like

```
\showtokens{a few tokens}
```

Depending on what you want to see you need to expand:

```
\showtokens\expandafter{\the\everypar}
```

which is equivalent to `\showthe\everypar`. It is an ε -TeX extension.

823 `\singlelinepenalty`

This is a penalty that gets injected before a paragraph that has only one line. It is a one-shot parameter, so like `\looseness` it only applies to the upcoming (or current) paragraph.

824 `\skewchar`

This is an (imaginary) character that is used in math fonts. The kerning pair between this character and the current one determines the top anchor of a possible accent. In OpenType there is a dedicated character property for this (but for some reason not for the bottom anchor).

825 `\skip`

This is the accessor for an indexed skip (glue) register.

826 `\skipdef`

This command associates a control sequence with a skip register (accessed by number).

827 `\snapshotpar`

There are many parameters involved in typesetting a paragraph. One complication is that parameters set in the middle might have unpredictable consequences due to grouping, think of:

```
text text <some setting> text text \par
text {text <some setting> text } text \par
```

This makes in traditional \TeX because there is no state related to the current paragraph. But in Lua \TeX we have the initial so called par node that remembers the direction as well as local boxes. In LuaMeta \TeX we store way more when this node is created. That means that later settings no longer replace the stored ones.

The `\snapshotpar` takes a bitset that determine what stored parameters get updated to the current values.

0x00000001	hsize	0x00000800	linepenalty	0x00400000	toddlerpenalty
0x00000002	skip	0x00001000	clubpenalty	0x00800000	emergency
0x00000004	hang	0x00002000	widowpenalty	0x01000000	parpasses
0x00000008	indent	0x00004000	displaypenalty	0x02000000	singlelinepenalty
0x00000010	parfill	0x00008000	brokenpenalty	0x04000000	hyphenpenalty
0x00000020	adjust	0x00010000	demerits	0x08000000	exhyphenpenalty
0x00000040	protrude	0x00020000	shape	0x10000000	linebreakchecks
0x00000080	tolerance	0x00040000	line	0x20000000	twindemerits
0x00000100	stretch	0x00080000	hyphenation	0x40000000	fitnessclasses
0x00000200	looseness	0x00100000	shapingpenalty		
0x00000400	lastline	0x00200000	orphanpenalty		

One such value covers multiple values, so for instance `skip` is good for storing the current `\leftskip` and `\rightskip` values. More about this feature can be found in the Con \TeX t documentation.

The list of parameters that gets reset after a paragraph is longer than for pdf \TeX and LuaMeta \TeX : `\emergencyleftskip`, `\emergencyrightskip`, `\hangafter`, `\hangindent`, `\interlinepenalties`, `\localbrokenpenalty`, `\localinterlinepenalty`, `\localpretolerance`, `\localtolerance`, `\looseness`, `\parshape` and `\singlelinepenalty`.

828 `\spacechar`

When `\nospaces` is set to 3 a glyph node with the character value of this parameter is injected.

829 `\spacefactor`

The space factor is a somewhat complex feature. When during scanning a character is appended that has a `\sfcode` other than 1000, that value is saved. When the time comes to insert a space triggered glue, and that factor is 2000 or more, and when `\xspaceskip` is nonzero, that value is used and we're done.

If these criteria are not met, and `\spaceskip` is nonzero, that value is used, otherwise the space value from the font is used. Now, if the space factor is larger than 2000 the extra space value from the font is added to the set value. Next the engine is going to tweak the stretch and shrink if that value and in LuaMeta \TeX that can be done in different ways, depending on `\spacefactormode`, `\spacefactorstretchlimit` and `\spacefactorshrinklimit`.

First the stretch. When the set limit is 1000 or more and the saved space factor is also 1000 or more, we multiply the stretch by the limit, otherwise the saved space factor is used.

Shrink is done differently. When the shrink limit and space factor are both 1000 or more, we will scale the shrink component by the limit, otherwise we multiply by the saved space factor but here we have three variants, determined by the value of `\spacefactormode`.

In the first case, when the limit kicks in, a mode value 1 will multiply by limit and divides by 1000. A value of 2 multiplies by 2000 and divides by the limit. Other mode values multiply by 1000 and divide by the limit. When the limit is not used, the same happens but with the saved space factor.

If this sounds complicated, here is what regular \TeX does: stretch is multiplied by the factor and divided by 1000 while shrink is multiplied by 1000 and divided by the saved factor. The (new) mode driven alternatives are the result of extensive experiments done in the perspective of enhancing the rendering of inline math as well as additional par builder passes. For sure alternative strategies are possible and we can always add more modes.

A better explanation of the default strategy around spaces can be found in (of course) The \TeX book and \TeX by Topic.

830 `\spacefactormode`

Its setting determines the way the glue components (currently only shrink) adapts itself to the current space factor (determined by the character preceding a space).

831 `\spacefactoroverload`

When set to value between zero and thousand, this value will be used when \TeX encounters a below thousand space factor situation (usually used to suppress additional space after a period following an

uppercase character which then gets (often) a 999 space factor. This feature only kicks in when the overload flag is set in the glyph options, so it can be applied selectively.

832 `\spacefactorshrinklimit`

This limit is used when `\spacefactormode` is set. See `\spacefactor` for a bit more explanation.

833 `\spacefactorstretchlimit`

This limit is used when `\spacefactormode` is set. See `\spacefactor` for a bit more explanation.

834 `\spaceskip`

Normally the glue inserted when a space is encountered is taken from the font but this parameter can overrule that.

835 `\span`

This primitive combined two upcoming cells into one. Often it is used in combination with `\omit`. However, in the preamble it forces the next token to be expanded, which means that nested `\tabskip`s and align content markers are seen.

836 `\specificationdef`

There are some datastructures that are like arrays: `\adjacentedemerits`, `\brokenpenalties`, `\clubpenalties`, `\displaywidowpenalties`, `\fitnessclasses`, `\interlinepenalties`, `\mathbackwardpenalties`, `\mathforwardpenalties`, `\orphanpenalties`, `\parpasses`, `\parshape` and `\widowpenalties`. They accept a counter that tells how many entries follow and depending in the specification options, keywords and/or just values are expected.

With `\specificationdef` you can define a command that holds such an array and that can be used afterwards as a fast way to enable that specification. The way it work is as follows:

```
\specificationdef\MyWidowPenalties
  \widowpenalties 4 2000 1000 500 250
\relax
```

where the `relax` is optional but a reasonable way to make sure we end the definition (when keywords are used, as in `\parpasses` it prevents running into unexpected keywords).

837 `\splitbotmark`

This is a reference to the last mark on the currently split off box, it gives back tokens.

838 `\splitbotmarks`

This is a reference to the last mark with the given id (a number) on the currently split off box, it gives back tokens.

839 \splitdiscards

When a box is split off, items like glue are discarded. This internal register keeps the that list so that it can be pushed back if needed.

840 \splitfirstmark

This is a reference to the first mark on the currently split off box, it gives back tokens.

841 \splitfirstmarks

This is a reference to the first mark with the given id (a number) on the currently split off box, it gives back tokens.

842 \splitmaxdepth

The depth of the box that results from a \vsplit.

843 \splittopskip

This is the amount of glue that is added to the top of a (new) split of part of a box when \vsplit is applied.

844 \srule

This inserts a rule with no width. When a font and a char are given the height and depth of that character are taken. Instead of a font fam is also accepted so that we can use it in math mode.

845 \string

We mention this original primitive because of the one in the next section. It expands the next token or control sequence as if it was just entered, so normally a control sequence becomes a backslash followed by characters and a space.

846 \subprescript

Instead of three or four characters with catcode 8 (___ or ____) this primitive can be used. It will add the following argument as lower left script to the nucleus.

847 \subscript

Instead of one or two characters with catcode 7 (_ or __) this primitive can be used. It will add the following argument as upper left script to the nucleus.

848 \superprescript

Instead of three or four characters with catcode 7 (^^^ or ^^^^) this primitive can be used. It will add the following argument as upper left script to the nucleus.

849 \superscript

Instead of one or two character with catcode 7 (^ or ^^) this primitive can be used. It will add the following argument as upper right script to the nucleus.

850 \supmarkmode

As in other languages, T_EX has ways to escape characters and get whatever character needed into the input. By default multiple ^ are used for this. The dual ^^ variant is a bit weird as it is not continuous but ^^^^ and ^^^^^ provide four or six byte hexadecimal references of characters. The single ^ is also used for superscripts but because we support prescripts and indices we get into conflicts with the escapes.

When this internal quantity is set to zero, multiple ^'s are interpreted in the input and produce characters. Other values disable the multiple parsing in text and/or math mode:

```
\normalsupmarkmode0 $ X^58 \quad X^^58 $ ^^58
\normalsupmarkmode1 $ X^58 \quad X^^58 $ ^^58
\normalsupmarkmode2 $ X^58 \quad X^^58 $ % ^^58 : error
```

In ConT_EXt we default to one but also have the \catcode set to 12 and the \amcode to 7.

```
X^58   XX X
X^58   X^58 X
X^58   X^58
```

851 \swapcsvalues

Because we mention some def and let primitives here, it makes sense to also mention a primitive that will swap two values (meanings). This one has to be used with care. Of course that what gets swapped has to be of the same type (or at least similar enough not to cause issues). Registers for instance store their values in the token, but as soon as we are dealing with token lists we also need to keep an eye on reference counting. So, to some extent this is an experimental feature.

```
\scratchcounterone 1 \scratchcountertwo 2
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)
\swapcsvalues \scratchcounterone \scratchcountertwo
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)
\swapcsvalues \scratchcounterone \scratchcountertwo
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)

\scratchcounterone 3 \scratchcountertwo 4
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)
\bgroup
\swapcsvalues \scratchcounterone \scratchcountertwo
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)
\egroup
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)
```

We get similar results:

```
(1,2)
```


(2,1)

(1,2)

(3,4)

(4,3)

(3,4)

852 \tabsize

This primitive can be used in the preamble of an alignment and sets the size of a column, as in:

```
\halign{%
  \aligncontent          \aligntab
  \aligncontent\tabsize 3cm \aligntab
  \aligncontent          \aligntab
  \aligncontent\tabsize 0cm \cr
  1 \aligntab 111\aligntab 1111\aligntab 11\cr
  222\aligntab 2 \aligntab 2222\aligntab 22\cr
}
```

As with \tabskip you need to reset the value explicitly, so that is why we get two wide columns:

1	111	1111	11
222	2	2222	22

853 \tabskip

This traditional primitive can be used in the preamble of an alignment and sets the space added between columns, for example:

```
\halign{%
  \aligncontent          \aligntab
  \aligncontent\tabskip 3cm \aligntab
  \aligncontent          \aligntab
  \aligncontent\tabskip 0cm \cr
  1 \aligntab 111\aligntab 1111\aligntab 11\cr
  222\aligntab 2 \aligntab 2222\aligntab 22\cr
}
```

You need to reset the skip explicitly, which is why we get it applied twice here:

1	111	1111	11
222	2	2222	22

854 \textrdirection

This set the text direction to l2r (0) or r2l (1). It also triggers additional checking for balanced flipping in node lists.

855 `\textfont`

This primitive is like `\font` but with a family number as (first) argument so it is specific for math. It is the largest one of the three family members; its relatives are `\scriptfont` and `\scriptscriptfont`.

856 `\textstyle`

One of the main math styles; integer representation: 2.

857 `\the`

The `\the` primitive serializes the following token, when applicable: integers, dimensions, token registers, special quantities, etc. The catcodes of the result will be according to the current settings, so in `\the\dimen0`, the pt will have catcode ‘letter’ and the number and period will become ‘other’.

858 `\thewithoutunit`

The `\the` primitive, when applied to a dimension variable, adds a pt unit. because dimensions are the only traditional unit with a fractional part they are sometimes used as pseudo floats in which case `\thewithoutunit` can be used to avoid the unit. This is more convenient than stripping it off afterwards (via an expandable macro).

859 `\thickmuskip`

A predefined mu skip register that can be used in math (inter atom) spacing. The current value is 5.0mu plus 3.0mu minus 1.0mu. In traditional T_EX most inter atom spacing is hard coded using the predefined registers.

860 `\thinmuskip`

A predefined mu skip register that can be used in math (inter atom) spacing. The current value is 3.0mu. In traditional T_EX most inter atom spacing is hard coded using the predefined registers.

861 `\time`

This internal number starts out with minute (starting at midnight) that the job started.

862 `\tinymuskip`

A predefined mu skip register that can be used in math (inter atom) spacing. The current value is 2.0mu minus 1.0mu. This one complements `\thinmuskip`, `\medmuskip`, `\thickmuskip` and the new `\pettymuskip`

863 `\tocharacter`

The given number is converted into an utf-8 sequence. In LuaT_EX this one is named `\Uchar`.

864 \todderpenalties

This an (possible double entry) array parameter: first the size is given followed by that amount of penalties (can be pairs). These penalties are injected after (and before) single glyphs bounded by spaces, going backward from the end of a sequence of them.

865 \todimension

The following code gives this: 1234.0pt and like its numeric counterparts accepts anything that resembles a number this one goes beyond (user, internal or pseudo) registers values too.

```
\scratchdimen = 1234pt \todimension\scratchdimen
```

866 \tohexadecimal

The following code gives this: 4D2 with uppercase letters.

```
\scratchcounter = 1234 \tohexadecimal\scratchcounter
```

867 \tointeger

The following code gives this: 1234 and is equivalent to \number.

```
\scratchcounter = 1234 \tointeger\scratchcounter
```

868 \tokenized

Just as \expanded has a counterpart \unexpanded, it makes sense to give \detokenize a companion:

```
\edef\foo{\detokenize{\inframed{foo}}}  
\edef\oof{\detokenize{\inframed{oof}}}  
  
\meaning\foo \crlf \dontleavehmode\foo  
  
\edef\foo{\tokenized{\foo\foo}}  
  
\meaning\foo \crlf \dontleavehmode\foo  
  
\dontleavehmode\tokenized{\foo\oof}
```

```
macro:\inframed {foo}
```

```
\inframed {foo}
```

```
macro:\inframed {foo}\inframed {foo}
```

foo	foo
-----	-----

foo	foo	oof
-----	-----	-----

This primitive is similar to:

```
\def\tokenized#1{\scantextokens\expandafter{\normalexpanded{#1}}}
```

and should be more efficient, not that it matters much as we don't use it that much (if at all).

869 \toks

This is the accessor of a token register so it expects a number or \toksdef'd macro.

870 \toksapp

One way to append something to a token list is the following:

```
\scratchtoks\expandafter{\the\scratchtoks more stuff}
```

This works all right, but it involves a copy of what is already in \scratchtoks. This is seldom a real issue unless we have large token lists and many appends. This is why LuaTeX introduced:

```
\toksapp\scratchtoks{more stuff}
\toksapp\scratchtoksone\scratchtokstwo
```

At some point, when working on LuaMetaTeX, I realized that primitives like this one and the next appenders and prependers to be discussed were always on the radar of Taco and me. Some were even implemented in what we called eetex: extended ε -TeX, and we even found back the prototypes, dating from pre-pdfTeX times.

871 \toksdef

The given name (control sequence) will be bound to the given token register (a number). Often this primitive is hidden in a high level macro that manages allocation.

872 \tokspre

Where appending something is easy because of the possible \expandafter trickery a prepend would involve more work, either using temporary token registers and/or using a mixture of the (no)expansion added by ε -TeX, but all are kind of inefficient and cumbersome.

```
\tokspre\scratchtoks{less stuff}
\tokspre\scratchtoksone\scratchtokstwo
```

This prepends the token list that is provided.

873 \tolerance

When the par builder runs into a line with a badness larger than this value and when \emergencys-tretch is set a third pass is enabled. In LuaMetaTeX we can have more than one second pass and there are more parameters that influence the process.

874 \tolerant

This prefix tags the following macro as being tolerant with respect to the expected arguments. It only makes sense when delimited arguments are used or when braces are mandate.

```
\tolerant\def\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)}
```

This definition makes \foo tolerant for various calls:

```
\foo \foo[1] \foo [1] \foo[1] [2] \foo [1] [2]
```

these give: $()(1)(1)(1)(2)$ $(1)(2)$. The spaces after the first call disappear because the macro name parser gobbles it, while in the second case the `#*` gobbles them. Here is a variant:

```
\tolerant\def\foo[#1]#,[#2]{!#1!#2!}
```

```
\foo[?] x
\foo[?] [?] x
```

```
\tolerant\def\foo[#1]#*[#2]{!#1!#2!}
```

```
\foo[?] x
\foo[?] [?] x
```

We now get the following:

```
!?! x !?! x
```

```
!?!x !?! x
```

Here the `#`, remembers that spaces were gobbles and they will be put back when there is no further match. These are just a few examples of this tolerant feature. More details can be found in the lowlevel manuals.

875 \tomathstyle

Internally math styles are numbers, where `\displaystyle` is 0 and `\crampedscriptscriptstyle` is 7. You can convert the verbose style to a number with `\tomathstyle`.

876 \topmark

This is a reference to the last mark on the previous (split off) page, it gives back tokens.

877 \topmarks

This is a reference to the last mark with the given id (a number) on the previous page, it gives back tokens.

878 \topskip

This is the amount of glue that is added to the top of a (new) page.

879 \toscaled

The following code gives this: 1234.0 is similar to `\todimension` but omits the pt so that we don't need to revert to some nasty stripping code.

```
\scratchdimen = 1234pt \toscaled\scratchdimen
```

880 \tosparsedimension

The following code gives this: 1234pt where ‘sparse’ indicates that redundant trailing zeros are not shown.

```
\scratchdimen = 1234pt \tosparsedimension\scratchdimen
```

881 \tosparsescaled

The following code gives this: 1234 where ‘sparse’ means that redundant trailing zeros are omitted.

```
\scratchdimen = 1234pt \tosparsescaled\scratchdimen
```

882 \tpack

This primitive is like \vtop but without the callback overhead.

883 \tracingadjusts

In LuaMetaTeX the adjust feature has more functionality and also is carried over. When set to a positive values \vadjust processing reports details. The higher the number, the more you'll get.

884 \tracingalignments

When set to a positive value the alignment mechanism will keep you informed about what is done in various stages. Higher values unleash more information, including what callbacks kick in.

885 \tracingassigns

When set to a positive values assignments to parameters and variables are reported on the console and/or in the log file. Because LuaMetaTeX avoids redundant assignments these don't get reported.

886 \tracingcommands

When set to a positive values the commands (primitives) are reported on the console and/or in the log file.

887 \tracingexpressions

The extended expression commands like \numexpression and \dimexpression can be traced by setting this parameter to a positive value.

888 \tracingfitness

Because we have more fitness classes we also have (need) a (bit) more detailed tracing.

889 \tracingfullboxes

When set to a positive value the box will be shown in case of an overfull box. When a quality callback is set this will not happen as all reporting is then delegated.

890 \tracinggroups

When set to a positive values grouping is reported on the console and/or in the log file.

891 \tracinghyphenation

When set to a positive values the hyphenation process is reported on the console and/or in the log file.

892 \tracingifs

When set some details of what gets tested and what results are seen is reported.

893 \tracinginserts

A positive value enables tracing where values larger than 1 will report more details.

894 \tracinglevels

The lines in a log file can be prefixed with some details, depending on the bits set:

```
0x1  current group
0x2  current input
0x4  catcode table
```

895 \tracinglists

At various stages the lists being processed can be shown. This is mostly an option for developers.

896 \tracingloners

With loners we mean ‘widow’ and ‘club’ lines. This tracer can be handy when \doublepenaltymode is set and facing pages have different penalty values.

897 \tracinglooseness

This tracer reports some details about the decision made towards a possible loose result.

898 \tracinglostchars

When set to one characters not present in a font will be reported in the log file, a value of two will also report this on the console.

899 \tracingmacros

This parameter controls reporting of what macros are seen and expanded.

900 \tracingmarks

Marks are information blobs that track states that can be queried when a page is handled over to the shipout routine. They travel through the system in a bit different than traditionally: like like adjusts

and inserts deeply buried ones bubble up to outer level boxes. This parameters controls what progress gets reported.

901 `\tracingmath`

The higher the value, the more information you will get about the various stages in rendering math. Because tracing of nodes is rather verbose you need to know a bit what this engine does. Conceptually there are differences between the LuaMetaTeX and traditional engine, like more passes, inter-atom spacing, different low level mechanisms. This feature is mostly meant for developers who tweak the many available parameters.

902 `\tracingnesting`

A positive value triggers log messages about the current level.

903 `\tracingnodes`

When set to a positive value more details about nodes (in boxes) will be reported. Because this is also controlled by callbacks what gets reported is macro package dependent.

904 `\tracingonline`

The engine has two output channels: the log file and the console and by default most tracing (when enabled) goes to the log file. When this parameter is set to a positive value tracing will also happen in the console. Messages from the Lua end can be channeled independently.

905 `\tracingoutput`

Values larger than one result in some information about what gets passed to the output routine.

906 `\tracingpages`

Values larger than one result in some information about the page building process. In LuaMetaTeX there is more info for higher values.

907 `\tracingparagraphs`

Values larger than one result in some information about the par building process. In LuaMetaTeX there is more info for higher values.

908 `\tracingpasses`

In LuaMetaTeX you can configure additional second stage par builder passes and this parameter controls what gets reported on the console and/or in the log file.

909 `\tracingpenalties`

This setting triggers reporting of actions due to special penalties in the page builder.


```
910 \tracingrestores
```

When set to a positive values (re)assignments after grouping to parameters and variables are reported on the console and/or in the log file. Because LuaMetaTeX avoids redundant assignments these don't get reported.

```
911 \tracingstats
```

This parameter is a dummy in LuaMetaTeX. There are anyway some statistic reported when the format is made but for a regular run it is up to the macro package to come up with useful information.

912 \tsplit

This splits like `\vsplit` but it returns a `\vtop` box instead.

913 \uccode

When the `\uppercase` operation is applied the uppercase code of a character is used for the replacement. This primitive is used to set that code, so it expects two character number.

914 \uchyph

When set to a positive number words that start with a capital will be hyphenated.

915 \uleaders




















This leader adapts itself after a paragraph has been typeset. Here are a few examples:

test	\leaders	\hbox	{x}\hfill\	test
test	\uleaders	\hbox{x x x x\}	\hfill\	test
test		\hbox{x x x x\}	\hskip 3cm plus 1cm\	test
test	\uleaders	\hbox{x x x x\}	\hskip 3cm plus 1cm\	test

When an \uleaders is used the glue in the given box will be adapted to the available space.

```
test xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx test
test x                                     x                                    x      x test
test x x x x                             test
test x          x           x       x test
```

Optionally the callback followed by a number can be given, in which case a callback kicks in that gets that the node, a group identifier, and the number passed. It permits (for instance) adaptive graphics:

1=i  6=vi  11=xi  16=xvi  21=xxi  26=xxvi  31=xxxi  36=xxxvi  41=xli 
46=xlvi  51=li  56=lvi  61=lxvi  66=lxvi  71=lxxi  76=lxxvi  81=lxxxi 
86=lxxxvi  91=xci  96=xcvi .

These \uleaders can be used in horizontal and vertical mode so we give a few more examples.

```
\unexpandedloop 1 30 1 {x \hbox{1 2 3}}
}
```

```

\unexpandedloop 1 30 1 {x {\uleaders \hbox{1 2 3}\hskip 0pt plus 10pt           minus
  10pt\relax}          x }
\unexpandedloop 1 30 1 {x {\uleaders \hbox{1 2 3}\hskip 0pt plus \interwordstretch
  minus \interwordshrink} x }
\unexpandedloop 1 30 1 {x {\uleaders \hbox{1 2 3}\hskip 0pt plus 2\interwordstretch
  minus 2\interwordshrink} x }

```

This renders as:

```

x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x
x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x
x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x
x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x
x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x

```

It is clear that the flexibility of the box plays a role in the line break calculations. But in the end the backend has to do the work which is why it's a 'user' leader. Here is an example of a vertical one. Compare:

```

{\green \hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
\ vbox to 40pt {
  {\red\hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
  \ vbox {
    \vskip2pt {\blue\hrule width \hsize} \par
    \vskip 10pt plus 10pt minus 10pt
    {\blue\hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
  }
  \vskip2pt {\red\hrule width \hsize} \par
}
\vskip2pt {\green \hrule width \hsize} \par

```

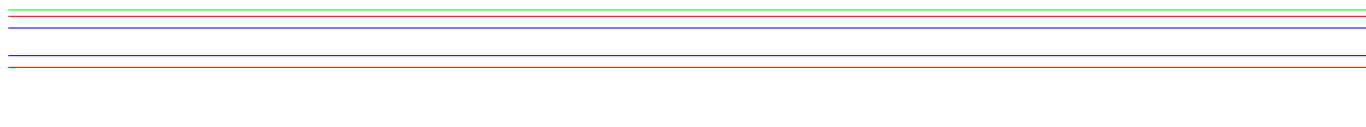
with:

```

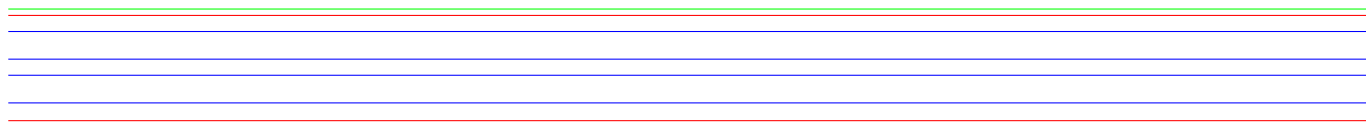
{\green \hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
\ vbox to 40pt {
  {\red\hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
  \uleaders\vbox {
    \vskip2pt {\blue\hrule width \hsize} \par
    \vskip 10pt plus 10pt minus 10pt
    {\blue\hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
  } \vskip 0pt plus 10pt minus 10pt
  \vskip2pt {\red\hrule width \hsize} \par
}
\vskip2pt {\green \hrule width \hsize} \par

```

In the first case we get the this:



but with `\uleaders` we get:



or this:



In the second case we flatten the leaders in the engine by setting the second bit in the `\normalizeparmode` parameter (0x2). We actually do the same with `\normalizelinemode` where bit 10 is set (0x200). The `delay` keyword can be passed with a box to prevent flattening. If we don't do this in the engine, the backend has to take care of it. In principle this permits implementing variants in a macro package. Eventually there will be plenty examples in the ConT_EXt code base and documentation. Till then, consider this experimental.

916 `\unboundary`

When possible a preceding boundary node will be removed.

917 `\undent`

When possible the already added indentation will be removed.

918 `\underline`

This is a math specific primitive that draws a line under the given content. It is a poor mans replacement for a delimiter. The thickness is set with `\Umathunderbarrule`, the distance between content and rule is set by `\Umathunderbarvgap` and `\Umathunderbarkern` is added above the rule. The style used for the content under the rule can be set with `\Umathunderlinevariant`. See `\overline` for what these parameters do.

919 `\unexpanded`

This is an ε -T_EX enhancement. The content will not be expanded in a context where expansion is happening, like in an `\edef`. In ConT_EXt you need to use `\normalunexpanded` because we already had a macro with that name.

<code>\def A{!}</code>	<code>\meaning A</code>
<code>\def B{?}</code>	<code>\meaning B</code>
<code>\edef C{\A B}</code>	<code>\meaning C</code>

```
\edef\C{\normalunexpanded{\A}\B} \meaning\C
```

```
macro:!  
macro:?  
macro:!?  
macro:\A ?
```

920 \unexpandedendless

This one loops forever so you need to quit explicitly.

921 \unexpandedloop

As follow up on \expandedloop we now show its counterpart:

```
\edef\whatever  
  {\unexpandedloop 1 10 1  
   {\scratchcounter=\the\currentloopiterator\relax}}
```

```
\meaningasis\whatever
```

```
\def \whatever {\scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter  
=0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax  
\scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax }
```

The difference between the (un)expanded loops and a local controlled one is shown here. Watch the out of order injection of A's.

```
\edef\TestA{\localcontrolledloop 1 5 1 {A}} % out of order  
\edef\TestB{\expandedloop 1 5 1 {B}}  
\edef\TestC{\unexpandedloop 1 5 1 {C\relax}}
```

```
AAAAA
```

We show the effective definition as well as the outcome of using them

```
\meaningasis\TestA  
\meaningasis\TestB  
\meaningasis\TestC
```

```
A: \TestA  
B: \TestB  
C: \TestC
```

```
\def \TestA {}  
\def \TestB {BBBBB}  
\def \TestC {C\relax C\relax C\relax C\relax C\relax }
```

```
A:  
B: BBBBB  
C: CCCCC
```

Watch how because it is empty `\TestA` has become a constant macro because that's what deep down empty boils down to.

922 `\unexpandedrepeat`

This one takes one instead of three arguments which looks better in simple loops.

923 `\unhbox`

A box is a packaged list and once packed travels through the system as a single object with properties, like dimensions. This primitive injects the original list and discards the wrapper.

924 `\unhcopy`

This is like `\unhbox` but keeps the original. It is one of the more costly operations.

925 `\unhpack`

This primitive is like `\unhbox` but without the callback overhead.

926 `\unkern`

This removes the last kern, if possible.

927 `\unless`

This ε -T_EX prefix will negate the test (when applicable).

```
\ifx\one\two YES\else NO\fi
\unless\ifx\one\two NO\else YES\fi
```

This primitive is hardly used in ConT_EXt and we probably could get rid of these few cases.

928 `\unletfrozen`

A frozen macro cannot be redefined: you get an error. But as nothing in T_EX is set in stone, you can do this:

```
\frozen\def\MyMacro{...}
\unletfrozen\MyMacro
```

and `\MyMacro` is no longer protected from overloading. It is still undecided to what extent ConT_EXt will use this feature.

929 `\unletprotected`

The complementary operation of `\letprotected` can be used to unprotect a macro, so that it gets expandable.

```

\def \MyMacroA{alpha}
\protected \def \MyMacroB{beta}
\edef \MyMacroC{\MyMacroA\MyMacroB}
\unletprotected \MyMacroB
\edef \MyMacroD{\MyMacroA\MyMacroB}
\meaning \MyMacroC\crlf
\meaning \MyMacroD\par

```

Compare this with the example in the previous section:

```

macro:alpha\MyMacroB
macro:alphabeta

```

930 \unpenalty

This removes the last penalty, if possible.

931 \unskip

This removes the last glue, if possible.

932 \untraced

Related to the meaning providers is the `\untraced` prefix. It marks a macro as to be reported by name only. It makes the macro look like a primitive.

```

\def\foo{}
\untraced\def\oof{}

\scratchtoks{\foo\foo\oof\oof}

\tracingall \the\scratchtoks \tracingnone

```

This will show up in the log as follows:

```

1:4: {\the}
1:5: \foo ->
1:5: \foo ->
1:5: \oof
1:5: \oof

```

This is again a trick to avoid too much clutter in a log. Often it doesn't matter to users what the meaning of a macro is (if they trace at all).¹¹

933 \unvbox

A box is a packaged list and once packed travels through the system as a single object with properties, like dimensions. This primitive injects the original list and discards the wrapper.

¹¹ An earlier variant could also hide the expansion completely but that was just confusing.

934 `\unvcopy`

This is like `\unvbox` but keeps the original. It is one of the more costly operations.

935 `\unvpack`

This primitive is like `\unvbox` but without the callback overhead.

936 `\uppercase`

See its counterpart `\lowercase` for an explanation.

937 `\vadjust`

This injects a node that stores material that will be injected before or after the line where it has become part of. In LuaMetaTeX there are more features, driven by keywords.

938 `\valign`

This command starts vertically aligned material. Its counterpart `\halign` is used more frequently. Most macro packages provide wrappers around these commands. First one specifies a preamble which is then followed by entries (rows and columns).

939 `\variablefam`

In traditional TeX sets the family of what are considered variables (class 7) to the current family (which often means that they adapt to the current alphabet) and then injects a math character of class ordinary. This parameter can be used to obey the given class when the family set for a character is the same as this parameter. So we then use the given class with the current family. It is mostly there for compatibility with LuaTeX and experimenting (outside ConTeXt).

940 `\vbadness`

This sets the threshold for reporting a (vertical) badness value, its current value is 0.

941 `\vbox`

This creates a vertical box. In the process callbacks can be triggered that can preprocess the content, influence line breaking as well as assembling the resulting paragraph. More can be found in dedicated manuals. The baseline is at the bottom.

942 `\vcenter`

In traditional TeX this box packer is only permitted in math mode but in LuaMetaTeX it also works in text mode. The content is centered in the vertical box.

943 `\vfil`

This is a shortcut for `\vskip` plus 1 fil (first order filler).

944 \vfill

This is a shortcut for `\vskip` plus 1 fill (second order filler).

945 \vfilneg

This is a shortcut for `\vskip` plus - 1 fil so it can compensate `\vfil`.

946 \vfuzz

This dimension sets the threshold for reporting vertical boxes that are under- or overfull. The current value is 0.1pt.

947 \virtualhrule

This is a horizontal rule with zero dimensions from the perspective of the frontend but the backend can access them as set.

948 \virtualvrule

This is a vertical rule with zero dimensions from the perspective of the frontend but the backend can access them as set.

949 \vkern

This primitive is like `\kern` but will force the engine into vertical mode if it isn't yet.

950 \vpack

This primitive is like `\vbox` but without the callback overhead.

951 \vpenalty

This primitive is like `\penalty` but will force the engine into vertical mode if it isn't yet.

952 \vrule

This creates a vertical rule. Unless the height and depth are set they will stretch to fix the available space. In addition to the traditional width, height and depth specifiers some more are accepted. These are discussed in other manuals. See `\hrule` for a simple example.

953 \vsize

This sets (or gets) the current vertical size. While setting the `\hsize` inside a `\vbox` has consequences, setting the `\vsize` mostly makes sense at the outer level (the page).

954 \vskip

The given glue is injected in the vertical list. If possible vertical mode is entered.

955 \vsplit

This operator splits a given amount from a vertical box. In LuaMetaTeX we can split to but also upto, so that we don't have to repack the result in order to see how much is actually in there.

956 \vss

This is the vertical variant of \hss. See there for what it means.

957 \vtop

This creates a vertical box. In the process callbacks can be triggered that can preprocess the content, influence line breaking as well as assembling the resulting paragraph. More can be found in dedicated manuals. The baseline is at the top.

958 \wd

Returns the width of the given box.

959 \widowpenalties

This is an array of penalty put before the last lines in a paragraph. High values discourage (or even prevent) a lone line at the beginning of a next page. This command expects a count value indicating the number of entries that will follow. The first entry is ends up before the last line.

960 \widowpenalty

This is the penalty put before a widow line in a paragraph. High values discourage (or even prevent) a lone line at the beginning of a next page.

961 \wordboundary

The hyphenation routine has to decide where a word begins and ends. If you want to make sure that there is a proper begin or end of a word you can inject this boundary.

962 \wrapuppar

What this primitive does can best be shown with an example:

some text\wrapuppar{one} and some\wrapuppar{two} more

We get:

some text and some more twoone

So, it is a complementary command to \everypar. It can only be issued inside a paragraph.

963 \xdef

This is an alternative for \global\edef:

```
\xdef\MyMacro{...}
```

964 \xdefcsname

This is the companion of \xdef:

```
\expandafter\xdef\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
      \xdefcsname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
```

965 \xleaders

See \gleaders for an explanation.

966 \xspaceskip

Normally the glue inserted when a space is encountered after a character with a space factor other than 1000 is taken from the font (fontdimen 7) unless this parameter is set in which case its value is added.

967 \xtoks

This is the global variant of \etoks.

968 \xtoksapp

This is the global variant of \etoksapp.

969 \xtokspre

This is the global variant of \etokspre.

970 \year

This internal number starts out with the year that the job started.

5.4 Obsolete

The LuaMetaTeX engine has more than its LuaTeX ancestor but it also has less. Because in the end the local control mechanism performed quite okay I decided to drop the \immediateassignment and \immediateassigned variants. They sort of used the same trick so there isn't much to gain and it was less generic (read: error prone).

5.5 Syntax

5.5.1 accent

t `\accent`
 $[xoffset\ dimension][yoffset\ dimension] integer character$

5.5.2 aftersomething

l `\afterassigned`
 $\{tokens\}$
t `\afterassignment`
 $token$
t `\aftergroup`
 $token$
l `\aftergrouped`
 $\{tokens\}$
l `\atendoffile`
 $token$
l `\atendoffiled`
 $[reverse]\{tokens\}$
l `\atendofgroup`
 $token$
l `\atendofgrouped`
 $\{tokens\}$

5.5.3 alignmenttab

l `\aligntab`

5.5.4 arithmetic

t `\advance`
 $quantity[by]quantity$
l `\advanceby`
 $quantityquantity$
t `\divide`
 $quantity[by]quantity$
l `\divideby`
 $quantityquantity$
l `\edivide`
 $quantityquantity$
l `\edivideby`
 $quantityquantity$
t `\multiply`
 $quantity[by]quantity$

l `\multiplyby`
 $quantityquantity$
l `\rdivide`
 $quantityquantity$
l `\rdivideby`
 $quantityquantity$

5.5.5 association

l `\associateunit`
 $\cs [=]integer$
 $>\cs:integer$

5.5.6 auxiliary

l `\insertmode`
 $integer$
 $:integer$
e `\interactionmode`
 $integer$
 $:integer$
t `\prevdepth`
 $dimension$
 $:dimension$
t `\prevgraf`
 $integer$
 $:integer$
t `\spacefactor`
 $integer$
 $:integer$

5.5.7 begingroup

t `\begingroup`
l `\beginmathgroup`
l `\beginsimplegroup`

5.5.8 beginlocal

l `\beginlocalcontrol`
l `\expandedendless`
 $\{tokens\}$
l `\expandedloop`
 $integerintegerinteger\{tokens\}$

```

l \expandedrepeat
    integer { tokens }
l \localcontrol
    tokens\endlocalcontrol
l \localcontrolled
    { tokens }
l \localcontrolledendless
    { tokens }
l \localcontrolledloop
    see \expandedloop
l \localcontrolledrepeat
    integer { tokens }
l \unexpandedendless
    { tokens }
l \unexpandedloop
    see \expandedloop
l \unexpandedrepeat
    integer { tokens }

```

5.5.9 beginparagraph

```

t \indent
t \noindent
l \parattribute
    integer [=] integer
l \quitvmode
l \snapshotpar
    cardinal
    : integer
l \undent
l \wrapuppar
    [ reverse ] { tokens }

```

5.5.10 boundary

```

l \boundary
    [=] integer
l \luaboundary
    [=] integer integer
l \mathboundary
    [=] integer [ integer ]
l \noboundary
l \optionalboundary
    [=] integer
l \pageboundary
    [=] integer
l \protrusionboundary
    [=] integer

```

```

l \wordboundary

```

5.5.11 boxproperty

```

l \boxadapt
    ( index | box ) [=] integer
    > ( index | box ) : dimension
l \boxanchor
    see \boxadapt
l \boxanchors
    ( index | box ) [=] integer integer
    > ( index | box ) : integer
l \boxattribute
    ( index | box ) integer [=] integer
    > ( index | box ) integer : integer
l \boxdirection
    see \boxadapt
l \boxfinalize
    see \boxadapt
l \boxfreeze
    see \boxadapt
l \boxgeometry
    see \boxadapt
l \boxlimit
    ( index | box )
l \boxlimitate
    see \boxadapt
l \boxorientation
    see \boxadapt
l \boxrepack
    see \boxlimit
l \boxshift
    ( index | box ) [=] dimension
    > ( index | box ) : dimension
l \boxshrink
    see \boxlimit
l \boxsource
    see \boxadapt
l \boxstretch
    see \boxlimit
l \boxtarget
    see \boxadapt
l \boxtotal
    see \boxlimit
l \boxvadjust
    ( index | box ) { tokens }
    > ( index | box ) : cardinal

```

l \boxxmove
 see \boxshift
l \boxxoffset
 see \boxshift
l \boxymove
 see \boxshift
l \boxyoffset
 see \boxshift
t \dp
 see \boxshift
t \ht
 see \boxshift
t \wd
 see \boxshift

5.5.12 caseshift

t \lowercase
 { *tokens* }
t \uppercase
 { *tokens* }

5.5.13 catcodetable

l \initcatcodetable
 integer
l \restorecatcodetable
 integer
l \savecatcodetable
 integer

5.5.14 charnumber

t \char
 integer
l \glyph
 [*xoffset dimension*] [*yoffset dimension*] [*scale integer*] [*xscale integer*] [*yscale integer*] [*left dimension*] [*right dimension*] [*raise dimension*] [*options integer*] [*font integer*] [*id integer*] *integer*

5.5.15 combinetoks

l \etoks
 toks { *tokens* }

l \etoksapp
 toks { *tokens* }
l \etokspre
 toks { *tokens* }
l \gtoksapp
 toks { *tokens* }
l \gtokspre
 toks { *tokens* }
l \toksapp
 toks { *tokens* }
l \tokspre
 toks { *tokens* }
l \xtoks
 toks { *tokens* }
l \xtoksapp
 toks { *tokens* }
l \xtokspre
 toks { *tokens* }

5.5.16 convert

l \csactive
 > *token* : *tokens*
l \csnamestring
 : *tokens*
l \csstring
 > *token* : *tokens*
l \detokened
 > (\cs | { *tokens* } | *toks*) : *tokens*
l \detokenized
 > { *tokens* } : *tokens*
l \directlua
 > { *tokens* } : *tokens*
l \expanded
 > { *tokens* } : *tokens*
l \fontidentifier
 TODO
t \fontname
 > (*font* | *integer*) : *tokens*
l \fontspecifiedname
 > (*font* | *integer*) : *tokens*
l \formatname
 : *tokens*
t \jobname
 : *tokens*
l \luabytocode
 > *integer* : *tokens*
l \luaescapestring

```

    > {tokens}: tokens
l \luafunction
    > integer: tokens
l \luatexbanner
    : tokens
t \meaning
    > token: tokens
l \meaningasis
    > token: tokens
l \meaningful
    > token: tokens
l \meaningfull
    > token: tokens
l \meaningles
    > token: tokens
l \meaningless
    > token: tokens
t \number
    > integer: tokens
t \romannumeral
    > integer: tokens
l \semiexpanded
    > {tokens}: tokens
t \string
    > token: tokens
l \tocharacter
    > integer: tokens
l \todimension
    > dimension: tokens
l \tohexadecimal
    > integer: tokens
l \tointeger
    > integer: tokens
l \tomathstyle
    > mathstyle: tokens
l \toscaled
    > dimension: tokens
l \tosparsedimension
    > dimension: tokens
l \tosparsecaled
    > dimension: tokens

```

5.5.17 csname

```

l \begincsname
    tokens\endcsname
t \csname
    tokens\endcsname

```

```

l \futurecsname
    tokens\endcsname
l \lastnamedcs

```

5.5.18 def

```

l \cdef
    \cs [preamble] {tokens}
l \cdefcsname
    tokens\endcsname [preamble] {tokens}
t \def
    \cs [preamble] {tokens}
l \defcsname
    tokens\endcsname [preamble] {tokens}
t \edef
    \cs [preamble] {tokens}
l \edefcsname
    tokens\endcsname [preamble] {tokens}
t \gdef
    \cs [preamble] {tokens}
l \gdefcsname
    tokens\endcsname [preamble] {tokens}
t \xdef
    \cs [preamble] {tokens}
l \xdefcsname
    tokens\endcsname [preamble] {tokens}

```

5.5.19 definecharcode

```

l \Udelcode
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer
l \Umathcode
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer
l \amcode
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer
t \catcode
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer
l \cccode
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer
t \delcode
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer

```

```

l \hccode
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer
l \hmcodes
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer
t \lccode
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer
t \mathcode
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer
t \sfcode
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer
t \uccode
    integer [=] integer
    > integer: integer

```

5.5.20 definefamily

```

t \scriptfont
    family ( font | integer )
    > family: integer
t \scriptscriptfont
    see \scriptfont
t \textfont
    see \scriptfont

```

5.5.21 definefont

```

t \font
    \cs ( { filename } | filename ) [ ( at
    dimension | scaled integer ) ]
    : tokens

```

5.5.22 delimiternumber

```

l \Udelimiter
    integer integer integer
t \delimiter
    integer

```

5.5.23 discretionary

```

t \-

```

```

l \automaticdiscretionary
t \discretionary
    [ penalty ] [ postword ] [ preword ]
    [ break ] [ nobreak ] [ options ] [ class ]
    { tokens } { tokens } { tokens }
l \explicitdiscretionary

```

5.5.24 endcsname

```

t \endcsname

```

5.5.25 endgroup

```

t \endgroup
l \endmathgroup
l \endsimplegroup

```

5.5.26 endjob

```

t \dump
t \end

```

5.5.27 endlcal

```

l \endlocalcontrol

```

5.5.28 endparagraph

```

l \localbreakpar
t \par

```

5.5.29 endtemplate

```

l \aligncontent
t \cr
t \crr
t \noalign
    { tokens }
t \omit
l \realign
    { tokens } { tokens }
t \span

```

5.5.30 equationnumber

t `\eqno`
 $\{tokens\}$
t `\leqno`
 $\{tokens\}$

5.5.31 expandafter

l `\expand`
 $token$
l `\expandactive`
 $token$
t `\expandafter`
 $token\ token$
l `\expandafterpars`
 $token$
l `\expandafterspaces`
 $token$
l `\expandcstoken`
 $token$
l `\expandedafter`
 $token\ \{tokens\}$
l `\expandparameter`
 $integer$
l `\expandtoken`
 $token$
l `\expandtoks`
 $\{tokens\}$
l `\futureexpand`
 $token\ token\ token$
l `\futureexpandis`
 TODO
l `\futureexpandisap`
 TODO
l `\semiexpand`
 $token$
e `\unless`

5.5.32 explicit space

t `\`
l `\explicit space`

5.5.33 fontproperty

l `\cfcode`
 $(font\ |\ integer)\ integer\ [=]\ integer$

$>\ (font\ |\ integer)\ integer\ :\ integer$
l `\efcode`
 see `\cfcode`
t `\fontdimen`
 $(font\ |\ integer)\ integer\ [=]\ dimension$
 $>\ (font\ |\ integer)\ integer\ :\ dimension$
t `\hyphenchar`
 $(font\ |\ integer)\ [=]\ integer$
 $>\ (font\ |\ integer)\ :\ integer$
l `\lpcode`
 see `\fontdimen`
l `\rpcode`
 see `\fontdimen`
l `\scaledfontdimen`
 see `\hyphenchar`
t `\skewchar`
 see `\hyphenchar`

5.5.34 getmark

t `\botmark`
e `\botmarks`
 $integer$
l `\currentmarks`
 $integer$
t `\firstmark`
e `\firstmarks`
 $integer$
t `\splitbotmark`
e `\splitbotmarks`
 $integer$
t `\splitfirstmark`
e `\splitfirstmarks`
 $integer$
t `\topmark`
e `\topmarks`
 $integer$

5.5.35 halign

t `\halign`
 $[attr\ integer\ integer]\ [callback\ integer]\ [discard]\ [noskips]\ [reverse]\ [to\ dimension]\ [spread\ dimension]\ \{tokens\}$

5.5.36 hmove

t `\moveleft`
dimension box

t `\moveright`
dimension box

5.5.37 hrule

t `\hrule`
 $[attr\ integer\ [=]\ integer]\ [width\ dimension]\ [height\ dimension]\ [depth\ dimension]\ [xoffset\ dimension]\ [yoffset\ dimension]\ [left\ dimension]\ [right\ dimension]\ [top\ dimension]\ [bottom\ dimension]$

l `\nohrule`
 see `\hrule`

l `\virtualhrule`
 see `\hrule`

5.5.38 hskip

t `\hfil`

t `\hfill`

t `\hfilneg`

t `\hskip`
 $dimension\ [plus\ (dimension\ |fi[n*l])]\ [minus\ (dimension\ |fi[n*l])]$

t `\hss`

5.5.39 hyphenation

l `\hjcode`
 $integer\ [=]\ integer$

t `\hyphenation`
 $\{tokens\}$

l `\hyphenationmin`
 $[=]\ integer$

t `\patterns`
 $\{tokens\}$

l `\postexhyphenchar`
 $[=]\ integer$

l `\posthyphenchar`
 $[=]\ integer$

l `\preexhyphenchar`
 $[=]\ integer$

l `\prehyphenchar`
 $[=]\ integer$

5.5.40 iftest

t `\else`

t `\fi`

t `\if`

l `\ifabsdim`
 $dimension\ (!\ |<|\ =|\ >|\ \in|\ \notin|\ \neq|\ \leq|\ \geq|\ \neq|\ \neq)$

l `\ifabsfloat`
 $float\ (!\ |<|\ =|\ >|\ \in|\ \notin|\ \neq|\ \leq|\ \geq|\ \neq|\ \neq)$

l `\ifabsnum`
 $integer\ (!\ |<|\ =|\ >|\ \in|\ \notin|\ \neq|\ \leq|\ \geq|\ \neq|\ \neq)$

l `\ifarguments`

l `\ifboolean`
 $integer$

t `\ifcase`
 $integer$

t `\ifcat`
 $token$

l `\ifchkdim`
 $tokens\or$

l `\ifchkdimension`
 $tokens\or$

l `\ifchknum`
 $tokens\or$

l `\ifchknumber`
 $tokens\or$

l `\ifcmpdim`
 $dimension\ dimension$

l `\ifcmpnum`
 $integer\ integer$

l `\ifcondition`
 $\if\dots$

l `\ifcramped`

e `\ifcsname`
 $tokens\endcsname$

l `\ifcstok`
 $tokens\relax$

e `\ifdefined`
 $token$

t `\ifdim`
 see `\ifabsdim`

l \ifdimexpression
tokens\relax
l \ifdimval
tokens\or
l \ifempty
(token | { tokens })
t \iffalse
l \ifflags
\cs
l \iffloat
see \ifabsfloat
e \iffontchar
integer integer
l \ifhaschar
token { tokens }
l \ifhastok
token { tokens }
l \ifhastoks
tokens\relax
l \ifhasxtoks
tokens\relax
t \ifhbox
(index | box)
t \ifhmode
l \iffinalignment
l \ifincsname
tokens\endcsname
t \ifinner
l \ifinsert
integer
l \ifintervaldim
dimension dimension dimension
l \ifintervalfloat
integer integer integer
l \ifintervalnum
float float float
l \iflastnamedcs
l \ifmathparameter
integer
l \ifmathstyle
mathstyle
t \ifmmode
t \ifnum
see \ifabsnum
l \ifnumexpression
tokens\relax
l \ifnumval
tokens\or

t \ifodd
integer
l \ifparameter
parameter\or
l \ifparameters
l \ifrelax
token
l \iftok
tokens\relax
t \iftrue
t \ifvbox
see \ifhbox
t \ifvmode
t \ifvoid
see \ifhbox
t \ifx
token
l \ifzerodim
dimension
l \ifzeroofloat
float
l \ifzeronum
integer
t \or
l \orelse
l \orunless

5.5.41 ignoresomething

l \ignorearguments
l \ignorenestedupto
token
l \ignorepars
l \ignorereset
t \ignorespaces
l \ignoreupto
token

5.5.42 input

t \endinput
t \eofinput
{ tokens } ({ filename } | filename)
t \input
({ filename } | filename)
l \quitloop
l \quitloopnow

```

l \retokenized
    [ catcodetable ] { tokens }
l \scantextokens
    { tokens }
e \scantokens
    { tokens }
l \tokenized
    { tokens }

```

5.5.43 insert

```

t \insert
    integer

```

5.5.44 interaction

```

t \batchmode
t \errorstopmode
t \nonstopmode
t \scrollmode

```

5.5.45 internaldimension

```

t \boxmaxdepth
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \delimitershortfall
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \displayindent
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \displaywidth
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \emergencyextrastretch
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \emergencystretch
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
l \glyphxoffset
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
l \glyphyoffset
    [=] dimension
    : dimension

```

```

t \hangindent
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \hfuzz
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \hsize
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
l \ignoredepthcriterion
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \lineskiplimit
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \mathsurround
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \maxdepth
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \nulldelimiterspace
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \overfullrule
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
l \pageextragoal
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \parindent
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \predisplaysize
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
l \pxdimen
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \scriptspace
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
l \shortinlinemaththreshold
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
t \splitmaxdepth
    [=] dimension
    : dimension

```

l `\tabsize`
 `[=]` *dimension*
 : *dimension*

t `\vfuzz`
 `[=]` *dimension*
 : *dimension*

t `\vsize`
 `[=]` *dimension*
 : *dimension*

5.5.46 internalglue

t `\abovedisplayshortskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\abovedisplayskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

l `\additionalpageskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\baselineskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\belowdisplayshortskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\belowdisplayskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

l `\emergencyleftskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

l `\emergencyrightskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

l `\initialpageskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

l `\initialtopskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\leftskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\lineskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

l `\mathsurroundskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

l `\maththreshold`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

l `\parfillleftskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

l `\parfillrightskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\parfillskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

l `\parinitleftskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

l `\parinitrightskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\parskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\rightskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\spaceskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\splittopskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\tabskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\topskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

t `\xspaceskip`
 `[=]` *glue*
 : *glue*

5.5.47 internalinteger

t `\adjdemerits`
 `[=]` *integer*
 : *integer*

l \adjustspacing [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \defaultskewchar [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \adjustspacingshrink [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \delimiterfactor [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \adjustspacingstep [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \discretionaryoptions [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \adjustspacingstretch [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \displaywidowpenalty [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \alignmentcellsource [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \doublehyphendemerits [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \alignmentwrapsource [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \doublepenaltymode [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \automatichyphenpenalty [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \endlinechar [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \automigrationmode [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \errorcontextlines [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \autoparagraphmode [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \escapechar [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
t \binoppenalty [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \eufactor [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \boxlimitmode [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \exceptionpenalty [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
t \brokenpenalty [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \exhyphenchar [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \catcodetable [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \exhyphenpenalty [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
t \clubpenalty [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \explicitthyphenpenalty [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
t \day [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \fam [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
t \defaulthyphenchar [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \finalhyphendemerits [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>

l \firstvalidlanguage	t \hbadness
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
t \floatingpenalty	t \holdinginserts
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
t \globaldefs	l \holdingmigrations
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphdatafield	l \hyphenationmode
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphoptions	t \hyphenpenalty
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphscale	t \interlinepenalty
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphscriptfield	t \language
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphscriptscale	e \lastlinefit
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphscriptscriptscale	t \lefthyphenmin
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphslant	l \lefttwindemerits
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphstatefield	l \linebreakchecks
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphtextscale	l \linebreakoptional
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphweight	l \linebreakpasses
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphxscale	l \linedirection
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
l \glyphyscale	t \linepenalty
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>
t \hangafter	l \localbrokenpenalty
[=] <i>integer</i>	[=] <i>integer</i>
: <i>integer</i>	: <i>integer</i>

<code>\localinterlinepenalty</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathfontcontrol</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\localpretolerance</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathgluemode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\localtolerance</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathgroupingmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\looseness</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathinlinepenaltyfactor</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\luacopyinputnodes</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathleftclass</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\mathbeginclass</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathlimitsmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\mathcheckfencesmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathnolimitsmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\mathdictgroup</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathpenaltiesmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\mathdictproperties</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathpretolerance</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\mathdirection</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathrightclass</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\mathdisplaymode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathrulesfam</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\mathdisplaypenaltyfactor</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathrulesmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\mathdisplayskipmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathscriptsmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\mathdoublescriptmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathslackmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\mathendclass</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathspacingmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
<code>\matheqnogapstep</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	<code>\mathsurroundmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>

l <code>\mathtolerance</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	l <code>\prebinoppenalty</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
t <code>\maxdeadcycles</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	e <code>\predisplaydirection</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
t <code>\month</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	l <code>\predisplaygapfactor</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
t <code>\newlinechar</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	t <code>\predisplaypenalty</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
l <code>\normalizelinemode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	l <code>\preinlinepenalty</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
l <code>\normalizeparmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	l <code>\prerelpenalty</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
l <code>\nospaces</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	l <code>\preshortinlinepenalty</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
l <code>\outputbox</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	t <code>\pretolerance</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
t <code>\outputpenalty</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	l <code>\protrudechars</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
l <code>\overloadmode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	t <code>\relpenalty</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
l <code>\parametermode</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	t <code>\righthyphenmin</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
l <code>\pardirection</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	l <code>\righttwindemerits</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
t <code>\pausing</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	e <code>\savingshyphcodes</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
t <code>\postdisplaypenalty</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	e <code>\savingsvdiscards</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
l <code>\postinlinepenalty</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	l <code>\scriptspaceafterfactor</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>
l <code>\postshortinlinepenalty</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>	l <code>\scriptspacebeforefactor</code> <code>[=] integer</code> <code>: integer</code>

l \scriptspacebetweenfactor [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \textdirection [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \setfontid [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \time [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
t \setlanguage [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \tolerance [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \shapingpenaltiesmode [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \tracingadjusts [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \shapingpenalty [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \tracingalignments [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \shortinlineorphanpenalty [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	e \tracingassigns [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
t \showboxbreadth [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	t \tracingcommands [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
t \showboxdepth [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \tracingexpressions [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
t \shownodedetails [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \tracingfitness [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \singlelinepenalty [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \tracingfullboxes [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \spacechar [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	e \tracinggroups [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \spacefactormode [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \tracinghyphenation [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \spacefactoroverload [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	e \tracingifs [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \spacefactorshrinklimit [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \tracinginserts [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \spacefactorstretchlimit [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \tracinglevels [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>
l \supmarkmode [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>	l \tracinglists [=] <i>integer</i> : <i>integer</i>

t `\tracingloners`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
l `\tracinglooseness`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
t `\tracinglostchars`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
t `\tracingmacros`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
l `\tracingmarks`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
l `\tracingmath`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
e `\tracingnesting`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
l `\tracingnodes`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
t `\tracingonline`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
l `\tracingorphans`
 TODO
t `\tracingoutput`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
t `\tracingpages`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
t `\tracingparagraphs`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
l `\tracingpasses`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
l `\tracingpenalties`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
t `\tracingrestores`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
t `\tracingstats`
 `[=] integer`

 : integer
l `\tracingtoddlers`
 TODO
t `\uchyph`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
l `\variablefam`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
t `\vbadness`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
t `\widowpenalty`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer
t `\year`
 `[=] integer`
 : integer

5.5.48 internalmuglue

t `\medmuskip`
 `[=] muglue`
 : muglue
l `\pettymuskip`
 `[=] muglue`
 : muglue
t `\thickmuskip`
 `[=] muglue`
 : muglue
t `\thinmuskip`
 `[=] muglue`
 : muglue
l `\tinymuskip`
 `[=] muglue`
 : muglue

5.5.49 internaltoks

t `\errhelp`
 `[=] toks`
 : toks
l `\everybeforepar`
 `[=] toks`
 : toks
t `\everycr`
 `[=] toks`
 : toks

t `\everydisplay`
 `[=] toks`
 : *toks*
e `\everyeof`
 `[=] toks`
 : *toks*
t `\everyhbox`
 `[=] toks`
 : *toks*
t `\everyjob`
 `[=] toks`
 : *toks*
t `\everymath`
 `[=] toks`
 : *toks*
l `\everymathatom`
 `[=] toks`
 : *toks*
t `\everypar`
 `[=] toks`
 : *toks*
l `\everytab`
 `[=] toks`
 : *toks*
t `\everyvbox`
 `[=] toks`
 : *toks*
t `\output`
 `[=] toks`
 : *toks*

5.5.50 italiccorrection

t `\/`
l `\explicititaliccorrection`
l `\forcedleftcorrection`
l `\forcedrightcorrection`

5.5.51 kern

t `\hkern`
 dimension
t `\kern`
 dimension
t `\vkern`
 dimension

5.5.52 leader

t `\cleaders`
 `(box | rule | glyph) glue`
l `\gleaders`
 see `\cleaders`
t `\leaders`
 see `\cleaders`
l `\uleaders`
 `[callback integer] [line] [nobreak]`
 `(box | rule | glyph) glue`
t `\xleaders`
 see `\cleaders`

5.5.53 legacy

t `\shipout`
 `{ tokens }`

5.5.54 let

l `\futuredef`
 `\cs \cs`
t `\futurelet`
 `\cs [=] \cs`
l `\glet`
 `\cs`
l `\gletcsname`
 `tokens\endcsname`
l `\glettonothing`
 `\cs`
t `\let`
 `\cs`
l `\letcharcode`
 `\cs`
l `\letcsname`
 `tokens\endcsname`
l `\letfrozen`
 `\cs`
l `\letprotected`
 `\cs`
l `\lettolastringnamedcs`
 `\cs`
l `\lettonothing`
 `\cs`
l `\swapcsvalues`
 `\cs \cs`

l `\unletfrozen`
 `\cs`
l `\unletprotected`
 `\cs`

5.5.55 localbox

l `\localleftbox`
 `box`
l `\localmiddlebox`
 `box`
l `\localrightbox`
 `box`
l `\resetlocalboxes`

5.5.56 luafunctioncall

l `\luabytecodecall`
 `integer`
l `\luafunctioncall`
 `integer`

5.5.57 makebox

t `\box`
 `(index | box)`
t `\copy`
 see `\box`
l `\dbox`
 `[target integer] [to dimension]`
 `[adapt] [attr integer integer]`
 `[anchor integer] [axis integer]`
 `[shift dimension] [spread dimension]`
 `[source integer] [direction integer]`
 `[delay] [orientation integer]`
 `[xoffset dimension] [xmove`
 `dimension] [yoffset dimension]`
 `[ymove dimension] [reverse] [retain]`
 `[container] [mathtext] [class`
 `integer] { tokens }`
l `\dpack`
 see `\dbox`
l `\dsplit`
 `[attr] [to] [upto] { tokens }`
t `\hbox`
 see `\dbox`
l `\hpack`
 see `\dbox`

l `\insertbox`
 `integer`
l `\insertcopy`
 `integer`
t `\lastbox`
l `\localleftboxbox`
l `\localmiddleboxbox`
l `\localrightboxbox`
l `\tpack`
 see `\dbox`
l `\tsplit`
 see `\dsplit`
t `\vbox`
 see `\dbox`
l `\vpack`
 see `\dbox`
t `\vsplit`
 see `\dsplit`
t `\vtop`
 see `\dbox`

5.5.58 mark

l `\clearmarks`
 `integer`
l `\flushmarks`
t `\mark`
 `{ tokens }`
e `\marks`
 `integer { tokens }`

5.5.59 mathaccent

l `\Umathaccent`
 `[attr integer integer] [center]`
 `[class integer] [exact] [source`
 `integer] [stretch] [shrink]`
 `[fraction integer] [fixed]`
 `[keepbase] [nooverflow] [base]`
 `(both [fixed] character [fixed]`
 `character | bottom [fixed]`
 `character | top [fixed]`
 `character | overlay`
 `character | character)`
t `\mathaccent`
 `{ tokens }`

5.5.60 mathcharnumber

```

l \Umathchar
   integer
t \mathchar
   integer
l \mathclass
   integer
l \mathdictionary
   integer mathchar
l \nomathchar

```

5.5.61 mathchoice

```

t \mathchoice
   {tokens} {tokens} {tokens} {tokens}
l \mathdiscretionary
   [class integer] {tokens} {tokens}
   {tokens}
l \mathstack
   {tokens}

```

5.5.62 mathcomponent

```

l \mathatom
   [attr integer integer] [all integer]
   [leftclass integer] [limits]
   [rightclass integer] [class integer]
   [unpack] [unroll] [single] [source
integer] [textfont] [mathfont]
   [options integer] [nolimits]
   [nooverflow] [void] [phantom]
   [continuation] [integer]
t \mathbin
   {tokens}
t \mathclose
   {tokens}
t \mathinner
   {tokens}
t \mathop
   {tokens}
t \mathopen
   {tokens}
t \mathord
   {tokens}
t \mathpunct
   {tokens}

```

```

t \mathrel
   {tokens}
t \overline
   {tokens}
t \underline
   {tokens}

```

5.5.63 mathfence

```

l \Uleft
   [auto] [attr integer integer] [axis]
   [bottom dimension] [depth dimension]
   [factor integer] [height dimension]
   [noaxis] [nocheck] [nolimits]
   [nooverflow] [leftclass integer]
   [limits] [exact] [void] [phantom]
   [class integer] [rightclass integer]
   [scale] [source integer] [top]
   delimiter
l \Umiddle
   see \Uleft
l \Uoperator
   see \Uleft
l \Uright
   see \Uleft
l \Uvextensible
   see \Uleft
t \left
   see \Uleft
t \middle
   see \Uleft
t \right
   see \Uleft

```

5.5.64 mathfraction

```

l \Uabove
   dimension [attr integer integer]
   [class integer] [center] [exact]
   [proportional] [noaxis]
   [nooverflow] [style mathstyle]
   [source integer] [hfactor integer]
   [vfactor integer] [font] [thickness
dimension] [usecallback]
l \Uabovewithdelims
   delimiter delimiter dimension [attr
integer integer] [class integer]
   [center] [exact] [proportional]

```

[noaxis] [nooverflow] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [hfactor *integer*] [vfactor *integer*] [font] [thickness *dimension*] [usecallback]

l `\Uatop`
see `\Uabove`

l `\Uatopwithdelims`
see `\Uabovewithdelims`

l `\Uover`
[attr *integer integer*] [class *integer*] [center] [exact] [proportional] [noaxis] [nooverflow] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [hfactor *integer*] [vfactor *integer*] [font] [thickness *dimension*] [usecallback]

l `\Uoverwithdelims`
delimiter delimiter [attr *integer integer*] [class *integer*] [center] [exact] [proportional] [noaxis] [nooverflow] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [hfactor *integer*] [vfactor *integer*] [font] [thickness *dimension*] [usecallback]

l `\Uskewed`
delimiter [attr *integer integer*] [class *integer*] [center] [exact] [proportional] [noaxis] [nooverflow] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [hfactor *integer*] [vfactor *integer*] [font] [thickness *dimension*] [usecallback]

l `\Uskewedwithdelims`
delimiter delimiter delimiter [attr *integer integer*] [class *integer*] [center] [exact] [proportional] [noaxis] [nooverflow] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [hfactor *integer*] [vfactor *integer*] [font] [thickness *dimension*] [usecallback]

l `\Ustretched`
see `\Uskewed`

l `\Ustretchedwithdelims`
see `\Uskewedwithdelims`

t `\above`
dimension

t `\abovewithdelims`
delimiter delimiter *dimension*

t `\atop`
dimension

t `\atopwithdelims`
delimiter delimiter *dimension*

t `\over`

t `\overwithdelims`
delimiter delimiter

5.5.65 mathmodifier

l `\Umathadapttleft`

l `\Umathadapttright`

l `\Umathlimits`

l `\Umathnoaxis`

l `\Umathnolimits`

l `\Umathopenupdepth`
dimension

l `\Umathopenupheight`
dimension

l `\Umathphantom`

l `\Umathsource`
[nucleus] *integer*

l `\Umathuseaxis`

l `\Umathvoid`

t `\displaylimits`

t `\limits`

t `\nolimits`

5.5.66 mathparameter

l `\Umathaccentbasedepth`
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

l `\Umathaccentbaseheight`
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

l `\Umathaccentbottomovershoot`
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

l `\Umathaccentbottomshift`
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

l `\Umathaccentextendmargin`
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

l `\Umathaccentssuperscriptdrop`
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

```

\Umathaccentsuperscriptpercent
  mathstyle [=] integer
  > mathstyle: integer
\Umathaccenttopovershoot
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathaccenttopshiftup
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathaccentvariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathaxis
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathbottomaccentvariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathconnectoroverlapmin
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathdegreevariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathdelimiterextendmargin
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathdelimiterovervariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathdelimiterpercent
  mathstyle [=] integer
  > mathstyle: integer
\Umathdelimitershortfall
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathdelimiterundervariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathdenominatorvariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathexheight
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathextrasubpreshift
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension

```

```

\Umathextrasubprespace
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathextrasubshift
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathextrasubspace
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathextrasuppreshift
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathextrasupprespace
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathextrasupshift
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathextrasupspace
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathflattenedaccentbasedepth
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathflattenedaccentbottomshiftdown
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathflattenedaccenttopshiftup
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathfractiondelsize
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathfractiondenomdown
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathfractiondenomvgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathfractionnumup
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathfractionnumvgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension

```

```

\Umathfractionrule
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathfractionvariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathhextensiblevariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathlimitabovebgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathlimitabovekern
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathlimitabovevgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathlimitbelowbgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathlimitbelowkern
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathlimitbelowvgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathnolimitsubfactor
  mathstyle [=] integer
  > mathstyle: integer
\Umathnolimitsupfactor
  mathstyle [=] integer
  > mathstyle: integer
\Umathnumeratorvariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathoperatorsize
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathoverbarkern
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathoverbarrule
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathoverbarvgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathoverdelimterbgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathoverdelimtervariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathoverdelimtervgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathoverlayaccentvariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathoverlinevariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathprimeraise
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathprimeraisecomposed
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathprimeshiftdrop
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathprimeshiftup
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathprimespaceafter
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathprimevariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathquad
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathradicaldegreeafter
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathradicaldegreebefore
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathradicaldegreeraise
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathradicalextensibleafter
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension

```


\Umathradicalextensiblebefore*mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathradicalkern***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathradicalrule***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathradicalvariant***[=] mathstyle*: *mathstyle***\Umathradicalvgap***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathruledepth***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathruleheight***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathskeweddelimitertolerance***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathskewedfractionhgap***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathskewedfractionvgap***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathspaceafterscript***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathspacebeforescript***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathspacebetweenscript***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathstackdenomdown***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathstacknumup***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathstackvariant***[=] mathstyle*: *mathstyle***\Umathstackvgap***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsubscriptsnap***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsubscriptvariant***[=] mathstyle*: *mathstyle***\Umathsubshiftdown***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsubshiftdrop***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsubsupshiftdown***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsubsupvgap***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsubtopmax***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsupbottommin***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsupscriptsnap***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsupscriptvariant***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsupshiftdrop***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsupshiftup***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathsupsubbottommax***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension***\Umathtopaccentvariant***[=] mathstyle*: *mathstyle***\Umathunderbarkern***mathstyle [=] dimension*> *mathstyle: dimension*

```

\Umathunderbarrule
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathunderbarvgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathunderdelimitervgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathunderdelimitervvariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathunderdelimitervgap
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle: dimension
\Umathunderlinevariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathvextensiblevariant
  [=] mathstyle
  : mathstyle
\Umathxscale
  mathstyle [=] integer
  > mathstyle: integer
\Umathyscale
  mathstyle [=] integer
  > mathstyle: integer
\copymathatomrule
  integer integer
\copymathparent
  integer integer
\copymathspacing
  integer integer
\letmathatomrule
  integer integer integer integer
  integer
\letmathparent
  integer integer
\letmathspacing
  see \letmathatomrule
\resetmathspacing
\setdefaultmathcodes
\setmathatomrule
  integer integer mathstyle integer
  integer
\setmathdisplaypostpenalty
  integer [=] integer
\setmathdisplayprepenalty
  integer [=] integer

```

```

\setmathignore
  mathparameter integer
\setmathoptions
  integer [=] integer
\setmathpostpenalty
  integer [=] integer
\setmathprepenalty
  integer [=] integer
\setmathspacing
  integer integer mathstyle glue

```

5.5.67 mathradical

```

\Udelimited
  [attr integer integer] [bottom]
  [exact] [top] [style mathstyle]
  [source integer] [stretch] [shrink]
  [width dimension] [height dimension]
  [depth dimension] [left] [middle]
  [right] [nooverflow] [usecallback]
  delimiter delimiter [delimiter]
  [delimiter] (mathatom | {tokens})
\Udelimiterover
  [attr integer integer] [bottom]
  [exact] [top] [style mathstyle]
  [source integer] [stretch] [shrink]
  [width dimension] [height dimension]
  [depth dimension] [left] [middle]
  [right] [nooverflow] [usecallback]
  delimiter [delimiter] [delimiter]
  (mathatom | {tokens})
\Udelimiterunder
  see \Udelimiterover
\Uhexensible
  see \Udelimiterover
\Uoverdelimiter
  see \Udelimiterover
\Uradical
  see \Udelimiterover
\Uroot
  [attr integer integer] [bottom]
  [exact] [top] [style mathstyle]
  [source integer] [stretch] [shrink]
  [width dimension] [height dimension]
  [depth dimension] [left] [middle]
  [right] [nooverflow] [usecallback]
  delimiter [delimiter] [delimiter]
  (mathatom | {tokens})
  (mathatom | {tokens})

```

l `\Urooted`
 [*attr integer integer*] [*bottom*]
 [*exact*] [*top*] [*style mathstyle*]
 [*source integer*] [*stretch*] [*shrink*]
 [*width dimension*] [*height dimension*]
 [*depth dimension*] [*left*] [*middle*]
 [*right*] [*nooverflow*] [*usecallback*]
 `delimiter delimiter` [`delimiter`]
 [`delimiter`] (`mathatom` | {*tokens*})
 (`mathatom` | {*tokens*})

l `\Uunderdelimater`
 see `\Udelimaterover`

t `\radical`
 see `\Uroot`

5.5.68 mathscript

l `\indexedsubprescript`
 (`mathatom` | {*tokens*})

l `\indexedsubscript`
 see `\indexedsubprescript`

l `\indexedsuperprescript`
 see `\indexedsubprescript`

l `\indexedsuperscript`
 see `\indexedsubprescript`

l `\noatomruling`

t `\nonscript`

l `\noscript`

l `\nosubprescript`

l `\nosubscript`

l `\nosuperprescript`

l `\nosuperscript`

l `\primescript`
 see `\indexedsubprescript`

l `\subprescript`
 see `\indexedsubprescript`

l `\subscript`
 see `\indexedsubprescript`

l `\superprescript`
 see `\indexedsubprescript`

l `\superscript`
 see `\indexedsubprescript`

5.5.69 mathshiftcs

l `\Ustartdisplaymath`

l `\Ustartmath`

l `\Ustartmathmode`

l `\Ustopdisplaymath`

l `\Ustopmath`

l `\Ustopmathmode`

5.5.70 mathstyle

l `\allcrampedstyles`

l `\alldisplaystyles`

l `\allmainstyles`

l `\allmathstyles`

l `\allscriptscriptstyles`

l `\allscriptstyles`

l `\allsplitstyles`

l `\alltextstyles`

l `\alluncrampedstyles`

l `\allunsplitstyles`

l `\crampeddisplaystyle`

l `\crampedscriptscriptstyle`

l `\crampedscriptstyle`

l `\crampedtextstyle`

l `\currentlysetmathstyle`

t `\displaystyle`

l `\givenmathstyle`
 mathstyle

l `\scaledmathstyle`
 integer
 > *mathstyle* : *integer*

t `\scriptscriptstyle`

t `\scriptstyle`

t `\textstyle`

5.5.71 message

t `\errmessage`
 {*tokens*}

t `\message`
 {*tokens*}

5.5.72 mkern

t `\mkern`
 dimension

5.5.73 mskip

l `\mathatomskip`
 muglue

t `\mskip`
muglue

5.5.74 noexpand

t `\noexpand`
token

5.5.75 pageproperty

t `\deadcycles`
`[=] integer`
: integer

l `\insertdepth`
`integer [=] dimension`
`> integer: dimension`

l `\insertdistance`
`integer [=] dimension`
`> integer: dimension`

l `\insertheight`
`integer [=] dimension`
`> integer: dimension`

l `\insertheights`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

l `\insertlimit`
`integer [=] dimension`
`> integer: dimension`

l `\insertmaxdepth`
`integer [=] dimension`
`> integer: dimension`

l `\insertmultiplier`
`integer [=] integer`
`> integer: integer`

t `\insertpenalties`
`[=] integer`
: integer

l `\insertpenalty`
`integer [=] integer`
`> integer: integer`

l `\insertstorage`
`integer [=] integer`
`> integer: integer`

l `\insertstoring`
`[=] integer`
: integer

l `\insertwidth`
`integer [=] dimension`

`> integer: dimension`

l `\pagedepth`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

l `\pageexcess`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

t `\pagefillllstretch`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

t `\pagefillstretch`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

t `\pagefilstretch`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

l `\pagefistretch`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

t `\pagegoal`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

l `\pagelastdepth`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

l `\pagelastfillllstretch`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

l `\pagelastfillstretch`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

l `\pagelastfilstretch`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

l `\pagelastfistretch`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

l `\pagelastheight`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

l `\pagelastshrink`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

l `\pagelaststretch`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

t `\pageshrink`
`[=] dimension`
: dimension

t `\pagestretch`
 $[=]$ *dimension*
 : *dimension*
t `\pagetotal`
 $[=]$ *dimension*
 : *dimension*
l `\pagevsize`
 $[=]$ *dimension*
 : *dimension*

5.5.76 parameter

l `\alignmark`
l `\parametermark`

5.5.77 penalty

l `\hpenalty`
 integer
t `\penalty`
 integer
l `\vpenalty`
 integer

5.5.78 prefix

l `\aliased`
l `\constant`
l `\constrained`
l `\deferred`
l `\enforced`
l `\frozen`
t `\global`
l `\immediate`
l `\immutable`
l `\inherited`
l `\instance`
t `\long`
l `\mutable`
l `\noaligned`
t `\outer`
l `\overloaded`
l `\permanent`
e `\protected`
l `\retained`
l `\semiprotected`
l `\tolerant`

l `\untraced`

5.5.79 register

l `\attribute`
 $(\text{index} \mid \text{box}) [=]$ *integer*
 $> (\text{index} \mid \text{box}) : \text{integer}$
t `\count`
 see `\attribute`
t `\dimen`
 $(\text{index} \mid \text{box}) [=]$ *dimension*
 $> (\text{index} \mid \text{box}) : \text{dimension}$
l `\float`
 $(\text{index} \mid \text{box}) [=]$ *float*
 $> (\text{index} \mid \text{box}) : \text{float}$
t `\muskip`
 $(\text{index} \mid \text{box}) [=]$ *muglue*
 $> (\text{index} \mid \text{box}) : \text{muglue}$
t `\skip`
 $(\text{index} \mid \text{box}) [=]$ *glue*
 $> (\text{index} \mid \text{box}) : \text{glue}$
t `\toks`
 $(\text{index} \mid \text{box}) [=]$ $\{\text{tokens}\}$
 $> (\text{index} \mid \text{box}) : \{\text{tokens}\}$

5.5.80 relax

l `\norelax`
t `\relax`

5.5.81 removeitem

t `\unboundary`
t `\unkern`
t `\unpenalty`
t `\unskip`

5.5.82 setbox

t `\setbox`
 $(\text{index} \mid \text{box}) [=]$

5.5.83 setfont

t `\nullfont`

5.5.84 shorthanddef

```

l \Umathchardef
    \cs integer
l \Umathdictdef
    \cs integer integer
l \attributedef
    \cs integer
t \chardef
    \cs integer
t \countdef
    \cs integer
t \dimendef
    \cs integer
l \dimensiondef
    \cs integer
l \floatdef
    \cs integer
l \fontspecdef
    \cs ( font | integer )
l \gluespecdef
    \cs integer
l \integerdef
    \cs integer
l \luadef
    \cs integer
t \mathchardef
    \cs integer
l \mugluespecdef
    \cs integer
t \muskipdef
    \cs integer
l \parameterdef
    \cs integer
l \positdef
    \cs integer
t \skipdef
    \cs integer
l \specificationdef
    \cs tokens\relax
t \toksdef
    \cs integer

```

5.5.85 someitem

```

t \badness
    [=] integer
    : integer

```

```

e \currentgrouplevel
    [=] integer
    : integer
e \currentgrouptype
    [=] integer
    : integer
e \currentifbranch
    [=] integer
    : integer
e \currentiflevel
    [=] integer
    : integer
e \currentifttype
    [=] integer
    : integer
l \currentloopiterator
    [=] integer
    : integer
l \currentloopnesting
    [=] integer
    : integer
e \currentstacksize
    [=] integer
    : integer
e \dimexpr
    tokens\relax [=] dimension
    > tokens\relax : dimension
l \dimexpression
    tokens\relax [=] dimension
    > tokens\relax : dimension
l \floatexpr
    tokens\relax [=] float
    > tokens\relax : float
l \fontcharba
    integer [=] dimension
    > integer : dimension
e \fontchardp
    integer [=] dimension
    > integer : dimension
e \fontcharht
    integer [=] dimension
    > integer : dimension
e \fontcharic
    integer [=] dimension
    > integer : dimension
l \fontcharta
    integer [=] dimension
    > integer : dimension

```

e `\fontcharwd`
integer [=] dimension
> integer: dimension

l `\fontid`
(font | integer) [=] integer
> (font | integer): integer

l `\fontmathcontrol`
 see `\fontid`

l `\fontspecid`
 see `\fontid`

l `\fontspecifiedsize`
 see `\fontid`

l `\fontspecscale`
 see `\fontid`

l `\fontspecslant`
 see `\fontid`

l `\fontspecweight`
 see `\fontid`

l `\fontspecxscale`
 see `\fontid`

l `\fontspecyscale`
 see `\fontid`

l `\fonttextcontrol`
 see `\fontid`

e `\glueexpr`
tokens\relax [=] glue
> tokens\relax: glue

e `\glueshrink`
glue [=] dimension
> glue: dimension

e `\glueshrinkorder`
glue [=] dimension
> glue: dimension

e `\gluestretch`
glue [=] integer
> glue: integer

e `\gluestretchorder`
glue [=] integer
> glue: integer

e `\gluetomu`
glue [=] glue
> glue: glue

l `\glyphxscaled`
[=] integer
: integer

l `\glyphyscaled`
[=] integer
: integer

l `\indexofcharacter`
integer [=] integer
> integer: integer

l `\indexofregister`
integer [=] integer
> integer: integer

t `\inputlineno`
[=] integer
: integer

l `\insertprogress`
integer [=] dimension
> integer: dimension

l `\lastarguments`
[=] integer
: integer

l `\lastatomclass`
[=] integer
: integer

l `\lastboundary`
[=] integer
: integer

l `\lastchkdimension`
[=] dimension
: dimension

l `\lastchknumber`
[=] integer
: integer

t `\lastkern`
[=] dimension
: dimension

l `\lastleftclass`
[=] integer
: integer

l `\lastloopiterator`
[=] integer
: integer

l `\lastnodesubtype`
[=] integer
: integer

e `\lastnodetype`
[=] integer
: integer

l `\lastpageextra`
[=] dimension
: dimension

l `\lastparcontext`
[=] integer
: integer

```

l \lastpartrigger
    [=] integer
    : integer
t \lastpenalty
    [=] integer
    : integer
l \lastrightclass
    [=] integer
    : integer
t \lastskip
    [=] glue
    : glue
l \leftmarginkern
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
l \luatexrevision
    [=] {tokens}
    : {tokens}
l \luatexversion
    [=] {tokens}
    : {tokens}
l \mathatomglue
    [=] glue
    : glue
l \mathcharclass
    integer [=] integer
    > integer : integer
l \mathcharfam
    integer [=] integer
    > integer : integer
l \mathcharslot
    integer [=] integer
    > integer : integer
l \mathmainstyle
    [=] integer
    : integer
l \mathparentstyle
    [=] integer
    : integer
l \mathscale
    [=] integer
    : integer
l \mathstackstyle
    [=] integer
    : integer
l \mathstyle
    [=] integer
    : integer

l \mathstylefontid
    [=] integer
    : integer
e \muexpr
    tokens\relax [=] muglue
    > tokens\relax : muglue
e \mutoglue
    muglue [=] glue
    > muglue : glue
l \nestedloopiterator
    [=] integer
    : integer
l \numericsscale
    (integer | float) [=] integer
    > (integer | float) : integer
l \numericsscaled
    see \numericsscale
e \numexpr
    tokens\relax [=] integer
    > tokens\relax : integer
l \numexpression
    tokens\relax [=] integer
    > tokens\relax : integer
l \overshoot
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
l \parametercount
    [=] integer
    : integer
l \parameterindex
    [=] integer
    : integer
e \parshapedimen
    integer [=] dimension
    > integer : dimension
e \parshapeindent
    integer [=] dimension
    > integer : dimension
e \parshapelength
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
l \parshapewidth
    [=] dimension
    : dimension
l \previousloopiterator
    [=] integer
    : integer
l \rightmarginkern
    [=] dimension

```



```

: dimension
\scaledemwidth
  ( font | integer ) [=] dimension
  > ( font | integer ) : dimension
\scalexheight
  see \scaledemwidth
\scalextraspace
  see \scaledemwidth
\scaledfontcharba
  integer [=] dimension
  > integer : dimension
\scaledfontchardp
  integer [=] dimension
  > integer : dimension
\scaledfontcharht
  integer [=] dimension
  > integer : dimension
\scaledfontcharic
  integer [=] dimension
  > integer : dimension
\scaledfontcharta
  integer [=] dimension
  > integer : dimension
\scaledfontcharwd
  integer [=] dimension
  > integer : dimension
\scaledinterwordshrink
  see \scaledemwidth
\scaledinterwordspace
  see \scaledemwidth
\scaledinterwordstretch
  see \scaledemwidth
\scaledmathaxis
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle : dimension
\scaledmathemwidth
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle : dimension
\scaledmathexheight
  mathstyle [=] dimension
  > mathstyle : dimension
\scaledslantperpoint
  see \scaledemwidth

```

5.5.86 specification

```

\adjacentdemerits
  [ options ] integer n * ( integer )
  : integer

```

```

\brokenpenalties
  see \adjacentdemerits
\clubpenalties
  see \adjacentdemerits
\displaywidowpenalties
  see \adjacentdemerits
\fitnessclasses
  see \adjacentdemerits
\interlinepenalties
  see \adjacentdemerits
\mathbackwardpenalties
  see \adjacentdemerits
\mathforwardpenalties
  see \adjacentdemerits
\orphanlinefactors
  TODO
\orphanpenalties
  see \adjacentdemerits
\parpasses
  [ options ] n * ( [ next ] [ quit ] [ skip ]
  [ adjdemerits integer ]
  [ adjacentdemerits
  <adjacentdemerits> ] [ adjustspacing
  integer ] [ adjustspacingshrink
  integer ] [ adjustspacingstep integer ]
  [ adjustspacingstretch integer ]
  [ callback integer ] [ classes integer ]
  [ demerits integer ]
  [ doubleadjdemerits integer ]
  [ doublehyphendemerits integer ]
  [ emergencyleftextra integer ]
  [ emergencypercentage dimension ]
  [ emergencyrightextra integer ]
  [ emergencystretch dimension ]
  [ emergencywidthextra integer ]
  [ extrahyphenpenalty integer ]
  [ finalhyphendemerits integer ]
  [ fitnessclasses <fitnessclasses> ]
  [ hyphenation integer ] [ identifier
  integer ] [ ifadjustspacing integer ]
  [ ifemergencystretch integer ] [ ifglue
  integer ] [ iflooseness integer ]
  [ ifmath integer ] [ iftext integer ]
  [ lefttwindemerits integer ]
  [ linebreakchecks integer ]
  [ linebreakcriterium integer ]
  [ linebreakoptional integer ]
  [ linepenalty integer ] [ looseness
  integer ] [ mathpenaltyfactor integer ]

```

`[orphanpenalties] [toddlerpenalties
 <toddlerpenalties>]`
`[righttwindemerits integer]`
`[threshold dimension] [tolerance
integer] [unlessmath integer])`
`: integer`
l `\parpassesexception`
`see \type{\parpasses}`
`: integer`
t `\parshape`
`[options] integer n * (dimension
dimension)`
`: integer`
l `\toddlerpenalties`
`see \adjacentdemerits`
e `\widowpenalties`
`see \adjacentdemerits`

5.5.87 the

e `\detokenize`
`{ tokens }`
l `\expandeddetokenize`
`{ tokens }`
l `\protecteddetokenize`
`{ tokens }`
l `\protectedexpandeddetokenize`
`{ tokens }`
t `\the`
`dimension`
l `\thewithoutunit`
`quantity`
e `\unexpanded`
`{ tokens }`

5.5.88 unhbox

t `\unhbox`
`integer`
t `\unhcopy`
`integer`
l `\unhpack`
`integer`

5.5.89 unvbox

l `\insertunbox`
`integer`

l `\insertuncopy`
`integer`
e `\pagediscards`
e `\splitdiscards`
t `\unvbox`
`integer`
t `\unvcopy`
`integer`
l `\unvpack`
`integer`

5.5.90 vadjust

t `\vadjust`
`[pre] [post] [baseline] [before]`
`[index integer] [after] [attr
integer integer] [depth
(after | before | check | last)]`
`{ tokens }`

5.5.91 valign

t `\valign`
`[attr integer integer] [callback
integer] [discard] [noskips]`
`[reverse] [to dimension] [spread
dimension] { tokens }`

5.5.92 vcenter

t `\vcenter`
`[target integer] [to dimension]`
`[adapt] [attr integer integer]`
`[anchor integer] [axis integer]`
`[shift dimension] [spread dimension]`
`[source integer] [direction integer]`
`[delay] [orientation integer]`
`[xoffset dimension] [xmove
dimension] [yoffset dimension]`
`[ymove dimension] [reverse] [retain]`
`[container] [mathtext] [class
integer] { tokens }`

5.5.93 vmove

t `\lower`
`dimension box`

t \raise
dimension box

e \showtokens
{tokens}

5.5.94 vrule

l \novrule
[attr integer [=] integer] [width dimension] [height dimension] [depth dimension] [xoffset dimension] [yoffset dimension] [left dimension] [right dimension] [top dimension] [bottom dimension]

l \srule
[attr integer [=] integer] [width dimension] [height dimension] [depth dimension] [xoffset dimension] [yoffset dimension] [font integer] [fam integer] [char integer]

l \virtualvrule
 see \novrule

t \vrule
 see \novrule

5.5.95 vskip

t \vfil
t \vfill
t \vfilneg
t \vskip
*dimension [plus (dimension | fi[n*l])] [minus (dimension | fi[n*l])]*
t \vss

5.5.96 xray

t \show
token
t \showbox
(index | box)
l \showcodestack
e \showgroups
e \showifs
t \showlists
l \showstack
t \showthe
quantity

5.6 To be checked primitives (new)

fontidentifier
ifcmpdim
ifcmpnum
orphanlinefactors

tracingorphans
tracingtoddlers

5.7 To be checked primitives (math)

Uabove	Umathfractiondenomvgap
Udelcode	Umathfractionnumup
Udelimited	Umathfractionnumvgap
Udelimiter	Umathfractionrule
Udelimiterover	Umathfractionvariant
Udelimiterunder	Umathhextensiblevariant
Uhextensible	Umathlimitabovebgap
Uleft	Umathlimitabovekern
Umathaccentbasedepth	Umathlimitabovevgap
Umathaccentbaseheight	Umathlimitbelowbgap
Umathaccentbottomovershoot	Umathlimitbelowkern
Umathaccentbottomshiftdown	Umathlimitbelowvgap
Umathaccentextendmargin	Umathlimits
Umathaccentsuperscriptdrop	Umathnoaxis
Umathaccentsuperscriptpercent	Umathnolimits
Umathaccenttopovershoot	Umathnumeratorvariant
Umathaccenttopshiftup	Umathopenupdepth
Umathaccentvariant	Umathopenupheight
Umathadapttoleft	Umathoperatorsize
Umathadapttoright	Umathoverdelimiterbgap
Umathaxis	Umathoverdelimitervariant
Umathbottomaccentvariant	Umathoverdelimitervgap
Umathcode	Umathoverlayaccentvariant
Umathconnectoroverlapmin	Umathphantom
Umathdegreevariant	Umathprimeraise
Umathdelimiterextendmargin	Umathprimeraisecomposed
Umathdelimiterovervariant	Umathprimeshiftdrop
Umathdelimiterpercent	Umathprimeshiftup
Umathdelimitershortfall	Umathprimespaceafter
Umathdelimiterundervariant	Umathprimevariant
Umathdenominatorvariant	Umathquad
Umathdictdef	Umathradicaldegreeafter
Umathexheight	Umathradicaldegreebefore
Umathextrasubpreshift	Umathradicaldegreeraise
Umathextrasubprespace	Umathradicalextensibleafter
Umathextrasubshift	Umathradicalextensiblebefore
Umathextrasubspace	Umathradicalkern
Umathextrasuppreshift	Umathradicalrule
Umathextrasupprespace	Umathradicalvariant
Umathextrasupshift	Umathradicalvgap
Umathextrasupspace	Umathruleddepth
Umathflattenedaccentbasedepth	Umathruleheight
Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight	Umathskeweddelimitertolerance
Umathflattenedaccentbottomshiftdown	Umathskewedfractionhgap
Umathflattenedaccenttopshiftup	Umathskewedfractionvgap
Umathfractiondelsize	Umathsource
Umathfractiondenomdown	Umathstackdenomdown

<code>Umathstacknumup</code>	<code>Umathvextensiblevariant</code>
<code>Umathstackvariant</code>	<code>Umathvoid</code>
<code>Umathstackvgap</code>	<code>Umiddle</code>
<code>Umathsubscriptsnap</code>	<code>Uoperator</code>
<code>Umathsubscriptvariant</code>	<code>Uoverdelimiter</code>
<code>Umathsubshiftdown</code>	<code>Uroot</code>
<code>Umathsubshiftdrop</code>	<code>Urooted</code>
<code>Umathsubsupshiftdown</code>	<code>Uskewed</code>
<code>Umathsubsupvgap</code>	<code>Uskewedwithdelims</code>
<code>Umathsubtopmax</code>	<code>Ustartdisplaymath</code>
<code>Umathsupbottommin</code>	<code>Ustartmath</code>
<code>Umathsupscriptsnap</code>	<code>Ustartmathmode</code>
<code>Umathsupscriptvariant</code>	<code>Ustopdisplaymath</code>
<code>Umathsupshiftdrop</code>	<code>Ustopmath</code>
<code>Umathsupshiftdown</code>	<code>Ustopmathmode</code>
<code>Umathsupsubbottommax</code>	<code>Ustretched</code>
<code>Umathtopaccentvariant</code>	<code>Ustretchedwithdelims</code>
<code>Umathunderdelimiterbgap</code>	<code>Uunderdelimiter</code>
<code>Umathunderdelimitervariant</code>	<code>Uvextensible</code>
<code>Umathunderdelimitervgap</code>	
<code>Umathuseaxis</code>	

Many primitives starting with `Umath` are math parameters that are discussed elsewhere, if at all.

5.8 To be checked primitives (old)

5.9 Indexed primitives

`-`
`/`
`<space>`
`Uabovewithdelims`
`Uatop`
`Uatopwithdelims`
`Umathaccent`
`Umathchar`
`Umathchardef`
`Umathnolimitsubfactor`
`Umathnolimitsupfactor`
`Umathoverbarkern`
`Umathoverbarrule`
`Umathoverbarvgap`
`Umathoverlinevariant`
`Umathspaceafterscript`
`Umathspacebeforescript`
`Umathspacebetweenscript`
`Umathunderbarkern`
`Umathunderbarrule`
`Umathunderbarvgap`
`Umathunderlinevariant`
`Umathxscale`
`Umathyscale`
`Uover`
`Uoverwithdelims`
`Uradical`
`Uright`

`above`
`abovedisplayshortskip`
`abovedisplayskip`
`abovewithdelims`
`accent`
`additionalpageskip`
`adjacentdemerits`
`adjdemerits`
`adjustspacing`
`adjustspacingshrink`
`adjustspacingstep`
`adjustspacingstretch`
`advance`
`advanceby`
`afterassigned`
`afterassignment`
`aftergroup`

`aftergrouped`
`aliased`
`aligncontent`
`alignmark`
`alignmentcellsource`
`alignmentwrapsource`
`aligntab`
`allcrampedstyles`
`alldisplaystyles`
`allmainstyles`
`allmathstyles`
`allscriptscriptstyles`
`allscriptstyles`
`allsplitstyles`
`alltextstyles`
`alluncrampedstyles`
`allunsplitstyles`
`amcode`
`associateunit`
`atendoffile`
`atendoffiled`
`atendofgroup`
`atendofgrouped`
`atop`
`atopwithdelims`
`attribute`
`attributedef`
`automaticdiscretionary`
`automatichyphenpenalty`
`automigrationmode`
`autoparagraphmode`
`badness`
`baselineskip`
`batchmode`
`begincsname`
`begingroup`
`beginlocalcontrol`
`beginmathgroup`
`beginsimplegroup`
`belowdisplayshortskip`
`belowdisplayskip`
`binoppenalty`
`botmark`
`botmarks`
`boundary`
`box`
`boxadapt`

boxanchor	crampeddisplaystyle
boxanchors	crampedscriptscriptstyle
boxattribute	crampedscriptstyle
boxdirection	crampedtextstyle
boxfinalize	crcr
boxfreeze	csactive
boxgeometry	csname
boxlimit	csnamestring
boxlimitate	csstring
boxlimitmode	currentgrouplevel
boxmaxdepth	currentgrouptype
boxorientation	currentifbranch
boxrepack	currentiflevel
boxshift	currentifttype
boxshrink	currentloopiterator
boxsource	currentloopnesting
boxstretch	currentlysetmathstyle
boxtarget	currentmarks
boxtotal	currentstacksize
boxvadjust	day
boxxmove	dbox
boxxoffset	deadcycles
boxymove	def
boxyoffset	defaultthyphenchar
brokenpenalties	defaultskewchar
brokenpenalty	defcsname
catcode	deferred
catcodetable	delcode
cccode	delimiter
cdef	delimiterfactor
cdefcsname	delimitershortfall
cf	detokened
cfcode	detokenize
char	detokenized
chardef	dimen
cleaders	dimendef
clearmarks	dimensiondef
clubpenalties	dimexpr
clubpenalty	dimexpression
constant	directlua
constrained	discretionary
copy	discretionaryoptions
copymathatomrule	displayindent
copymathparent	displaylimits
copymathspacing	displayskipmode
correctionskip	displaystyle
count	displaywidowpenalties
countdef	displaywidowpenalty
cr	displaywidth

divide	everyvbox
divideby	exceptionpenalty
doublehyphendemerits	exhyphenchar
doublepenaltymode	exhyphenpenalty
dp	expand
dpack	expandactive
dsplit	expandafter
dump	expandafterpars
edef	expandafterspaces
edefcsame	expandcstoken
edefcsname	expanded
edivide	expandedafter
edivideby	expandeddetokenize
efcode	expandedendless
else	expandedloop
emergencyextrastretch	expandedrepeat
emergencyleftskip	expandparameter
emergencyrightskip	expandtoken
emergencystretch	expandtoks
end	explicitdiscretionary
endcsname	explicithyphenpenalty
endgroup	explicititaliccorrection
endinput	explicitspace
endlinechar	fam
endlocalcontrol	fi
endmathgroup	finalhyphendemerits
endsimplegroup	firstmark
enforced	firstmarks
eofinput	firstvalidlanguage
eqno	fitnessclasses
errhelp	float
errmessage	floatdef
errorcontextlines	floatexpr
errorstopmode	floatingpenalty
escapechar	flushmarks
etoks	font
etoksapp	fontcharba
etokspre	fontchardp
eufactor	fontcharht
everybeforepar	fontcharic
everycr	fontcharta
everydisplay	fontcharwd
everyeof	fontdimen
everyhbox	fontid
everyjob	fontmathcontrol
everymath	fontname
everymathatom	fontspecdef
everypar	fontspecid
everytab	fontspecifiedname

fontspecifiedsize	glyphyscale
fontspecscale	glyphyscaled
fontspecslant	gtoksapp
fontspecweight	gtokspre
fontspecxscale	halign
fontspecyscale	hangafter
fonttextcontrol	hangindent
forcedleftcorrection	hbadness
forcedrightcorrection	hbox
formatname	hccode
frozen	hfil
futurecsname	hfill
futuredef	hfilneg
futureexpand	hfuzz
futureexpandis	hj
futureexpandisap	hjcode
futurelet	hkern
gdef	hmcode
gdefcsname	holdinginserts
givenmathstyle	holdingmigrations
gleaders	hpack
glet	hpenalty
gletcsname	hrule
glettonothing	hsize
global	hskip
globaldefs	hss
glue	ht
glueexpr	hyphenation
glueshrink	hyphenationmin
glueshrinkorder	hyphenationmode
gluespecdef	hyphenchar
gluestretch	hyphenpenalty
gluestretchorder	if
gluetomu	ifabsdim
glyph	ifabsfloat
glyphdatafield	ifabsnum
glyphoptions	ifarguments
glyphyscale	ifboolean
glyphscriptfield	ifcase
glyphscriptscale	ifcat
glyphscriptscriptscale	ifchkdim
glyphslant	ifchkdimension
glyphstatefield	ifchknum
glyphtextscale	ifchknumber
glyphweight	ifcondition
glyphxoffset	ifcramped
glyphxscale	ifcsname
glyphxscaled	ifcstok
glyphyoffset	ifdefined

ifdim	immediateassigned
ifdimexpression	immediateassignment
ifdimval	immutable
ifempty	indent
iffalse	indentskip
ifflags	indexedsubprescript
iffloat	indexedsubscript
iffontchar	indexedsuperprescript
ifhaschar	indexedsuperscript
ifhastok	indexofcharacter
ifhastoks	indexofregister
ifhasxtoks	inherited
ifhbox	initcatcodetable
ifhmode	initialpageskip
ifinalignment	initialtopskip
ifincsname	input
ifinner	inputlineno
ifinsert	insert
ifintervaldim	insertbox
ifintervalfloat	insertcopy
ifintervalnum	insertdepth
iflastnamedcs	insertdistance
ifmathparameter	insertheight
ifmathstyle	insertheights
ifmmode	insertlimit
ifnum	insertmaxdepth
ifnumexpression	insertmode
ifnumval	insertmultiplier
ifodd	insertpenalties
ifparameter	insertpenalty
ifparameters	insertprogress
ifrelax	insertstorage
iftok	insertstoring
iftrue	insertunbox
ifvbox	insertuncopy
ifvmode	insertwidth
ifvoid	instance
ifx	integerdef
ifzerodim	interactionmode
ifzerofloat	interlinepenalties
ifzeronum	interlinepenalty
ignorearguments	jobname
ignoredepthcriterion	kern
ignorenestedupto	language
ignorepars	lastarguments
ignorereset	lastatomclass
ignorespaces	lastboundary
ignoreupto	lastbox
immediate	lastchkdimension

lastchknumber	localleftbox
lastkern	localleftboxbox
lastleftclass	localmiddlebox
lastlinefit	localmiddleboxbox
lastloopiterator	localpretolerance
lastnamedcs	localrightbox
lastnodesubtype	localrightboxbox
lastnodetype	localtolerance
lastpageextra	long
lastparcontext	looseness
lastpartrigger	lower
lastpenalty	lowercase
lastrightclass	lpcode
lastskip	luaboundary
lccode	luabytecode
leaders	luabytecodecall
left	luacopyinputnodes
lefthangskip	luadef
lefthyphenmin	luaescapestring
leftmarginkern	luafunction
leftskip	luafunctioncall
lefttwindemerits	luatexbanner
legno	luatexrevision
let	luatexversion
letcharcode	mark
letcsname	marks
letfrozen	mathaccent
letmathatomrule	mathatom
letmathparent	mathatomglue
letmathspacing	mathatomskip
letprotected	mathbackwardpenalties
lettolastnamedcs	mathbeginclass
lettonothing	mathbin
limits	mathboundary
linebreakchecks	mathchar
linebreakoptional	mathcharclass
linebreakpasses	mathchardef
linedirection	mathcharfam
linepenalty	mathcharslot
lineskip	mathcheckfencesmode
lineskiplimit	mathchoice
localbreakpar	mathclass
localbrokenpenalty	mathclose
localcontrol	mathcode
localcontrolled	mathdictgroup
localcontrolledendless	mathdictionary
localcontrolledloop	mathdictproperties
localcontrolledrepeat	mathdirection
localinterlinepenalty	mathdiscretionary

mathdisplaymode	message
mathdisplaypenaltyfactor	middle
mathdisplayskipmode	mkern
mathdoublescriptmode	month
mathendclass	moveleft
matheqnogapstep	moveright
mathfontcontrol	mskip
mathforwardpenalties	muexpr
mathgluemode	mulguespecdef
mathgroupingmode	multiply
mathinlinepenaltyfactor	multiplyby
mathinner	muskip
mathleftclass	muskipdef
mathlimitsmode	mutable
mathmainstyle	mutogluue
mathnolimitsmode	nestedloopiterator
mathop	newlinechar
mathopen	noalign
mathord	noaligned
mathparentstyle	noatomruling
mathpenaltiesmode	noboundary
mathpretolerance	noexpand
mathpunct	nohrule
mathrel	noindent
mathrightclass	nolimits
mathrulesfam	nomathchar
mathrulesmode	nonscript
mathscale	nonstopmode
mathscriptsmode	norelax
mathslackmode	normalizelinemode
mathspacingmode	normalizeparmode
mathstack	normalunexpanded
mathstackstyle	noscript
mathstyle	nospaces
mathstylefontid	nosubprescript
mathsurround	nosubscript
mathsurroundmode	nosuperprescript
mathsurroundskip	nosuperscript
maththreshold	novrule
mathtolerance	nulldelimiterspace
maxdeadcycles	nullfont
maxdepth	number
meaning	numericsscale
meaningasis	numericsscaled
meaningful	numexpr
meaningfull	numexpression
meaningles	omit
meaningless	open
medmuskip	optionalboundary

options 4	parindent
or	parinitleftskip
orelse	parinitrightskip
orphanpenalties	parpasses
orunless	parpassesexception
outer	parshape
output	parshapedimen
outputbox	parshapeindent
outputpenalty	parshapelength
over	parshapewidth
overfullrule	parskip
overline	patterns
overloaded	pausing
overloadmode	penalty
overshoot	permanent
overwithdelims	pettymuskip
pageboundary	positdef
pagedepth	postdisplaypenalty
pagediscards	postexhyphenchar
pageexcess	posthyphenchar
pageextragoal	postinlinepenalty
pagefillllstretch	postshortinlinepenalty
pagefillstretch	prebinoppenalty
pagefilstretch	predisplaydirection
pagefistretch	predisplaygapfactor
pagegoal	predisplaypenalty
pagelastdepth	preplaysize
pagelastfillllstretch	preexhyphenchar
pagelastfillstretch	prehyphenchar
pagelastfilstretch	preinlinepenalty
pagelastfistretch	prerelpenalty
pagelastheight	preshortinlinepenalty
pagelastshrink	presuperscript
pagelaststretch	pretolerance
pageshrink	prevdepth
pagestretch	prevgraf
pagetotal	previousloopiterator
pagevsize	primescript
par	protected
parametercount	protecteddetokenize
parameterdef	protectedexpandeddetokenize
parameterindex	protrudechars
parametermark	protrusionboundary
parametermode	pxdimen
parattribute	quitloop
pardirection	quitloopnow
parfillleftskip	quitvmode
parfillrightskip	radical
parfillskip	raise

rdivide
 rdivideby
 realign
 relax
 relpenalty
 resetlocalboxes
 resetmathspacing
 restorecatcodes
 restorecatcodetable
 retained
 retokenized
 right
 righthangskip
 righthyphenmin
 rightmarginkern
 rightskip
 righttwindemerits
 romannumeral
 rrcode
 savecatcodetable
 savinghyphcodes
 savingvdiscards
 scaledemwidth
 scaledexheight
 scaledextraspaces
 scaledfontcharba
 scaledfontchardp
 scaledfontcharht
 scaledfontcharic
 scaledfontcharta
 scaledfontcharwd
 scaledfontdimen
 scaledinterwordshrink
 scaledinterwordspace
 scaledinterwordstretch
 scaledmathaxis
 scaledmathemwidth
 scaledmathexheight
 scaledmathstyle
 scaledslantperpoint
 scantextokens
 scantokens
 scriptfont
 scriptscriptfont
 scriptscriptstyle
 scriptspace
 scriptspaceafterfactor
 scriptspacebeforefactor
 scriptspacebetweenfactor

scriptstyle
 scrollmode
 semiexpand
 semiexpanded
 semiprotected
 semprotected
 setbox
 setdefaultmathcodes
 setfontid
 setlanguage
 setmathatomrule
 setmathdisplaypostpenalty
 setmathdisplayprepenalty
 setmathignore
 setmathoptions
 setmathpostpenalty
 setmathprepenalty
 setmathspacing
 sfcode
 shapingpenaltiesmode
 shapingpenalty
 shipout
 shortinlinemaththreshold
 shortinlineorphanpenalty
 show
 showbox
 showboxbreadth
 showboxdepth
 showcodestack
 showgroups
 showifs
 showlists
 shownodedetails
 showstack
 showthe
 showtokens
 singlelinepenalty
 skewchar
 skip
 skipdef
 snapshotpar
 spacechar
 spacefactor
 spacefactormode
 spacefactoroverload
 spacefactorshrinklimit
 spacefactorstretchlimit
 spaceskip
 span

special	tracingadjusts
specificationdef	tracingalignments
splitbotmark	tracingassigns
splitbotmarks	tracingcommands
splitdiscards	tracingexpressions
splitfirstmark	tracingfitness
splitfirstmarks	tracingfullboxes
splitmaxdepth	tracinggroups
splittopskip	tracinghyphenation
srule	tracingifs
string	tracinginserts
subprescript	tracinglevels
subscript	tracinglists
superprescript	tracingloners
superscript	tracinglooseness
supmarkmode	tracinglostchars
swapcsvalues	tracingmacros
tabsize	tracingmarks
tabskip	tracingmath
tabskips	tracingnesting
textdirection	tracingnodes
textfont	tracingonline
textstyle	tracingoutput
the	tracingpages
thewithoutunit	tracingparagraphs
thickmuskip	tracingpasses
thinmuskip	tracingpenalties
time	tracingrestores
tinymuskip	tracingstats
tocharacter	tsplit
toddlerpenalties	uccode
todimension	uchyph
tohexadecimal	uleaders
tointeger	unboundary
tokenized	undent
toks	underline
toksapp	unexpanded
toksdef	unexpandedendless
tokspre	unexpandedloop
tolerance	unexpandedrepeat
tolerant	unhbox
tomathstyle	unhcopy
topmark	unhpack
topmarks	unkern
topskip	unless
toscaled	unletfrozen
tosparsedimension	unletprotected
tosparsescaled	unpenalty
tpack	unskip

untraced	vsize
unvbox	vskip
unvcopy	vsplit
unvpack	vss
uppercase	vtop
vadjust	wd
valign	widowpenalties
variablefam	widowpenalty
vbadness	wordboundary
vbox	wrapuppar
vcenter	write
vfil	xdef
vfill	xdefcsname
vfilneg	xleaders
vfuzz	xspaceskip
virtualhrule	xtoks
virtualvrule	xtoksapp
vkern	xtokspre
vpack	year
vpenalty	
vrule	

callbacks

6 Callbacks

6.1 Introduction

Right from the start of the LuaTeX project callbacks were the way to extend the engine. At various places in processing the document source and typesetting the text the engine checks if there is a callback set and if so, calls out to Lua. Here we collect the various callbacks. For examples you can consult the ConTeXt code base.

The callback library has functions that register, find and list callbacks. Callbacks are Lua functions that are called in well defined places. There are two kinds of callbacks: those that mix with existing functionality, and those that (when enabled) replace functionality. In most cases the second category is expected to behave similar to the built in functionality because in a next step specific data is expected. For instance, you can replace the hyphenation routine. The function gets a list that can be hyphenated (or not). The final list should be valid and is (normally) used for constructing a paragraph. Another function can replace the ligature builder and/or kern routine. Doing something else is possible but in the end might not give the user the expected outcome.

In order for a callback to kick in you need register it. This can be permanent or temporarily.

```
id = callback.register(<t:string> callback_name, <function> func)
id = callback.register(<t:string> callback_name, nil)
id = callback.register(<t:string> callback_name, false)
```

Here the `callback_name` is a predefined callback name as discusses in following sections. The function returns the internal id of the callback or `nil`, if the callback could not be registered. LuaMetaTeX internalizes the callback function in such a way that it does not matter if you redefine a function accidentally.

Callback assignments are always global. You can use the special value `nil` instead of a function for clearing the callback.

For some minor speed gain, you can assign the boolean `false` to the non-file related callbacks, doing so will prevent LuaTeX from executing whatever it would execute by default (when no callback function is registered at all). *This needs checking.*

```
<table> info = callback.list()
```

The keys in the table are the known callback names, the value is a boolean where `true` means that the callback is currently set (active).

```
<function> f = callback.find(callback_name)
```

If the callback is not set, `find` returns `nil`. The known function can be used to check if a callback is supported.

```
if callback.known("foo") then
  -- do what is needed
end
```

6.2 Files

6.2.1 find_log_file

This is one of the callbacks that has to be set in order for the engine to work at all.

```
function (
    <t:string> askedname
)
    return <t:string> foundname
end
```

6.2.2 find_format_file

A format file is an efficient memory dump of the (in our case ConT_EXt) macro package. In LuaT_EX it can have a mix of T_EX and Lua code but one should be aware that storing the Lua state is not up to the engine.

```
function (<t:string> askedname)
    return <t:string> foundname
end
```

A format file can be read from any valid location but is always written in the current directory. When written the number of bytes for each section is reported. When read all kind of checks take place in order to intercept corruption or incompatibilities. Contrary to LuaT_EX, the LuaMetaT_EX is not (zip) compressed so, in spite of more aggressive compression of data otherwise the file is a bit larger.

6.2.3 open_data_file

This callback function gets a filename passed. The return value is either the boolean value false or a table with two functions. A mandate reader function will be called once for each new line to be read, the optional close function will be called once LuaT_EX is done with the file.

```
function (
    <t:string> filename
)
    return <table> {
        <function> reader(<table> environment) end,
        <function> close (<table> environment) end,
    }
end
```

LuaMetaT_EX never looks at the rest of the table, so we can use it to store additional per-file data. Both the callback functions will receive the table as their only argument.

6.2.4 start_file

This callback replaces the code that LuaMetaT_EX prints when a file is opened like (filename for regular files. The category is a number:

```
function (
    <t:integer> category,
    <t:string>  filename
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The following categories can occur:

value	meaning
1	a normal data file, like a T _E X source
2	a font map coupling font names to resources
3	an image file (png, pdf, etc)
4	an embedded font subset
5	a fully embedded font

6.2.5 stop_file

This callback replaces the code that LuaMetaT_EX prints when a file is closed like the `)` for regular files.

```
function (
    <t:integer> category
)
    -- no return values
end
```

6.3 Running

6.3.1 process_jobname

This callback allows you to change the jobname given by `\jobname` in T_EX and `tex.jobname` in Lua. It does not affect the internal job name or the name of the output or log files.

```
function (
    <t:string> jobname
)
    return <t:string> adjusted_jobname
end
```

The only argument is the actual job name; you should not use `tex.jobname` inside this function or infinite recursion may occur. If you return `nil`, LuaMetaT_EX will pretend your callback never happened. This callback does not replace any internal code.

6.3.2 pre_dump

This function is called just before dumping to a format file starts. It does not replace any code and there are neither arguments nor return values. It can be used to do some cleanup and other housekeeping.

```
function (
```

```

    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end

```

6.3.3 start_run

```

function(
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end

```

This callback replaces the code that prints Lua_T_EX's banner. Note that for successful use, this callback has to be set in the Lua initialization script, otherwise it will be seen only after the run has already started.

6.3.4 stop_run

```

function(
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end

```

This callback replaces the code that prints Lua_T_EX's statistics and 'output written to' messages. The engine can still do housekeeping and therefore you should not rely on this hook for postprocessing the pdf or log file.

6.3.5 intercept_tex_error

This callback is run from inside the _T_EX error function, and the idea is to allow you to do some extra reporting on top of what _T_EX already does (none of the normal actions are removed). You may find some of the values in the status table useful. The _T_EX related callback gets two arguments: the current processing mode and a boolean indicating if there was a runaway.

```

function (
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end

```

6.3.6 intercept_lua_error

This callback is similar to the one discussed in the previous section but for Lua. Of course we should in a recoverable state for this to work well.

```

function (
    -- no arguments

```



```
)
    -- no return values
end
```

6.3.7 show_error_message

This callback replaces the code that prints the error message. The usual interaction after the message is not affected but it is best to quit the run after reporting.

```
function (
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end
```

6.3.8 show_warning_message

This callback replaces the code that prints a (non fatal) warning message. The usual interaction after the message is not affected.

```
function (
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end
```

6.3.9 wrapup_run

This callback is called after the pdf and log files are closed. Use it at your own risk. `efine_f` risk.

```
function (
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end
```

6.3.10 handle_overload

One characteristic of T_EX is that you have quite some control over what a control sequence triggers. For instance, `\hbox` normally starts a horizontal box but a user can redefine this primitive as macro to do whatever is required. This means that when other macros use this primitive their behavior will change. One way out of this is using aliases, for instance:

```
\normalsetbox0\normalhbox{test}
\normalifdim\normalwd0>10pt \normalbox0 \normalfi
```

But even these normal aliases can be redefined. Of course you can use special characters like `_` in names but once you start doing this:

```
\p_setbox0\p_hbox{test}
```

```
\p_ifdim\p_wd0>10pt \p_box0 \p_fi
```

you should wonder if you still offer the user T_EX as a programming language. It's not the route that ConT_EXt takes.

In LuaMetaT_EX every macro (including primitives) can be flagged and that happens with so called prefixes. Traditional T_EX offers:

```
\global\def\foo{...}
\long \def\foo{...} % no-op
\outer \def\foo{...} % no-op
```

The `\long` and `\outer` made sense at that time but are no-ops in LuaMetaT_EX: every macro can take `\par` equivalents as arguments and can be defined at every level. The ε -T_EX extensions introduced this prefix:

```
\protected\def\foo{...}
```

which prevents expansion unless the value is really expected (needed). The LuaMetaT_EX engine added:

```
\semiprotected\def\foo{...}
```

but when eventually I see no reason to use it in ConT_EXt it might be dropped. A special prefix is:

```
\constant\def\foo{...}
```

This effectively is equivalent to `\edef` but signals that in some scenarios (like an `\csname` equivalent situation) no expansion and checking has to happen which improves performance.

These two prefixes are just signals to Lua driven functionality:

```
\deferred \foo
\immediate \foo
```

The prefixes do nothing except when `\foo` are Lua calls that can use this information to adapt behavior. Because we have no backend the macro package has to come up with equivalents for e.g. `\write` than can be immediate or deferred (default) operations.

Another prefix relates to alignments:

```
\noaligned\protected\def\foo{...}
```

Which makes a macro accepted between alignment rows where otherwise protected macros will trigger an error due to look ahead.

A definition with `\def` or `\gdef` can take arguments and these can be made optional with:

```
\def\tolerant[#1]{...}
```

but there are more features related to tolerant:

```
\def\tolerant[#1]#*[#2]{...}
```

that are discussed in low level manuals. Users can define macros that are reported (in tracing) as if they were primitives:

```
\untraced\protected\def\foo{...}
```

The prefixes `\constrained` and `\retained` relate to register values being saved and restored in groups. The `\inherited` is used in for instance math spacing assignments where we need dynamic binding to for instance `\muskip` registers (instead of values).

Although not related to the callback discussed here we mentioned these prefixes because they belong to the prefixed_ cmd operator/operand pair. So to come back to users being able to use primitives instead of funny unreadable aliases. It's good to keep in mind that one can combine prefixes like the following:

```
\frozen    \foo{...}
\immutable \foo{...}
\instance  \foo{...}
\mutable   \foo{...}
\overloaded\foo{...}
\permanent \foo{...}
```

so this is valid too:

```
\global\permanent\untraced\tolerant\protected\def\foo[#1]#*[#2]{...}
```

So what do these prefixes do? It depends on the value of an internal integer `\overloadmode` where the following values have meaning:

		immutable	permanent	primitive	frozen	instance
1	warning	*	*	*		
2	error	*	*	*		
3	warning	*	*	*	*	
4	error	*	*	*	*	
5	warning	*	*	*	*	*
6	error	*	*	*	*	*

The `\enforced` prefix can be used to bypass this mechanism:

```
\permanent\protected\def\foo{...}

\protected\def\oof{\enforced\def\foo{...}}
```

But only in so called quote ini mode, that is when the format file is created. In order to save work we also have:

```
\aliased\let\foo\relax
```

This makes `\foo` a copy (or more precise, a reference) including all flags, so in this case it will be flagged a a primitive which is `\permanent` too. You cannot define primitives yourself but when reported in a trace you see it being a primitive indeed.

Of course this all means that one has to define basically all relevant macros with a combination of prefixes and that happens to be the case in ConT_EXt, which in the end makes this callback a rather ConT_EXt specific one.

```
function (
```

```

    <t:boolean> error,
    <t:integer> overload,
    <t:string> csname,
    <t:integer> flags
)
-- no return values
end

```

6.4 Fonts

6.4.1 define_font

The engine has no font loader but it does need some information about the glyphs that are used like width, height and depth, possibly italic correction, kerns, and ligatures. And for math some more information is needed. Keep in mind that for instance italic correction is something specific for \TeX and that kerns and ligatures only are needed when you leave them to the engine. For modern OpenType fonts we let Lua deal with this.

```

function (
    <t:string> name,
    <t:integer> size
)
    return <t:integer> id
end

```

The string name is the filename part of the font specification, as given by the user, for instance when `\font` is used for defining an instance. The number size is a bit special:

- If it is positive, it specifies an ‘at size’ in scaled points.
- If it is negative, its absolute value represents a ‘scaled’ setting relative to the design size of the font.

The font can be defined with `font.define` which returns a font identifier that can be returned in the callback. Contrary to \LuaTeX , in \LuaMetaTeX we only accept a number.

The internal structure of the font table that is passed to `font.define` is explained elsewhere but there can be much more in that table. Likely the macro package will keep the passes table around for other usage, for instance for usage in the backend.

Setting this callback to false is pointless because it will prevent font loading completely because without fonts there is little to do for the engine.

6.4.2 quality_font

When you use font expansion you will normally pass the glyph specific expansion and compression values along with the dimensions. However, this can be delayed. When we use par passes (or otherwise set one of the adjust parameters) and a font has not yet been setup for expansion this callback will kick in but only once per font.

```

function (

```

```

    <t:integer> id
)
-- no return values
end

```

The function can set additional parameters in the font and pass them to $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ using helpers from the font library.

6.5 Typesetting

6.5.1 pre_output_filter

This callback is called when $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ is ready to start boxing the box 255 for $\backslash\text{output}$. The callback does not replace any internal code.

```

function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:string>   groupcode,
    <t:integer>  size,
    <t:string>   packtype,
    <t:integer>  maxdepth,
    <t:integer>  direction
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end

```

6.5.2 buildpage_filter

This callback is called whenever LuaMeta $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ is ready to move stuff to the main vertical list. You can use this callback to do specialized manipulation of the page building stage like imposition or column balancing.

```

function (
    <t:string> extrainfo
)
-- no return values
end

```

The string `extrainfo` gives some additional information about what $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$'s state is with respect to the ‘current page’. The possible values for this callback are:

value	explanation
<code>alignment</code>	a (partial) alignment is being added
<code>after_output</code>	an output routine has just finished
<code>new_graf</code>	the beginning of a new paragraph
<code>vmode_par</code>	$\backslash\text{par}$ was found in vertical mode
<code>hmode_par</code>	$\backslash\text{par}$ was found in horizontal mode
<code>insert</code>	an insert is added
<code>penalty</code>	a penalty (in vertical mode)

<code>before_display</code>	immediately before a display starts
<code>after_display</code>	a display is finished
<code>end</code>	LuaMetaT _E X is terminating (it's all over)

6.5.3 hpack_filter

This callback is called when T_EX is ready to start boxing some horizontal mode material. Math items and line boxes are ignored at the moment. The callback does not replace any internal code.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:string>  groupcode,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:string>  packtype
    <t:integer> direction,
    <t:node>    attributelist
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

The packtype is either `additional` or `exactly`. If `additional`, then the size is a `\hbox` spread ... argument. If `exactly`, then the size is a `\hbox` to In both cases, the number is in scaled points.

6.5.4 vpack_filter

This callback is called when T_EX is ready to start boxing some vertical mode material. Math displays are ignored at the moment. The callback does not replace any internal code.

This function is very similar to `hpack_filter`. Besides the fact that it is called at different moments, there is an extra variable that matches T_EX's `\maxdepth` setting.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:string>  groupcode,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:string>  packtype,
    <t:integer> maxdepth,
    <t:integer> direction,
    <t:node>    attributelist
}
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

6.5.5 hyphenate

This callback is supposed to insert discretionary nodes in the node list it receives.

```
function (
    <t:node> head,
```

```

    <t:node> tail
)
-- no return values
end

```

Setting this callback to `false` will prevent the internal discretionary insertion pass.

6.5.6 ligaturing

This callback, which expects no return values, has to apply ligaturing to the node list it receives.

```

function (
    <t:node> head,
    <t:node> tail
)
-- no return values
end

```

You don't have to worry about return values because the head node that is passed on to the callback is guaranteed not to be a `glyph_node` (if need be, a temporary node will be prepended), and therefore it cannot be affected by the mutations that take place. After the callback, the internal value of the 'tail of the list' will be recalculated.

The next of head is guaranteed to be non-nil. The next of tail is guaranteed to be nil, and therefore the second callback argument can often be ignored. It is provided for orthogonality, and because it can sometimes be handy when special processing has to take place.

Setting this callback to `false` will prevent the internal ligature creation pass. You must not ruin the node list. For instance, the head normally is a local par node, and the tail a glue. Messing too much can push LuaTeX into panic mode.

6.5.7 kerning

This callback has to apply kerning between the nodes in the node list it receives. See `ligaturing` for calling conventions.

```

function (
    <t:node> head,
    <t:node> tail
)
-- no return values
end

```

Setting this callback to `false` will prevent the internal kern insertion pass. You must not ruin the node list. For instance, the head normally is a local par node, and the tail a glue. Messing too much can push LuaTeX into panic mode.

6.5.8 glyph_run

When set this callback is triggered when TeX normally handles the ligaturing and kerning. In LuaTeX you use the `hpack_filter` and `per_linebreak_filter` callbacks for that (where each passes different

arguments). This callback doesn't get triggered when there are no glyphs (in LuaT_EX this optimization is controlled by a variable).

```
function (
  <t:node>    head,
  <t:string>  groupcode,
  <t:integer> direction
)
  return <t:node> newhead
end
```

The traditional T_EX font processing is bypassed so you need to take care of that with the helpers. (For the moment we keep the ligaturing and kerning callbacks but they are kind of obsolete.)

6.5.9 pre_linebreak_filter

This callback is called just before LuaT_EX starts converting a list of nodes into a stack of **\hboxes**, after the addition of **\parfillskip**. The callback does not replace any internal code.

```
function (
  <t:node>    head,
  <t:string>  groupcode
)
  return <t:node> newhead
end
```

The string called groupcode identifies the nodelist's context within T_EX's processing. The range of possibilities is given in the table below, but not all of those can actually appear here, some are for the hpack_filter and vpack_filter callbacks.

value	explanation
<empty>	main vertical list
hbox	\hbox in horizontal mode
adjusted_hbox	\hbox in vertical mode
vbox	\vbox
vtop	\vtop
align	\halign or \valign
disc	discretionaries
insert	packaging an insert
vcenter	\vcenter
local_box	\localleftbox or \localrightbox
split_off	top of a \vsplit
split_keep	remainder of a \vsplit
align_set	alignment cell
fin_row	alignment row

As for all the callbacks that deal with nodes, the return value can be one of three things:

- boolean `true` signals successful processing
- `<t:node>` signals that the ‘head’ node should be replaced by the returned node
- boolean `false` signals that the ‘head’ node list should be ignored and flushed from memory

6.5.10 `linebreak_filter`

This callback replaces LuaT_EX's line breaking algorithm. The callback does not replace any internal code.

```
function (
  <t:node>    head,
  <t:boolean> is_display
)
  return <t:node> newhead
end
```

The returned node is the head of the list that will be added to the main vertical list, the boolean argument is true if this paragraph is interrupted by a following math display.

If you return something that is not a `<t:node>`, LuaT_EX will apply the internal linebreak algorithm on the list that starts at `<head>`. Otherwise, the `<t:node>` you return is supposed to be the head of a list of nodes that are all allowed in vertical mode, and at least one of those has to represent an `\hbox`. Failure to do so will result in a fatal error.

Setting this callback to `false` is possible, but dangerous, because it is possible you will end up in an unfixable ‘deadcycles loop’.

6.5.11 `post_linebreak_filter`

This callback is called just after LuaT_EX has converted a list of nodes into a stack of `\hboxes`.

```
function (
  <t:node>    head,
  <t:string>  groupcode
)
  return <t:node> newhead
end
```

6.5.12 `append_to_vlist_filter`

This callback is called whenever LuaT_EX adds a box to a vertical list (the mirrored argument is obsolete):

```
function (
  <t:node>    box,
  <t:string>  locationcode,
  <t:integer> prevdepth
)
```

```

    return <t:node> list [, <t:integer> prevdepth [, <t:boolean> checkdepth ] ]
end

```

It is ok to return nothing or nil in which case you also need to flush the box or deal with it yourself. The prevdepth is also optional. Locations are box, alignment, equation, equation_number and post_linebreak. When the third argument returned is true the normal prevdepth correction will be applied, based on the first node.

6.5.13 alignment_filter

This is an experimental callback that when set is called several times during the construction of an alignment. The context values are available in `tex.getalignmentcontextvalues()`.

```

function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:string>  context,
    <t:node>    attributes,
    <t:node>    preamble
)
    -- no return values
end

```

There are no sanity checks so if a user messes up the passed node lists the results can be unpredictable and, as with other node related callbacks, crash the engine.

6.5.14 local_box_filter

Local boxes are a somewhat tricky and error prone feature so use this callback with care because the paragraph is easily messed up. A line can have a left, right and middle box where the middle one has no width. This callback does not replace any internal code. The callback gets quite some parameters passed:

```

function (
    <t:node>    linebox,
    <t:node>    leftbox,
    <t:node>    rightbox,
    <t:node>    middlebox,
    <t:integer> linenumber,
    <t:integer> leftskip,
    <t:integer> rightskip,
    <t:integer> lefthang,
    <t:integer> righthang,
    <t:integer> indentation,
    <t:integer> parinitleftskip,
    <t:integer> parinitrightskip,
    <t:integer> parfillleftskip,
    <t:integer> parfillrightskip,
    <t:integer> overshoot
)
    -- no return values

```

end

This is an experimental callback that will be tested in different ConT_EXt mechanisms before it will be declared stable.

6.5.15 packed_vbox_filter

After the `vpack_filter` callback (see previous section) is triggered the box get packed and after that this callback can be configured to kick in.

```
function (
  <t:node>    head,
  <t:string>  groupcode
)
  return <t:node> newhead
end
```

6.5.16 handle_uleader

The `\uleaders` command inserts a user leader into the list. When a list get packed and has such leaders, a run over the list happens after packing so that it can be finalized.

```
function (
  <t:node>    head,
  <t:string>  context,
  <t:integer> index,
  <t:node>    box,
  <t:integer> location
)
  return <t:node> head
end
```

6.5.17 italic_correction

The concept of italic correction is very much related to traditional T_EX fonts. At least in 2024 it is absent from OpenType although it has some meaning in OpenType math. In T_EX this correction is normally inserted by `\/` although in LuaMetaT_EX we also have `\explicititaliccorrection` as well as `\forcedleftcorrection` and `\forcedrightcorrection`.

When this callback is enabled it gets triggered when one of left or right correction commands is given and the returned kern is then used as correction.

```
function (
  <t:node>    glyph,
  <t:integer> kern,
  <t:integer> subtype,
)
  return <t:integer> kern
end
```

6.5.18 insert_par

Each paragraph starts with a local par node that keeps track of for instance the direction. You can hook a callback into the creator:

```
function (
  <t:node>    par,
  <t:string>  location
)
  -- no return values
end
```

There is no return value and you should make sure that the node stays valid as otherwise T_EX can get confused.

6.5.19 append_line_filter

Every time a line is added this callback is triggered, when set. migrated material and adjusts also qualify as such and the detail relates to the adjust index.

```
function (
  <t:node>    head,
  <t:node>    tail,
  <t:string>  context,
  <t:integer> detail
)
  return <t:node> newhead
end
```

A list of possible context values can be queried with `tex.getappendlinecontextvalues()`.

6.5.20 insert_distance

This callback is called when the page builder adds an insert. There is not much control over this mechanism but this callback permits some last minute manipulations of the spacing before an insert, something that might be handy when for instance multiple inserts (types) are appended in a row.

```
function (
  <t:integer> class,
  <t:integer> order
)
  return <t:integer> register
end
```

The return value is a number indicating the skip register to use for the prepended spacing. This permits for instance a different top space (when class equals one) and intermediate space (when class is larger than one). Of course you can mess with the insert box but you need to make sure that LuaT_EX is happy afterwards.

6.5.21 begin_paragraph

Every time a paragraph starts this callback, when configured, will kick in:

```
function (
    <t:boolean> invmode,
    <t:boolean> indented,
    <t:string> context
)
    return <t:boolean> indented
end
```

There are many places where a new paragraph can be triggered:

0x00	normal	0x04	dbbox	0x08	output	0x0C	math
0x01	vmode	0x05	vcenter	0x09	align	0x0D	lua
0x02	vbox	0x06	vadjust	0x0A	noalign	0x0E	reset
0x03	vtop	0x07	insert	0x0B	span		

6.5.22 paragraph_context

When the return value of this callback is `false` the paragraph related settings, when they have been updated, will not be updated.

```
function (
    <t:string> context
)
    return <t:boolean> ignore
end
```

6.5.23 missing_character

This callback is triggered when a character node is created and the font doesn't have the requested character.

```
function (
    <t:node> glyph,
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> character
)
    -- no return value
end
```

6.5.24 process_character

This callback is experimental and gets called when a glyph node is created and the callback field in a character is set.

```
function (
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> character
)
```

```

    -- no return value
end

```

6.5.25 tail_append

6.6 Tracing

6.6.1 hpack_quality

This callback can be used to intercept the overfull messages that can result from packing a horizontal list (as happens in the par builder). The function takes a few arguments:

```

function (
    <t:string> incident,
    <t:integer> detail,
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:integer> first,
    <t:integer> last
)
    return <t:node> whatever
end

```

The incident is one of overfull, underfull, loose or tight. The detail is either the amount of overflow in case of overfull, or the badness otherwise. The head is the list that is constructed (when protrusion or expansion is enabled, this is an intermediate list). Optionally you can return a node, for instance an overfull rule indicator. That node will be appended to the list (just like T_EX's own rule would).

6.6.2 vpack_quality

This callback can be used to intercept the overfull messages that can result from packing a vertical list (as happens in the page builder). The function takes a few arguments:

```

function (
    <t:string> incident,
    <t:integer> detail,
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:integer> first,
    <t:integer> last
)
    -- no return values
end

```

The incident is one of overfull, underfull, loose or tight. The detail is either the amount of overflow in case of overfull, or the badness otherwise. The head is the list that is constructed.

6.6.3 line_break

This callback is actually a set of callbacks that has to be dealt with as a whole. The main reason why we have this callback is that we wanted to be able to see what the par builder is doing, especially

when we implement multiple paragraph building passes. This makes the callback pretty much a rather `ConTeXt` specific one.

We can also consider fetching the passive and active lists because we now keep much more info around.

```
function(
  <t:integer> context,
  <t:integer> checks,
  ...
)
-- no return values
end

function initialize (
  <t:integer> context,
  <t:integer> checks,
  <t:integer> subpasses
)
-- no return values
end

function start (
  <t:integer> context,
  <t:integer> checks,
  <t:integer> pass,
  <t:integer> subpass,
  <t:integer> classes,
  <t:integer> decent
)
-- no return values
end

function stop (
  <t:integer> context,
  <t:integer> checks,
  <t:integer> demerits
)
-- no return values
end

function collect (
  <t:integer> context,
  <t:integer> checks
)
-- no return values
end

function line (
  <t:integer> context,
  <t:integer> checks,
  <t:integer> box,
```

```

    <t:integer> badness,
    <t:integer> overshoot,
    <t:integer> shrink,
    <t:integer> stretch,
    <t:integer> line,
    <t:integer> serial
)
    -- no return values
end

function delete (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> serial
)
    -- no return values
end

function wrapup (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> demerits,
    <t:integer> looseness
)
    -- no return values
end

function check (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> pass,
    <t:integer> subpass,
    <t:integer> serial,
    <t:integer> prevserial,
    <t:integer> linenumber,
    <t:integer> nodetype,
    <t:integer> fitness,,
    <t:integer> demerits,
    <t:integer> classes,
    <t:integer> badness,
    <t:integer> demerits,
    <t:node> breakpoint,
    <t:integer> short,
    <t:integer> glue,
    <t:integer> linewidth
)
    return <t:integer> demerits -- optional
end

function list (

```



```

    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> serial
)
-- no return values
end

```

Every one of these gets a context and checks passes. Possible contexts are:

0x00 initialize	0x03 stop	0x06 delete
0x01 start	0x04 collect	0x07 report
0x02 list	0x05 line	0x08 wrapup

The checks parameters is the value of `\linebreakchecks` which makes it possible to plug in actions depending on that number. To give an idea if what gets called, this is what you get when typesetting `tufte.tex`: initialize, start, report, delete, delete, stop, start, report, report, delete, report, report, report, delete, delete, report, report, report, delete, report, delete, delete, report, report, report, delete, delete, delete, report, delete, report, delete, delete, report, report, delete, report, report, delete, delete, delete, report, delete, report, delete, delete, delete, report, report, delete, report, report, delete, report, delete, report, delete, report, delete, delete, delete, report, report, report, report, delete, delete, delete, delete, delete, delete, delete, delete, report, stop, collect, list, list, list, list, list, list, list, list, list, list, line, line, line, line, line, line, line, line, wrapup.

6.6.4 show_build

You can trace (and even influence) the page builder with this callback. It comes in several variants that are called during the process. Callbacks like these assume that one knows what is going on in the engine.

```

function initialize (
    <t:integer> context
)
-- no return values
end

function step (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:node>    current,
    <t:integer> pagegoal,
    <t:integer> pagetotal
)
-- no return values
end

function check (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:node>    current,
    <t:boolean> moveon,
    <t:boolean> fireup,

```

```

    <t:integer> badness,
    <t:integer> costs,
    <t:integer> penalty
)
    return <t:boolean> moveon, <t:boolean> fireup
end

function skip (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:node>     current,
)
    -- no return values
end

function move (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:node>     current,
    <t:integer> lastheight,
    <t:integer> lastdepth,
    <t:integer> laststretch,
    <t:integer> lastshrink,
    <t:boolean> hasstretch
)
    -- no return values
end

function fireup (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:node>     current
)
    -- no return values
end

function wrapup (
    <t:integer> context
)
    -- no return values
end

```

6.6.5 show_whatsit

Because we only have a generic `whatsit` it is up to the macro package to provide details when tracing them.

```

function (
    <t:node>     whatsit,
    <t:integer>   indentation,
    <t:integer>   tracinglevel,
    <t:integer>   currentlevel,
    <t:integer>   inputlevel

```

```
)
  -- no return value
end
```

Here indentation tells how many periods are to be typeset if you want to be compatible with the rest of tracing. The `tracinglevel` indicates if the current level and/or input level are shown cf. `\tracinglevels`. Of course one is free to show whatever in whatever way suits the whatsit best.

6.6.6 `linebreak_quality`

```
function (
  <t:node>    par,
  <t:integer> id,
  <t:integer> pass,
  <t:integer> subpass,
  <t:integer> subpasses,
  <t:integer> state,
  <t:integer> overfull,
  <t:integer> underfull,
  <t:integer> verdict,
  <t:integer> classified,
  <t:integer> line
)
  return <t:node> result
end
```

6.6.7 `show_loners`

In spite of widow, club, broken and shaping penalties we can have single lines in the result. When set, this callback replaces the output that normally `\tracingloners` produces.

```
function (
  <t:integer> options,
  <t:integer> penalty
)
  return <t:node> result
end
```

The options are those set on the encountered penalty:

0x0000	normal	0x0010	clubbed	0x0200	shaping
0x0001	mathforward	0x0020	toddlered	0x0400	double
0x0002	mathbackward	0x0040	widow	0x0800	doubleused
0x0004	orphaned	0x0080	club	0x1000	factorused
0x0008	widowed	0x0100	broken	0x2000	endofpar

6.6.8 get_attribute

Because attributes are abstract pairs of indices and values the reported properties makes not much sense and are very macro package (and user) dependent. This callback permits more verbose reporting by the engine when tracing is enabled.

```
function (
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:integer> value
)
    return <t:string>, <t:string>
end
```

6.6.9 get_noad_class

We have built-in math classes but there can also be user defined ones. This callback can be used to report more meaningful strings instead of numbers when tracing.

```
function (
    <t:integer> class
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

6.6.10 get_math_dictionary

todo

6.6.11 show_lua_call

When the engine traces something that involves a Lua call it makes sense to report something more meaningful than just that. This callback can be used provide a meaningful string (like the name of a function).

```
function (
    <t:string> name,
    <t:integer> index
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

6.6.12 trace_memory

When the engine starts all kind of memory is pre-allocated> depending on the configuration more gets allocated when a category runs out of memory. The LuaMetaTeX engine is more dynamic than LuaTeX. If this callback is set it will get called as follows:

```
function (
    <t:string> category,
```

```

    <t:boolean> success
)
-- no return value
end

```

The boolean indicates if the allocation has been successful. One can best quit the run when this one is false which the engine is likely to do that anyway, be in in a less graceful way that you might like.

6.6.13 paragraph_pass

This callback is not yet stable.

6.7 Math

6.7.1 mlist_to_hlist

This callback replaces Lua_T_E_X's math list to node list conversion algorithm.

```

function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:string>  display_type,
    <t:boolean> need_penalties
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end

```

The returned node is the head of the list that will be added to the vertical or horizontal list, the string argument is either ‘text’ or ‘display’ depending on the current math mode, the boolean argument is true if penalties have to be inserted in this list, false otherwise.

Setting this callback to false is bad, it will almost certainly result in an endless loop.

6.7.2 math_rule

In math rules are used for fractions, radicals and accents. In the case of radicals rules mix with glyphs to build the symbol. In Con_T_E_Xt we can enable an alternate approach that uses glyphs instead of rules so that we can have more consistent shapes, for instance with slopes or non square endings. This callback takes care of that.

```

function (
    <t:integer> subtype,
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> width,
    <t:integer> height,
    <t:node>    attributes
)
    return <t:node> rule
end

```

6.7.3 make_extensible

Like `math_rule` this callback is used to construct nicer extensibles in ConTeXt math support. It can optionally be followed by `register_extensible`.

```
function (
  <t:node>    extensible,
  <t:integer> fnt,
  <t:integer> chr,
  <t:integer> size,
  <t:integer> width,
  <t:integer> height,
  <t:integer> depth,
  <t:integer> linewidth,
  <t:integer> axis,
  <t:integer> exheight,
  <t:integer> emwidth
)
  return <t:node> boxed extensible
end
```

6.7.4 register_extensible

This callback is a possible follow up on `make_extensible` and it can be used to share pre-build extensibles or package them otherwise (for instance as Type3 glyph).

```
function (
  <t:integer> fnt,
  <t:integer> chr,
  <t:integer> size,
  <t:node>    attributes,
  <t:node>    extensible
)
  return <t:node> boxed
end
```

fonts

7 Fonts

7.1 Introduction

The Lua \TeX engine changed the approach to loading fonts and processing kerns and ligatures by introducing a Lua loader and callbacks for processing replacement and positioning features. In LuaMeta \TeX we go a step further and no longer load fonts otherwise than with Lua. In the end, all that \TeX needs are a few dimensions and optionally ligature and kerning tables. Of course for math a bit more is needed but even there we can safely delegate all loading to Lua. In LuaMeta \TeX we still have the traditional kerning and ligature built in because after all that method is the reference for traditional fonts and the amount of code needed is relatively small.

The backend is gone, so here the final font inclusion is also done by Lua. This means that in the engine the amount of code involved in that is zero. In the engine we have glyphs and glyphs traditionally carry a font identifier (an number) and a glyph reference (also a number). Both are used to fetch the width, height, depth, italic correction and some more from the fonts registered in the engine. For \TeX a font is more of an abstraction than from Lua, where we can manipulate details and deal with the real shapes.

In LuaMeta \TeX the situation is simplified on the one hand, read: no font loader, but complicated on the other, for instance because we have dynamic scaling. In this chapter we discuss what data is stored in glyphs, what primitives are involved, and how loading takes place. Because a lot can be done in Lua and because there are no standards involved, we don't need to discuss how a macro package is supposed to deal with all this; one can consider Con \TeX t as a reference implementation if needed.

Removing the font loader and backend had relatively little impact on Con \TeX t because we already did most in Lua, but as we developed LuaMeta \TeX both subsystems evolved further. Especially moving more backend processing to Lua had some impact on performance but in the end the engine is much faster so we gained that back. Additions to the font system, like dynamic scaling of course have impact too but we could also limit the amount of fonts that get loaded which compensates for any loss in performance. The most complicated and demanding part of the backend code is that what deals with fonts: sharing, subsetting, devirtualizing, scaling, effects like weight, slanting, expansion, accuracy, accessibility, . . . , all of that has to be dealt with.

In this chapter we discuss a few aspects like primitives, defining fonts, Lua helpers, and virtual fonts, but for a more complete picture one really has to read the documents that describe how all evolved, how fonts are used in Con \TeX t as well as look at how we apply all this. There is no reason to repeat everything here, especially because for most users this is not something they need to know. There are dedicated manuals and articles that cover different aspects.

7.2 Primitives

7.2.1 Basic properties

Although primitives are discussed in their own chapter we repeat some here because it impacts following sections. Let's start with the commands that change the look and feel of a font:

```
\begingroup                glyphs represent characters \endgroup
\begingroup \glyphscale 1200 glyphs represent characters \endgroup
```

```

\begingroup \glyphxscale 1200 glyphs represent characters \endgroup
\begingroup \glyphyscale 800 glyphs represent characters \endgroup
\begingroup \glyphslant 200 glyphs represent characters \endgroup
\begingroup \glyphweight 200 glyphs represent characters \endgroup

```

This results in:

```

glyphs represent characters
glyphs represent characters
glyphs represent characters
glyphs represent characters
glyphs represent characters

```

These parameters are applied to glyphs that get added to the current list of nodes. Whenever the engine (or the Lua end) needs a dimension, two scales have to be applied, depending on the dimension being horizontal or vertical. Sometimes the slant and weight also have to be taken into account. Later we will see that we have additional math scaling so you can imagine that applying a handful of scales has a bit of impact on the code and also performance. However, the later will not be noticed because computers are fast enough.

Here is how we can apply the scaling factors to dimensions:

```

{\glyphxscale 1500 \the\glyphxscaled 100pt} and
{\glyphyscale 750 \the\glyphyscaled 100pt} and
{\glyphscale 1500 \glyphxscale 500 \the\glyphxscaled 100pt}

```

We get: **150.0pt** and 75.0pt and 75.0pt. In scenarios like these you need to keep in mind that the currently set scales also apply. The main reason why we use these 1000 based factor is that it is the way T_EX does things. We could have used posits instead but those were added later so for now it's factors that dominate.

7.2.2 Specifications

A font is loaded at a specific size, so these properties start from that: the design size and the requested size which results in a scaling factor. Every font has a number so here we have:

```

\tf \the \fontid \font \hskip1cm
\bf \the \fontid \font \hskip1cm
\sl \the \fontid \font

```

```
1      4      10
```

A set of settings can be combined in specification, here **\font** is the current font, from which the specification takes the identifier.

```

\fontspecdef \MyFontA \font xscale 2000 yscale 800 weight 200 slant 200 \relax
\fontspecdef \MyFontB \font all 1000 1500 800 250 150 \relax

```

```

\begingroup \MyFontA Is this neat or not? \endgroup
\begingroup \MyFontB Is this neat or not? \endgroup

```

Is this neat or not?

Is this neat or not?

Instead of an id an already defined specification can be given in which case we start from a copy:

```
\fontspecdef \MyFontA 2 all 1000
\fontspecdef \MyFontB \MyFontA xscale 1200
```

Say that we have:

```
\fontspecdef\MyFoo\font xscale 1200 \relax
```

The four properties of such a specification can then be queried as follows:

```
[\the\fontspecid      \MyFoo]
[\the\fontspecscale   \MyFoo]
[\the\fontspecxscale  \MyFoo]
[\the\fontspecyscale  \MyFoo]
[\the\fontspecifiedsize\MyFoo]
[\fontspecifiedname   \MyFoo]
```

```
[1] [1000] [1200] [1000] [10.0pt] [Serif sa 1]
```

A font specification obeys grouping but is not a register. Like `\integerdef` and `\dimendef` it is just a control sequence with a special meaning.

If you read about compact font mode in ConT_EXt, this is what we're using there. It started out by more aggressive sharing and scaling but eventually all five properties were integrated in a fast font switch. However, setting these five properties, even with one command has some overhead because they are saved on the save stack. Okay, that was a bit if a lie: no one will notice that overhead:

```
\fontspecdef \MyFontA \font
  scale 1100 xscale 2000 yscale 800 weight 200 slant 200
\relax
\fontspecdef \MyFontB \font
  scale 1200 xscale 1000 yscale 200 weight 100 slant 100
\relax
```

A 100.000 times `{\MyFontA\MyFontB}` grouped expansion takes 0.02 seconds runtime on my 2018 laptop, which is just noise once we start processing text: 100.000 times `{\MyFontA efficient \MyFontB efficient}` takes 1.4 seconds and 100.000 times `{\MyFontA test \MyFontB test}` takes 0.4 seconds. Guess why.

7.2.3 Offsets

These two parameters control the horizontal and vertical shift of glyphs with, when applied to a stretch of them, the horizontal offset probably being the least useful. The values default to the currently set values. Here is a ConT_EXt example:

```
\ruledhbox {%
  \ruledhbox {\glyph yoffset 1ex xoffset -.5em 123}
  \ruledhbox {\glyph yoffset 1ex                  125}
  \ruledhbox \bgroup
```

```

baseline
\glyphyoffset 1ex \glyphxscale 800 \glyphyscale \glyphxscale
raised%
\egroup
\egroup

```

Visualized:

7.2.4 Math scales and identifiers

More details about fonts in math mode can be found in the chapters about math and primitives so here we just mention a few of these primitives. The internal `\glyphtextscale`, `\glyphscriptscale` and `\glyphscriptscriptscale` registers can be set to enforce additional scaling of math, like this:

```

$ a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$
$\glyphtextscale 800 a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$
$\glyphscriptscale 800 a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$
$\glyphscriptscriptscale 800 a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$

```

You can of course set them all in any mix as long as the value is larger than zero and doesn't exceed 1000. In ConT_EXt we use this for special purposes so don't mess with it there. as there can be unexpected (but otherwise valid) side effects.

$$a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$$

$$a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$$

$$a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$$

$$a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$$

The next few reported values depend on the font setup. A math font can be loaded at a certain scale and further scaled on the fly. An open type math font comes with recommended script and script script scales and gets passed to the engine scaled. The values reported by `\mathscale` are *additional* scales.

```

$\the\mathscale\textfont \zerocount$
$\the\mathscale\scriptfont \zerocount$
$\the\mathscale\scriptscriptfont\zerocount$

```

gives: 1000 1000 1000

In math mode the font id depends on the style because there we have a family of three related fonts or the same font with different scales. In this document we get the following identifiers:

```

$\the\mathstylefontid\scriptscriptstyle \fam$
$\the\mathstylefontid\scriptstyle \fam$
$\the\mathstylefontid\textstyle \fam$

```

Gives: 2 2 2, which is no surprise because we use the same font for all sizes combined with the smaller field options discusses later. In ConT_EXt math uses compact font mode with in-place scaling by default.

7.2.5 Scaled fontdimensions

When you use `\glyphscale`, `\glyphxscale` and/or `\glyphyscale` the font dimensions also scale. The values that are currently used can be queried:

dimension	scale	xscale	yscale
<code>\scaledewidth</code>	*	*	
<code>\scaledexheight</code>	*		*
<code>\scaledextraspacer</code>	*	*	
<code>\scaledinterwordshrink</code>	*	*	
<code>\scaledinterwordspace</code>	*	*	
<code>\scaledinterwordstretch</code>	*	*	
<code>\scaledslantperpoint</code>	*	*	

The next table shows the effective sized when we scale by 2000. The last two columns scale twice: the shared scale and the x or y scale.

<code>\scaledewidth</code>	20.0	20.0	10.0	40.0	20.0
<code>\scaledexheight</code>	10.38086	5.19043	10.38086	10.38086	20.76172
<code>\scaledextraspacer</code>	2.11914	2.11914	1.05957	4.23828	2.11914
<code>\scaledinterwordshrink</code>	2.11914	2.11914	1.05957	4.23828	2.11914
<code>\scaledinterwordspace</code>	6.35742	6.35742	3.17871	12.71484	6.35742
<code>\scaledinterwordstretch</code>	3.17871	3.17871	1.58936	6.35742	3.17871
<code>\scaledslantperpoint</code>	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0

7.2.6 Character properties

The `\fontcharwd`, `\fontcharht`, `\fontchardp` and `\fontcharic` give access to character properties. To this repertoire LuaMetaTeX adds the top and bottom accent accessors `\fontcharta` and `\fontcharba` that came in handy for tracing. You pass a font reference and character code. Normally only OpenType math fonts have this property.

7.2.7 Glyph options

In LuaTeX the `\noligs` and `\nokerns` primitives suppress these features but in LuaMetaTeX these primitives are gone. They are replaced by a more generic control primitive `\glyphoptions`. This numerical parameter is a bitset with the following fields:

0x00000000	normal	0x00000400	mathdiscretionary
0x00000001	noleftligature	0x00000800	mathsitalicstoo
0x00000002	norightligature	0x00001000	mathartifact
0x00000004	noleftkern	0x00002000	weightless
0x00000008	norightkern	0x00004000	spacefactoroverload
0x00000010	noexpansion	0x00008000	checktoddler
0x00000020	no protrusion	0x00010000	checktwin
0x00000040	noitaliccorrection	0x00020000	istoddler
0x00000080	nozeroitaliccorrection	0x00100000	userfirst
0x00000100	applyxoffset	0x40000000	userlast
0x00000200	applyyoffset		

The effects speak for themselves. They provide detailed control over individual glyph, this because the current value of this option is stored with glyphs. In ConTeXt we have commands that set flags

like that and also make sure that there is no interference in setting them. it's good to know that some of these options are there so that we can properly demonstrate, discuss and document LuaMetaTeX behavior. The current value of this parameter is 0x18080 but that can of course change because we experiment with options and bit positions might change over time, which is why we can query the engine.

7.3 Nodes

This chapter is not about nodes so we keep this section short. A glyph node is an important one and a page easily has a few thousand of them. When a list that has glyphs nodes is processed, depending on the font quite some passes over that list are made in order to sort out substitutions, alternatives and ligatures as well as font kerning and anchoring. When the paragraph is constructed these glyphs are consulted and dimensions and expansion properties are accessed and scaling can happen. These glyph nodes are among the largest and have many fields. To what extend you can use these fields depends on the macro package and the reason is that some of these fields also affect the backend and the backend is provided by the macro package. When the script/language combination that you use supports hyphenation, there can be discretionary nodes that have a pre, post and/or replace component set that are node lists that can contain glyph nodes and whenever we mess around with glyphs we also need to check these.

The most important fields are font and character, as these uniquely point to what shape is used. That also means that at the Lua end we can have more information than TeX needs and can do things that TeX in its role as constructor is unaware of. The par builder doesn't really care what it deals with, it only needs dimensions and maybe some properties.

The data, state, script and protected fields are used for instance by ConTeXt and in particular the font handler. There are primitives that can query and set these fields, like `\glyphdatafield`, `\glyphscriptfield` and `\glyphstatefield`.

These primitives can be used to set an additional glyph properties. Of course it's very macro package dependent what is done with that. It started with just the first one as experiment, simply because we had some room left in the glyph data structure. It's basically an single attribute. Then, when we got rid of the ligature pointer we could either drop it or use that extra field for some more, and because ConTeXt already used the data field, that is what happened. The script and state fields are shorts, that is, they run from zero to 0xFFFF where we assume that zero means 'unset'. Although they can be used for whatever purpose their use in ConTeXt is fixed. So far for a historical note.

The language field is used by the hyphenator but can also be used by the macro package. The `lhmin` and `rhmin` are only useful for the hyphenator and these values are set by the language mechanisms and primitives. The `discpart` bitset registers what the engine did which can be handy for tracing.

We already mentioned scales, slant and weight and these go to fields `scale`, `xscale`, `yscale`, `slant` and `weight`. The expansion, `raise`, `left`, `right`, `xoffset` and `yoffset` can be set by TeX but also by the font handler. Messing with any of these fields at the TeX end is easy but one really should take into account what the macro packages needs them for and does with them at the Lua end and in the backend. In that respect LuaMetaTeX lets the user free but it also means that you cannot expect macro packages (assuming that ConTeXt is not the only user) to behave the same.

The various math subsystems use properties, group and index and again this also macro package specific. The options bitset controls all kind of processes in the engine when it comes to using glyphs (user level `\glyphoptions`) as do `control` and `hyphenate`.

It would take many pages to explain all this so again we just refer to how ConT_EXt uses these fields, the way they can be set from T_EX and accessed in Lua. In the end, all the users see of this is shapes anyway, while macro packages integrate and present these as features.

7.4 Loading

A font is normally defined by `\font` which in LuaMetaT_EX is just a trigger for a callback. You can even do without that primitive because you can load a font and then use `\setfontid` or the previously mentioned specification to switch to a font. The callback, discussed in the callbacks chapter, gets a name and size, and is supposed to return a font identifier. You can use the name to locate and load a font, register the font using the following function, which gives you an identifier that satisfies the callback.

```
function font.define ( <t:table> font, <t:integer> id )
    return <t:integer> id
end
```

with respect to `\font` it's good to know that the engine accept a braced argument as a font name:

```
\font\myfont = {My Fancy Font}
```

This allows for embedded spaces, without the need for double quotes. Macro expansion takes place inside the argument. Although in ConT_EXt LMTX we don't use the `\font` for defining fonts, it still can be uses.

The font table is mandate but the identifier is optional. The table has the following fields, most of which concern math. The name field is mandate because it is needed in various feedback scenarios.

key	type	description
name	string	metric (file) name
original	string	the name used in logging and feedback
designsize	number	expected size (default: 655360 == 10pt)
size	number	the required scaling (by default the same as designsize)
compactmath	boolean	use the smaller fields in lookups
mathcontrol	bitset	this controls various options in the math engine
textcontrol	bitset	this controls various options in the text engine
nomath	boolean	don't check for math parameters and properties
characters	table	the defined glyphs of this font
fonts	table	locally used fonts
parameters	table	parameters by index and/or key
MathConstants	table	OpenType math parameter
hyphenchar	number	default: T _E X's <code>\hyphenchar</code>
skewchar	number	default: T _E X's <code>\skewchar</code>
textscale	number	scale applied to math text
scriptscale	number	scale applied to math script
scriptscriptscale	number	scale applied to math script script
textxscale	number	horizontal scale applied to math text
scriptxscale	number	horizontal scale applied to math script

<code>scriptxscriptscale</code>	number	horizontal scale applied to math script script
<code>textyscale</code>	number	vertical scale applied to math text
<code>scriptyscale</code>	number	vertical scale applied to math script
<code>scriptscriptscale</code>	number	vertical scale applied to math script script
<code>textweight</code>	number	weight applied to math text
<code>scriptweight</code>	number	weight applied to math script
<code>scriptscriptweight</code>	number	weight applied to math script script

There are three tables that need their own explanation. The `parameters` table is a hash with mixed key types. There are seven possible string keys, as well as a number of integer indices. The seven strings are actually used instead of the bottom seven indices, because that gives a nicer user interface. There are additional indexed entries possible for math fonts but nowadays one will use OpenType math fonts so these no longer make sense.

name	index
<code>slant</code>	1
<code>space</code>	2
<code>spacestretch</code>	3
<code>spaceshrink</code>	4
<code>xheight</code>	5
<code>quad</code>	6
<code>extraspace</code>	7

The `characters` table can be pretty large when we have OpenType fonts. In ConT_EXt we use Unicode as encoding which means that glyphs are organized as such. This also means that we have a hash and not an indexed array due to gaps. There can be more data in the glyph sub tables than the engine needs because the engine only picks up those that it needs. You can also later decide to pass additional properties and even glyphs to the engine, but changes can of course have consequences because at some point the backend will pick up data and use that. Additions are fine but changes have to be consistent. Of course it all depends on how you implement a backend.

When a character in the input is turned into a glyph node, it gets a character code that normally refers to an entry in that table. For proper paragraph building and math rendering the fields in the tables below can best be present in an entry in the `characters` table. As said, you can of course add all kind of extra fields. The engine only uses those that it needs for typesetting a paragraph or formula. The sub tables that define ligatures and kerns are also hashes with integer keys, and these indices should point to entries in the main `characters` table. The fields common to text and math characters are: `callback`, `compression`, `depth`, `expansion`, `height`, `italic`, `kerns`, `leftprotrusion`, `ligatures`, `rightprotrusion`, `tag`, `width`.

Providing ligatures and kerns via this table permits T_EX to construct ligatures and add inter-character kerning. However, normally you will use an OpenType font in combination with Lua code that does this. In ConT_EXt we have base mode that uses the engine, and node mode that uses Lua. A mono spaced font normally has no ligatures and inter character kerns and is normally not processed at all.

We can group the parameters. All characters have the following base set. It must be noted here that OpenType doesn't have a `italic` property and that the `height` and `depth` are also not part of the design: one can choose to derive them from the bounding box.

key	type	description
-----	------	-------------

width	number	width in sp (default 0)
height	number	height in sp (default 0)
depth	number	depth in sp (default 0)
italic	number	italic correction in sp (default 0)

There are four parameters that are more optional and relate to advanced optical paragraph optimization:

key	type	description
leftprotruding	number	left protruding factor (<code>\lpcode</code>)
rightprotruding	number	right protruding factor (<code>\rpcode</code>)
expansion	number	expansion factor (<code>\efcode</code>)
compression	number	compression factor (<code>\cfcode</code>)

The left and right protrusion factors as well as the expansion factor are comparable to the ones introduced by pdf \TeX , but compression is new and complements expansion. In LuaMeta \TeX the expansion mechanism is also available in math. You might have noticed that we don't have expansion related parameters in the main font table. This is because we have a more dynamic model. These values are anyway only used when `\protrudechars` and/or `\adjustspacing` are set. The later can also be controlled by so called par passes and thereby applied more selectively. Because setting these fields using specific glyph properties can take time, it is also possible to delay these settings till a dedicated callback is triggered when they are needed.

From \TeX we inherit the following tables. Ligatures are only used in so call base mode, when the engine does the font magic. Kerns are used in base mode text and optionally in math.

key	type	description
ligatures	table	ligaturing information
kerns	table	kerning information

The next fields control the engine and are a variant on \TeX 's tfm tag property. In a future we might provide a bit more (local) control although currently we see no need. Originally the tag and next field were combined into a packed integer but in current LuaMeta \TeX we have a 32 bit tag and the next field moved to the math blob as it only is used as variant selector.

key	type	description
tag	number	a bitset, currently not really exposed

In a math font characters have many more fields: `bottomanchor`, `bottomleft`, `bottommargin`, `bottomovershoot`, `bottomright`, `extensible`, `flataccent`, `innerlocation`, `innerxoffset`, `inneryoffset`, `keepbase`, `leftmargin`, `mathkerns`, `mirror`, `parts`, `rightmargin`, `smaller`, `topanchor`, `topleft`, `topmargin`, `topovershoot`, `topright`.

key	type	description
smaller	number	the next smaller math size character
mirror	number	a right to left alternative
flataccent	number	an accent alternative with less height (OpenType)
next	number	'next larger' character index

<code>toleft</code>	number	alternative script kern
<code>topright</code>	number	alternative script kern
<code>bottomleft</code>	number	alternative script kern
<code>bottomright</code>	number	alternative script kern
<code>topmargin</code>	number	alternative accent calculation margin
<code>bottommargin</code>	number	alternative accent calculation margin
<code>leftmargin</code>	number	alternative accent calculation margin
<code>rightmargin</code>	number	alternative accent calculation margin
<code>topovershoot</code>	number	accent width tolerance
<code>bottomovershoot</code>	number	accent width tolerance
<code>topanchor</code>	number	horizontal top accent alignment position
<code>bottomanchor</code>	number	horizontal bottom accent alignment position
<code>innerlocation</code>	string	left or right
<code>innerxoffset</code>	number	radical degree horizontal position
<code>inneryoffset</code>	number	radical degree vertical position
<code>parts</code>	table	constituent parts of an extensible
<code>partsitalic</code>	number	the italic correction applied with the extensible
<code>partsorientation</code>	number	horizontal or vertical
<code>mathkerns</code>	table	math cut-in specifications
<code>extensible</code>	table	stretch a fixed width accent to fit

In LuaMetaTeX combined with ConTeXt MkXL we go beyond OpenType math and have more fields here than in LuaTeX. In ConTeXt those values are set with so called tweaks and defined in so called font goody files. This relates to the extended math rendering engine in LuaMetaTeX.

Bidirectional math is also supported and driven by (in ConTeXt speak) tweaks which means that it has to be set up explicitly as it uses a combination of fonts. The `mirror` field points to an alternative glyph. The `smaller` field points to a script glyph alternative and that glyph can then point to a script script one (in OpenType speak `ssty` alternates respectively one 1 and 2). In ConTeXt is also uses specific features of the font subsystems that hook into the backend where we have a more advanced virtual font subsystem than in LuaTeX. Because this is macro package dependent it will not be discussed here.

Here is the character ‘f’ (decimal 102) in the font `cmr10` at 10pt. The numbers that represent dimensions are in scaled points. Of course you will use Latin Modern OpenType instead but the principles are the same:

```
[102] = {
  ["width"]  = 200250,
  ["height"] = 455111,
  ["depth"]  = 0,
  ["italic"] = 50973,
  ["kerns"]  = {
    [63] = 50973,
    [93] = 50973,
    [39] = 50973,
    [33] = 50973,
    [41] = 50973
```

```

    },
    ["ligatures"] = {
        [102] = { ["char"] = 11, ["type"] = 0 },
        [108] = { ["char"] = 13, ["type"] = 0 },
        [105] = { ["char"] = 12, ["type"] = 0 }
    }
}

```

In ConT_EXt, when they are really needed, we normally turn these traditional eight bit fonts into emulated OpenType (Unicode) fonts so there you will only encounter tables like this when we process a font in base mode.

Two very special string indexes can be used also: `leftboundary` is a virtual character whose ligatures and kerns are used to handle word boundary processing. `rightboundary` is similar but not actually used for anything (yet).

The values of `topanchor`, `bottomanchor` and `mathkern` are used only for math accent and superscript placement, see page ?? in this manual for details. The italic corrections are a story in themselves and discussed in detail in other manuals. The additional parameters that deal with kerns, margins, overshoots, inner anchoring, etc. are engine specific and not part of OpenType. More information can be found in the ConT_EXt distribution; they relate the upgraded math engine project by Mikael and Hans.

A math character can have a `next` field that points to a next larger shape. However, the presence of `extensible` will overrule `next`, if that is also present. The `extensible` field in turn can be overruled by `parts`, the OpenType version. The `extensible` table is very simple:

key	type	description
top	number	top character index
mid	number	middle character index
bot	number	bottom character index
rep	number	repeatable character index

The `parts` entry is an array of components. Each of those components is itself a hash of up to five keys:

key	type	description
glyph	number	character index
extender	number	(1) if this part is repeatable, (0) otherwise
start	number	maximum overlap at the starting side (scaled points)
end	number	maximum overlap at the ending side (scaled points)
advance	number	advance width of this item (width is default)

The traditional (text and math) kerns table is a hash indexed by character index (and ‘character index’ is defined as either a non-negative integer or the string value `rightboundary`), with the values of the kerning to be applied, in scaled points.

The traditional (text) ligatures table is a hash indexed by character index (and ‘character index’ is defined as either a non-negative integer or the string value `rightboundary`), with the values being yet another small hash, with two fields:

key	type	description
type	number	the type of this ligature command (default 0)
char	number	the character index of the resultant ligature

The char field in a ligature is required. The type field inside a ligature is the numerical or string value of one of the eight possible ligature types supported by T_EX. When T_EX inserts a new ligature, it puts the new glyph in the middle of the left and right glyphs. The original left and right glyphs can optionally be retained, and when at least one of them is kept, it is also possible to move the new ‘insertion point’ forward one or two places. The glyph that ends up to the right of the insertion point will become the next ‘left’.

textual (Knuth)	number	string	result
<code>l + r =: n</code>	0	<code>=:</code>	<code> n</code>
<code>l + r =: n</code>	1	<code>=: </code>	<code> nr</code>
<code>l + r =: n</code>	2	<code> =:</code>	<code> ln</code>
<code>l + r =: n</code>	3	<code> =: </code>	<code> lnr</code>
<code>l + r =: > n</code>	5	<code>=: ></code>	<code>n r</code>
<code>l + r =:> n</code>	6	<code> =:></code>	<code>l n</code>
<code>l + r =: > n</code>	7	<code> =: ></code>	<code>l nr</code>
<code>l + r =: >> n</code>	11	<code> =: >></code>	<code>ln r</code>

The default value is 0, and can be left out. That signifies a ‘normal’ ligature where the ligature replaces both original glyphs. In this table the `|` indicates the final insertion point.

The third table has the MathConstants as the camel case name suggests. These are not discussed here. The fonts table relates to virtual fonts that are discussed later.

7.5 Helpers

Without argument this function returns the current font identifier and when an identifier is passed that one is made current.

```
function font.current ( <t:nil> | <t:integer> )
  -- no return value
end
```

This returns the maximum font identifier in use:

```
function font.max ( )
  return <t:integer> -- identifier
end
```

This one defines a font but needs an identifier, for instance reserved by `font.nextid`. The table is the same as with `font.define`.

```
function font.setfont ( <t:integer> identifier, <t:table> data )
  -- no return value
end
```

The next function can be used to add characters to a font. The table is the same as the table used when defining the characters in a font. The identifier must be known.

```
function font.addcharacters ( <t:integer> identifier, <t:table> characters )
    -- no return value
end
```

When protrusion or expansion data is needed for a character in a font and the relevant values are not yet known, a callback can be triggered and the next function can then be used to assign these.

```
function font.addquality (
    <t:integer> identifier,
    <t:table> characters
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The table looks like this:

```
{
    [index] = {
        leftprotrusion = <t:integer>,
        rightprotrusion = <t:integer>,
        expansion      = <t:integer>,
        compression    = <t:integer>,
    },
    ...
}
```

Sometimes it can be handy to check what the next identifier will be. The optional boolean, when true, makes that the font is allocated.

```
function font.nextid ( <t:nil> | <t:boolean> )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end
```

This function does a lookup by name and returns the font identifier when it's known:

```
function font.id ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end
```

The value that gets returned or is assigned is always an integer because that is what these parameters are: scaled dimensions, percentages, factors.

```
function font.getfontdimen (
    <t:integer> identifier,
    <t:integer> parameter
)
    return <t:integer> -- value
end
```

```
function font.setfontdimen (
```

```

    <t:integer> identifier,
    <t:integer> parameter,
    <t:integer> value
)
-- no return value
end

```

This one returns the properties that relate to a `\fontspecdef`:

```

function font.getfontspec ( <t:string> name )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- identifier
        <t:integer>, -- scale
        <t:integer>, -- xscale
        <t:integer>, -- yscale
        <t:integer>, -- slant
        <t:integer>  -- weight
end

```

Math characters are not really defined along with a font but their family can bind them to one. However, in ConT_EXt we have them decoupled and families are assigned fonts when the need is there.

```

function font.getmathspec ( )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- class
        <t:integer>, -- family
        <t:integer>  -- character
end

```

Internally a math font parameter has a number. This function returns that number plus a boolean indicating if we have an variable that is not officially in OpenType math but an addition to the Lua-MetaT_EX engine.

```

function font.getmathindex ( <t:string> | <t:number> )
    return
        <t:number>  -- index
        <t:boolean> -- engine
end

```

These two don't operate on a font but multiply the given value by the `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale` respectively `\glyphyscale`.

```

function font.xscaled ( <t:number> value)
    return <t:number> -- scaled value
end

function font.yscaled ( <t:number> value)
    return <t:number> -- scaled value
end

```

Like in other places the engine can report what fields we have, which is handy when we want to check manuals like this one.

```

function font.getparameterfields ( ) return <t:table> end
function font.getfontfields      ( ) return <t:table> end
function font.gettextcharacterfields ( ) return <t:table> end
function font.getmathcharacterfields ( ) return <t:table> end

```

7.6 Virtual fonts

Virtual fonts have been introduced in $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ because they permit combining fonts and constructing for instance accented characters from several glyphs and they are what one nowadays tags as a ‘cool’ feature, especially because in $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ we can use this mechanism runtime. The nice thing is that because all that $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ needs is dimensions, the hard work is delegated to the backend which means that the front end can be agnostic when it comes to virtual fonts.

So, in the beginning they were mostly used for providing a direct mapping from for instance accented characters onto a glyph but we use it for a lot of other situations, like math. But keep in mind that because we basically define the backend ourselves and because we also control everything fonts, we can go way further in $\text{ConT}_{\text{E}}\text{Xt}$ than in other engines and macro packages.

A character is virtual when it has a commands array as part of the data. A virtual character can itself point to virtual characters but be careful with nesting as you can create loops and overflow the stack (which often indicates an error anyway).

At the font level there can be an (indexed) fonts table. The values are one- or two-key hashes themselves, each entry indicating one of the base fonts in a virtual font. In case your font is referring to itself in for instance a virtual font, you can use the slot command with a zero font reference, which indicates that the font itself is used. So, a table looks like this:

```

fonts = {
  { name = "ptmr8a", size = 655360 }, -- referenced as font 1
  { name = "psyr", size = 600000 }, -- referenced as font 2
  { id = 38 } -- referenced as font 3
}

```

The first referenced font (at index 1) in this virtual font is ptmr8a loaded at 10pt, and the second is psyr loaded at a little over 9pt. The third one is a previously defined font that is known to $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ as font id 38. The array index numbers are used by the character command definitions that are part of each character.

However, the only place in $\text{ConT}_{\text{E}}\text{Xt}$ where we really need this fonts table is in some math fonts where we, also as illustration and as recognition of past work, assemble a Unicode math font from sort of obsolete Type1 fonts. In most cases the virtual glyphs use glyphs that are also in the font. In that case we can use id zero which is resolved to the font identifiers of the font itself.

The commands array is a hash where each item is another small array, with the first entry representing a command and the extra items being the parameters to that command. The frontend is only interested in the dimensions, ligatures and kerns of a font, which is the reason why the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ engine didn't have to be extended when virtual fonts showed up: dealing with it is up to the driver that comes after the backend. The first block in the next table is what the standard mentions. These two engines also support the special and $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ brings the pdf and pdfmode commands but in $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ we dropped all three and also $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$'s image.

But ... in LuaMetaTeX there is no backend built in but we might assume that the one provided deals with the standard entries. However, a provided backend can provide more and that is indeed what happens in ConTeXt. Because we no longer have compacting (of passed tables) and unpacking (when embedding) of these tables going on we stay in the Lua domain. None of the virtual specification is ever seen in the engine.

command	arguments	type	description
font	1	number	select a new font from the local fonts table
char	1	number	typeset this character number from the current font, and move right by the character's width
slot	2	2 numbers	a shortcut for the combination of a font and char command
push	0		save current position
pop	0		pop position
rule	2	2 numbers	output a rule $ht * wd$, and move right.
down	1	number	move down on the page
right	1	number	move right on the page
nop	0		do nothing
node	1	node	output this node (list), and move right by the width of this list
lua	1	string, function	execute a Lua script when the glyph is embedded; in case of a function it gets the font id and character code passed
comment	any	any	the arguments of this command are ignored

The default value for font is always 1 at the start of the commands array. Therefore, if the virtual font is essentially only a re-encoding, then you do usually not have created an explicit ‘font’ command in the array. Rules inside of commands arrays are built up using only two dimensions: they do not have depth. For correct vertical placement, an extra down command may be needed. Regardless of the amount of movement you create within the commands, the output pointer will always move by exactly the width that was given in the width key of the character hash. Any movements that take place inside the commands array are ignored on the upper level.

In addition to the above in ConTeXt we have use, left, up, offset, stay, compose, frame, line, inspect, trace and a plugin feature so that we can add more commands (which we do). These not only provide more advanced trickery but also make for smaller command tables. For some features we don't even need virtual magic but have additional parameters in the glyph tables. But all that is not part of the engine and its specification so it will be discussed elsewhere.

7.7 Callbacks

The traditional TeX ligature and kerning routines are build into the engine but anything more (like OpenType rendering) has to be implemented in Lua. The same is true for math: the engine has some expectations, for instance with respect to script and script script sizes, larger sizes and extensibles and needs to know at least dimensions and slots in fonts in order to assemble the math. Actually there are additional scaling factors in play here because math has its own scaling demands.

7.8 Protrusion

This is more an implementation note. Compared to pdfTeX and LuaTeX the protrusion detection mechanism is enhanced a bit to enable a bit more complex situations. When protrusion characters are identified some nodes are skipped:

- zero glue
- penalties
- empty discretionaries
- normal zero kerns
- rules with zero dimensions
- math nodes with a surround of zero
- dir nodes
- empty horizontal lists
- local par nodes
- inserts, marks and adjusts
- boundaries
- whatsits

Because this can not be enough, you can also use a protrusion boundary node to make the next node being ignored. When the value is 1 or 3, the next node will be ignored in the test when locating a left boundary condition. When the value is 2 or 3, the previous node will be ignored when locating a right boundary condition (the search goes from right to left). This permits protrusion combined with for instance content moved into the margin:

```
\protrusionboundary1\llap{!\quad}«Who needs protrusion?»
```

7.9 Spaces

There are officially no spaces in \TeX , there is only glue. This is not problem, on the contrary, it is what makes the rendering so good. In \ConTeXt the backend can convert glue to spaces in a font but that's not an engine feature.

The `\nospaces` primitive can be used to overrule the usual `\spaceskip` related heuristics when a space character is seen in a text flow. The value 1 triggers no injection while 2 results in injection of a zero skip. In figure 7.1 we see the results for four characters separated by a space.

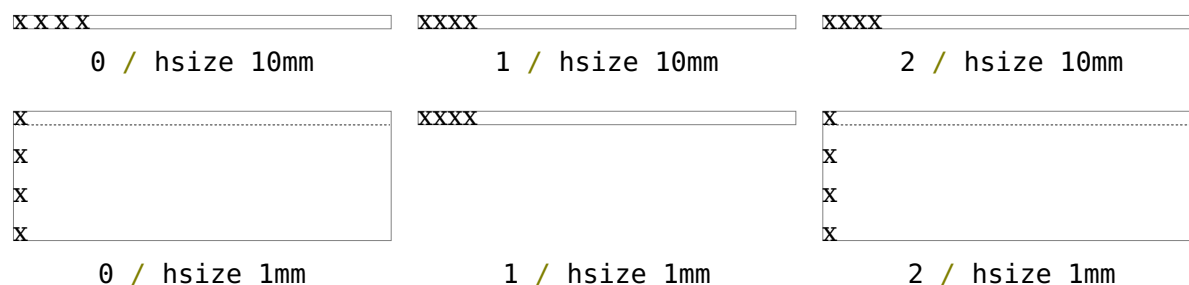


Figure 7.1 The `nospaces` options.

You can, in \ConTeXt , see where spaces are added by enabling a visualizer: `\showmakeup[space]` does the trick, as in this paragraph. We see regular spaces as well as spaces that have a space factor applied (after punctuation).

languages

8 Languages

8.1 Introduction

Although languages play an important role in a macro package that doesn't mean that $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ is busy with it. The engine only needs to know how to hyphenate and for that a number that identifies what patterns to use is sufficient. All the action happens in the hyphenator: what characters make words, how many characters are kept at the left and right, which symbols end up at the end or beginning of a line, what input combine into (normally) dashes, how do we penalize a hyphenation point, etc.

Where in regular $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ we have special nodes that signal a language switch, and some shared variables that determine mentioned details, in $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ every glyph carries the language information, including those minima. In $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ we put even more in a glyph by using a bitset of options. We also have some more character code bound properties. The $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ engines store the current state in the glyph and discretionary nodes.

You can find more practical information about languages in $\text{ConT}_{\text{E}}\text{Xt}$ manuals than in this document because users seldom go low level. Before we discuss these low level aspect anyway, we discuss how we came thus far; for that we borrow from the $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ manuals.

8.2 Evolution

$\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$'s internal handling of the characters and glyphs that eventually become typeset is quite different from the way $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}82$ handles those same objects. The easiest way to explain the difference is to focus on unrestricted horizontal mode (i.e. paragraphs) and hyphenation first. Later on, it will be easy to deal with the differences that occur in horizontal and math modes.

In $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}82$, the characters you type are converted into char node records when they are encountered by the main control loop. $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ attaches and processes the font information while creating those records, so that the resulting 'horizontal list' contains the final forms of ligatures and implicit kerning. This packaging is needed because we may want to get the effective width of for instance a horizontal box. No hyphenation is needed in that case.

When it becomes necessary to hyphenate words in a paragraph, $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ converts (one word at time) the char node records into a string by replacing ligatures with their components and ignoring the kerning. Then it runs the hyphenation algorithm on this string, and converts the hyphenated result back into a 'horizontal list' that is consecutively spliced back into the paragraph stream. Keep in mind that the paragraph may contain unboxed horizontal material, which then already contains ligatures and kerns and the words therein are part of the hyphenation process.

Lets stress this: before $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ ligaturing and kerning took place during input, and hyphenation, combined with temporarily juggling ligatures and kerns, took place while building the paragraph. It's a selective process where hyphenation only takes place where it is expected to influence the line breaks.

Those char node records are somewhat misnamed, as they are glyph positions in specific fonts, and therefore not really 'characters' in the linguistic sense. In $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}82$ there is no language information inside the char node records at all. Instead, language information is passed along using language whatsit nodes inside the horizontal list.

In Lua \TeX and thereby LuaMeta \TeX the situation is quite different. The characters you type are always converted into glyph node records with a special subtype to identify them as being intended as linguistic characters. Lua \TeX stores the needed language information in those records, but does not do any font-related processing at the time of node creation. It only stores the index of the current font and a reference to a character in that font.

When it becomes necessary to typeset a paragraph, Lua \TeX first inserts all hyphenation points right into the whole node list. Next, it processes all the font information in the whole list, creating ligatures and adjusting kerning, and finally it adjusts all the subtype identifiers so that the records are ‘glyph nodes’ from now on. Actually in LuaMeta \TeX the subtype is no longer used to store the state but that is not relevant here.

In LuaMeta \TeX we also have this separation but there is more control over when hyphenation is applied, what becomes en- and em-dashes, hoe penalties kick in, etc. There are some additional callbacks that can manipulate words as they are encountered and exceptions can be handled differently.

8.3 Characters, glyphs and discretionaries

\TeX 82 (including pdf \TeX) differentiates between char nodes and lig nodes. The former are simple items that contained nothing but a ‘character’ and a ‘font’ field, and they lived in the same memory as tokens did. The latter also contained a list of components, and a subtype indicating whether this ligature was the result of a word boundary, and it was stored in the same place as other nodes like boxes and kerns and glues.

In LuaMeta \TeX we no longer keep the list of components with the glyph node because we have to deal with more advanced scenarios in ‘node mode’, for instance in attaching vowels to stepwise constructed ligatures. Also, in OpenType ligatures are just a many to one mapping and the kind of ligatures that we see \TeX fonts in OpenType often are achieved by kerning substituted single glyphs.

In Lua \TeX , these two types are merged into one, somewhat larger structure called a glyph node. Besides having the old character, font, and component fields there are a few more, like ‘attr’, these nodes also contain a subtype, that codes four main types and two additional ghost types. For ligatures, multiple bits can be set at the same time (in case of a single-glyph word).

- character, for characters to be hyphenated: the lowest bit (bit 0) is set to 1.
- glyph, for specific font glyphs: the lowest bit (bit 0) is not set.
- ligature, for constructed ligatures bit 1 is set.

But while \TeX 86 has this construct, deconstruct and reconstruct model in Lua \TeX we don't do that so in the end this made little sense so we dropped it. We still have a (small) protection field that fulfills the job of signaling that we're done with processing glyphs.

We now arrive at languages. The glyph nodes also contain language data, split into four items that were current when the node was created: the `\setlanguage` (15 bits), `\lefthyphenmin` (8 bits), `\righthyphenmin` (8 bits), and `\uchyph` (1 bit). In LuaMeta \TeX we just use small dedicated fields instead.

Incidentally, Lua \TeX allows 16383 separate languages, and words can be 256 characters long. The language is stored with each character. You can set `\firstvalidlanguage` to for instance 1 and make thereby language 0 an ignored hyphenation language. In LuaMeta \TeX we have a more reasonable

allowance because we don't expect that many languages in one document, but we do permits longer words.

The new primitive `\hyphenationmin` can be used to signal the minimal length of a word. This value is stored with the (current) language.

Because the `\uchyph` value is saved in the actual nodes, its handling is subtly different from T_EX82: changes to `\uchyph` become effective immediately, not at the end of the current partial paragraph. But this is true for more properties: for instance we store a penalty in a discretionary node and freeze glue in spaces, of course all at the price of using more memory.

Typeset boxes now always have their language information embedded in the nodes themselves, so there is no longer a possible dependency on the surrounding language settings. In T_EX82, a mid-paragraph statement like `\unhbox0` would process the box using the current paragraph language unless there was a `\setlanguage` issued inside the box. In LuaT_EX, all language variables are already frozen. Also, every list is hyphenated so that the font handler can do it's job taking that into account.

In traditional T_EX the process of hyphenation is driven by `\lccodes`. In LuaT_EX we made this dependency less strong. There are several strategies possible. When you do nothing, the currently used `\lccodes` are used, when loading patterns, setting exceptions or hyphenating a list.

When you set `\savingshyphcodes` to a value greater than zero the current set of `\lccodes` will be saved with the language. In that case changing a `\lccode` afterwards has no effect. However, you can adapt the set with:

```
\hjcode`a=`a
```

This change is global which makes sense if you keep in mind that the moment that hyphenation happens is (normally) when the paragraph or a horizontal box is constructed. When `\savingshyphcodes` was zero when the language got initialized you start out with nothing, otherwise you already have a set.

When a `\hjcode` is greater than 0 but less than 32 the value indicates the to be used length. In the following example we map a character (x) onto another one in the patterns and tell the engine that æ counts as two characters. Because traditionally zero itself is reserved for inhibiting hyphenation, a value of 32 counts as zero.

Here are some examples (we assume that French patterns are used):

	foobar	foo-bar
<code>\hjcode`x=`o</code>	fxxbar	fxx-bar
<code>\lefthyphenmin 3</code>	ædipus	ædi-pus
<code>\lefthyphenmin 4</code>	ædipus	ædipus
<code>\hjcode`æ=2</code>	ædipus	ædi-pus
<code>\hjcode`i=32 \hjcode`d=32</code>	ædipus	ædipus

Carrying all this information with each glyph would give too much overhead and also make the process of setting up these codes more complex. A solution with `\hjcode` sets was considered but rejected because in practice the current approach is sufficient and it would not be compatible anyway.

Beware: the values are always saved in the format, independent of the setting of `\savingshyphcodes` at the moment the format is dumped.

We also have `\hccode` or hyphen code. A character can be set to non zero to indicate that it should be regarded as value visible hyphenation point. These examples show how that works (it is the second bit in `\hyphenationmode` that does the magic but we set them all here):

```
{\hsize 1mm \hccode"2014 \zerocount \hyphenationmode "0000000 xxx\emdash xxx \par}
{\hsize 1mm \hccode"2014 "2014\relax \hyphenationmode "0000000 xxx\emdash xxx \par}

{\hsize 1mm \hccode"2014 \zerocount \hyphenationmode "FFFFFFF xxx\emdash xxx \par}
{\hsize 1mm \hccode"2014 "2014\relax \hyphenationmode "FFFFFFF xxx\emdash xxx \par}

{\hyphenationmode "0000000 xxx--xxx---xxx \par}
{\hyphenationmode "FFFFFFF xxx--xxx---xxx \par}
```

Here we assign the code point because who knows what future extensions will bring. As with the other codes you can also set them from Lua. The feature is experimental and might evolve when ConT_EXt users come up with reasonable demands.

```
xxx—xxx
xxx—
xxx
xxx—xxx
xxx—
xxx
xxx--xxx---xxx
xxx-xxx—xxx
```

A boundary node normally would mark the end of a word which interferes with for instance discretionary injection. For this you can use the `\wordboundary` as a trigger. Here are a few examples of usage:

```
discrete--discrete
```

```
dis-
crete—
dis-
crete
```

```
discrete\discretionary{}{}{--}discrete
```

```
discrete
discrete
```

```
discrete\wordboundary\discretionary{}{}{---}discrete
```

```
dis-
crete
discrete
```

```
discrete\wordboundary\discretionary{}{}{---}\wordboundary discrete
```

```
dis-
crete
dis-
crete
```


discrete\wordboundary\discretionary{--}{\wordboundary} discrete

dis-
crete—
dis-
crete

We only accept an explicit hyphen when there is a preceding glyph and we skip a sequence of explicit hyphens since that normally indicates a -- or --- ligature in which case we can in a worse case usage get bad node lists later on due to messed up ligature building as these dashes are ligatures in base fonts. This is a side effect of separating the hyphenation, ligaturing and kerning steps.

The start and end of a sequence of characters is signalled by a glue, penalty, kern or boundary node. But by default also a hlist, vlist, rule, dir, whatsit, insert, and adjust node indicate a start or end. You can omit the last set from the test by setting flags in \hyphenationmode:

0x000001	normal	0x000400	permitglue
0x000002	automatic	0x000800	permitall
0x000004	explicit	0x001000	permitmathreplace
0x000008	syllable	0x002000	forcecheck
0x000010	uppercase	0x004000	lazyligatures
0x000020	compound	0x008000	forcehandler
0x000040	strictstart	0x010000	feedbackcompound
0x000080	strictend	0x020000	ignorebounds
0x000100	automaticpenalty	0x040000	collapse
0x000200	explicitpenalty		

The word start is determined as follows:

node	behaviour
boundary	yes when wordboundary
hlist	when the start bit is set
vlist	when the start bit is set
rule	when the start bit is set
dir	when the start bit is set
whatsit	when the start bit is set
glue	yes
math	skipped
glyph	exhyphenchar (one only) : yes (so no - —)
otherwise	yes

The word end is determined as follows:

node	behaviour
boundary	yes
glyph	yes when different language
glue	yes
penalty	yes
kern	yes when not italic (for some historic reason)
hlist	when the end bit is set

vlist	when the end bit is set
rule	when the end bit is set
dir	when the end bit is set
whatsit	when the end bit is set
ins	when the end bit is set
adjust	when the end bit is set

Figures 8.1 upto 8.5 show some examples. In all cases we set the min values to 1 and make sure that the words hyphenate at each character.

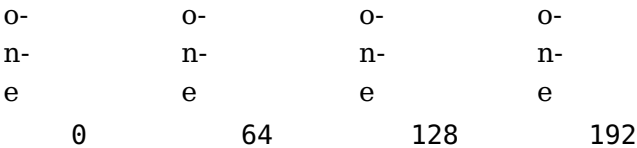


Figure 8.1 one

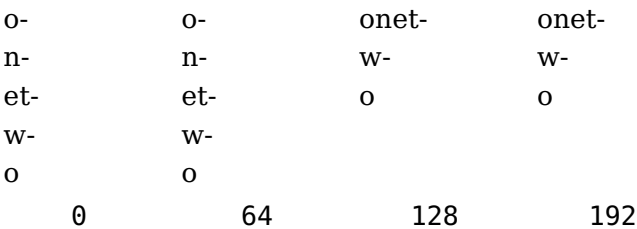


Figure 8.2 one\null two

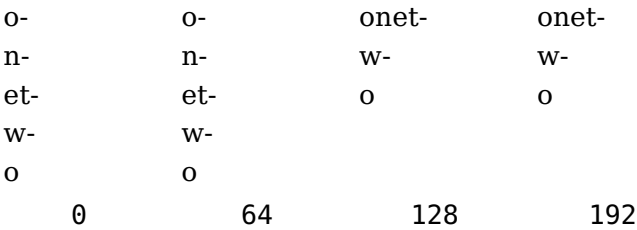


Figure 8.3 \null one\null two

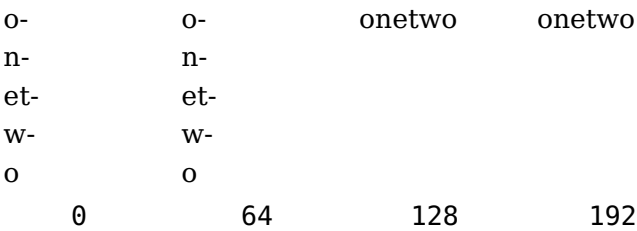


Figure 8.4 one\null two\null

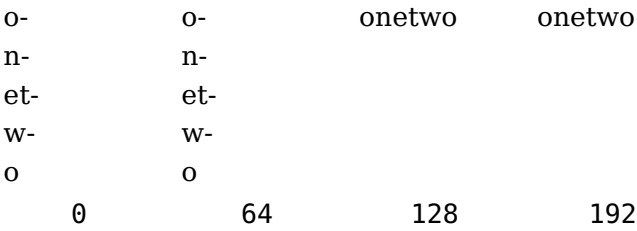


Figure 8.5 \null one\null two\null

In traditional \TeX ligature building and hyphenation are interwoven with the line break mechanism. In \LuaTeX these phases are isolated. As a consequence we deal differently with (a sequence of) explicit hyphens. We already have added some control over aspects of the hyphenation and yet another one concerns automatic hyphens (e.g. - characters in the input).

Hyphenation and discretionary injection is driven by a mode parameter which is a bitset made from the following values, some of which we saw in the previous examples.

```

1  honour (normal) \discretionary's
2  turn - into (automatic) discretionaries
4  turn \- into (explicit) discretionaries
8  hyphenate (syllable) according to language
10 hyphenate uppercase characters too (replaces \uchyph
20 permit break at an explicit hyphen (border cases)
40 traditional  $\text{\TeX}$  compatibility wrt the start of a word
80 traditional  $\text{\TeX}$  compatibility wrt the end of a word
100 use \automatichyphenpenalty
200 use \explicithyphenpenalty
400 turn glue in discretionaries into kerns
800 okay, let's be even more tolerant in discretionaries
1000 and again we're more permissive
4000 controls how successive explicit discretionaries are handled in base mode
2000 treat all discretionaries equal when breaking lines (in all three passes)
8000 kick in the handler (experiment)
10000 feedback compound snippets

```

Some of these options are still experimental, simply because not all aspects and side effects have been explored. You can find some experimental use cases in \ConTeXt .

There are also **\discretionaryoptions**. Some are set by the engine:

0x00000000	normalword	0x00000040	noitaliccorrection
0x00000001	preword	0x00000080	nozeroitaliccorrection
0x00000002	postword	0x00010000	userfirst
0x00000010	preferbreak	0x40000000	userlast
0x00000020	prefernobreak		

8.4 Controlling hyphenation

The **\hyphenationmin** parameter can be used to set the minimal word length, so setting it to a value of 5 means that only words of 6 characters and more will be hyphenated, of course within the constraints of the **\lefthyphenmin** and **\righthyphenmin** values (as stored in the glyph node). This primitive accepts a number and stores the value with the language.

The **\noboundary** command is used to inject a whatsit node but now injects a normal node with type boundary and subtype 0. In addition you can say:

```
x\boundary 123\relax y
```

This has the same effect but the subtype is now 1 and the value 123 is stored. The traditional ligature builder still sees this as a cancel boundary directive but at the Lua end you can implement different behaviour. The added benefit of passing this value is a side effect of the generalization. The subtypes 2 and 3 are used to control protrusion and word boundaries in hyphenation and have related primitives.

8.5 The main control loop

In LuaT_EX's main loop, almost all input characters that are to be typeset are converted into glyph node records with subtype 'character', but there are a few exceptions.

1. The `\accent` primitive creates nodes with subtype 'glyph' instead of 'character': one for the actual accent and one for the accented. The primary reason for this is that `\accent` in T_EX82 is explicitly dependent on the current font encoding, so it would not make much sense to attach a new meaning to the primitive's name, as that would invalidate many old documents and macro packages. A secondary reason is that in T_EX82, `\accent` prohibits hyphenation of the current word. Since in LuaT_EX hyphenation only takes place on 'character' nodes, it is possible to achieve the same effect. Of course, modern Unicode aware macro packages will not use the `\accent` primitive at all but try to map directly on composed characters.

This change of meaning did happen with `\char`, that now generates 'glyph' nodes with a character subtype. In traditional T_EX there was a strong relationship between the 8-bit input encoding, hyphenation and glyphs taken from a font. In LuaT_EX we have utf input, and in most cases this maps directly to a character in a font, apart from glyph replacement in the font engine. If you want to access arbitrary glyphs in a font directly you can always use Lua to do so, because fonts are available as Lua table.

2. All the results of processing in math mode eventually become nodes with 'glyph' subtypes. In fact, the result of processing math is just a regular list of glyphs, kerns, glue, penalties, boxes etc.
3. Automatic discretionaries are handled differently. T_EX82 inserts an empty discretionary after sensing an input character that matches the `\hyphenchar` in the current font. This test is wrong in our opinion: whether or not hyphenation takes place should not depend on the current font, it is a language property.¹²

The `\defaultshyphenchar` parameter is used as fallback when defining a font where that one is not explicitly set.

In LuaT_EX, it works like this: if it senses a string of input characters that matches the value of the new integer parameter `\exhyphenchar`, it will insert an explicit discretionary after that series of nodes. Initially T_EX sets the `\exhyphenchar=\-`. Incidentally, this is a global parameter instead of a language-specific one because it may be useful to change the value depending on the document structure instead of the text language.

The insertion of discretionaries after a sequence of explicit hyphens happens at the same time as the other hyphenation processing, *not* inside the main control loop.

The only use LuaT_EX has for `\hyphenchar` is at the check whether a word should be considered for hyphenation at all. If the `\hyphenchar` of the font attached to the first character node in a word

¹² When T_EX showed up we didn't have Unicode yet and being limited to eight bits meant that one sometimes had to compromise between supporting character input, glyph rendering, hyphenation.

is negative, then hyphenation of that word is abandoned immediately. This behaviour is added for backward compatibility only, and the use of `\hyphenchar=-1` as a means of preventing hyphenation should not be used in new LuaTeX documents.

4. The `\setlanguage` command no longer creates whatsits. The meaning of `\setlanguage` is changed so that it is now an integer parameter like all others. That integer parameter is used in glyph node creation to add language information to the glyph nodes. In conjunction, the `\language` primitive is extended so that it always also updates the value of `\setlanguage`.
5. The `\noboundary` command (that prohibits word boundary processing where that would normally take place) now does create nodes. These nodes are needed because the exact place of the `\noboundary` command in the input stream has to be retained until after the ligature and font processing stages.
6. There is no longer a `main_loop` label in the code. Remember that TeX82 did quite a lot of processing while adding `char_nodes` to the horizontal list? For speed reasons, it handled that processing code outside of the ‘main control’ loop, and only the first character of any ‘word’ was handled by that ‘main control’ loop. In LuaTeX, there is no longer a need for that (all hard work is done later), and the (now very small) bits of character-handling code have been moved back inline. When `\tracingcommands` is on, this is visible because the full word is reported, instead of just the initial character.

Because we tend to make hard coded behavior configurable a few new primitives have been added:

`\automatichyphenpenalty`
`\explicitlyhyphenpenalty`

These relate to:

`\automaticdiscretionary` % -
`\explicitdiscretionary` % \-

The usage of these penalties is controlled by the `\hyphenationmode` flags 0x100 and 0x200 and when these are not set `\exhyphenpenalty` is used.

You can use the `\tracinghyphenation` variable to get a bit more information about what happens.

value	effect
1	report redundant pattern (happens by default in LuaTeX)
2	report words that reach the hyphenator and got treated
3	show the result of a hyphenated word (a node list)

8.6 Loading patterns and exceptions

Although we keep the traditional approach towards hyphenation (which is still superior) the implementation of the hyphenation algorithm in LuaTeX is quite different from the one in TeX82.

After expansion, the argument for `\patterns` has to be proper utf8 with individual patterns separated by spaces, no `\char` or `\chardef` commands are allowed. The current implementation is quite strict and will reject all non-Unicode characters. Likewise, the expanded argument for `\hyphenation` also has to be proper utf8, but here a bit of extra syntax is provided:

1. Three sets of arguments in curly braces (`{-}{-}{-}`) indicate a desired complex discretionary, with arguments as in `\discretionary`'s command in normal document input.
2. A `-` indicates a desired simple discretionary, cf. `\-` and `\discretionary{-}{-}{-}` in normal document input.
3. Internal command names are ignored. This rule is provided especially for `\discretionary`, but it also helps to deal with `\relax` commands that may sneak in.
4. An `=` indicates a (non-discretionary) hyphen in the document input.

The expanded argument is first converted back to a space-separated string while dropping the internal command names. This string is then converted into a dictionary by a routine that creates key-value pairs by converting the other listed items. It is important to note that the keys in an exception dictionary can always be generated from the values. Here are a few examples:

value	implied key (input)	effect
ta-ble	table	ta\ -ble (= ta\discretionary{-}{-}{-}ble)
ba{k-}{-}{c}ken	backen	ba\discretionary{k-}{-}{c}ken

The resultant patterns and exception dictionary will be stored under the language code that is the present value of `\language`.

In the last line of the table, you see there is no `\discretionary` command in the value: the command is optional in the \TeX -based input syntax. The underlying reason for that is that it is conceivable that a whole dictionary of words is stored as a plain text file and loaded into Lua \TeX using one of the functions in the Lua language library. This loading method is quite a bit faster than going through the \TeX language primitives, but some (most?) of that speed gain would be lost if it had to interpret command sequences while doing so.

It is possible to specify extra hyphenation points in compound words by using `{-}{-}{-}` for the explicit hyphen character (replace `-` by the actual explicit hyphen character if needed). For example, this matches the word ‘multi-word-boundaries’ and allows an extra break inbetween ‘boun’ and ‘daries’:

```
\hyphenation{multi{-}{-}{-}word{-}{-}{-}boun-daries}
```

The motivation behind the ε - \TeX extension `\savingsphcodes` was that hyphenation heavily depended on font encodings. This is no longer true in Lua \TeX , and the corresponding primitive is basically ignored. Because we now have `\hjcode`, the case related codes can be used exclusively for `\uppercase` and `\lowercase`.

The three curly brace pair pattern in an exception can be somewhat unexpected so we will try to explain it by example. The pattern `foo{}{}{x}bar` pattern creates a lookup `fooxbar` and the pattern `foo{}{}{}bar` creates `foobar`. Then, when a hit happens there is a replacement text (x) or none. Because we introduced penalties in discretionary nodes, the exception syntax now also can take a penalty specification. The value between square brackets is a multiplier for `\exceptionpenalty`. Here we have set it to 10000 so effectively we get 30000 in the example.

$x\{a-\}\{-b\}\}\{x\{a-\}\{-b\}\}\{x\{a-\}\{-b\}\}\{x\{a-\}\{-b\}\}\{xx$			
10em	3em	0em	6em
123 xxxxxx 123	123 xxa- -bxa- -bxa- -bxx 123	123 xa- -bxa- -bxa- -bxa- -bxx 123	123 xxxxxx xxxxxx xxa- -bxxxx xxa- -bxxxx 123

$x\{a-\}\{-b\}\}\{x\{a-\}\{-b\}\}\{[3]x\{a-\}\{-b\}\}\{[1]x\{a-\}\{-b\}\}\{xx$			
10em	3em	0em	6em
123 xxxxxx 123	123 xa- -bxxxxa- -bxx 123	123 xa- -bxxxxa- -bxx 123	123 xxxxa- -bxx xxxxxx xxxxxx xa- -bxxxxxx 123

$z\{a-\}\{-b\}\{z\{a-\}\{-b\}\{z\{a-\}\{-b\}\{z\{a-\}\{-b\}\{z\{z$			
10em	3em	0em	6em
123 zzzzzz 123	123 zza- -ba- -bzz 123	123 za- -ba- -ba- -ba- -bz 123	123 zzzzzz zzzzzz zza- -bzz zzzzzz 123

$z\{a-\}\{-b\}\{z\{a-\}\{-b\}\{z\}[3]\{a-\}\{-b\}\{z\}[1]\{a-\}\{-b\}\{z\}z$			
10em	3em	0em	6em
123 zzzzzz 123	123 za- -bzza- -bz 123	123 za- -bzza- -bz 123	123 zzzza- -bz zzzzzz zzzzzz za- -bzzzz 123

8.7 Applying hyphenation

The internal structures Lua_T_EX uses for the insertion of discretionary hyphens in words is very different from the ones in T_EX82, and that means there are some noticeable differences in handling as well.

First and foremost, there is no ‘compressed trie’ involved in hyphenation. The algorithm still reads pattern files generated by Patgen, but Lua_T_EX uses a finite state hash to match the patterns against the word to be hyphenated. This algorithm is based on the ‘libhnj’ library used by OpenOffice, which in turn is inspired by T_EX.

There are a few differences between Lua \TeX and \TeX 82 that are a direct result of the implementation:

- Lua \TeX happily hyphenates the full Unicode character range.
- Pattern and exception dictionary size is limited by the available memory only, all allocations are done dynamically. The trie-related settings in `texmf.cnf` are ignored.
- Because there is no ‘trie preparation’ stage, language patterns never become frozen. This means that the primitive `\patterns` (and its Lua counterpart `language.patterns`) can be used at any time, not only in `ini \TeX` .
- Only the string representation of `\patterns` and `\hyphenation` is stored in the format file. At format load time, they are simply re-evaluated. It follows that there is no real reason to preload languages in the format file. In fact, it is usually not a good idea to do so. It is much smarter to load patterns no sooner than the first time they are actually needed.
- Lua \TeX uses the language-specific variables `\prehyphenchar` and `\posthyphenchar` in the creation of implicit discretionaries, instead of \TeX 82's `\hyphenchar`, and the values of the language-specific variables `\preexhyphenchar` and `\postexhyphenchar` for explicit discretionaries (instead of \TeX 82's empty discretionary).
- The value of the two counters related to hyphenation, `\hyphenpenalty` and `\exhyphenpenalty`, are now stored in the discretionary nodes. This permits a local overload for explicit `\discretionary` commands. The value current when the hyphenation pass is applied is used. When no callbacks are used this is compatible with traditional \TeX . When you apply the Lua `language.hyphenate` function the current values are used.
- The hyphenation exception dictionary is maintained as key-value hash, and that is also dynamic, so the `hyph_size` setting is not used either.

Because we store penalties in the disc node the `\discretionary` command has been extended to accept an optional penalty specification, so you can do the following:

```
\hsizelmm
1:foo{\hyphenpenalty 10000\discretionary{}{}{}}bar\par
2:foo\discretionary penalty 10000 {}{}{}}bar\par
3:foo\discretionary{}{}{}}bar\par
```

This results in:

```
1:foobar
2:foobar
3:foo
bar
```

Inserted characters and ligatures inherit their attributes from the nearest glyph node item (usually the preceding one, but the following one for the items inserted at the left-hand side of a word).

Word boundaries are no longer implied by font switches, but by language switches. One word can have two separate fonts and still be hyphenated correctly (but it can not have two different languages, the `\setlanguage` command forces a word boundary).

All languages start out with `\prehyphenchar=\-`, `\posthyphenchar=0`, `\preexhyphenchar=0` and `\postexhyphenchar=0`. When you assign the values of one of these four parameters, you are actually changing the settings for the current `\language`, this behaviour is compatible with `\patterns` and `\hyphenation`.

LuaTeX also hyphenates the first word in a paragraph. Words can be up to 256 characters long (up from 64 in TeX82). Longer words are ignored right now, but eventually either the limitation will be removed or perhaps it will become possible to silently ignore the excess characters (this is what happens in TeX82, but there the behaviour cannot be controlled).

If you are using the Lua function `language.hyphenate`, you should be aware that this function expects to receive a list of ‘character’ nodes. It will not operate properly in the presence of ‘glyph’, ‘ligature’, or ‘ghost’ nodes, nor does it know how to deal with kerning.

8.8 Applying ligatures and kerning

We discuss this base mode aspect here because in traditional TeX the process is interwoven with hyphenation. After all possible hyphenation points have been inserted in the list, LuaTeX will process the list to convert the ‘character’ nodes into ‘glyph’ and ‘ligature’ nodes. This is actually done in two stages: first all ligatures are processed, then all kerning information is applied to the result list. But those two stages are somewhat dependent on each other: If the used font makes it possible to do so, the ligaturing stage adds virtual ‘character’ nodes to the word boundaries in the list. While doing so, it removes and interprets `\noboundary` nodes. The kerning stage deletes those word boundary items after it is done with them, and it does the same for ‘ghost’ nodes. Finally, at the end of the kerning stage, all remaining ‘character’ nodes are converted to ‘glyph’ nodes.

This separation is worth mentioning because, if you overrule from Lua only one of the two callbacks related to font handling, then you have to make sure you perform the tasks normally done by LuaTeX itself in order to make sure that the other, non-overruled, routine continues to function properly.

Although we could improve the situation the reality is that in modern OpenType fonts ligatures can be constructed in many ways: by replacing a sequence of characters by one glyph, or by selectively replacing individual glyphs, or by kerning, or any combination of this. Add to that contextual analysis and it will be clear that we have to let Lua do that job instead. The generic font handler that we provide (which is part of ConTeXt) distinguishes between base mode (which essentially is what we describe here and which delegates the task to TeX) and node mode (which deals with more complex fonts).

In so called base mode, where TeX does the work, the ligature construction (normally) goes in small steps. An f followed by an f becomes an ff ligatures and that one followed by an i can become a ffi ligature. The situation can be complicated by hyphenation points between these characters. When there are several in a ligature collapsing happens. Flag 0x4000 in the `\hyphenationmode` variable determines if this happens lazy or greedy, i.e. the first hyphen wins or the last one does. In practice a ConTeXt user won't have to deal with this because most fonts are processed in node mode.

8.9 Breaking paragraphs into lines

This code is almost unchanged, but because of the above-mentioned changes with respect to discretionary and ligatures, line breaking will potentially be different from traditional TeX. The actual line breaking code is still based on the TeX82 algorithms, and there can be no discretionary inside of

discretionaries. But, as patterns evolve and font handling can influence discretionaries, you need to be aware of the fact that long term consistency is not an engine matter only.

But that situation is now fairly common in Lua_T_EX, due to the changes to the ligaturing mechanism. And also, the Lua_T_EX discretionary nodes are implemented slightly different from the T_EX82 nodes: the `no_break` text is now embedded inside the disc node, where previously these nodes kept their place in the horizontal list. In traditional T_EX the discretionary node contains a counter indicating how many nodes to skip, but in Lua_T_EX we store the pre, post and replace text in the discretionary node.

The combined effect of these two differences is that Lua_T_EX does not always use all of the potential breakpoints in a paragraph, especially when fonts with many ligatures are used. Of course kerning also complicates matters here. In practice that doesn't matter much because the par builder has enough solution space due to spaces; it's not like out of a sudden we wonder why paragraphs look worse.

The `\doublehyphendemerits` and `\finalhyphendemerits` parameters play a role in the par builder: they discourage a page break when there are two or more hyphens in a row and if there's one in the pre-last line. These are not bound to a language.

8.10 The language library

This library provides the interface to the internal structure representing a language, and the associated functions.

```
function language.new ( <t:nil> | <t:integer> identifier )
    return <t:userdata> -- language
end
```

This function creates a new userdata object. An object of type `<language>` is the first argument to most of the other functions in the language library. These functions can also be used as if they were object methods, using the colon syntax. Without an argument, the next available internal id number will be assigned to this object. With argument, an object will be created that links to the internal language with that id number. The number returned is the internal `\language` id number this object refers to.

```
function language.id ( <t:userdata> language )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end
```

You can load exceptions with:

```
function language.hyphenation( <t:userdata> language, <t:string> list)
    -- no return value
end
```

When no string is given (the first example) a string with all exceptions is returned.

```
function language.hyphenation ( <t:userdata> language )
    return <t:string> list
end
```

This either returns the current hyphenation exceptions for this language, or adds new ones. The syntax of the string is explained in section 8.6.

This call clears the exception dictionary (string) for this language:

```
function language.clearhyphenation( <t:userdata> language )
  --- no return value
end
```

This function creates a hyphenation key from the supplied hyphenation value. The syntax of the argument string is explained in section 8.6. The function is useful if you want to do something else based on the words in a dictionary file, like spell-checking.

```
function language.clean(<t:userdata> language, <t:string> str)
  return <t:string> cln
end
```

```
function language.clean(<t:string> str)
  return <t:string> cln
end
```

This adds additional patterns for this language object, or returns the current set. The syntax of this string is explained in section 8.6.

```
function language.patterns( <t:userdata> language, <string> list )
  -- no return value
end
```

The registered list can be fetched with:

```
function language.patterns( <t:userdata> language )
  return <t:string> -- list
end
```

This can be used to clear the pattern dictionary for a language.

```
function language.clearpatterns ( <t:userdata> language )
  -- no return value
end
```

This function sets (or gets) the value of the T_EX parameter `\hyphenationmin`.

```
function language.hyphenationmin ( <t:userdata> language, <t:number> n )
  -- no return value
end
```

```
function language.hyphenationmin ( <t:userdata> language )
  return <t:integer> n
end
```

These two are used to get or set the ‘pre-break’ and ‘post-break’ hyphen characters for implicit hyphenation in this language. The initial values are decimal 45 (hyphen) and decimal 0 (indicating emptiness).

```

function language.prehyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language, <t:integer> n) end
function language.posthyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language, <t:integer> n) end

function language.prehyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language) return <t:integer> n end
function language.posthyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language) return <t:integer> n end

```

These gets or set the ‘pre-break’ and ‘post-break’ hyphen characters for explicit hyphenation in this language. Both are initially decimal 0 (indicating emptiness).

```

function language.preexhyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language, <t:integer> n) end
function language.postexhyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language, <t:integer> n) end

function language.preexhyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language) return <t:integer> n end
function language.postexhyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language) return <t:integer> n end

```

The next call inserts hyphenation points (discretionary nodes) in a node list. If tail is given as argument, processing stops on that node. Currently, success is always true if head (and optionally tail) are proper nodes, regardless of possible other errors.

```

function language.hyphenate( <t:node> head, <t:node> tail)
    return <t:boolean> success
end

```

Hyphenation works only on ‘characters’, a special subtype of all the glyph nodes with the node subtype having the value 1. Glyph modes with different subtypes are not processed. See section 8.3 for more details.

The following two commands can be used to set or query a **\hjcode**:

```

function language.sethjcode (
    <t:userdata> language,
    <t:number>    character,
    <t:number>    usedchar
)
    -- no return value
end

function language.gethjcode (
    <t:userdata> language,
    <t:number>    character
)
    return <t:number> -- usedchar
end

```

There are similar function for **\hccode**:

```

function language.sethccode (
    <t:userdata> language,
    <t:number>    character,
    <t:number>    usedchar
)
    -- no return value
end

```

```
function language.gethccode (
  <t:userdata> language,
  <t:number>    character
)
  return <t:number> -- usedchar
end
```

8.11 Math

For the record we mention that in math you can also have discretionaries:

```
$ 2x \mathdiscretionary{+}{+}{+} 1 = 3y $
```

these actually do relate to languages but are not stored in the language data but have to be handled by the macro package. It will be clear that there is a bit involved because we have spacing and penalties driven by math classes.

8.12 Tracing

There are several trackers in ConT_EXt that can show where hyphenation was considered and where it got applied, but this is really macro package dependent. There is also a built in tracing command: `\tracinghyphenation`. When you say:

```
\tracinghyphenation2
\tracingonline      2
```

You get something like this:

```
1:3: [language: not hyphenated There]
1:3: [language: hyphenated several at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated trackers at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: not hyphenated where]
1:3: [language: hyphenated hyphenation at 2 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated considered at 2 positions]
1:3: [language: not hyphenated where]
1:3: [language: hyphenated applied at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated really at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: not hyphenated macro]
1:3: [language: hyphenated package at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated dependent at 2 positions]
1:3: [language: not hyphenated There]
1:3: [language: not hyphenated built]
1:3: [language: hyphenated tracing at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated command at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated tracinghyphenation at 3 positions]
```

Higher values give more details, like the pre, post and replace lists so that output is rather noisy. Contrary to `\type {\tracinghyphenation}` is verbatim we do permit it `\type {\tracinghyphenation}` to be hyphenated.

renders as:

Higher values give more details, like the pre, post and replace lists so that output is rather noisy. Contrary to `\tracinghyphenation` is verbatim we do permit it `\tracinghyphenation` to be hyphenated.

and traces as:

```
1:3: [language: hyphenated renders at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: not hyphenated Higher]
1:4: [language: hyphenated values at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: hyphenated details at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: hyphenated replace at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: not hyphenated lists]
1:4: [language: hyphenated output at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: not hyphenated rather]
1:4: [language: not hyphenated noisy]
1:4: [language: hyphenated Contrary at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: hyphenated verbatim at 2 positions]
1:4: [language: hyphenated permit at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: hyphenated hyphenated at 2 positions]
1:3: [language: not hyphenated traces]
```

lua

9 Lua

9.1 Introduction

In this chapter aspects of the Lua interfaces will be discussed. The `lua` module described here is rather low level and probably not of much interest to the average user as its functions are meant to be used in higher level interfaces.

9.2 Initialization

9.2.1 A bare bone engine

When the `LuaMetaTeX` program launches it will not do much useful. You can compare it to computer hardware without (high level) operating system with a `TeX` kernel being the bios. It can interpret `TeX` code but for typesetting you need a reasonable setup. You also need to load fonts, and for output you need a backend, and both can be implemented in Lua. If you don't like that and want to get up and running immediately, you will be more happy with `LuaTeX`, `pdfTeX` or `XYTeX`, combined with your favorite macro package.

If you just want to play around you can install the `ConTeXt` distribution which (including manuals and some fonts) is tiny compared to a full `TeXLive` installation and can be run alongside it without problems. If there are issues you can go to the usual `ConTeXt` support platforms and seek help where you can find the people who made `LuaTeX` and `LuaMetaTeX`.

If you use the engine as `TeX` interpreter you need to set up a few characters. Of course one can wonder why this is the case, but let's consider this to be educational of nature as it right from the start forces one to wonder what category codes are.

```
\catcode`\{=1 \catcode`\}=2 \catcode`\#=6
```

After that you can start defining macros. Contrary to `LuaTeX` the `LuaMetaTeX` engine initializes all the primitives but it will quit when the minimal set of callback is not initialized, like a logger. The lack of font loader and backend makes that it is not usable for loading an arbitrary macro package that doesn't set up these components. There is simply no argument for starting in in original `TeX` mode without ϵ -`TeX` extensions and such.

9.2.2 `LuaMetaTeX` as a Lua interpreter

Although `LuaMetaTeX` is primarily meant as a `TeX` engine, it can also serve as a stand alone Lua interpreter and there are two ways to make `LuaMetaTeX` behave like one. The first method uses the command line option `--luaonly` followed by a filename. The second is more automatic: if the only non-option argument (file) on the command line has the extension `lmt` or `lua`. The `luc` extension has been dropped because bytecode compiled files are not portable and one can always load them indirectly. The `lmt` suffix is more `ConTeXt` specific and makes it possible to have files for `LuaTeX` and `LuaMetaTeX` alongside.

In interpreter mode, the program will set Lua's `arg[0]` to the found script name, pushing preceding options in negative values and the rest of the command line in the positive values, just like the Lua

interpreter does. The program will exit immediately after executing the specified Lua script and is thereby effectively just a somewhat bulky stand alone Lua interpreter with a bunch of extra preloaded libraries. But we still wanted and managed to keep the binary small, somewhere around 3MB, which is okay for a script engine.

When no argument is given, LuaMetaTeX will look for a Lua file with the same name as the binary and run that one when present. This makes it possible to use the engine as a stub. For instance, in ConTeXt a symlink from `mtxrun` to type `luametatex` will run the `mtxrun.lmt` or `mtxrun.lua` script when present in the same path as the binary itself. As mentioned before first checking for (ConTeXt) `lmt` files permits different files for different engines in the same path.

9.2.3 Other commandline processing

When the LuaMetaTeX executable starts, it looks for the `--lua` command line option. If there is no such option, the command line is interpreted in a similar fashion as the other TeX engines. All options are accepted but only some are understood by LuaMetaTeX itself:

commandline argument	explanation
<code>--credits</code>	display credits and exit
<code>--fmt=FORMAT</code>	load the format file <code>FORMAT</code>
<code>--help</code>	display help and exit
<code>--ini</code>	be iniluatex, for dumping formats
<code>--jobname=STRING</code>	set the job name to <code>STRING</code>
<code>--lua=FILE</code>	load and execute a Lua initialization script
<code>--version</code>	display version and exit
<code>--permitloadlib</code>	permits loading of external libraries

There are less options than with LuaTeX, because one has to deal with them in Lua anyway. So for instance there are no options to enter a safer mode or control executing programs because this can easily be achieved with a startup Lua script, which can interpret whatever options got passed.

Next the initialization script is loaded and executed. From within the script, the entire command line is available in the Lua table `arg`, beginning with `arg[0]`, containing the name of the executable. As consequence warnings about unrecognized options are suppressed. Command line processing happens very early on. So early, in fact, that none of TeX's initializations have taken place yet. The Lua libraries that don't deal with TeX are initialized rather soon so you have these available.

LuaMetaTeX allows some of the command line options to be overridden by reading values from the `texconfig` table at the end of script execution (see the description of the `texconfig` table later on in this document for more details on which ones exactly). The value to use for `\jobname` is decided as follows:

- If `--jobname` is given on the command line, its argument will be the value for `\jobname`, without any changes. The argument will not be used for actual input so it need not exist. The `--jobname` switch only controls the `\jobname` setting.
- Otherwise, `\jobname` will be the name of the first file that is read from the file system, with any path components and the last extension (the part following the last `.`) stripped off.
- There is an exception to the previous point: if the command line goes into interactive mode (by starting with a command) and there are no files input via `\everyjob` either, then the `\jobname` is set to `texput` as a last resort.

So let's summarize this. The handling of what is called job name is a bit complex. There can be explicit names set on the command line but when not set they can be taken from the `texconfig` table.

```
startup filename    --lua      a Lua file
startup jobname     --jobname  a TEX tex      texconfig.jobname
startup dumpname    --fmt      a format file texconfig.formatname
```

These names are initialized according to `--luaonly` or the first filename seen in the list of options. Special treatment of `&` and `*` as well as interactive startup is gone but we still enter T_EX via an forced `\input` into the input buffer.¹³

When we are in T_EX mode at some point the engine needs a filename, for instance for opening a log file. At that moment the set jobname becomes the internal one and when it has not been set which internalized to jobname but when not set becomes `texput`. When you see a `texput.log` file someplace on your system it normally indicates a bad run.

The command line option `--permitloadlib` has to be given when you load external libraries via Lua. Although you could manage this via Lua itself in a startup script, the reason for having this as option is the wish for security (at some point that became a demand for LuaT_EX), so this might give an extra feeling of protection.

9.3 Lua behaviour

9.3.1 The Lua version

We currently use Lua version 5.5 and will follow developments of the language but normally with some delay. Therefore the user needs to keep an eye on (subtle) differences in successive versions of the language. Here are a few examples.

Luas `tostring` function (and `string.format`) may return values in scientific notation, thereby confusing the T_EX end of things when it is used as the right-hand side of an assignment to a `\dimen` or `\count`. The output of these serializers also depend on the Lua version, so in Lua 5.3 you can get different output than from 5.2. It is best not to depend the automatic cast from string to number and vise versa as this can change in future versions.

When Lua introduced bitwise operators, instead of providing functions in the `bit32` library, we wanted to use these. The solution in ConT_EXt was to implement a macro subsystem (kind of like what C does) and replace the function calls by native bitwise operations. However, because LuajitT_EX didn't evolve we dropped that and when we split the code base between MkIV and MkXL we went native bitwise. The `bit32` library is still there but implemented in Lua instead.

9.3.2 Locales

In stock Lua, many things depend on the current locale. In LuaMetaT_EX, we can't do that, because it makes documents non-portable. While LuaMetaT_EX is running it forces the following locale settings:

```
LC_CTYPE=C
LC_COLLATE=C
```

¹³ This might change at some point into an explicit loading triggered via Lua.

LC_NUMERIC=C

There is no way to change that as it would interfere badly with the often language specific conversions needed at the \TeX end.

9.4 Lua modules

Of course the regular Lua modules are present. In addition we provide the `lpeg` library by Roberto Ierusalimsky. This library is not Unicode-aware, but interprets strings on a byte-per-byte basis. This mainly means that `lpeg.S` cannot be used with utf8 characters that need more than one byte, and thus `lpeg.S` will look for one of those two bytes when matching, not the combination of the two. The same is true for `lpeg.R`, although the latter will display an error message if used with multi-byte characters. Therefore `lpeg.R('ä')` results in the message `bad argument #1 to 'R' (range must have two characters)`, since to `lpeg`, `ä` is two 'characters' (bytes), so `ä` totals three. In practice this is no real issue and with some care you can deal with Unicode just fine.

There are some more libraries present. For instance we embed `luasocket` but contrary to $\text{Lua}\TeX$ don't embed the related Lua code but some patched and extended variant. The `luafilesystem` module has been replaced by a more efficient one that also deals with the MS Windows file and environment properties better (Unicode support in MS Windows dates from before utf8 became dominant so we need to deal with wide Unicode16). We don't have a Unicode library because we always did conversions in Lua, but there are some helpers in the `string` library, which makes sense because Lua itself is now also becoming Unicode aware.

There are more extensive math libraries and there are libraries that deal with encryption and compression. There are also some optional libraries that we do interface but that are loaded on demand. The interfaces are as minimal as can be because we so much in Lua, which also means that one can tune behavior to usage better.

9.5 Files

9.5.1 File syntax

$\text{LuaMeta}\TeX$ will accept a braced argument as a file name:

```
\input {plain}
\openin 0 {plain}
```

This allows for embedded spaces, without the need for double quotes. Macro expansion takes place inside the argument. Keep in mind that as side effect of delegating io to Lua the `\openin` primitive is not provided by the engine and has to be implemented by the macro package. This also means that the limit on the number of open files is not enforced by the engine.

9.5.2 Writing to file

Writing to a file in \TeX has two forms: delayed and immediate. Delayed writing means that the to be written text is anchored in the node list and flushed by the backend. As all io is delegated to Lua, this also means that it has to deal with distinction. In $\text{Lua}\TeX$ the number of open files was already

bumped to 127, but in LuaMetaTeX it depends on the macro package. The special meaning of channel 18 was already dropped in LuaTeX because we have `os.execute`.

9.6 Testing

For development reasons you can influence the used startup date and time. By setting the `start_time` variable in the `texconfig` table; as with other variables we use the internal name there. When Universal Time is needed, set the entry `use_utc_time` in the `texconfig` table.

In ConTeXt we provide the command line argument `--nodates` that does a bit more than disabling dates; it avoids time dependent information in the output file for instance.

9.7 Helpers

9.7.1 Basics

The `lua` library is relatively small and only provides a few functions. There are many more helpers but these are organized in specific modules for file i/o, handling strings, and manipulating table.

The Lua interpreter is stack bases and when you put a lot of values on the stack it can overflow. However, if that is the case you're probably doing something wrong. The next function returns the current top and is mainly there for development reasons.

```
function lua.getstacktop ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The next example:

```
\startluacode
context(lua.getstacktop())
context(lua.getstacktop(1,2,3))
context(lua.getstacktop(1,2,3,4,5,6))
\stopluacode
```

typesets: 036, so we're fine.

```
\startluacode
context(lua.getstacktop(unpack(token.getprimitives()))))
\stopluacode
```

But even this one is okay: 1134, because some thousand plus entries is not bothering the engine. Of course it makes little sense because now one has to loop over the arguments.

The engines exit code can be set with:

```
function lua.setexitcode ( <t:integer> )
    -- no return values
end
```

and queried with:

```
function lua.getexitcode ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The name of the startup file, in our case 'cont-en.lui' with the path part stripped, can be fetched with:

```
function lua.getstartupfile ( )
    return <t:string>
end
```

The current Lua version, as reported by the next helper, is Lua 5.5.

```
function lua.getversion ( )
    -- return todo
end
```

We provide high resolution timers so that we can more reliably do performance tests when needed and for that we have time related helpers. The `getruntime` function returns the time passed since startup. The `getcurrenttime` does what its name says. Just play with them to see how it pays off. The `getpreciseticks` returns a number that can be used later, after a similar call, to get a difference. The `getpreciseseconds` function gets such a tick (delta) as argument and returns the number of seconds. Ticks can differ per operating system, but one always creates a reference first and then use deltas to this reference.

9.7.2 Timers

```
function lua.getruntime ( )
    return <t:number> -- actually an integer
end

function lua.getcurrenttime ( )
    return <t:number> -- actually an integer
end

function lua.getpreciseticks ( )
    return <t:number> -- actually an integer
end

function lua.getpreciseseconds ( <t:number> ticks )
    return <t:number>
end
```

There is a little bit of duplication in the timers; here is what they report at this stage of the current run:

library	function	result
lua	getruntime	10.235420227050781
	getcurrenttime	1730479011.140274
	getpreciseticks	5485445146531.0
	getpreciseseconds	548544.5147444

os	clock	10.235
	time	1730479011
	gettimeofday	1730479011.140275

9.7.3 Bytecode registers

Lua registers can be used to store Lua code chunks. The accepted values for assignments are functions and nil. Likewise, the retrieved value is either a function or nil.

```
function lua.setbytecode (
    <t:integer> register,
    <t:function> loader,
    <t:boolean> strip
)
    -- no return values
end
```

An example of a valid call is `lua.setbytecode(5,loadfile("foo.lua"))`. The complement of this helper is:

```
function lua.getbytecode ( <t:integer> register )
    return <t:bytecode>
end
```

The codes are stored in the virtual table `lua.bytecode`. The contents of this array is stored inside the format file as actual Lua bytecode, so it can also be used to preload Lua code. The function must not contain any upvalues. The associated function calls are:

```
function lua.callbytecode ( <t:integer> register )
    -- <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

Note that the path of the file is stored in the Lua bytecode to be used in stack backtraces and therefore dumped into the format file if the above code is used in `iniTEX`. If it contains private information, i.e. the user name, this information is then contained in the format file as well. This should be kept in mind when preloading files into a bytecode register in `iniTEX`.

9.7.4 Tables

You can preallocate tables with these two helpers. The first one preallocates the given amount of hash entries and index entries. The `newindex` function create an indexed table with default values:

```
function lua.newtable ( <t:integer> hashsize, <t:integer> indexsize )
    return <t:table>
end

function lua.newindex ( <t:integer> size, <t:whatever> default )
    return <t:table>
end
```

9.7.5 Nibbles

Nibbles are half bytes so they run from 0x0 upto 0xF. When we needed this for math state fields, the helpers made it here.

```
function lua.setnibble ( <t:integer> original, <t:integer> position, <t:integer>
    value )
    return <t:integer>
end

function lua.getnibble ( <t:integer> original, <t:integer> position )
    return <t:integer>
end

function lua.addnibble ( <t:integer> original, <t:integer> position, <t:integer>
    value )
    return <t:integer>
end

function lua.subnibble ( <t:integer> original, <t:integer> position, <t:integer>
    value )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

Here a few examples (positions go from right to left and start at one):

```
lua.setnibble(0x0000,2,0x1)  0x0010
lua.setnibble(0x0000,4,0x7)  0x7000
lua.getnibble(0x1234,2)      0x3
lua.getnibble(0x1234,4)      0x1
lua.addnibble(0x0000,2)      0x0010
lua.addnibble(0x0030,2)      0x0040
lua.subnibble(0x00F0,2)      0x00E0
lua.subnibble(0x0080,2)      0x0070
```

9.7.6 Functions

The functions table stores functions by index. The index can be used with the primitives that call functions by index. In order to prevent interferences a macro package should provide some interface to the function call mechanisms, just like it does with registers.

```
function lua.getfunctionstable ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

9.7.7 Tracing

The engine also includes the serializer from the luac program, just because it can be interesting to see what Lua does with your code.

```
function luac.print ( <t:string> bytecode, <t:boolean> detailed )
    -- nothing to return
end
```


metapost

10 Metapost

10.1 Introduction

Four letters in the name LuaMetaT_EX refer to the graphical subsystem MetaPost, originally written by John Hobby as follow up on MetaFont. This library was introduced in LuaT_EX in order to generate graphics runtime instead of via a separate system call. The library in LuaT_EX is also used for the stand-alone program so it has a PostScript backend as well as font related frontend. The version used in LuaMetaT_EX has neither. The lack of a backend can be explained from the fact that we have to provide one anyway: the pdf output is generated by Lua, which at that time was derived from the converter that I wrote for pdfT_EX, although there the starting point is the PostScript output. Removing the font related code also makes sense, because in MkIV we never used it: we need to support OpenType and also want to use properly typeset text so we used a different approach (**texttext** and friends).

Another difference with the LuaT_EX library is that we don't support the binary number model, which removes a dependency. We kept decimal number support and also opened that up to the T_EX end via Lua. In addition we support the posit number model, mostly because we also have that at the T_EX end to suit the 32 bit model. The repertoire of scanners and injectors has been enlarged which makes it easier and more efficient to interface between the LuaMetaT_EX subsystems. We also added functionality to MetaPost, the language and processor. From the users perspective the library is downward compatible but at the same time it offers more.

Just as LuaT_EX is frozen, the MetaPost library that it uses can be considered frozen. In LuaMetaT_EX we have plans for some more extensions. We don't discuss the already present new functionality here in detail, for that we have separate manuals, organized under the LuaMetaFun umbrella. After all, most of what we did was done in the perspective of using ConT_EXt. Users don't use the functions discussed below because they only make sense in a more integrated approach as with LuaMetaFun.

10.2 Instances

Before you can process MetaPost code an instance needs to be created. There can be multiple instances active at the same time. They are isolated from each other so they can use different number models and macro sets. Although you can do without files, normally you will load (for instance) macros from a file. This means that we need to interface the library to the file system. If we want to run Lua, we need to be able to load Lua code. All this is achieved via callbacks that have to be set up when an instance is created.

```
function mplib.new (
  {
    random_seed    = <t:integer>,
    interaction    = <t:string>,
    job_name       = <t:string>,
    find_file      = <t:function>,
    open_file      = <t:function>,
    run_script     = <t:function>,
    run_internal   = <t:function>,
    make_text      = <t:function>,
    math_mode      = <t:string>,
```

```

utf8_mode      = <t:boolean>,
text_mode      = <t:boolean>,
show_mode      = <t:boolean>,
halt_on_error  = <t:boolean>,
run_logger     = <t:function>,
run_overload   = <t:function>,
run_error      = <t:function>,
run_warning    = <t:function>,
bend_tolerance = <t:number>,
move_tolerance = <t:number>,
}
)
return <t:mp>
end

```

The library is fed with MetaPost snippets via an execute function. We will discuss this in a while.

```

function mplib.execute ( <t:mp> instance )
  return <t:table> -- results
end

```

An instance can be released with:

```

function mplib.finish ( <t:mp> instance )
  return <t:table> -- results
end

```

Keeping an instance open is more efficient than creating one per graphic especially when a format has to be loaded. When you execute code, there can be results that for instance can be converted into pdf and included in the currently made document. If one closes an instance it can be that there are pending results to take care of, although in practice that is unlikely to happen.

When the `utf8_mode` parameter is set to true characters with codes 128 upto 255 can be part of identifiers. There is no checking if we have valid utf but it permits to use that encoding. In ConT_EXt, of course, we enable this. When `text_mode` is true you can use the characters with ascii STX (2) and ETC (3) to fence string literals so that we can use double quotes in strings without the need to escape them. The `math_mode` parameter controls the number model that this instance will use. Valid values are scaled (default), double (default in ConT_EXt), binary (not supported), decimal (less performing but maybe useful) and posit (so that we can complements the T_EX end).

Valid interaction values are batch, nonstop, scroll, errorstop (default) and silent but in ConT_EXt only the last one makes sense. Setting the `random_seed` parameter makes it possible to reproduce graphics and prevent documents to be different each run when the size of graphics are different due to randomization. The `job_name` parameter is used in reporting and therefore it is mandate.

Both tolerance parameters default to $131/65536 = 0.001998901$ and help to make the output smaller: 'bend' relate to straight lines and 'move' to effectively similar points. You can adapt the tolerance any time with:

```

function mplib.settolerance (
  <t:mp>      instance,
  <t:number> bendtolerance,

```

```

    <t:number> movetolerance
)
-- no return values
end

function mplib.gettolerance ( <t:mp> instance )
    return
        <t:number>, -- bendtolerance
        <t:number>  -- movetolerance
end

```

Next we detail the functions that are hooked into the instance because without them being passed to the engine not that much will happen. We start with the finder. Here mode is w or r. Normally a lookup of a file that is to be read from is done by a dedicated lookup mechanism that knows about the ecosystem the library operates in (like the T_EX Directory Structure).

```

function find_file (
    <t:string> filename,
    <t:string> mode,
    <t:string> filetype | <t:integer> index
)
    return <t:string> -- foundname
end

```

A (located) file is opened with the open_file callback that has to return a table with a close method and a reader or a writer dependent of the mode.

```

function open_file (
    <t:string> filename,
    <t:string> mode,
    <t:string> filetype | <t:integer> index
)
    return {
        close = function()
            -- return nothing
        end,
        reader = function()
            return <t:string>
        end,
        writer = function(<t:string>)
            -- return nothing
        end
    }
end

```

This approach is not that different from the way we do this at the T_EX so like there a reader normally returns lines. The way MetaPost writes to and read from files using primitives is somewhat curious which is why the file type can be a number indicating what handle is used. However, apart from reading files that have code using **input** one hardly needs the more low level read and write related primitives.

The runner is what makes it possible to communicate between MetaPost and Lua and thereby T_EX. There are two possible calls:

```
function run_script ( <t:string> code | <t:integer> reference )
    return <t:string> metapost
end
```

The second approach makes it possible to implement efficient interfaces where code is turned into functions that are kept around. At the MetaPost end we therefore have, as in LuaT_EX:

```
runscript "some code that will be loaded and run"
% more code
runscript "some code that will be loaded and run"
```

which can of course be optimized by caching, but more interesting is:

```
newinternal my_function ; my_function := 123 ;
runscript my_function ;
% more code
runscript my_function ;
```

which of course has to be dealt with in Lua. The return value can be a string but also a direct object:

```
function run_script (
    <t:string> code | <t:integer> reference,
    <t:boolean> direct
)
    return
        <t:boolean> | <t:number> | <t:string> | <t:table>, -- result
        <t:boolean>                                     -- success
end
```

When the second argument is true, the results are injected directly and tables become pairs, colors, paths, transforms, depending on how many elements there are.

In MetaPost internal variables are quantities that are stored a bit differently and are accessed without using the expression scanner. The `run_internal` function triggers when internal MetaPost variables flagged with `runscript` are initialized, saved or restored. The first argument is an action, the second the value of internal. When we initialize an internal a third and fourth argument are passed.

```
function run_internal (
    <t:integer> action,
    <t:integer> internal,
    <t:integer> category,
    <t:string> name
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The category is one of the types that MetaPost also uses elsewhere: integer, boolean, numeric or known. From this you can deduce that internals in LuaMetaT_EX can not only be numbers but also strings or booleans. The possible actions are:

- 0 initialize
- 1 save
- 2 restore

There is of course bit extra overhead involved than normal but that can be neglected especially because we can have more efficient calls to Lua using references stored in internals. It also has the benefit that one can implement additional tracing.

MetaPost is a graphic language and system and typesetting text is not what it is meant for so that gets delegated to (for instance) T_EX using **btex** which grabs text upto **etex** and passes it to this callback:

```
function make_text ( <t:string> str, <t:integer> mode )
    return <t:string> -- metapost
end
```

Here mode is only relevant if you want to intercept verbatimtex which is something that we don't recommend doing in ConT_EXt, just like we don't recommend using **btex**. But, if you use these, keep in mind that spaces matter. The parameter **texscriptmode** controls how spaces and newlines get honored. The default value is 1. Possible values are:

value	meaning
0	no newlines
1	newlines in verbatimtex
2	newlines in verbatimtex and etex
3	no leading and trailing strip in verbatimtex
4	no leading and trailing strip in verbatimtex and btex

That way the Lua handler (assigned to make_text) can do what it likes. An **etex** has to be followed by a space or ; or be at the end of a line and preceded by a space or at the beginning of a line. But let's repeat: these commands are kind of old school and not to be used in LuaMetaFun.

Logging, which includes the output of message and show, is also handled by a callback:

```
function run_logger ( <t:integer> target, <t:string> str )
    -- no return values
end
```

The possible log targets are:

- 0 void
- 1 terminal
- 2 file
- 3 both
- 4 error

An overload handler will take care of potentially dangerous overloading of for instance primitives, macro package definitions and special variables.

```
function run_overload ( <t:integer> property, <t:string> name, <t:integer> mode )
    return <t:boolean> -- resetproperty
end
```

The mode value is the currently set **overloadmode** internal. The MetaPost command **setproperty** can be used to relate an integer value to a quantity and when that value is positive a callback is triggered when that quantity gets redefined. Primitives get a property value 1 by the engine.

```
-3 mutable
 1 primitive
 2 permanent
 3 immutable
 4 frozen
```

Overload protect is something very ConT_EXt and also present at the T_EX end. All T_EX and MetaPost quantities have such properties assigned.

When an error is issued it is often best to just quit the run and fix the issue, just because the instance can now be in a confused state,

```
function run_error (
  <t:string> message,
  <t:string> helpinfo,
  <t:integer> interactionmode
)
  -- no return values
end
```

You can get some statistics concerning an instance but in practice that is not so relevant for users. In ConT_EXt these go to the log file.

```
function mplib.getstatistics ( <t:mp> instance )
  return <t:table>
end
```

The next set of numbers reflect for the current state of the metafun:1 instance that is active for this specific run.

characters	18678	knots	0	parameters	42
hash	3070	memory	7985120	strings	1160
input	17	nodes	33	symbols	1000
internals	521	pairs	23	tokens	1075

In this version of mplib this is informational only. The objects are all allocated dynamically, so there is no chance of running out of space unless the available system memory is exhausted. There is no need to configure memory.

The scanner in an instance can be in a specific state:

```
function mplib.getstatus ( <t:mp> instance )
  return <t:integer>
end
```

where possible states are:

```
0 normal          1 skipping
```



```

2  flushing                4  var_defining                5  op_defining                6  loop_defining
3  absorbing

```

Macro names and variable names are stored in a hash table. You can get a list with entries with `gethashentries`, which takes an instance as first argument. When the second argument is `true` more details will be provided. With `gethashentry` you get info about the given macro or variable.

```

function mplib.gethashentries ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> details )
    <t:table> hashentries
end

function mplib.gethashentry ( <t:mp> instance, <t:string> name )
    return
        <t:integer> -- command
        <t:integer> -- property
        <t:integer> -- subcommand
end

```

Say that we have defined:

```
numeric a ; numeric b ; numeric c ; a = b ; c := b ;
```

We get values like:

```

a          44  0  22
b          44  0  20
c          44  0  20
d          44  0
def        19  1   1
vardef     19  1   2
fullcircle 44  3  10

```

These numbers represent commands, properties and subcommands, and thereby also assume some knowledge about how MetaPost works internally. As this kind of information is only useful when doing low level development we leave it at that.

10.2.1 Processing

It is up to the user to decide what to pass to the `execute` function as long as it is valid code. Think of each chunk being a syntactically correct file. Statements cannot be split over chunks.

```

function mplib.execute ( <t:mp> instance, <t:string> code )
    return {
        status = <t:integer>,
        fig    = <t:table>,
    }
end

```

In contrast with the normal stand alone `mpost` command, there is no implied ‘input’ at the start of the first chunk. When no string is passed to the `execute` function, there will still be one triggered

because it then expects input from the terminal and you can emulate that channel with the callback you provide. In practice this is not something you need to be worry about.

When code is fed into the library at some point it will shipout a picture. The result always has a status field and an indexed fig table that has the graphics produced, although that is not mandate, for instance macro definitions can happen or variables can be set in which case graphics will be constructed later.

```
<t:userdata> o = <t:mpobj>:objects      ( )
<t:table>    b = <t:mpobj>:boundingbox ( )
<t:number>   w = <t:mpobj>:width       ( )
<t:number>   h = <t:mpobj>:height      ( )
<t:number>   d = <t:mpobj>:depth       ( )
<t:number>   i = <t:mpobj>:italic      ( )
<t:integer>  c = <t:mpobj>:charcode    ( )
<t:number>   t = <t:mpobj>:tolerance   ( )
<t:boolean>  s = <t:mpobj>:stacking    ( )
```

When you access a object that object gets processed before its properties are returned and in the process we loose the original. This means that some information concerning the whole graphic is also no longer reliably available. For instance, you can check if a figure uses stacking with the `stacking` function but because objects gets freed after being accessed, no information about stacking is available then.

The charcode, width, height, depth and italic are a left-over from MetaFont. They are values of the MetaPost variables `charcode`, `fontcharwd`, `fontcharht`, `fontchardp` and `fontcharit` at the time the graphic is shipped out.

You can call `fig:objects()` only once for any one fig object! In the end the graphic is a list of such userdata objects with accessors that depends on what specific data we have at hand. You can check out what fields with the following helper:

```
function mplib.getfields ( <t:integer> object | <t:mpobj> object | <t:nil> )
  return <t:table>
end
```

You get a simple table with one list of fields, or a table with all possible fields, organized per object type. In practice this helper is only used for documentation.

1	fill	type path htap pen color linejoin miterlimit prescript postscript stacking curvature
2	outline	type path pen color linejoin miterlimit linecap dash prescript postscript stacking curvature
3	start_clip	type path prescript postscript stacking
4	start_group	type path prescript postscript stacking
5	start_bounds	type path prescript postscript stacking
6	stop_clip	type stacking
7	stop_group	type stacking
8	stop_bounds	type stacking

All graphical objects have a field `type` (the second column in the table above) that gives the object type as a string value. When you have a non circular pen an envelope is uses defined by path as well

as htap and the backend has to make sure that this gets translated into the proper pdf operators. Discussing this is beyond this manual. A color table has one, three or four values depending on the color space used. The prescript and postscript strings are the accumulated values of these operators, separated by newline characters. The stacking number is just that: a number, which can be used to put shapes in front or other shapes, some order, but it depends on the macro package as well as the backend to deal with that; it's basically just a numeric tag.

Each dash is a hash with two items. We use the same model as PostScript for the representation of the dash list; dashes is an array of 'on' and 'off' values, and offset is the phase of the pattern.

There is helper function `peninfo` that returns a table containing a bunch of vital characteristics of the used pen:

```
function mplib.peninfo ( <t:mpobj> object )
  return {
    width = <t:number>,
    rx    = <t:number>,
    ry    = <t:number>,
    sx    = <t:number>,
    sy    = <t:number>,
    tx    = <t:number>,
    ty    = <t:number>,
  }
end
```

10.2.2 Internals

There are a couple of helpers that can be used to query the meaning of specific codes and states.

```
function mplib.gettype ( <mopobj> object )
  return <t:integer> -- typenumber
end
```

```
function mplib.gettypes ( )
  return <t:table> -- types
end
```

0	undefined	7	unknownpen	14	transform	21	protodependent
1	vacuous	8	nep	15	color	22	independent
2	boolean	9	unknownnep	16	cmykcolor	23	tokenlist
3	unknownboolean	10	path	17	pair	24	structured
4	string	11	unknownpath	18	numeric	25	unsuffixedmacro
5	unknownstring	12	picture	19	known	26	suffixedmacro
6	pen	13	unknownpicture	20	dependent		

```
function mplib.getcolormodels ( )
  return <t:table> -- colormodels
end
```

0	no	1	grey
---	----	---	------

```
2  rgb                3  cmyk
```

```
function mplib.getcodes ( )
  return <t:table> -- codes
end
```

0 undefined	21 addto	42 string	63 atleast
1 btex	22 setbounds	43 internal	64 curl
2 etex	23 protection	44 tag	65 macrospecial
3 if	24 property	45 numeric	66 rightdelimiter
4 fiorelse	25 show	46 plusorminus	67 leftbracket
5 input	26 mode	47 secondarydef	68 rightbracket
6 iteration	27 onlyset	48 tertiarybinary	69 rightbrace
7 repeatloop	28 message	49 leftbrace	70 with
8 exittest	29 everyjob	50 pathjoin	71 thingstoadd
9 relax	30 delimiters	51 pathconnect	72 of
10 scantokens	31 write	52 ampersand	73 to
11 runscript	32 typename	53 tertiarydef	74 step
12 maketext	33 leftdelimiter	54 primarybinary	75 until
13 expandafter	34 begingroup	55 equals	76 within
14 definedmacro	35 nullary	56 and	77 assignment
15 save	36 unary	57 primarydef	78 colon
16 interim	37 str	58 slash	79 comma
17 let	38 void	59 secondarybinary	80 semicolon
18 newinternal	39 cycle	60 parametertype	81 endgroup
19 macrodef	40 ofbinary	61 controls	82 stop
20 shipout	41 capsule	62 tension	83 undefinedcs

```
function mplib.getstates ( )
  return <t:table> -- states
end
```

0 normal	3 absorbing	5 op_defining
1 skipping	4 var_defining	6 loop_defining
2 flushing		

Knots is how the ‘points’ in a curve are called internally and in paths we can find these:

```
function mplib.getknotstates ( )
  return <t:table> -- knotstates
end
```

0 regular	2 end
1 begin	3 single

```
function mplib.getscantypes ( )
  return <t:table> -- scantypes
end
```

0 expression	2 secondary
1 primary	3 tertiary

As with \TeX we can log to the console, a log file or both. But one will normally intercept log message

anyway.

```
function mplib.getlogtargets ( )
  return <t:table> -- logtargets
end
```

0 void	2 file	3 both	4 error
1 terminal			

```
function mplib.getinternalactions ( )
  return <t:table> -- internalactions
end
```

0 initialize	2 restore
1 save	

```
function mplib.getobjecttypes ( )
  return <t:table> -- objecttypes
end
```

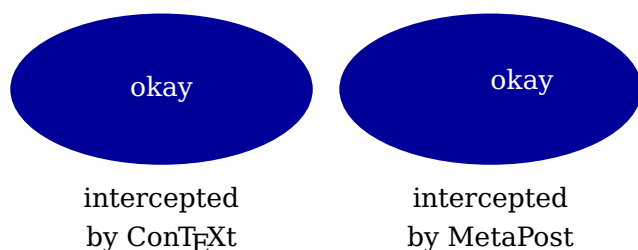
0	3 start_clip	6 stop_clip
1 fill	4 start_group	7 stop_group
2 outline	5 start_bounds	8 stop_bounds

The next one is of course dependent on what one runs. These statistics are for all instances:

```
function mplib.getcallbackstate ( )
  return <t:table> -- callbackstate
end
```

count	48118	overloaded	0
error	0	script	33480
file	14515	text	0
log	123	warning	0

The text counter is only counting what gets intercepted by MetaPost and as you can see below, the recommended texttext is handled differently and not counted at all.



So we get this now. The file count goes up because from the perspective of MetaPost code that gets executed and passed as string is just like reading from file. The relative high number that we see here reflects that we load quite some MetaFun macros when an instance is initialized.

count	48153	file	14529	overloaded	0
error	0	log	135	script	33488

```
text      1          warning    0
```

10.2.3 Information

The MetaPost library in Lua_T_EX starts with version 2 so in LuaMeta_T_EX we start with version 3, assuming that there will be no major update to the older library.

```
function mplib.version ( )
    return <t:string>
end
```

When there is an error you can ask for some more context:

```
function mplib.showcontext ( <t:mp> instance )
    return <t:string>
end
```

10.2.4 Methods

For historical reasons we provide a few functions as methods to an instance: `execute`, `finish`, `get-statistics`, `getstatus` and `solvepath`, just in case someone goes low level.

10.2.5 Scanners

There are quite some scanners available and they all take an instance as first argument. Some have optional arguments that give some control. A very basic one is the following. Scanning for a next token in MetaPost is different from _T_EX because while _T_EX just gets the token, MetaPost can delay in cases where an expression is seen. This means that you can inspect what is coming but do some further scanning based on that. Examples of usage can be found in Con_T_EXt as it permits to come up with extensions that behave like new primitives or implement interfaces that are otherwise hard to do in pure MetaPost.

```
function mplib.scannext ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> keep )
    return <t:integer> token, <t:integer> mode, <t:integer> kind
end
```

here the optional `keep` boolean argument default to false but when true we basically have a look ahead scan. Contrary to _T_EX a next token is not expanded. If we want to pick up the result from an expression we use the next one where again we can push back the result:

```
0  expression      2  secondary
1  primary         3  tertiary
```

```
function mplib.scanexpression ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> keep )
    return <t:integer> -- kind
end
```

The difference between `scantoken` and `scannext` is that the first one scans for a token and the later for a value and yes, one has to play a bit with this to see when one gets what.

```

function mplib.scantoken ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> keep )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- token
        <t:integer>, -- mode
        <t:integer>  -- kind
end

function mplib.scansymbol ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> expand, <t:boolean> keep )
    return <t:string>
end

function mplib.scanproperty ( <t:mp> instance )
    return <t:integer>
end

```

These are scanners for the simple data types:

```

function mplib.scannumeric ( <t:mp> instance ) return <t:number> end -- scannumber
function mplib.scaninteger ( <t:mp> instance ) return <t:integer> end
function mplib.scanboolean ( <t:mp> instance ) return <t:boolean> end
function mplib.scanstring  ( <t:mp> instance ) return <t:string>  end

```

The scanners that return data types with more than one value can will return a table when the second argument is true:

```

function mplib.scanpair ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> astable )
    return
        <t:number>, -- x
        t:number>  -- y
end

function mplib.scanfcolor (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:boolean> astable
)
    return
        <t:number>, -- r
        <t:number>, -- g
        <t:number>  -- b
end

function mplib.scancmykcolor ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> astable )
    return
        <t:number>, -- c
        <t:number>, -- m
        <t:number>, -- y
        <t:number>  -- k
end

function mplib.scantransform ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> astable )
    return
        <t:number>, -- x

```

```

    <t:number>, -- y
    <t:number>, -- xx
    <t:number>, -- yx
    <t:number>, -- xy
    <t:number>  -- yy
end

```

The path scanned is more complex. First an expression is scanned and when okay it is converted to a table. The compact option gives:

```

{
  cycle = <t:boolean>, -- close
  pen   = <t:boolean>,
  {
    <t:number>, -- x_coordinate
    <t:number>, -- y_coordinate
  },
  ...
}

```

otherwise we get the more detailed:

```

{
  curved = <t:boolean>,
  pen     = <t:boolean>,
  {
    [1]      = <t:number>, -- x_coordinate
    [2]      = <t:number>, -- y_coordinate
    [3]      = <t:number>, -- x_left
    [4]      = <t:number>, -- y_left
    [5]      = <t:number>, -- x_right
    [6]      = <t:number>, -- y_right
    left_type = <t:integer>,
    right_type = <t:integer>,
    curved    = <t:boolean>,
    state     = <t:integer>,
  },
  ...
}

```

Possible (knot, the internal name for a point) states are:

0	regular	2	end
1	begin	3	single

The path scanner function that produces such tables is:

```

function mplib.scanpath (
  <t:mp>      instance,
  <t:boolean> compact,

```



```

    <t:integer> kind,
    <t:boolean> check
)
    return <t:table>
end

```

This pen scanner returns similar tables:

```

function mplib.scanpen (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:boolean> compact,
    <t:integer> kind,
    <t:boolean> check
)
    return <t:table>
end

```

The next is not really a scanner. It skips a token that matches the given command and returns a boolean telling if that succeeded.

```

function mplib.skiptoken ( <t:mp> instance, <t:integer> command )
    return <t:boolean>
end

```

10.2.6 Injectors

The scanners are complemented by injectors. Instead of strings that have to be parsed by MetaPost they inject the right data structures directly.

```

function mplib.injectnumeric ( <t:mp> instance, <t:number> value ) end
function mplib.injectinteger ( <t:mp> instance, <t:integer> value ) end
function mplib.injectboolean ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> value ) end
function mplib.injectstring  ( <t:mp> instance, <t:string> value ) end

```

In following injectors accept a table as well as just the values. which can more efficient:

```

function mplib.injectpair      ( <t:mp> instance, <t:table> value ) end
function mplib.injectcolor     ( <t:mp> instance, <t:table> value ) end
function mplib.injectcmykcolor ( <t:mp> instance, <t:table> value ) end
function mplib.injecttransform ( <t:mp> instance, <t:table> value ) end

```

Injecting a path is not always trivial because we have to connect the points emulating `...`, `...`, `---` and even `&&` and `cycle`. A path is passed as table. The table can be nested and has entries like these:

```

{
  {
    x_coord      = <t:number>,
    y_coord      = <t:number>,
    x_left       = <t:number>,
    y_left       = <t:number>,
    x_right      = <t:number>,

```

```

    y_right      = <t:number>,
    left_curl    = <t:number>,
    right_curl   = <t:number>,
    left_tension = <t:number>,
    right_tension = <t:number>,
    direction_x  = <t:number>,
    direction_y  = <t:number>,
  },
  {
    [1] = <t:number>, -- x_coordinate
    [2] = <t:number>, -- x_coordinate
    [3] = <t:number>, -- x_left
    [4] = <t:number>, -- y_left
    [5] = <t:number>, -- x_right
    [6] = <t:number>, -- y_right
  }
  "append",
  "cycle",
}

```

Here `append` is like `&&` which picks up the pen, and `cycle`, not surprisingly, behaves like the `cycle` operator.

```

function mplib.injectpath ( <t:mp> instance, <t:table> value )
  -- return nothing
end

function mplib.injectwhatever ( <t:mp> instance, <t:hybrid> value )
  -- return nothing
end

```

When a path is entered and has to be injected some preparation takes place out of the users sight. A special variant of the path processor is the following, where the path is adapted and the boolean indicates success.

```

function mplib.solvepath ( <t:mp> instance, <t:table> value )
  return <t:boolean>
end

```

A still somewhat experimental injectors is the following one, that can be used to fetch information from the `TEX` end. Valid values for expected are 1 (integer), 2 (cardinal), 3 (dimension), 5 (boolean) and 7 (string).

```

function mplib.expandtex (
  <t:mp>      instance,
  <t:integer> expected,
  <t:string>  macro,
  <t:whatever> arguments
)
  return <t:whatever>
end

```

tex

11 T_EX

11.1 Introduction

Here we don't explain T_EX itself but the interface between T_EX and Lua. We don't need to talk nodes and tokens because they have their own chapters.

11.2 Status information

The status library provides information not only about the current run and system setup but also about all kind of variables and constants used in the engine. A difference between LuaT_EX and Lua-MetaT_EX is that every quantity that is hard coded is available as a constant to be used. The same is true for various bit sets for instance those use in setting options, as we will see in the tex library.

A number of run-time configuration items that you may find useful in message reporting, as well as an iterator function that gets all of the names and values as a table.

```
function status.list ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

The keys in the returned table are the known items, the value is the current value. There are top level items and items that are tables with sub entries. The current list gives:

toplevel statistics

banner	This is LuaMetaTeX, Version 2.11.06
copyright	Taco Hoekwater, Hans Hagen, Wolfgang Schuster & Mikael Sundqvist
development_id	20241101
filename	luametateX-tex.tex
format_id	711
logfilename	luametateX.log
lua_format	2
lua_version	5.5
lua_version_major	5
lua_version_minor	5
lua_version_release	0
luatex_engine	luametateX
luatex_release	6
luatex_revision	11
luatex_verbosE	2.11.06
luatex_version	2
permit_loadlib	false
run_state	2
used_compiler	gcc
version	211.6

bufferstate.*

all	1000000
-----	---------

ini	-1
max	1000000000
mem	1000000
min	1000000
ptr	0
set	100000000
stp	1000000
top	3182

callbackstate.*

bytecode	631
count	500237
direct	3895
file	29642
function	129482
local	0
message	0
saved	321158
value	15429

enginestate.*

banner	This is LuaMetaTeX, Version 2.11.06
copyright	Taco Hoekwater, Hans Hagen, Wolfgang Schuster & Mikael Sundqvist
development_id	20241101
format_id	711
logfilename	luametatex.log
luatex_engine	luametatex
luatex_release	6
luatex_revision	11
luatex_verbos	2.11.06
luatex_version	2
permit_loadlib	false
run_state	2
tex_hash_size	262144
used_compiler	gcc
version	211.6

errorlinestate.*

max	255
min	132
set	250
top	0

errorstate.*

error	unset
errorcontext	unset
luaerror	unset

expandstate.*

max	1000000
min	10000
set	10000
top	10

extrastate.*

all	280
ini	-1
max	-1
mem	280
min	-1
ptr	280
set	-1
stp	-1
top	6040

filestate.*

all	16000
ini	-1
max	2000
mem	500
min	500
ptr	6
set	2000
stp	250
top	11

fontstate.*

all	13907936
ini	-1
max	100000
mem	13907936
min	250
ptr	58
set	100000
stp	250
top	250

halferrorlinestate.*

max	255
min	80
set	234
top	0

hashstate.*

all	2400000
ini	0
max	2097152
mem	150000
min	150000
ptr	8247
set	250000
stp	100000
top	938189

hyphenationstate.*

checked	28182
exceptions	299
hyphenated	26532
lists	28182
nothing	18305
words	36245

inputstate.*

all	320000
ini	-1
max	100000
mem	10000
min	10000
ptr	7
set	100000
stp	10000
top	45

insertstate.*

all	10240
ini	-1
max	500
mem	320
min	10
ptr	9
set	250
stp	25
top	10

languagestate.*

all	96
ini	0
max	10000
mem	96

min	250
ptr	0
set	250
stp	250
top	250

linebreakstate.*

align	table: 000005b2df70aba0
dbbox	table: 000005b2df70c130
doubletwins	0
insert	table: 000005b2df70ac30
lefttwins	0
lua	table: 000005b2df70aa20
math	table: 000005b2df70aa80
noalign	table: 000005b2df70aab0
normal	table: 000005b2df70cd30
output	table: 000005b2df70ac90
reset	table: 000005b2df70a0f0
righttwins	0
span	table: 000005b2df70ab10
vadjust	table: 000005b2df70acf0
vbox	table: 000005b2df70cac0
vcenter	table: 000005b2df70bf50
vmode	table: 000005b2df70cb20
vtop	table: 000005b2df70ca60

lookupstate.*

all	-1
ini	50499
max	2097152
mem	-1
min	150000
ptr	54963
set	250000
stp	100000
top	262146

luastate.*

bytecodebytes	16416
bytecodes	1025
functionsizes	32768
propertyssizes	10000
statebytes	115507471
statebytesmax	224043727

markstate.*

all	28800
-----	-------

ini	-1
max	10000
mem	1200
min	50
ptr	28
set	250
stp	50
top	50

neststate.*

all	80000
ini	-1
max	10000
mem	1000
min	1000
ptr	0
set	10000
stp	1000
top	19

nodestate.*

all	180000000
ini	0
max	1000000000
mem	20000000
min	20000000
ptr	-335727
set	1000000000
stp	500000
top	360028

parameterstate.*

all	80000
ini	-1
max	100000
mem	20000
min	20000
ptr	1
set	100000
stp	10000
top	55

poolstate.*

all	1059653
ini	963364
max	1000000000
mem	1059653

min	10000000
ptr	-1
set	10000000
stp	1000000
top	-1

readstate.*

filename	luametatex-tex.tex
iocode	5
linenumber	71
skiplinenumber	33

savestate.*

all	160000
ini	-1
max	500000
mem	10000
min	100000
ptr	331
set	500000
stp	10000
top	1402

sparsestate.*

all	3724592
ini	-1
max	-1
mem	3724592
min	-1
ptr	-1
set	-1
stp	-1
top	-1

stringstate.*

all	2400000
ini	2147668
max	2097152
mem	150000
min	150000
ptr	54980
set	500000
stp	100000
top	54980

texstate.*

approximate	60187597
-------------	----------

tokenstate.*

all	16000000
ini	557271
max	10000000
mem	2000000
min	2000000
ptr	-1830143
set	10000000
stp	500000
top	648803

warningstate.*

warning	unset
warningtag	unset

The `getconstants` query gives back a table with all kind of internal quantities and again these are only relevant for diagnostic and development purposes. Many are good old \TeX constants that are describes in the original documentation of the source but some are definitely \LuaMetaTeX specific.

```
function status.getconstants ( )
  return <t:table>
end
```

The returned table contains:

constants.*

all_fitness_values	255
assumed_math_control	4125694
awful_bad	1073741823
decent_criterion	12
default_catcode_table	-1
default_character_control	0
default_deadcycles	25
default_eqno_gap_step	1000
default_hangafter	1
default_output_box	255
default_pre_display_gap	2000
default_rule	26214
default_space_factor	1000
default_tolerance	10000
deplorable	100000
eject_penalty	-10000
ignore_depth	-65536000
infinite_bad	10000
infinite_penalty	10000
infinity	2147483647
large_width_excess	7230584
loose_criterion	99

math_all_class	61
math_begin_class	62
math_default_penalty	10001
math_end_class	63
math_first_user_class	20
math_last_user_class	60
max_attribute_register_index	65535
max_box_register_index	65535
max_bytecode_index	65535
max_calculated_badness	8189
max_cardinal	4294967295
max_category_code	15
max_character_code	1114111
max_data_value	2097151
max_dimen	1073741823
max_dimen_register_index	65535
max_dimension	1073741823
max_dimension_register_index	65535
max_endline_character	127
max_float_register_index	65535
max_font_adjust_shrink_factor	500
max_font_adjust_step	100
max_font_adjust_stretch_factor	1000
max_function_reference	2097151
max_glue_register_index	65535
max_half_value	32767
max_halfword	1073741823
max_int_register_index	65535
max_integer	2147483647
max_integer_register_index	65535
max_limited_scale	1000
max_mark_index	9999
max_math_class_code	63
max_math_family_index	63
max_math_scaling_factor	5000
max_math_style_scale	2000
max_muglue_register_index	65535
max_n_of_bytecodes	65536
max_n_of_catcode_tables	256
max_n_of_fitness_values	15
max_n_of_fonts	100000
max_n_of_languages	10000
max_n_of_marks	10000
max_n_of_math_families	64
max_newline_character	127
max_quarterword	65535
max_scale_factor	100000
max_size_of_word	1000
max_space_factor	32767

max_toks_register_index	65535
max_twin_length	16
min_cardinal	0
min_data_value	0
min_dimen	-1073741823
min_dimension	-1073741823
min_halfword	-1073741823
min_infinity	-2147483647
min_integer	-2147483647
min_n_of_fitness_values	5
min_quarterword	0
min_scale_factor	0
min_space_factor	0
no_catcode_table	-2
null	0
null_flag	-1073741824
null_font	0
one_bp	65781
preset_rule_thickness	1073741824
running_rule	-1073741824
small_stretchability	1663497
special_space_factor	999
tex_eqtb_size	788189
tex_hash_prime	262103
tex_hash_size	262144
two	131072
undefined_math_parameter	1073741823
unity	65536
unused_attribute_value	-2147483647
unused_math_family	255
unused_math_style	255
unused_script_value	0
unused_state_value	0
zero_glue	0

Most variables speak for themselves, some are more obscure. For instance the runstate variable indicates what the engine is doing:

```
0x00  initializing
0x01  updating
0x02  production
```

These overviews can get asked for, for instance with `getrunstatevalues` in the `tex` library. Most of these constants are stable but especially for those that relate to evolving engine functionality there can be changes, so keep an eye on these mappings!

The individual states can be fetched with the following helpers:

```
function status.getbufferstate      ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getcallbackstate   ( ) return <t:table> end
```

```

function status.geterrorlinestate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.geterrorstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getexpandstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getextrastate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getfilestate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getfontstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.gethalferrorlinestate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.gethashstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getthyphenationstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getinputstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getinsertstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getlanguagestate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getlinebreakstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getlookupstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getluastate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getmarkstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getneststate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getnodestate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getparameterstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getpoolstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getreadstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getsavestate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getsparsestate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getstringstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.gettexstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.gettokenstate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getwarningstate ( ) return <t:table> end

```

The error and warning messages can be wiped with:

```

function status.resetmessages ( )
  -- no return values
end

```

11.3 Everything T_EX

11.3.1 Introduction

The tex library contains a large list of (possibly virtual) internal T_EX parameters that are partially writable. The designation ‘virtual’ means that these items are not properly defined in Lua, but are only front-ends that are handled by a metatable that operates on the actual T_EX values. As a result, most of the Lua table operators (like pairs and #) do not work on such items. In addition to this kind of access we have getters and setters, which are the preferred way, but we keep the field like accessors around for compatibility reasons.

At the moment, it is possible to access almost every parameter that you can use after `\the`, is a single token or is sort of special in T_EX. This excludes parameters that need extra arguments, like `\the\scriptfont`. The subset comprising simple integer and dimension registers are writable as well as readable (like `\tracingcommands` and `\parindent`).

11.3.2 Registers

Among of the oldest accessors to internals are `tex.dimen` and `tex.count`. This permits calls like this:

```
\setbox0\hbox{test}
\directlua{tex.sprint(tex.box[0].width)}
```

to give us (in this case typeset): 1250880 scaled points. Here we access a box register, get back a userdata node, and access one of its fields. The skip registers also are stored on userdata. The register are accessed in the following way; watch the different value types that you get:

```
<t:integer> value = tex.attribute [index]
<t:node>     value = tex.skip      [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.glue       [index]
<t:node>     value = tex.muskip    [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.muglue     [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.dimen      [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.count      [index]
<t:number>  value = tex.posit     [index]
<t:string>  value = tex.toks      [index]
<t:node>    value = tex.box       [index]
```

You can also assign values:

```
tex.attribute [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.skip      [index] = value -- <t:node>
tex.glue      [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.muskip    [index] = value -- <t:node>
tex.muglue    [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.dimen     [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.count     [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.posit     [index] = value -- <t:number>
tex.toks      [index] = value -- <t:string>
tex.box       [index] = value -- <t:node>
```

Be warned that an assignment like

```
tex.box[0] = tex.box[2]
```

does not copy the node list, it just duplicates a node pointer. If `\box2` will be cleared by \TeX commands later on, the contents of `\box0` becomes invalid as well. To prevent this from happening, always use `node.copylist` unless you are assigning to a temporary variable:

```
tex.box[0] = node.copylist(tex.box[2])
```

When you access a \TeX parameter a look up takes place. For read-only variables that means that you will get something back, but when you set them you create a new entry in the table thereby making the original invisible.

Although these are actually not stored in arrays but in hashes, the various ‘codes’ can also be accessed this way:

```
<t:integer> value = tex.sfcodes = [index]
```



```

<t:integer> value = tex.lccode    = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.uccode    = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.hccode    = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.hmcode    = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.amcode    = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.cccode    = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.catcode   = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.mathcode  = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.delcode   = [index]

```

and

```

tex.sfcodes = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.lccodes = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.uccodes = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.hccodes = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.hmcodes = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.amcodes = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.cccodes = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.catcodes = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.mathcodes = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.delcodes = [index] = value -- <t:integer>

```

The getters are

```

function tex.getamcode ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getcatcode ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getccode ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.gethccode ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.gethmcode ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getlccode ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getsfcode ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getuccode ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end

```

and the setters:

```

function tex.setamcode ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setcatcode ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setccode ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.sethccode ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.sethmcode ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setlccode ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setsfcode ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setuccode ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end

```

The `setlccode` and `setuccode` additionally allow you to set the associated sibling at the same time by passing an extra argument.

```

function tex.setlccode ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> lcvalue, <t:integer>
    ucvalue ) end
function tex.setuccode ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> ucvalue, <t:integer>
    lcvalue ) end

```

The function call interface for `setcatcode` also allows you to specify a category table to use on assignment or on query (default in both cases is the current one):

```
function tex.setcatcode (
  <t:integer> catcodetable,
  <t:integer> character,
  <t:integer> value
)
  -- no return values
end
```

All these setters accept an initial `global` string.

11.3.3 Setters and getters

Most of \TeX 's parameters can be accessed directly by using their names as index in the `tex` table, or by using one of the functions `tex.get` and `tex.set`. The exact parameters and return values differ depending on the actual parameter. In most cases we have integers but especially glue have more properties than just the amount. For the parameters that *can* be set, it is possible to use `global` as the first argument to `tex.set`. Them being more complete is an argument for using setters instead of assignments.

The `set` function is meant for what we call internal parameter. These can be registers but without a known number (one can actually figure out the internal number via the token library).

```
function tex.set ( <t:string> name, <t:whatever> value )
  -- no return values
end

function tex.set ( "global", <t:string> name, <t:whatever> value )
  -- no return values
end
```

You can get back a value with:

```
function tex.get ( <t:string> name )
  return <t:whatever>
end
```

Glue is kind of special because there are five values involved. The return value is a `glue_spec` node but when you pass `false` as last argument to `tex.get` you get the width of the glue and when you pass `true` you get all five values. Otherwise you get a node which is a copy of the internal value so you are responsible for its freeing at the Lua end. When you set a glue quantity you can either pass a `glue_spec` or upto five numbers.

Traditional \TeX has 256 registers per type, $\epsilon\text{-}\text{\TeX}$ bumps that to 32K and `LuaMeta \TeX` doubles that. But how many are enough? Do we really need that many different attributes and glue specifiers?

In `LuaMeta \TeX` on the one hand can go lower on registers and at the same time go beyond with alternatives when using named quantities.

It is possible to define named registers with `t\attributedef`, `\countdef`, `\dimendef`, `\skipdef`, `\floatdef` or `\toksdef` control sequences as indices to these tables and these can be accessed by name at the Lua end. Here are some examples:

```
tex.count.scratchcounter = 123
tex.dimen.scratchdimen   = "20pt"

tex.setcount(            "scratchcounter", 123)
tex.setdimen(            "scratchdimen",    10 *65536)
tex.setdimen("global", "scratchdimen",    "10pt")

enormous = tex.dimen.maxdimen
enormous = tex.getdimen("maxdimen")

unknown = tex.dimen[3]
unknown = tex.getdimen(3)
```

Of course this assumes that these registers are defined. What you can do depends on the type:

- The count registers accept and return Lua numbers (integers in this case).
- The dimension registers accept Lua numbers (in scaled points) or strings with a dimension.
- The token registers accept and return Lua strings. Lua strings are converted to and from token lists using `\the\toks` style expansion: all category codes are either space (10) or other (12).
- The skip registers accept and return `glue_spec` userdata node objects (see the description of the node interface elsewhere in this manual).
- The glue registers are just skip registers but instead of userdata accept verbose (integers).
- Like the counts, the attribute registers accept and return integers.
- Float (aka posit) registers accept and return floating point numbers.

The `setglue` function accepts upto five arguments:

```
function tex.setskip (
    <t:string> register, -- can also be an index
    <t:node>   value     -- glue_spec
)
    -- no return values
end

function tex.setglue (
    <t:string> register, -- can also be an index
    <t:integer> amount,
    <t:integer> stretch,
    <t:integer> shrink,
    <t:integer> stretchorder,
    <t:integer> shrinkorder
)
    -- no return values
```

end

Actually there can be one more argument here because as first argument we can pass "global". The whole repertoire is:

```
function tex.getattribute ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getcount    ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getdimen    ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getfloat    ( <t:string> name ) return <t:number>  end
function tex.getskip     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:node>    end
function tex.getmuskip   ( <t:string> name ) return <t:node>    end
function tex.gettoks     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:string>  end

function tex.getglue     ( <t:string> name          ) return <t:integer>, ... end
function tex.getmuglue   ( <t:string> name          ) return <t:integer>, ... end
function tex.getglue     ( <t:string> name, false ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getmuglue   ( <t:string> name, false ) return <t:integer> end
```

and

```
function tex.setattribute (<t:string> name, <t:integer> value) end
function tex.setcount    (<t:string> name, <t:integer> value) end
function tex.setdimen    (<t:string> name, <t:integer> value) end
function tex.setfloat    (<t:string> name, <t:number>  value) end
function tex.setmuskip   (<t:string> name, <t:node>   value) end
function tex.setskip     (<t:string> name, <t:node>   value) end
function tex.settoks     (<t:string> name, <t:string>  value) end

function tex.setglue     (<t:string> name, <t:integer> value, ...) end
function tex.setmuglue   (<t:string> name, <t:integer> value, ...) end
```

Just to be clear, getting a glue has two variants, the third one is just a reduced variant:

```
function tex.getskip (
  <t:string> register -- can also be an index
)
  return <t:node> -- a glue_spec
end

function tex.getglue (
  <t:string> register, -- can also be an index
)
  return
    <t:integer> -- amount,
    <t:integer> -- stretch,
    <t:integer> -- shrink,
    <t:integer> -- stretchorder,
    <t:integer> -- shrinkorder
end

function tex.getglue (
  <t:string> register, -- can also be an index
```

```

    false
)
    return <t:integer> amount,
)
end

```

When `tex.gettoks` gets an extra argument `true` it will return a table with userdata tokens. For tokens registers we have an alternative where a catcode table is specified:

```

function tex.scantoks (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:integer> registerindex, -- or just a name
    <t:string> data
)
    -- no return values
end

```

Again there is the option to pass `"global"` as first argument. Here is an example that used the default ConT_EX catcode table index `tex.ctxcatcodes`.

```

local t = tex.scantoks("global",tex.ctxcatcodes,3,"$e=mc^2$")

```

This is a bit different getter that was introduced to accommodate interfacing between T_EX and Meta-Post. We specify what kind of parsing takes place:

```

function tex.expandasvalue (
    <t:integer> kind, -- how interpreted
    <t:string> name -- macro name
)
    return <t:integer> | <t:boolean> | <t:string>
end

```

0x00 none	0x03 dimension	0x06 float	0x09 direct
0x01 integer	0x04 skip	0x07 string	0x0A conditional
0x02 cardinal	0x05 boolean	0x08 node	

11.3.4 Fonts

There are a few functions that deal with fonts. The next function relates a control sequence to a font identifier. This is not to be confused with registering font data in the engine which happens with the functions in the font library. This is basically a setter that as one some in the token library also accepts prefixes (like `global`):

```

function tex.definefont (
    <t:string> name,
    <t:integer> fontid,
    <t:string> prefix
    -- there can be more prefixes
)
    -- no return values

```

end

In Lua_T_EX and other engines the file names are stored in the table of equivalents but not so in Lua-Meta_T_EX. But for old times sake we keep some getters in the tex library, as they are basically ‘convert’ commands. The next two are like `\fontid` and `\fontname`:

```
function tex.fontidentifier ( <t:integer> id ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.fontname      ( <t:integer> id ) return <t:string> end
```

When no id is given the current font is assumed, as if `\font` was the argument to the mentioned equivalent macros, so here we have: `<5: DejaVuSansMono @ 10.0pt>` and `DejaVuSansMono at 10.0pt`.

We can query the font id bound to a family (and optionally style):

```
function tex.getfontoffamily (
    <t:integer> family,
    <t:integer> style  -- 0, 1, 2
)
    return <t:integer> -- id
end
```

This is a good place to mention a pitfall when it comes to accessing some internals. Many variables are just that, variables, but there are also some that need an argument. This means that we get the following:

Lua call	result (if any)
<code>tex.fontname</code>	
<code>tex.fontidentifier</code>	
<code>tex.fontname()</code>	<code>DejaVuSerif at 10.0pt</code>
<code>tex.fontidentifier()</code>	<code><1: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt></code>
<code>tex.get("fontname",-1)</code>	<code>DejaVuSerif at 10.0pt</code>
<code>tex.get("fontidentifier",-1)</code>	<code><1: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt></code>

When called as ‘field’ we get nothing. When called as a function we get the font info of the id passes as argument. When no argument is given the current font is used. When we use a getter the id is mandate but a negative value will again make that the current font is used. Making the first two use the current font and the last two accept no second argument is technically possible but complicating the code for these few cases makes no sense. We already handle more than in Lua_T_EX anyway.

11.3.5 Box registers

It is possible to set and query actual boxes, coming for instance from `\hbox`, `\vbox` or `\vtop`, using the node interface as defined in the node library. In the setters you can pass as first argument global if needed. Alternatively you can use the `tex.box` array interface.

```
function tex.setbox (
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:node>    packedlist
)
    -- no return values
end
```

```

function tex.setbox (
    <t:string> name,
    <t:node>   packedlist
)
    -- no return values
end

```

The getters return a packed list or nil when the register is void.

```

function tex.getbox (
    <t:integer> index
)
    return <t:node>
end

```

```

function tex.getbox (
    <t:string> name
)
    return <t:node>
end

```

You can split a box:

```

local vlist =
function tex.splitbox (
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:integer> height,
    <t:integer> mode
)

```

The remainder is kept in the original box and a packaged vlist is returned. This operation is comparable to the `\vsplit` operation. The mode can be additional or exactly and concerns the split off box.

11.3.6 Marks

There is a dedicated getter for marks:

```

function tex.getmark (
    <t:string>   name,
    <t:integer>  markindex
)
    -- no return values
end

function tex.getmark ( )
    return <t:integer> -- max mark class
end

```

The first argument can also be an integer, actually the subtype of a mark node:

0x00 current

0x01 top

The largest used mark class is returned by:

```
function tex.getlargestusedmark ( )
    return <t:integer> -- max mark class
end
```

11.3.7 Inserts

Access to inserts is kind of special and often only makes sense when we are constructing the final page. Where in traditional T_EX inserts use a `\dimen`, `\count`, `\skip` and `\box`, registers, in LuaMetaT_EX we can use dedicated storage instead. This is why we need setters and getters.

```
function tex.getinsertdistance ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinsertmultiplier ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinsertlimit ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinsertcontent ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:node> end
function tex.getinsertheight ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinsertdepth ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinsertwidth ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
```

Only some properties can be set:

```
function tex.setinsertdistance ( <t:integer> class, <t:integer> distance ) end
function tex.setinsertmultiplier ( <t:integer> class, <t:integer> multiplier ) end
function tex.setinsertlimit ( <t:integer> class, <t:integer> limit ) end
function tex.setinsertcontent ( <t:integer> class, <t:node> list ) end
```

11.3.8 Local boxes

Local boxes, `\localleftbox`, `\localrightbox` and specific for LuaMetaT_EX, `\localmiddlebox`, are not regular box registers so they have dedicated accessors:

```
function tex.getlocalbox ( <t:integer> location )
    return <t:node>
end

function tex.setlocalbox ( <t:integer> location, <t:node> list )
    -- no return values
end
```

Instead of integers you can also use the name. Valid local box locations are:

```
0x00 left
0x01 right
0x02 middle
```

11.3.9 Constants

The name of this section is a bit misleading but reflects history. At some point LuaMetaT_EX got a way to store values differently than in registers because it felt a bit weird to use registers for what actually

are constant values. However, it was not that hard to make them behave like registers which opens up the possibility to reduce the number of registers at some point.

At the \TeX end we have `\integerdef`, `\dimensiondef`, `\floatdef`, `\gluespecdef` and `\mugluespecdef` but at the Lua end we (currently) only handle the first three.

```
function tex.dimensiondef ( <t:string> name ) end
function tex.integerdef   ( <t:string> name ) end
function tex.positdef     ( <t:string> name ) end
```

These are the setters:

```
function tex.setdimensionvalue ( <t:string> name, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setintegervalue   ( <t:string> name, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setcardinalvalue  ( <t:string> name, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setpositvalue     ( <t:string> name, <t:number>  value ) end
```

and these the getters:

```
function tex.getdimensionvalue ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getintegervalue   ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getcardinalvalue  ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getpositvalue     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:number>  end
```

Now, in order to make access more convenient, the getters and setters that deal with these quantities that we discussed in a previous section also handle these ‘constants’.

The following helper is a bit tricky:

```
function tex.getregisterindex ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The integer that is returned can be used instead of a name when accessing a register,

```
\newcount \MyCount \newinteger \MyInteger
\newdimen \MyDimen \newdimension \MyDimension
```

```
\startluacode
    context("[%s] [%s] [%s] [%s]",
        tex.getregisterindex("MyCount"),
        tex.getregisterindex("MyInteger"),
        tex.getregisterindex("MyDimen"),
        tex.getregisterindex("MyDimension")
    )
\stopluacode
```

This will only show something for the registers:

```
[272] [] [269] []
```

This is why we have a more complete completed solution:

```
tex.isattribute ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
```

```

tex.iscount      ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.isdimen      ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.isfloat      ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.isglue       ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.ismuglue     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.ismuskip     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.isskip       ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.istoks       ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.isbox        ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end

```

We now use this:

```

\startluacode
  context("[%s] [%s] [%s] [%s]",
    tex.iscount("MyCount"),
    tex.iscount("MyInteger"),
    tex.isdimen("MyDimen"),
    tex.isdimen("MyDimension")
  )
\stopluacode

```

This time all four names are resolved:

```
[272] [112321] [269] [250825]
```

The larger numbers are references to these ‘constants’. Using these instead of names in the getters (like `getcount` and `getdimen`) can be more efficient when the number times we need access is very large because we bypass a hash lookup. Of course these numbers are to be seen as abstract references, so these larger numbers are unpredictable.

11.3.10 Nesting

The virtual table `nest` contains the currently active semantic nesting state (think building boxes). It has two main parts: a zero-based array of userdata for the semantic nest itself, and the numerical value `ptr`, which gives the highest available index. Neither the array items in `nest[]` nor `ptr` can be assigned to, because this would confuse the typesetting engine beyond repair, but you can assign to the individual values inside the array items.

The zero entry `nest[0]` is the outermost (main vertical list) level while `tex.nest [tex.nest.ptr]` is the current nest state. The next example shows all of this:

```

\setbox\scratchbox\vbox\bgroup
  \vbox\bgroup
    \startluacode
      for i=0,tex.nest.ptr do
        context(tostring(tex.nest[i]))
        context.space()
        context(tostring(tex.nest[i].prevdepth))
        context.par()
      end
    \stopluacode
  \endgroup
\endgroup

```

\egroup

\egroup

tex.nest.instance: 000005b2df178060 266685

tex.nest.instance: 000005b2df1763e0 -65536000

tex.nest.instance: 000005b2df176140 -65536000

The current nest level (tex.nest.ptr is also available with:

```
function tex.getnestlevel ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The getter function is tex.getnest. You can pass a number (which gives you a list), nothing or top, which returns the topmost list, or the string ptr which gives you the index of the topmost list. The complete list of fields is: delimiter, direction, head, mathbegin, mathdir, mathend, mathflatten, mathmainstyle, mathmode, mathparentstyle, mathscale, mathstyle, modeline, noad, prevdepth, prevgraf, spacefactor, tail.

Possible modes are:

0x00	unset	0x02	horizontal
0x01	vertical	0x03	math

Valid directions are:

0x00	lefttoright
0x01	righttoleft

Math styles conforms to:

0x00	display	0x04	script
0x01	crampeddisplay	0x05	crampedscript
0x02	text	0x06	scriptscript
0x03	crampedtext	0x07	crampedscriptscript

The math begin and end classes can be built-in or ConT_EXt specific:

0x00	ordinary	0x0B	over	0x17	exponential	0x22	textpunctuation
0x01	operator	0x0C	fraction	0x18	integral	0x23	unspaced
0x02	binary	0x0D	radical	0x19	ellipsis	0x24	experimental
0x03	relation	0x0E	middle	0x1A	function	0x25	fake
0x04	open	0x10	accent	0x1B	digit	0x26	numbergroup
0x05	close	0x11	fenced	0x1C	division	0x27	maybeordinary
0x06	punctuation	0x12	ghost	0x1D	factorial	0x28	maybe relation
0x07	variable	0x13	vcenter	0x1E	wrapped	0x29	maybe binary
0x08	active	0x14	explicit	0x1F	construct	0x2A	chemicalbond
0x09	inner	0x15	imaginary	0x20	dimension	0x2B	implication
0x0A	under	0x16	differential	0x21	unary	0x2C	continuation

The helpers are:

```

function tex.getnest ( <t:integer> level )
    return <t:userdata> -- nest
end

function tex.getnest ( <t:integer> level, <t:string> name )
    return <t:whatever> -- value
end

function tex.setnest ( <t:integer> level, <t:string> name ), <t:whatever> value )
    -- no return values
end

```

Instead of an integer level you can use the keywords `ptr` and `top` instead of the current level or zero.

There are a few special cases that we make an exception for: `prevdepth`, `prevgraf` and `spacefactor`. These normally are accessed via the `tex.nest` table:

```

tex.nest[tex.nest.ptr].prevdepth = <t:integer> value
tex.nest[tex.nest.ptr].spacefactor = <t:integer> value

```

However, the following also works for the current level:

```

tex.prevdepth = <t:integer> value
tex.spacefactor = <t:integer> value

```

Keep in mind that when you mess with node lists directly at the Lua end you might need to update the top of the nesting stack's `\prevdepth` explicitly as there is no way `LuaTeX` can guess your intentions. By using the accessor in the `tex` tables, you get and set the values at the top of the nesting stack.

11.3.11 Directions

In `LuaMetaTeX` we only have left-to-right (`l2r`) and right-to-left (`r2l`) directions, contrary to `LuaTeX` that has few more. In the end those made no sense because the typesetter is not geared for that and demands can be met by a combination of `TeX` macros and Lua code.

There are two sets of helpers:

```

function tex.gettexdir ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getlinedir ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getmathdir ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getpardir ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getboxdir ( ) return <t:integer> end

```

and:

```

function tex.settexdir ( <t:integer> direction ) end -- no return values
function tex.setlinedir ( <t:integer> direction ) end -- no return values
function tex.setmathdir ( <t:integer> direction ) end -- no return values
function tex.setpardir ( <t:integer> direction ) end -- no return values
function tex.setboxdir ( <t:integer> direction ) end -- no return values

```

For old times sake you can also set them using the virtual interfaces, like

```
tex.textdirection = 1
```

but in ConT_EXt we consider this obsolete. In LuaMetaT_EX we dropped the direction related keywords and only use numbers:

```
0x00 lefttoright
0x01 righttoleft
```

11.3.12 Special lists

The virtual table `tex.lists` contains the set of internal registers that keep track of building page lists. We have the following lists plus some extras: `alignhead`, `bestpagebreak`, `bestsize`, `contributehead`, `holdhead`, `insertheights`, `insertpenalties`, `leastpagecost`, `pagediscardshead`, `pagehead`, `pageinsertthead`, `postadjustthead`, `postmigratehead`, `preadjustthead`, `premigratehead`, `splitdiscardshead`, `temphead`. Using these assumes that you know what T_EX is doing.

The getter and setter functions are `getlist` and `setlist`. You have to be careful with what you set as T_EX can have expectations with regards to how a list is constructed or in what state it is.

```
function tex.getlist ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:whatever> -- value
end

function tex.setlist ( <t:string> name ), <t:whatever> value )
    -- no return values
end
```

You can mess up I ways that make the engine fail, for instance due to wrongly linked lists, for instance maybe circular, or invalid nodes.

11.3.13 Printing

The engine reads tokens from file, token lists and Lua. When we print from Lua it ends up in a special data structure that efficiently handle strings, tokens and nodes because we can push all three back to T_EX. It is important to notice that when we have a call to Lua, that new input is collected and only pushed onto the input stack when we are done. The total amount of returnable text from a `\directlua` command or primitive driven function call is only limited by available system ram. However, each separate printed string has to fit completely in T_EX's input buffer. The result of using these functions from inside callbacks is undefined at the moment. First we look at `tex.print` and `tex.sprint`.

```
function tex.print ( -- also tex.sprint
    <t:string> data,
    -- more strings
)
    -- nothing to return
end

function tex.print ( -- also tex.sprint
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:string> data,
    -- more strings
```

```

)
    -- nothing to return
end

function tex.print ( -- also tex.sprint
    <t:table> data
)
    -- nothing to return
end

function tex.print ( -- also tex.sprint
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:table> data
)
    -- nothing to return
end

```

With `tex.print` each string argument is treated by $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ as a separate input line. If there is a table argument instead of a list of strings, this has to be a consecutive array of strings to print (the first non-string value will stop the printing process). The optional first integer parameter can be used to print the strings using the catcode regime defined by `\catcodetable`. A value of -1 means that the currently active catcode regime is used while -2 gives a result similar to `\the\toks`: all category codes are 12 (other) except for the space character, that has category code 10 (space). An invalid catcode table index is silently ignored, and the currently active catcode regime is used instead. The very last string of the very last `tex.print` command in a `\directlua` call will not have the `\endlinechar` appended, all others do.

In the case if `tex.sprint` each string argument is treated by $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ as a special kind of input line that makes it suitable for use as a partial line input mechanism:

- $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ does not switch to the ‘new line’ state, so that leading spaces are not ignored.
- No `\endlinechar` is inserted.
- Trailing spaces are not removed. Note that this does not prevent $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ itself from eating spaces as result of interpreting the line. For example, in

```
before\directlua{tex.sprint("\relax")tex.sprint(" in between")}after
```

the space before `in between` will be gobbled as a result of the ‘normal’ scanning of `\relax`.

Although this needs to be used with care, in both function you can also pass token or node userdata objects. These get injected into the stream. Tokens had best be valid tokens, while nodes need to be around when they get injected. Therefore it is important to realize the following:

- When you inject a token, you need to pass a valid token userdata object. This object will be collected by Lua when it no longer is referenced. When it gets printed to $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ the token itself gets copied so there is no interference with the Lua garbage collection. You manage the object yourself. Because tokens are actually just numbers, there is no real extra overhead at the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ end.
- When you inject a node, you need to pass a valid node userdata object. The node related to the object will not be collected by Lua when it no longer is referenced. It lives on at the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ end in its own memory space. When it gets printed to $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ the node reference is used assuming that node

stays around. There is no Lua garbage collection involved. Again, you manage the object yourself. The node itself is freed when T_EX is done with it.

If you consider the last remark you might realize that we have a problem when a printed mix of strings, tokens and nodes is reused. Inside T_EX the sequence becomes a linked list of input buffers. So, "123" or "\foo{123}" gets read and parsed on the fly, while <t:token> already is tokenized and effectively is a token list now. A <t:node> is also tokenized into a token list but it has a reference to a real node. Normally this goes fine. But now assume that you store the whole lot in a macro: in that case the tokenized node can be flushed many times. But, after the first such flush the node is used and its memory freed. You can prevent this by using copies which is controlled by setting `\luacopyinputnodes` to a non-zero value. This is one of these fuzzy areas you have to live with if you really mess with these low level issues.

The `tex.cprint` function is similar to `tex.sprint` but instead of an optional first catcodetable it takes a catcode value, like:

```
function tex.cprint (
    <t:integer> catcode,
    <string>    data
    -- more strings
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Of course the other three ways to call it are also supported. This might explain better:

```
\startluacode
tex.cprint( 1," 1: ${\foo}") tex.print("\par") -- a lot of \bgroup s
tex.cprint( 2," 2: ${\foo}") tex.print("\par") -- matching \egroup s
tex.cprint( 9," 9: ${\foo}") tex.print("\par") -- all get ignored
tex.cprint(10,"10: ${\foo}") tex.print("\par") -- all become spaces
tex.cprint(11,"11: ${\foo}") tex.print("\par") -- letters
tex.cprint(12,"12: ${\foo}") tex.print("\par") -- other characters
tex.cprint(14,"14: ${\foo}") tex.print("\par") -- comment triggers
\stopluacode
```

We get two lines separate by one with only spaces:

```
11: ${\foo}

12: ${\foo}
```

A variant on `tex.sprint` is the next one:

```
function tex.tprint (
    { <t:integer> catcodetable, <string> data },
    -- more tables
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The `tex.write` function is a quick way to dump information. Each string argument is treated as a special kind of input line that only has spaces and letters.

```
function tex.write ( <t:string> data, ... )
    -- no return values
end
```

```
function tex.write ( <t:table> data)
    -- no return values
end
```

Often you can mix strings, nodes and tokens in a print but you might want to check beforehand what you pass:

```
function tex.isprintable ( <t:whatever> object )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

11.3.14 Numbers and dimensions

We can rounds a Lua number to an integer that is in the range of a valid T_EX register value. If the number starts out of range, it generates a ‘number too big’ error as well.

```
function tex.round ( <t:number> n )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

In many places the engine multiplies and divides integers and ensures proper rounding. In LuaMeta-T_EX some (new) mechanisms use doubles and round, especially when multiple scale value accumulate beyond the available integer range. The next function multiplies two Lua numbers and returns a rounded number that is in the range of a valid T_EX register value. In the table version, it creates a copy of the table with all numeric top-level values scaled in that manner. If the multiplied number(s) are of range, it generates ‘number too big’ error(s) as well.

```
function tex.scale ( <t:number> original, <t:number> factor )
    return <t:integer> -- result
end
```

```
function tex.scale ( <t:table> originals, <t:number> factor )
    return <t:table> -- results
end
```

Here are companions to the primitives `\number` and `\romannumeral`. Both take the long route: the string goes to T_EX, gets tokenized, then converted to what is wanted and finally ends up in Lua. They can be used like:

```
function tex.number      ( <t:integer> original ) return <t:string> end
function tex.romannumeral ( <t:integer> original ) return <t:string> end
```

The dimension converter takes a string and returns an integer that represents an dimension in scaled points. When a number is passed it gets rounded.

```
function tex.toscaled ( <t:string> original ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.toscaled ( <t:number> original ) return <t:integer> end
```


For completeness the engine also provides `tex.tonumber`:

```
function tex.tonumber ( <t:string> original ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.tonumber ( <t:number> original ) return <t:integer> end
```

For parsing the string, the same scanning and conversion rules are used that LuaTeX would use if it was scanning a dimension specifier in its TeX-like input language (this includes generating errors for bad values), expect for the following:

1. only explicit values are allowed, control sequences are not handled
2. infinite dimension units (`fil...`) are forbidden
3. mu units do not generate an error (but may not be useful either)

11.3.15 Primitives

Where in LuaTeX we explicitly need to enable the core set of primitives, LuaMetaTeX does that for you. The only reason that we still have a way to enable them is that it's a convenient way to create prefixed copies.

```
function tex.enableprimitives (
    <t:string> prefix,
    <t:table> names
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Only valid primitive names are processed. Because it is no fun to enter the names, there is this one. It has two variants, where the boolean variant returns a table with all primitives.

```
function tex.extraprimtives ( <t:string> subset, ... )
    return <t:table> -- names
end

function tex.extraprimtives ( <t:true> )
    return <t:table> -- names
end
```

Possible values for subset are:

```
0x01 tex
0x02 etex
0x04 luatex
```

You can feed the result of the last one in `tex.enableprimitives`. If there is already a macro with that name it will not be overloaded.

```
tex.enableprimitives('normal',tex.extraprimtives(true))}
```

A complete list of primitives can be requested by:

```
function tex.primitives ( )
    return <t:table> -- names
end
```

of course the fact that the name is there doesn't mean that it has the same meaning.

A complete list of all hash entries can be asked for by the following function, but in ConT_EXt it will be a big one, a bit more than 50.000 names, many of which are kind of weird because they use some namespace.

```
function tex.hashtokens ( )
  return <t:table> -- names
end
```

11.3.16 Values (constants)

The engine uses lots of very specific values (constants) for control. These can be status values (where are we currently), options (in nodes), control parameters (typesetting), etc. and all are available in lists that relate numbers to strings. Here is the complete list. We show the results in various places in the documentation. The advantage is that the engine is partly self documenting.

```
function tex.getadjustoptionvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getalignmentcontextvalues  ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getappendlinecontextvalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getautomigrationvalues     ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getautoparagraphvalues     ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getbreakcontextvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getbuildcontextvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getcharactercontrolvalues   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getcharactertagvalues       ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getdirectionvalues         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getdiscoptionvalues        ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getdiscpartvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getdoublescriptoptionvalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.geterrorvalues             ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getfillvalues              ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getflagvalues              ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getfrozenparvalues         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getglueoptionvalues        ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getglyphdiscvalues         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getglyphoptionvalues       ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getglyphprotectionvalues   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getgroupvalues             ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getthyphenationvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getiftypes                 ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getinteractionmodes        ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getiovalues                ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getkerneloptionvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlinebreakparameterfields ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlinebreakresultfields   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlinebreakstatevalues    ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlistanchorvalues        ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlistfields              ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlistgeometryvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
```

```

function tex.getlistsignvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlocalboxlocations   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathclassoptionvalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathcontrolvalues   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathgluevalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathoptionvalues    ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathparametervalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathscriptordervalue ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathscriptsmodevalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathstylenamevalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathstylevalues     ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathsurroundvalues  ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathvariantpresets  ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathvariantvalues   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmarknames           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmodevalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getnestfields          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getnoadooptionvalues   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getnormalizelinevalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getnormalizeparvalues  ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getpacktypevalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getpagecontextvalues   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getpagestatevalues     ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getparametermodevalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getparcontextvalues    ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getparmodevalues       ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getpartriggervalue     ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getpenaltyoptionvalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getprepoststatevalues  ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getprimitiveorigins    ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getprotrusionboundaryvalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getruleoptionvalues    ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getrunstatevalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getshapingpenaltiesvalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getspecialmathclassvalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getspecificationoptionvalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.gettextcontrolvalues   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.gettuleaderlocationvalues ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getunitclassvalues     ( ) return <t:table> end

```

11.3.17 Glyphs

There are a few (internal) integer parameters that relate to glyphs, `\glyphdatafield`, `\glyphstatefield`, `\glyphscriptfield` as well as the three scales `\glyphscale`, `\glyphxscale` and `\glyphyscale`, and for these we have fast accessors:

```

function tex.setglyphdata   ( <t:integer> ) end
function tex.setglyphstate  ( <t:integer> ) end
function tex.setglyphscript ( <t:integer> ) end

```

and

```
function tex.getglyphdata ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getglyphstate ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getglyphscript ( ) return <t:integer> end
```

The scale getter returns more:

```
function tex.getglyphscales ( )
  return
    <t:integer>, -- scale
    <t:integer>, -- xscale
    <t:integer>, -- yscale
    <t:integer> -- data
end
```

11.3.18 Whatever

We have no backend so all that the next does is wiping the box:

```
function tex.shipout ( <t:integer> index )
  -- no return values
end
```

This helper function is useful during line break calculations. The arguments *t* and *s* are scaled values; the function returns the badness for when total *t* is supposed to be made from amounts that sum to *s*. The returned number is a reasonable approximation of $100(t/s)^3$.

```
function tex.badness (
  <t:integer> t,
  <t:integer> s
)
  return <t:integer>
end
```

The page builder can be in different states, so here is how you get the current state:

```
function tex.getpagestate ( )
  return <t:integer>
end
```

possible states are:

0x00	none	0x02	box
0x01	insert	0x03	rule

You can also check if we're in the output routine:

```
function tex.getoutputactive ( )
  return <t:boolean>
end
```

An example of a (possible error triggering) complication is that $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ expects to be in some state, say horizontal mode, and you have to make sure it is when you start feeding back something from Lua into $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. Normally a user will not run into issues but when you start writing tokens or nodes or have a nested run there can be situations that you need to enforce horizontal mode. There is no recipe for this and intercepting possible cases would weaken Lua $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$'s flexibility. Therefore we provide `forcehmode` which is similar to `\quitvmode` at the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ end, although in Con $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ t, that had it already, we always use `\dontleavehmode` as name.

```
function tex.forcehmode ( )
    -- no return values
end
```

The last node in the current list is queried with the following helper. If there is no node you get `nil`'s back.

```
function tex.lastnodetype ( )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- type
        <t:integer> -- subtype
end
```

The current mode is available with:

```
function tex.getmode ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

Currently we're in mode `0x2`, a number that you can give meaning with `tex.getmodevalues()`:

```
0x00  unset
0x01  vertical
0x02  horizontal
0x03  math
```

The run state can be fetched with:

```
function tex.getrunstate ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

which returns one of:

```
0x00  initializing
0x01  updating
0x02  production
```

When we load create the format file we're initializing and when we then do a regular run we are in production. The updating state is just there so that we can deal with overload protection. In that case we need to honor the `\enforced` prefix, that can only be used when not in production mode. When a runtime module nevertheless wants to use that prefix it can (from Lua) set the mode to updating. This is all kind of Con $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ t specific because there we use the overload protection mechanism.

11.3.19 Files and lines

You can register a file id and line number in a glyph, hlist and vlist nodes, for instance for implementing a SyncTeX emulator. There are some helpers that relate to this. When the mode is zero, no registering will be done, when set to one, lists will be tagged and larger values make that glyphs will be tagged too.

```
function tex.setinputstatemode ( <t:integer> mode )
    -- no return values
end
```

The file is registered as a number and the engine is agnostic about what it refers too. The same is true for lines. In fact, you can use these fields for whatever purpose you like.

```
function tex.setinputstatefile ( <t:integer> fileid )
    -- no return values
end

function tex.setinputstateline ( <t:integer> linenumber )
    -- no return values
end
```

The getters just return the currently set values:

```
function tex.getinputstatemode ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinputstatefile ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinputstateline ( ) return <t:integer> end
```

The file and line number are bound to the current input which can be nested. So, nesting is handled by the engine. However, you can overload that with the following two helpers. The values set will win over the ones bound to the current input file.

```
function tex.forceinputstatefile ( <t:integer> fileid )
    -- no return values
end

function tex.forceinputstateline ( <t:integer> linenumber )
    -- no return values
end
```

11.3.20 Interacting

In LuaMetaTeX valid interaction modes are:

0x00	batch	0x02	scroll
0x01	nonstop	0x03	errorstop

You can get and set the mode with:

```
function tex.getinteraction ( )
    return <t:integer> -- mode
```

```

end
function tex.setinteraction ( <t:integer> mode )
    -- no return values
end

```

When an error occurs it can be intercepted by a callback in which case you have to handle the feedback yourself. For this we have two helpers:

```

function tex.showcontext ( ) end
function tex.gethelptext ( ) end

```

An error can be triggered with:

```

function tex.error (
    <t:string> error,
    <t:string> help
)
    -- no return values
end

```

Of course these are also intercepted by the callback, when set, in which case the help text can be fetched. There can arise a situation where the engine is in a state where properly dealing with errors has become a problem. In that case you can use:

```

function tex.fatalerror ( <t:string> error) end

```

In this case the run will be aborted. For the record: in ConT_EXt any error will quit the run, just because it makes no sense to try to recover from unpredictable situations and a fix is needed anyway.

11.3.21 Save levels

When you start a group or any construct that behaves like one, for instance boxing, the save stack is ‘pushed’ which means that a boundary is set. When the group ends the values that were saved in the current region (bounded) are restored. You can also do this in Lua:

```

function tex.pushsavelevel ( ) end
function tex.popsavelevel ( ) end

```

This is a way to create grouping when in Lua so that when you set some register the engine will handle the restore.

11.3.22 Local control

When we talk about local control we mean expanding T_EX code in a nested main loop. We start with explaining `tex.runlocal`. The first argument can be a number (of a token register), a macro name, the name of a token list or some (userdata) token made at the Lua end. The second argument is optional and when true forces expansion inside a definition. The optional third argument can be used to force grouping. The return value indicates an error: 0 means no error, 1 means that a bad register number has been passed, a value of 2 indicated an unknown register or macro name, while 3 reports that the macro is not suitable for local control because it takes arguments.

```

\scratchtoks{This is {\bf an example} indeed.}%

```

```
\startluacode
  tex.runlocal("scratchtoks")
\stopluacode
```

This typesets: This is **an example** indeed.

However, the neat thing about local control is that it happens immediately, so not after the Lua blob ended as with `tex.print ("\\the\\scratchtoks")`.

```
\scratchtoks{\setbox\scratchbox\hbox{This is {\bf an example} indeed.}}%
\startluacode
  tex.runlocal("scratchtoks")
  context("The width is: %p",tex.box.scratchbox.width)
\stopluacode
```

This typesets: The width is: 140.53223pt

```
function tex.runlocal (
  <t:string> name,
  <t:boolean> expand,
  <t:boolean> group
)
  return <t:integer> -- state
end
```

You can quit a local controlled expansion with the following, but if it works depends on the situation.

```
function tex.quitlocal ( )
  -- no return values
end
```

There might be situations that you push something from Lua to T_EX in a local call and don't want interference. In that case wrapping might help but it is not that well tested yet:

```
function tex.pushlocal ( )
  -- no return values
end

function tex.poplocal ( )
  -- no return values
end
```

The current level of local calls is available with:

```
function tex.getlocallevel ( )
  return <t:integer>
end
```

You can also run a string through T_EX; the last three booleans are optional.

```
function tex.runlocal (
  <t:string> str,
  <t:boolean> expand_in_definitions,
```



```

    <t:boolean> group,
    <t:boolean> ignore_undefind_cs
)
-- no return values
end

function tex.runlocal (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:string> str,
    <t:boolean> expand_in_definitions,
    <t:boolean> group,
    <t:boolean> ignore_undefind_cs
)
-- no return values
end

```

11.3.23 Math

There are some setters and getters that relate to the math sub engine. The setter has two variants:

```

function tex.setmathcode (
    <t:integer> target,
    <t:integer> class,
    <t:integer> family,
    <t:integer> character
)
-- no return values
end

function tex.setmathcode (
    <t:integer> target,
    <t:table> {
        <t:integer>, -- class
        <t:integer>, -- family
        <t:integer> -- character
    }
)
-- no return values
end

```

But there are two getters:

```

function tex.getmathcode (
    <t:integer> target
)
return <t:table> {
    <t:integer>, -- class
    <t:integer>, -- family
    <t:integer> -- character
}

```

```

end

function tex.getmathcodes (
  <t:integer> target
)
  return
    <t:integer>, -- class
    <t:integer>, -- family
    <t:integer>  -- character
end

```

Delcodes have different properties:

```

function tex.setdelcode (
  <t:integer> target,
  <t:integer> smallfamily,
  <t:integer> smallcharacter,
  <t:integer> largefamily,
  <t:integer> largecharacter
)
  -- no return values
end

function tex.setdelcode (
  <t:integer> target,
  <t:table> {
    <t:integer>, -- smallfamily,
    <t:integer>, -- smallcharacter,
    <t:integer>, -- largefamily,
    <t:integer>  -- largecharacter
  }
)
  -- no return values
end

```

Again there two getters:

```

function tex.getdelcode (
  <t:integer> target
)
  return <t:table> {
    <t:integer>, -- smallfamily,
    <t:integer>, -- smallcharacter,
    <t:integer>, -- largefamily,
    <t:integer>  -- largecharacter
  }
end

function tex.getdelcodes (
  <t:integer> target
)

```

```

return
    <t:integer>, -- smallfamily,
    <t:integer>, -- smallcharacter,
    <t:integer>, -- largefamily,
    <t:integer>  -- largecharacter
end

```

In LuaMetaTeX the engine can do without these delimiter specifications so they might eventually go away. The reason is that when a delimiter is needed we also accent a math character. When we use an OpenType model it's likely that the large character comes from the same font as the small character. And because the font is loaded under Lua control one can always use a virtual character to refer to an other font, something that we do in ConTeXt when we load a Type1 based math font.

A named math character is defined with `mathchardef` but contrary to its TeX counterpart `\mathchardef` it accepts three four extra parameters. The `properties`, `group` and `index` are data fields that the (for instance) the backend can use. We make no assumptions about their use because it is macro package dependent. There can be flags before the three optional parameters.

```

function tex.mathchardef (
    <t:string>  name
    <t:integer> class,
    <t:integer> family,
    <t:integer> character,
    <t:integer> flags,  -- zero or more
    <t:integer> properties,
    <t:integer> group,
    <t:integer> index
)
    -- no return values
end

```

The `\chardef` equivalent is:

```

function tex.chardef (
    <t:string>  name
    <t:integer> character,
    <t:integer> flags,  -- zero or more
)
    -- no return values
end

```

Math parameters have their own setter and getter. The first string is the parameter name minus the leading `Umath`, and the second string is the style name minus the trailing `style`. A value is either an integer (representing a dimension or number) or a list of glue components.

```

function tex.setmath (
    <t:string>  prefix, -- zero or more
    <t:integer> parameter,
    <t:integer> style,
    <t:integer> value,  -- one or more
)

```

```

    -- no return values
end

function tex.setmath (
    <t:integer> parameter,
    <t:integer> style
)
    return <t:integer> -- one or more value
end

```

For the next one you need to know what style variants which we will not discuss here:

```

function tex.getmathstylevariant (
    <t:integer> style,
    <t:integer> parameter
)
    <t:integer>, -- value
    <t:integer>  -- variant
end

```

11.3.24 Processing

You should not expect too much from the `triggerbuildpage` helpers because often $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ doesn't do much if it thinks nothing has to be done, but it might be useful for some applications. It just does as it says: it calls the internal function that builds a page, given that there is something to build.

```

function tex.triggerbuildpage ( )
    -- no return values
end

```

This function resets the parameters that $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ normally resets when a new paragraph is seen.

```

function tex.resetparagraph ( )
    -- no return values
end

```

The linebreak algorithm can also be applied explicitly to a node list that better be right. There is some checking done with respect to the beginning and paragraph and interfering glue.

```

function tex.linebreak (
    <t:direct> listhead,
    <t:table> parameters
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- nodelist
        <t:table>   -- info
end

```

There are a lot of parameters that drive the process and many can be set. The interface might be extended in the future. Valid parameter fields are: `adjacentdemerits`, `adjdemerits`, `adjustspacing`, `adjustspacingshrink`, `adjustspacingstep`, `adjustspacingstretch`, `baselineskip`,

brokenpenalties, brokenpenalty, clubpenalties, clubpenalty, direction, displaywidowpenalties, displaywidowpenalty, doublehyphendemerits, emergencyextrastretch, emergencyleftskip, emergencyrightskip, emergencystretch, exhyphenpenalty, finalhyphendemerits, fitnessclasses, hangafter, hangindent, hsize, hyphenationmode, hyphenpenalty, interlinepenalties, interlinepenalty, lastlinefit, leftskip, lefttwindemerits, linebreakchecks, linebreakoptional, linepenalty, lineskip, lineskiplimit, looseness, orphanlinefactors, orphanpenalties, parfillleftskip, parfillrightskip, parinitleftskip, parinitrightskip, parpasses, parshape, pretolerance, protrudechars, rightskip, righttwindemerits, shapingpenaltiesmode, shapingpenalty, singlelinepenalty, toddlerpenalties, tolerance, tracingfitness, tracingparagraphs, tracingpasses, widowpenalties, widowpenalty. There is no need to set them (at all) because the usual \TeX parameters apply when they are absent.

The result is a node list, it still needs to be vpacked if you want to assign it to a `\vbox`. The returned info table contains the following fields: demerits, looseness, prevdepth, prevgraf.

A list can be ‘prepared’ for a linebreak call with the next function. Normally the linebreak routine will do this. The return values are pointers to some relevant nodes.

```
function tex.preparelinebreak (
  <t:direct> listhead
)
  return
    <t:node>, -- nodelist
    <t:table> -- info
    <t:direct>, -- par (head)
    <t:direct>, -- tail
    <t:direct>, -- parinitleftskip
    <t:direct>, -- parinitrightskip
    <t:direct>, -- parfillleftskip
    <t:direct> -- parfillrightskip
end

function tex.snapshotpar ( <t:integer> bitset )
  return <t:integer> -- state (bitset)
end
```

The bitset is made from:

0x00000001	hsize	0x00000800	linepenalty	0x00400000	toddlerpenalty
0x00000002	skip	0x00001000	clubpenalty	0x00800000	emergency
0x00000004	hang	0x00002000	widowpenalty	0x01000000	parpasses
0x00000008	indent	0x00004000	displaypenalty	0x02000000	singlelinepenalty
0x00000010	parfill	0x00008000	brokenpenalty	0x04000000	hyphenpenalty
0x00000020	adjust	0x00010000	demerits	0x08000000	exhyphenpenalty
0x00000040	protrude	0x00020000	shape	0x10000000	linebreakchecks
0x00000080	tolerance	0x00040000	line	0x20000000	twindemerits
0x00000100	stretch	0x00080000	hyphenation	0x40000000	fitnessclasses
0x00000200	looseness	0x00100000	shapingpenalty		
0x00000400	lastline	0x00200000	orphanpenalty		

This one is handy when you mess with lists and want to take some parameters into account that

matter when building a paragraph. The returned fields are: `hangafter`, `hangindent`, `hsize`, `leftskip`, `parindent`, `parshape`, `rightskip`.

```
function tex.getparstate ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

A par shape normally is discarded when the paragraph ends but we can continue using it if needed. In that case we can shift the current array and either or not rotate.

```
function tex.shiftparshape (
    <t:integer> shift,
    <t:boolean> rotate
)
    -- no return values
end
```

A specification, like `\parshape` or `\widowpenalties` can be fetched with:

```
function tex.getspecification ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:table>
end
```

11.4 The configuration

The global `texconfig` table is created empty. A startup Lua script could fill this table with a number of settings that are read out by the executable after loading and executing the startup file. Watch out: some keys are different from LuaTeX, which is a side effect of a more granular and dynamic memory management.

key	type	default	comment
<code>buffer size</code>	number/table	1000000	input buffer bytes
<code>file size</code>	number/table	1000	max number of open files
<code>font size</code>	number/table	250	number of permitted fonts
<code>hash size</code>	number/table	150000	number of hash entries
<code>input size</code>	number/table	10000	maximum input stack
<code>language size</code>	number/table	250	number of permitted languages
<code>mark size</code>	number/table	50	number of mark classes
<code>nest size</code>	number/table	1000	max depth of nesting
<code>node size</code>	number/table	1000000	max node memory (various size)
<code>parameter size</code>	number/table	20000	max size of parameter stack
<code>pool size</code>	number/table	10000000	max number of string bytes
<code>save size</code>	number/table	100000	max size of save stack
<code>string size</code>	number/table	150000	max number of strings
<code>token size</code>	number/table	1000000	max token memory
<code>expand size</code>	number/table	10000	max expansion nesting
<code>property size</code>	number	0	initial size of node properties table
<code>function size</code>	number	0	initial size of Lua functions table
<code>error line size</code>	number	79	how much of an error is shown

halferrorlinesize	number	50	idem
formatname	string		
jobname	string		
starttime	number		for testing only
useutctime	number		for testing only
permitloadlib	number		for testing only

If no format name or jobname is given on the command line, the related keys will be tested first instead of simply quitting. The statistics library has methods for tracking down how much memory is available and has been configured. The size parameters take a number (for the maximum allocated size) or a table with three possible keys: size, plus (for extra size) and step for the increment when more memory is needed. They all start out with a hard coded minimum and also have an hard coded maximum, the the configured size sits somewhere between these.

11.5 Input and output

This library takes care of the low-level I/O interface: writing to the log file and/or the console. The log file is registered with the following function:

```
function texio.setlogfile ( <t:file> handle )
    -- no return values
end
```

When \TeX serializes something it uses a selector to determine where it goes. The public selectors are:

```
0x01 logfile
0x02 terminal
0x03 terminal_and_logfile
```

Internal we have a string selector, Lua buffer selector, and a so called pseudo selector that is used when we want to show the context of an error and that keeps track of the position. These are not opened up.

We start with `texio.write`. Without the `target` argument, it writes all given strings to the same location(s) that \TeX writes messages to at that moment. If `\batchmode` is in effect, it writes only to the log, otherwise it writes to the log and the terminal. A target can be a number or string.

```
function texio.write ( <t:string> target, <t:string> s, ...)
    -- no return values
end

function texio.write ( <t:string> s, ... )
    -- no return values
end
```

If several strings are given, and if the first of these strings is or might be one of the targets above, the target must be specified explicitly to prevent Lua from interpreting the first string as the target.

The next function behaves like the above, but makes sure that the given strings will appear at the beginning of a new line. You can pass a single empty string if you only want to move to the next line.

One reason why log output can slow down a run is that the engine works piecewise instead of printing lines. Deep down many writes go character by character because messages can occur everywhere during the expansion process.

```
function texio.writel ( <t:string> s, ... )
    -- no return values
end
```

The selector variants below always expect a selector, so there is no misunderstanding if logfile is a string or selector.

```
function texio.writeselector ( <t:string> s, ... )
    -- no return values
end
```

```
function texio.writeselectornl ( <t:string> s, ... )
    -- no return values
end
```

```
function texio.writeselectorlf ( <t:string> s, ... )
    -- no return values
end
```

The next function should be used with care. It acts as `\endinput` but at the Lua end. You can use it to (sort of) force a jump back to \TeX . Normally a Lua call will just collect prints and at the end bump an input level and flush these prints. This function can help you stay at the current level but you need to know what you're doing (or more precise: what \TeX is doing with input).

```
function texio.closeinput ( )
    -- no return values
end
```


math

12 Math

12.1 Introduction

There is a lot to tell about math typesetting in LuaMetaTeX but plenty is covered in articles, progress reports and manuals. Here we limit ourselves to some basics. This chapter mostly contains information that is not presented elsewhere. Because math in regular TeX is basically frozen and other macro packages depend on that, the extensions we have in LuaMetaTeX are mainly useful for ConTeXt. Even there we don't use all features, because completely opening up and providing ways to control every aspect also served the purpose of testing: it just comes with the package.

This chapter is a variant on the one in the old LuaMetaTeX manual and it might evolve a bit. We will not discuss the many options that the engine provides, at least not now. There is an extensive “Math in ConTeXt” that shows the state of the art and serves as reference. In due time we might write some more about what happens deep down in the engine, although already plenty has been published during the upgrade, about dealing with math fonts as well as experimenting with new features. Because all gets wrapped in high level interfaces there is not that much need (nor audience) for endless explanations anyway. There are also examples given in the chapter that discusses all primitives. Most ConTeXt users will never see these low level math commands!

12.2 Traditional alongside OpenType

Because we started in 2019 from LuaTeX, by the end of 2021 this chapter started with this, even if we already reworked the engine:

“At this point there is no difference between LuaMetaTeX and LuaTeX with respect to math. Well, this might no longer be true because we have more control options that define default behavior and also have a more extensive scaling model. Anyway, it should not look worse, and maybe even a bit better. The handling of mathematics in LuaTeX differs quite a bit from how TeX82 (and therefore pdfTeX) handles math. First, LuaTeX adds primitives and extends some others so that Unicode input can be used easily. Second, all of TeX82's internal special values (for example for operator spacing) have been made accessible and changeable via control sequences. Third, there are extensions that make it easier to use OpenType math fonts. And finally, there are some extensions that have been proposed or considered in the past that are now added to the engine.

You might be surprised that we don't use all these new control features in ConTeXt LMTX, but who knows what might happen because users drive it. The main reason for adding so much is that I decided it made more sense to be complete now than gradually add more and more. At some point we should be able to say ‘This is it’. Also, when looking at these features, you need to keep in mind that when it comes to math, L^ATeX is the dominant macro package and it never needed these engine features, so most are probably just here for exploration purposes.”

Although we still process math as TeX does, there have been some fundamental changes to the machinery. Most of that is discussed in documents that come with ConTeXt and in Mikael Sundqvist math manual. Together we explored some new ways to deal with math spacing, penalties, fencing, operators, fractions, atoms and other features of the TeX engine. We started from the way ConTeXt used the already present functionality combine with sometimes somewhat dirty (but on the average working well) tricks.

Much in LuaMetaTeX math handling is about micro-typography and for us the results are quite visible. But, as far as we know, there have never been complaints or demands in the direction of the features discussed here. Also, TeX math usage outside ConTeXt is rather chiseled in stone (already for nearly three decades) so we don't expect other macro packages to use the new features anyway. Anyway, after spending a real lot of time on this we both decided that we're mostly feature complete.

12.3 Intermezzo

It is important to understand a bit how TeX handles math. The math engine is a large subsystem and basically can be divided in two parts: convert sequential input into a list of nodes where math related ones actually are sort of intermediate and therefore called noads.

In text mode entering `abc` results in three glyph nodes and `a b c` in three glyph nodes separated by (spacing) glue. Successive glyphs can be transformed in the font engine later on, just as hyphenation directive can be added. Eventually one (normally) gets a mix of glyphs, font kerns from a sequence of glyphs

In math mode `abc` results in three simple ordinary noads and `a b c` is equivalent to that: three noads. But `a bc` results in two ordinary noads where the second one has a sublist of two ordinary noads. Because characters have class properties, `(a + b = c)` results in a simple open noad, a simple ordinary, a simple binary, a simple ordinary, a simple relation, a simple ordinary and simple close noad. The next samples show a bit of this; in order to see the effects of spacing between ordinary atoms set it to `9mu`.

`$a b c$ \quad $a bc$ \quad abc`

$a \mid b \mid c$ $a \mid b \mid c$ $a \mid b \mid c$

With `\tracingmath 1` we get this logged:

```
> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "61
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "62
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "63

> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "61
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "62
\noad[ord][...]
```

```

.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "63

> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "61
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "62
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "63

${a} {b} {c}$ \quad ${a} {bc}$ \quad ${abc}$

```

If the previous log surprises you, that might be because in ConT_EXt we set up the engine differently: curly braces don't create ordinary atoms. However, when we set `\mathgroupingmode 0` we return to what the engine normally does.

```

> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "61
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "62
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "63

> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "61
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\submlist[0][...][tracing depth 5 reached]

> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\submlist[0][...][tracing depth 5 reached]

```

A warning is in place: tracing in LuaMetaT_EX gets extended when we feel the need to gat more feedback from the engine. But it will only be more.

From the first example you can imagine what these sub lists look like: a list of ordinary atoms. The final list that is mix of nodes and yet unprocessed noads get fed into the math-to-hlist function and

eventually the noads become glyphs, boxes, kerns, glue and whatever makes sense. A lot goes on there: think scripts, fractions, fences, accents, radicals, spacing, break control.

An example of more tricky scanning is shown here:

```
a + 1 \over 2 + b
a + {1}\over{2} + b
a + {{1}\over{2}} + b
```

In this case the `\over` makes $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ reconsider the last noad, remove it from the current list and save it for later, then scan for a following atom a single character turned atom or a braced sequence that then is an ordinary noad. In the end a fraction noad is made. When that gets processed later specific numerator and denominator styles get applied (explicitly entered style nodes of course overload this for the content). The fact that this construct is all about (implicit) ordinary noads, themselves captured in noads, combined with the wish for enforced consistent positioning of numerator and denominator, plus style overload, color support and whatever comes to mind means that in practice one will use a `\frac` macro that provides all that control.¹⁴

A similar tricky case is this:

```
( a + ( b - c ) + d )
\left ( a + \left ( b - c \right ) + d \right )
```

Here the first line creates a list of noads but the second line create a fenced structure that is handled as a whole in order to make the fences match.¹⁵ A fence noad will not break across lines as it is boxed and that is the reason why macro packages have these `\bigg` macros: they explicitly force a size using some trickery. In $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ a fence object can actually be unpacked when the class is configured as such. It is one of the many extensions we have.

There are some peculiar cases that one can run into but that actually are mentioned in the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ book. Often these reasons for intentional side effects become clear when one thinks of the average usage but unless one is willing to spend time on the ‘fine points of math’ they can also interfere with intentions. The next bits of code are just for the reader to look at. Try to predict the outcome. Watch out: in LMTX the outcome is not what one gets by default in $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, $\text{pdfT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ or regular $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$.¹⁶

```
$ 1 {\red +} 2$\par
$ 1 \color{red}{+} 2$\par
$ 1 \mathbin{\red +} 2$\par
$ a + - b + {- b} $
$ a \pm - b - {+ b} $
$ - b $
$ {- b} $
```

The message here is that when a user is coding the mindset with respect to grouping using curly braces has to be switched to math mode too. And how many users really read the relevant chapters of the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ book a couple of times (as much makes only sense after playing with math in $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$)? Even if one doesn't grasp everything it's a worthwhile read. Also consider this: did you really ask for an ordinary

¹⁴ There are now a `\Uover` primitives that look ahead and then of course still treat curly braces as math lists to be picked up.

¹⁵ Actually instead of such a structure there could have been delimiters with backlinks but one never knows what happens with these links when processing passes are made so that fragility is avoided.

¹⁶ One can set `\mathgroupingmode = 0` to get close.

atom when you use curly braces where no lists were expected? And what would have happened when ordinary related spacing had been set to non-zero?

All the above (and plenty more) is why in ConT_EXt LMTX we make extensive use of some LuaMetaT_EX features, like: additional atom classes, configurable inter atom spacing and penalties, pairwise atom rules that can change classes, class based rendering options, more font parameters, configurable style instead of hard coded ones in constructs, more granular spacing, etc. That way we get quite predictable results but also drop some older (un)expected behavior and side effects. It is also why we cannot show many examples in the LuaMetaT_EX manual: it uses ConT_EXt and we see no reason to complicate our lives (and spend energy on) turning off all the nicely cooperating features (and then for sure forgetting one) just for the sake of demos. It also gave us the opportunity to improve existing mechanisms and/or at least simplify their sometimes complex code.

One last word here about sequences of ordinary atoms: the traditional code path feeds ordinary atoms into a ligature and kerning routine and does that when it encounters one. However, in OpenType we don't have ligatures not (single) kerns so there that doesn't apply. As we're not aware of traditional math fonts with ligatures and no one is likely to use these fonts with LuaMetaT_EX the ligature code has been disabled.¹⁷ The kerning has been redone a bit so that it permits us to fine tune spacing (which in ConT_EXt we control with goodie files). The mentioned routine can also add italic correction, but that happens selectively because it is driven by specifications and circumstances. It is one of the places where the approach differs from the original, if only for practical reasons.

In addition to what we explained above, we mention the `\beginmathgroup` and `\endmathgroup` primitives behave like `\begingroup` and `\endgroup` but restore a style change inside the group. Style changes are actually injecting a special style noad which makes them sort of persistent till the next explicit change which can be confusing. This additional grouping model compensates for that.

12.4 Unicode math characters

For various reasons we need to encode a math character in a 32 bit number and because we often also need to keep track of families and classes the range of characters is limited to 20 bits. There are up to 64 classes (which is a lot more than in LuaT_EX) and 64 families (less than in LuaT_EX). The upper limit of characters is less than what Unicode offers but for math we're okay. If needed we can provide less families.

The math primitives from T_EX are kept as they are, except for the ones that convert from input to math commands: `mathcode`, and `delcode`. These two now allow for the larger character codes argument on the left hand side of the equals sign. The number variants of some primitives might be dropped in favor of the primitives that read more than one separate value (class, family and code). All relevant primitives are explained in the primitives chapter.

A delimiter in traditional T_EX combines two definitions: the regular character and the way it can become a larger (extensible) one. The small character is just like a math character but the larger one can come from a different font (family). However, in OpenType math fonts the larger sizes (variants) and extensibles (parts) come from the same font. For that reason LuaMetaT_EX also accepts a math character when a delimited specifier is expected. It basically means that we could remove delimiters as such from the engine. After all, when we let Lua load a traditional font we can as well use virtual fonts to handle the variants and extensibles, which is indeed the case when we support the jmh fonts.

¹⁷ It might show up in a different way if we feel the need in which case it's more related to runtime patches to fonts and class bases ligature building.

12.5 Math classes

Most characters belong to a so called math class which can be set for each character if needed. There are upto 64 classes of which at this moment about 20 are predefined so, taking some future usage by the engine into account, you can assume 32 upto 60 to be available for any purpose. The number of families has been reduced from 256 to 64 which is plenty for daily use in an OpenType setup. If we ever need to expand the Unicode range there will be less families or we just go for a larger internal record. The values of begin and end classes and the number of classes can be fetched from the Lua status table. There are callbacks that makes it possible to report user classes when there is the need.

12.6 Setting up the engine

Rendering math has long been dominated by $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ but that changed when Microsoft came with OpenType math: an implementation as well as a font. Some of that was modeled after $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and some was dictated (we think) by the way word processors deal with math. For instance, traditional $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ math has a limited set of glyph properties and therefore has a somewhat complex interplay between width and italic correction. There are no kerns, contrary to OpenType math fonts that provides staircase kerns. Interestingly $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ does have some ligature building going on in the engine.

In traditional $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ italic correction gets added to the width and selectively removed later (or compensated by some shift and/or cheating with the box width). When we started with Lua $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ we had to gamble quite a bit about how to apply parameters and glyph properties which resulted in different code paths, heuristics, etc. That worked on the average but fonts are often not perfect and when served as an example for another one the bad bits can be inherited. That said, over time the descriptions improved and this is what the OpenType specification has to say about italic correction now¹⁸:

1. When a run of slanted characters is followed by a straight character (such as an operator or a delimiter), the italics correction of the last glyph is added to its advance width.
2. When positioning limits on an N-ary operator (e.g., integral sign), the horizontal position of the upper limit is moved to the right by half the italics correction, while the position of the lower limit is moved to the left by the same distance.
3. When positioning superscripts and subscripts, their default horizontal positions are also different by the amount of the italics correction of the preceding glyph.

The first rule is complicated by the fact that ‘followed’ is vague: in $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ the sequence $\$ a b c \text{ def } \$$ results in six separate atoms, separated by inter atom spacing. The characters in these atoms are the nucleus and there can be a super- and/or subscript attached and in LuaMeta $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ also a prime, super-prescript and/or sub-prescript.

The second rule comes from $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and one can wonder why the available top accent anchor is not used. Maybe because bottom accent anchors are missing? Anyway, we're stuck with this now.

The third rule also seems to come from $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. Take the ‘ f ’ character: in $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ fonts that one has a narrow width and part sticks out (in some even at the left edge). That means that when the subscript gets attached it will move inwards relative to the real dimensions. Before the superscript an italic correction is added so what that correction is non-zero the scripts are horizontally shifted relative to each other.

¹⁸ <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/typography/opentype/spec/math>

Now look at this specification of staircase kerns¹⁹:

The `MathKernInfo` table provides mathematical kerning values used for kerning of subscript and superscript glyphs relative to a base glyph. Its purpose is to improve spacing in situations such as ω with superscript f or capital V with subscript capital A .

Mathematical kerning is height dependent; that is, different kerning amounts can be specified for different heights within a glyph's vertical extent. For any given glyph, different values can be specified for four corner positions, top-right, to-left, etc., allowing for different kerning adjustments according to whether the glyph occurs as a subscript, a superscript, a base being kerned with a subscript, or a base being kerned with a superscript.

Again we're talking super- and subscripts and should we now look at the italic correction or assume that the kerns do the job? This is a mixed bag because scripts are not always (single) characters. We have to guess a bit here. After years of experimenting we came to the conclusion that it will never be okay so that's why we settled on controls and runtime fixes to fonts.

This means that processing math is controlled by `\mathfontcontrol`, a numeric bitset parameter. The recommended bits are marked with a star but it really depends on the macro package to set up the machinery well. Of course one can just enable all and see what happens.²⁰ A list of possible control bits can be found in the primitives chapter where we discuss this parameter.

So, to summarize: the reason for this approach is that traditional and OpenType fonts have different approaches (especially when it comes to dealing with the width and italic corrections) and is even more complicated by the fact that the fonts are often inconsistent (within and between). In `ConTeXt` we deal with this by runtime fixes to fonts. In any case the Cambria font is taken as reference.

It is important to notice that in ConTeXt we no longer use italic correction at all. After many experiments Mikael Sundvist and I settled on a different approach where we use true widths, proper anchors, a new set of corner kerns, additional parameters and more. We tweak the fonts to match this model which in our opinion gives better results and less interference. We could actually simplify the engine and kick italics out of math but for the moment we keep it around so that we can show improvements in manuals and articles.

12.7 Math styles

It is possible to discover the math style that will be used for a formula in an expandable fashion (while the math list is still being read). To make this possible, `LuaTeX` adds the new primitive: `\mathstyle`. This is a 'convert command' like e.g. `\romannumeral`: its value can only be read, not set. Beware that contrary to `LuaTeX` this is now a proper number so you need to use `\number` or `\the` in order to serialize it.

The returned value is between 0 and 7 (in math mode), or -1 (all other modes). For easy testing, the eight math style commands have been altered so that they can be used as numeric values, so you can write code like this:

```
\ifnum\mathstyle=\textstyle
  \message{normal text style}
```

¹⁹ Idem.

²⁰ This model was more granular and could even be font (and character) specific but that was dropped because fonts are too inconsistent and an occasional fit is more robust than a generally applied rule.

```

\else \ifnum\mathstyle=\crampedtextstyle
  \message{cramped text style}
\fi \fi

```

Sometimes you won't get what you expect so a bit of explanation might help to understand what happens. When math is parsed and expanded it gets turned into a linked list. In a second pass the formula will be build. This has to do with the fact that in order to determine the automatically chosen sizes (in for instance fractions) following content can influence preceding sizes. A side effect of this is for instance that one cannot change the definition of a font family (and thereby reusing numbers) because the number that got used is stored and used in the second pass (so changing `\fam 12` mid-formula spoils over to preceding use of that family).

The style switching primitives like `\textstyle` are turned into nodes so the styles set there are frozen. The `\mathchoice` primitive results in four lists being constructed of which one is used in the second pass. The fact that some automatic styles are not yet known also means that the `\mathstyle` primitive expands to the current style which can of course be different from the one really used. It's a snapshot of the first pass state. As a consequence in the following example you get a style number (first pass) typeset that can actually differ from the used style (second pass). In the case of a math choice used ungrouped, the chosen style is used after the choice too, unless you group.

```

[a:\number\mathstyle]\quad
\bgroup
\mathchoice
  {\bf \scriptstyle      (x:d : \number\mathstyle)}
  {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (x:t : \number\mathstyle)}
  {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (x:s : \number\mathstyle)}
  {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (x:ss:\number\mathstyle)}
\egroup
\quad[b:\number\mathstyle]\quad
\mathchoice
  {\bf \scriptstyle      (y:d : \number\mathstyle)}
  {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (y:t : \number\mathstyle)}
  {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (y:s : \number\mathstyle)}
  {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (y:ss:\number\mathstyle)}
\quad[c:\number\mathstyle]\quad
\bgroup
\mathchoice
  {\bf \scriptstyle      (z:d : \number\mathstyle)}
  {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (z:t : \number\mathstyle)}
  {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (z:s : \number\mathstyle)}
  {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (z:ss:\number\mathstyle)}
\egroup
\quad[d:\number\mathstyle]

```

This gives:

```
[a : 0]  (x:d:4)  [b:0]  (y:s:6)  [c:0]  (z:ss:6)  [d:0]
```

```
[a : 2]  (x:t:6)  [b:2]  (y:ss:6)  [c:2]  (z:ss:6)  [d:2]
```

Using `\begingroup ... \endgroup` instead gives:

$$[a:0] \quad (x:d:4) \quad [b:0] \quad (y:s:6) \quad [c:0] \quad (z:ss:6) \quad [d:0]$$

$$[a:2] \quad (x:t:6) \quad [b:2] \quad (y:ss:6) \quad [c:2] \quad (z:ss:6) \quad [d:2]$$

This might look wrong but it's just a side effect of `\mathstyle` expanding to the current (first pass) style and the number being injected in the list that gets converted in the second pass. It all makes sense and it illustrates the importance of grouping. In fact, the math choice style being effective afterwards has advantages. It would be hard to get it otherwise.

So far for the more LuaTeXish approach. One problem with `\mathstyle` is that when you got it, and want to act upon it, you need to remap it onto say `\scriptstyle` which can be done with an eight branched `\ifcase`. This is why we also have a more efficient alternative that you can use in macros:

```
\normalexpand{ ... \givenmathstyle\the\mathstyle ... }
\normalexpand{ ... \givenmathstyle\the\mathstackstyle ... }
```

This new primitive `\givenmathstyle` accepts a numeric value. The `\mathstackstyle` primitive is just a bonus (it complements `\mathstack`).

The styles that the different math components and their sub components start out with are no longer hard coded but can be set at runtime:

primitive name	default
<code>\Umathoverlinevariant</code>	cramped
<code>\Umathunderlinevariant</code>	normal
<code>\Umathoverdelimitervariant</code>	small
<code>\Umathunderdelimitervariant</code>	small
<code>\Umathdelimiterovervariant</code>	normal
<code>\Umathdelimiterundervariant</code>	normal
<code>\Umathhextensiblevariant</code>	normal
<code>\Umathvextensiblevariant</code>	normal
<code>\Umathfractionvariant</code>	cramped
<code>\Umathradicalvariant</code>	cramped
<code>\Umathdegreevariant</code>	doublesuperscript
<code>\Umathaccentvariant</code>	cramped
<code>\Umathtopaccentvariant</code>	cramped
<code>\Umathbottomaccentvariant</code>	cramped
<code>\Umathoverlayaccentvariant</code>	cramped
<code>\Umathnumeratorvariant</code>	numerator
<code>\Umathdenominatorvariant</code>	denominator
<code>\Umathsuperscriptvariant</code>	superscript
<code>\Umathsubscriptvariant</code>	subscript
<code>\Umathprimevariant</code>	superscript
<code>\Umathstackvariant</code>	numerator

These defaults remap styles are as follows:

default	result	mapping
cramped	cramp the style	D' D' T' T' S' S' SS' SS'
subscript	smaller and cramped	S' S' S' S' SS' SS' SS' SS'

<code>small</code>	<code>smaller</code>	$S S S S S S S S S S$
<code>superscript</code>	<code>smaller</code>	$S S S S S S S S S S$
<code>smaller</code>	<code>smaller unless already SS</code>	$S S' S S' S S S S' S S S S'$
<code>numerator</code>	<code>smaller unless already SS</code>	$S S' S S' S S S S' S S S S'$
<code>denominator</code>	<code>smaller, all cramped</code>	$S' S' S' S' S S' S S' S S' S S'$
<code>doublesuperscript</code>	<code>smaller, keep cramped</code>	$S S' S S' S S S S' S S S S'$

The main reason for opening this up was that it permits experiments and removed hard coded internal values. But as these defaults served well for decades there are no real reasons to change them.

There are a few math commands in \TeX where the style that will be used is not known straight from the start. These commands (`\over`, `\atop`, `\overwithdelims`, `\atopwithdelims`) would therefore normally return wrong values for `\mathstyle`. To fix this, Lua \TeX introduces a special prefix command: `\mathstack`:

```
$\mathstack {a \over b}$
```

The `\mathstack` command will scan the next brace and start a new math group with the correct (numerator) math style. The `\mathstackstyle` primitive relates to this feature.

Lua \TeX has four new primitives to set the cramped math styles directly:

```
\crampeddisplaystyle
\crampedtextstyle
\crampedscriptstyle
\crampedscriptscriptstyle
```

These additional commands are not all that valuable on their own, but they come in handy as arguments to the math parameter settings that will be added shortly.

Because internally the eight styles are represented as numbers some of the new primitives that relate to them also work with numbers and often you can use them mixed. The `\tomathstyle` prefix converts a symbolic style into a number so `\number\tomathstyle\crampedscriptstyle` gives 5.

In Eijkhouts “ \TeX by Topic” the rules for handling styles in scripts are described as follows:

- In any style superscripts and subscripts are taken from the next smaller style. Exception: in display style they are in script style.
- Subscripts are always in the cramped variant of the style; superscripts are only cramped if the original style was cramped.
- In an `.. \over ..` formula in any style the numerator and denominator are taken from the next smaller style.
- The denominator is always in cramped style; the numerator is only in cramped style if the original style was cramped.
- Formulas under a `\sqrt` or `\overline` are in cramped style.

In Lua \TeX one can set the styles in more detail which means that you sometimes have to set both normal and cramped styles to get the effect you want. (Even) if we force styles in the script using `\scriptstyle` and `\crampedscriptstyle` we get this:

style	example
default	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$
script	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$
crampedscript	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$

Now we set the following parameters using `\setmathspacing` that accepts two class identifier, a style and a value.

```
\setmathspacing 0 3 \scriptstyle = 30mu
\setmathspacing 0 3 \scriptstyle = 30mu
```

This gives a different result:

style	example
default	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$
script	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$
crampedscript	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$

But, as this is not what is expected (visually) we should say:

```
\setmathspacing 0 3 \scriptstyle      = 30mu
\setmathspacing 0 3 \scriptstyle      = 30mu
\setmathspacing 0 3 \crampedscriptstyle = 30mu
\setmathspacing 0 3 \crampedscriptstyle = 30mu
```

Now we get:

style	example
default	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$
script	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$
crampedscript	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$

12.8 Math parameters

In Lua_T_EX, the font dimension parameters that T_EX used in math typesetting are now accessible via primitive commands. In fact, refactoring of the math engine has resulted in turning some hard codes properties into parameters.

The next needs checking ...

primitive name	description
<code>\Umathquad</code>	the width of 18 mu's
<code>\Umathaxis</code>	height of the vertical center axis of the math formula above the baseline
<code>\Umathoperatorsiz</code>	minimum size of large operators in display mode
<code>\Umathoverbarkern</code>	vertical clearance above the rule
<code>\Umathoverbarrule</code>	the width of the rule
<code>\Umathoverbarvgap</code>	vertical clearance below the rule

<code>\Umathunderbarkern</code>	vertical clearance below the rule
<code>\Umathunderbarrule</code>	the width of the rule
<code>\Umathunderbarvgap</code>	vertical clearance above the rule
<code>\Umathradicalkern</code>	vertical clearance above the rule
<code>\Umathradicalrule</code>	the width of the rule
<code>\Umathradicalvgap</code>	vertical clearance below the rule
<code>\Umathradicaldegreebefore</code>	the forward kern that takes place before placement of the radical degree
<code>\Umathradicaldegreeafter</code>	the backward kern that takes place after placement of the radical degree
<code>\Umathradicaldegreeraise</code>	this is the percentage of the total height and depth of the radical sign that the degree is raised by; it is expressed in percents, so 60% is expressed as the integer 60
<code>\Umathstackvgap</code>	vertical clearance between the two elements in an <code>\atop</code> stack
<code>\Umathstacknumup</code>	numerator shift upward in <code>\atop</code> stack
<code>\Umathstackdenomdown</code>	denominator shift downward in <code>\atop</code> stack
<code>\Umathfractionrule</code>	the width of the rule in a <code>\over</code>
<code>\Umathfractionnumvgap</code>	vertical clearance between the numerator and the rule
<code>\Umathfractionnumup</code>	numerator shift upward in <code>\over</code>
<code>\Umathfractiondenomvgap</code>	vertical clearance between the denominator and the rule
<code>\Umathfractiondenomdown</code>	denominator shift downward in <code>\over</code>
<code>\Umathfractiondelsize</code>	minimum delimiter size for <code>\dotswithdelims</code>
<code>\Umathlimitabovevgap</code>	vertical clearance for limits above operators
<code>\Umathlimitabovebgap</code>	vertical baseline clearance for limits above operators
<code>\Umathlimitabovekern</code>	space reserved at the top of the limit
<code>\Umathlimitbelowvgap</code>	vertical clearance for limits below operators
<code>\Umathlimitbelowbgap</code>	vertical baseline clearance for limits below operators
<code>\Umathlimitbelowkern</code>	space reserved at the bottom of the limit
<code>\Umathoverdelimitervgap</code>	vertical clearance for limits above delimiters
<code>\Umathoverdelimiterbgap</code>	vertical baseline clearance for limits above delimiters
<code>\Umathunderdelimitervgap</code>	vertical clearance for limits below delimiters
<code>\Umathunderdelimiterbgap</code>	vertical baseline clearance for limits below delimiters
<code>\Umathsubshiftdrop</code>	subscript drop for boxes and subformulas
<code>\Umathsubshiftdown</code>	subscript drop for characters
<code>\Umathsupshiftdrop</code>	superscript drop (raise, actually) for boxes and subformulas
<code>\Umathsupshiftup</code>	superscript raise for characters
<code>\Umathsubsupshiftdown</code>	subscript drop in the presence of a superscript
<code>\Umathsubtopmax</code>	the top of standalone subscripts cannot be higher than this above the baseline
<code>\Umathsupbottommin</code>	the bottom of standalone superscripts cannot be less than this above the baseline
<code>\Umathsupsubbottommax</code>	the bottom of the superscript of a combined super- and subscript be at least as high as this above the baseline
<code>\Umathsubsupvgap</code>	vertical clearance between super- and subscript
<code>\Umathspaceafterscript</code>	additional space added after a super- or subscript
<code>\Umathconnectoroverlapmin</code>	minimum overlap between parts in an extensible recipe

In addition to the above official OpenType font parameters we have these (the undefined will get presets, quite likely zero):

primitive name	description
<code>\Umathconnectoroverlapmin</code>	
<code>\Umathsubsupshiftdown</code>	
<code>\Umathfractiondelsize</code>	
<code>\Umathnolimitsupfactor</code>	a multiplier for the way limits are shifted up and down
<code>\Umathnolimitsubfactor</code>	a multiplier for the way limits are shifted up and down
<code>\Umathaccentbasedepth</code>	the complement of <code>\Umathaccentbaseheight</code>
<code>\Umathflattenedaccentbasedepth</code>	the complement of <code>\Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight</code>
<code>\Umathspacebeforescript</code>	
<code>\Umathprimeraise</code>	
<code>\Umathprimeraisecomposed</code>	
<code>\Umathprimeshiftup</code>	the prime variant of <code>\Umathsupshiftup</code>
<code>\Umathprimespaceafter</code>	the prescript variant of <code>\Umathspaceafterscript</code>
<code>\Umathprimeshiftedrop</code>	the prime variant of <code>\Umathsupshiftdown</code>
<code>\Umathskeweddelimitertolerance</code>	
<code>\Umathaccenttopshiftup</code>	the amount that a top accent is shifted up
<code>\Umathaccentbottomshiftdown</code>	the amount that a bottom accent is shifted down
<code>\Umathaccenttopovershoot</code>	
<code>\Umathaccentbottomovershoot</code>	
<code>\Umathaccentsuperscriptdrop</code>	
<code>\Umathaccentsuperscriptpercent</code>	
<code>\Umathaccentextendmargin</code>	margins added to automatically extended accents
<code>\Umathflattenedaccenttopshiftup</code>	the amount that a wide top accent is shifted up
<code>\Umathflattenedaccentbottomshiftdown</code>	the amount that a wide bottom accent is shifted down
<code>\Umathdelimiterpercent</code>	
<code>\Umathdelimitershortfall</code>	
<code>\Umathradicalextensiblebefore</code>	
<code>\Umathradicalextensibleafter</code>	

These relate to the font parameters and in ConT_EXt we assign some different defaults and tweak them in the goodie files:

font parameter	primitive name	default
MinConnectorOverlap	<code>\Umathconnectoroverlapmin</code>	0
SubscriptShiftDownWithSuperscript	<code>\Umathsubsupshiftdown</code>	inherited
FractionDelimiterSize	<code>\Umathfractiondelsize</code>	undefined
FractionDelimiterDisplayStyleSize	<code>\Umathfractiondelsize</code>	undefined
NoLimitSubFactor	<code>\Umathnolimitsupfactor</code>	0
NoLimitSupFactor	<code>\Umathnolimitsubfactor</code>	0
AccentBaseDepth	<code>\Umathaccentbasedepth</code>	reserved
FlattenedAccentBaseDepth	<code>\Umathflattenedaccentbasedepth</code>	reserved
SpaceBeforeScript	<code>\Umathspacebeforescript</code>	0
PrimeRaisePercent	<code>\Umathprimeraise</code>	0
PrimeRaiseComposedPercent	<code>\Umathprimeraisecomposed</code>	0
PrimeShiftUp	<code>\Umathprimeshiftup</code>	0
PrimeShiftUpCramped	<code>\Umathprimeshiftup</code>	0
PrimeSpaceAfter	<code>\Umathprimespaceafter</code>	0
PrimeBaselineDropMax	<code>\Umathprimeshiftedrop</code>	0

SkewedDelimiterTolerance	<code>\Umathskewdelimiterolerance</code>	0
AccentTopShiftUp	<code>\Umathaccenttopshiftup</code>	undefined
AccentBottomShiftDown	<code>\Umathaccentbottomshiftdown</code>	undefined
AccentTopOvershoot	<code>\Umathaccenttopovershoot</code>	0
AccentBottomOvershoot	<code>\Umathaccentbottomovershoot</code>	0
AccentSuperscriptDrop	<code>\Umathaccentsuperscriptdrop</code>	0
AccentSuperscriptPercent	<code>\Umathaccentsuperscriptpercent</code>	0
AccentExtendMargin	<code>\Umathaccentextendmargin</code>	0
FlattenedAccentTopShiftUp	<code>\Umathflattenedaccenttopshiftup</code>	undefined
FlattenedAccentBottomShiftDown	<code>\Umathflattenedaccentbottomshiftdown</code>	undefined
DelimiterPercent	<code>\Umathdelimiterpercent</code>	0
DelimiterShortfall	<code>\Umathdelimitershortfall</code>	0

These parameters not only provide a bit more control over rendering, they also can be used in compensating issues in font, because no font is perfect. Some are the side effects of experiments and they have CamelCase companions in the MathConstants table. For historical reasons the names are a bit inconsistent as some originate in T_EX so we prefer to keep those names. Not many users will mess around with these font parameters anyway.²¹

Each of the parameters in this section can be set by a command like this:

`\Umathquad\displaystyle=1em`

they obey grouping, and you can use `\the\Umathquad\displaystyle` if needed.

There are quite some parameters that can be set and there are eight styles, which means a lot of keying in. For that reason is is possible to set parameters groupwise:

primitive name	D	D'	T	T'	S	S'	SS	SS'
<code>\alldisplaystyles</code>	+	+						
<code>\alltextstyles</code>			+	+				
<code>\allscriptstyles</code>					+	+		
<code>\allscriptscriptstyles</code>							+	+
<code>\allmathstyles</code>	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<code>\allmainstyles</code>								
<code>\allsplitstyles</code>	+	+	+	+	-	-	-	-
<code>\allunsplitstyles</code>					+	+	+	+
<code>\alluncrampedstyles</code>	+		+		+		+	
<code>\allcrampedstyles</code>		+		+		+		+

These groups are especially handy when you set up inter atom spacing, pre- and post atom penalties and atom rules.

We already introduced the font specific math parameters but we tell abit more about them and how they relate to the original T_EX font dimensions.

While it is nice to have these math parameters available for tweaking, it would be tedious to have to set each of them by hand. For this reason, LuaT_EX initializes a bunch of these parameters whenever you assign a font identifier to a math family based on either the traditional math font dimensions in

²¹ I wonder if some names should change, so that decision is pending.

the font (for assignments to math family 2 and 3 using tfm-based fonts like cmsy and cmex), or based on the named values in a potential MathConstants table when the font is loaded via Lua. If there is a MathConstants table, this takes precedence over font dimensions, and in that case no attention is paid to which family is being assigned to: the MathConstants tables in the last assigned family sets all parameters.

In the table below, the one-letter style abbreviations and symbolic tfm font dimension names match those used in the T_EXbook. Assignments to `\textfont` set the values for the cramped and uncramped display and text styles, `\scriptfont` sets the script styles, and `\scriptscriptfont` sets the scriptscript styles, so we have eight parameters for three font sizes. In the tfm case, assignments only happen in family 2 and family 3 (and of course only for the parameters for which there are font dimensions).

Besides the parameters below, LuaT_EX also looks at the ‘space’ font dimension parameter. For math fonts, this should be set to zero.

variable / style	tfm / opentype
<code>\Umathaxis</code>	axis_height AxisHeight
<code>\Umathaccentbaseheight</code>	xheight AccentBaseHeight
<code>\Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight</code>	xheight FlattenedAccentBaseHeight
⁶ <code>\Umathoperatorsiz</code> D, D'	— DisplayOperatorMinHeight
⁹ <code>\Umathfractiondelsize</code> D, D'	delim1 FractionDelimiterDisplayStyleSize
⁹ <code>\Umathfractiondelsize</code> T, T', S, S', SS, SS'	delim2 FractionDelimiterSize
<code>\Umathfractiondenomdown</code> D, D'	denom1 FractionDenominatorDisplayStyleShiftDown
<code>\Umathfractiondenomdown</code> T, T', S, S', SS, SS'	denom2 FractionDenominatorShiftDown
<code>\Umathfractiondenomvgap</code> D, D'	3*default_rule_thickness FractionDenominatorDisplayStyleGapMin
<code>\Umathfractiondenomvgap</code> T, T', S, S', SS, SS'	default_rule_thickness FractionDenominatorGapMin
<code>\Umathfractionnumup</code> D, D'	num1 FractionNumeratorDisplayStyleShiftUp
<code>\Umathfractionnumup</code> T, T', S, S', SS, SS'	num2 FractionNumeratorShiftUp

\Umathfractionnumvgap D, D'	3*default_rule_thickness FractionNumeratorDisplayStyleGapMin
\Umathfractionnumvgap T, T', S, S', SS, SS'	default_rule_thickness FractionNumeratorGapMin
\Umathfractionrule	default_rule_thickness FractionRuleThickness
\Umathskewedfractionhgap	math_quad/2 SkewedFractionHorizontalGap
\Umathskewedfractionvgap	math_x_height SkewedFractionVerticalGap
\Umathlimitabovebgap	big_op_spacing3 UpperLimitBaselineRiseMin
¹ \Umathlimitabovekern	big_op_spacing5 0
\Umathlimitabovevgap	big_op_spacing1 UpperLimitGapMin
\Umathlimitbelowbgap	big_op_spacing4 LowerLimitBaselineDropMin
¹ \Umathlimitbelowkern	big_op_spacing5 0
\Umathlimitbelowvgap	big_op_spacing2 LowerLimitGapMin
\Umathoverdelimitervgap	big_op_spacing1 StretchStackGapBelowMin
\Umathoverdelimiterbgap	big_op_spacing3 StretchStackTopShiftUp
\Umathunderdelimitervgap	big_op_spacing2 StretchStackGapAboveMin
\Umathunderdelimiterbgap	big_op_spacing4 StretchStackBottomShiftDown
\Umathoverbarkern	default_rule_thickness OverbarExtraAscender
\Umathoverbarrule	default_rule_thickness OverbarRuleThickness
\Umathoverbarvgap	3*default_rule_thickness OverbarVerticalGap
¹ \Umathquad	math_quad

	<code><font_size(f)></code>
<code>\Umathradicalkern</code>	<code>default_rule_thickness</code> <code>RadicalExtraAscender</code>
² <code>\Umathradicalrule</code>	<code><not set></code> <code>RadicalRuleThickness</code>
³ <code>\Umathradicalvgap</code> D, D'	<code>default_rule_thickness+abs(math_x_height)/4</code> <code>RadicalDisplayStyleVerticalGap</code>
³ <code>\Umathradicalvgap</code> T, T', S, S', SS, SS'	<code>default_rule_thickness+abs(default_rule_thickness)/4</code> <code>RadicalVerticalGap</code>
² <code>\Umathradicaldegreebefore</code>	<code><not set></code> <code>RadicalKernBeforeDegree</code>
² <code>\Umathradicaldegreeafter</code>	<code><not set></code> <code>RadicalKernAfterDegree</code>
^{2,7} <code>\Umathradicaldegreeraise</code>	<code><not set></code> <code>RadicalDegreeBottomRaisePercent</code>
⁴ <code>\Umathspaceafterscript</code>	<code>script_space</code> <code>SpaceAfterScript</code>
<code>\Umathstackdenomdown</code> D, D'	<code>denom1</code> <code>StackBottomDisplayStyleShiftDown</code>
<code>\Umathstackdenomdown</code> T, T', S, S', SS, SS'	<code>denom2</code> <code>StackBottomShiftDown</code>
<code>\Umathstacknumup</code> D, D'	<code>num1</code> <code>StackTopDisplayStyleShiftUp</code>
<code>\Umathstacknumup</code> T, T', S, S', SS, SS'	<code>num3</code> <code>StackTopShiftUp</code>
<code>\Umathstackvgap</code> D, D'	<code>7*default_rule_thickness</code> <code>StackDisplayStyleGapMin</code>
<code>\Umathstackvgap</code> T, T', S, S', SS, SS'	<code>3*default_rule_thickness</code> <code>StackGapMin</code>
<code>\Umathsubshiftdown</code>	<code>sub1</code> <code>SubscriptShiftDown</code>
<code>\Umathsubshiftdrop</code>	<code>sub_drop</code> <code>SubscriptBaselineDropMin</code>
⁸ <code>\Umathsubsupshiftdown</code>	<code>—</code> <code>SubscriptShiftDownWithSuperscript</code>
<code>\Umathsubtopmax</code>	<code>abs(math_x_height*4)/5</code>

	SubscriptTopMax
\Umathsubsupvgap	4*default_rule_thickness SubSuperscriptGapMin
\Umathsupbottommin	abs(math_x_height/4) SuperscriptBottomMin
\Umathsupshiftdrop	sup_drop SuperscriptBaselineDropMax
\Umathsupshiftup D	sup1 SuperscriptShiftUp
\Umathsupshiftup T, S, SS,	sup2 SuperscriptShiftUp
\Umathsupshiftup D', T', S', SS'	sup3 SuperscriptShiftUpCramped
\Umathsupsubbottommax	abs(math_x_height*4)/5 SuperscriptBottomMaxWithSubscript
\Umathunderbarkern	default_rule_thickness UnderbarExtraDescender
\Umathunderbarrule	default_rule_thickness UnderbarRuleThickness
\Umathunderbarvgap	3*default_rule_thickness UnderbarVerticalGap
⁵ \Umathconnectoroverlapmin	0 MinConnectorOverlap

A few notes:

1. OpenType fonts set **\Umathlimitabovekern** and **\Umathlimitbelowkern** to zero and set **\Umathquad** to the font size of the used font, because these are not supported in the MATH table.
2. Traditional tfm fonts do not set **\Umathradicalrule** because T_EX82 uses the height of the radical instead. When this parameter is indeed not set when LuaT_EX has to typeset a radical, a backward compatibility mode will kick in that assumes that an oldstyle T_EX font is used. Also, they do not set **\Umathradicaldegreebefore**, **\Umathradicaldegreeafter**, and **\Umathradicaldegreeraise**. These are then automatically initialized to 5/18quad, -10/18quad, and 60.
3. If tfm fonts are used, then the **\Umathradicalvgap** is not set until the first time LuaT_EX has to typeset a formula because this needs parameters from both family 2 and family 3. This provides a partial backward compatibility with T_EX82, but that compatibility is only partial: once the **\Umathradicalvgap** is set, it will not be recalculated any more.
4. When tfm fonts are used a similar situation arises with respect to **\Umathspaceafterscript**: it is not set until the first time LuaT_EX has to typeset a formula. This provides some backward compatibility with T_EX82. But once the **\Umathspaceafterscript** is set, **\scriptspace** will never be looked at again.

5. Traditional tfm fonts set `\Umathconnectoroverlapmin` to zero because \TeX 82 always stacks extensibles without any overlap.
6. The `\Umathoperatorsize` is only used in `\displaystyle`, and is only set in OpenType fonts. In tfm font mode, it is artificially set to one scaled point more than the initial attempt's size, so that always the 'first next' will be tried, just like in \TeX 82.
7. The `\Umathradicaldegreeraise` is a special case because it is the only parameter that is expressed in a percentage instead of a number of scaled points.
8. `SubscriptShiftDownWithSuperscript` does not actually exist in the 'standard' OpenType math font Cambria, but it is useful enough to be added.
9. `FractionDelimiterDisplayStyleSize` and `FractionDelimiterSize` do not actually exist in the 'standard' OpenType math font Cambria, but were useful enough to be added.

As this mostly refers to $\text{Lua}\TeX$ there is more to tell about how $\text{LuaMeta}\TeX$ deals with it. However, it is enough to know that much more behavior is configurable.

You can let the engine ignore a parameter with `\setmathignore`, like:

```
\setmathignore \Umathspacebeforescript 1
\setmathignore \Umathspaceafterscript 1
```

Be aware of the fact that a global setting can get unnoticed by users because there is no warning that some parameter is ignored.

There are a couple of parameters that don't relate to the font but are more generally influencing the appearances. Some were added for experimenting.

This is not complete

	primitive	meaning
<code>\Umathextrasubpreshift</code>		
<code>\Umathextrasubprespace</code>		
<code>\Umathextrasubshift</code>		
<code>\Umathextrasubspace</code>		
<code>\Umathextrasuppreshift</code>		
<code>\Umathextrasupprespace</code>		
<code>\Umathextrasupshift</code>		
<code>\Umathextrasupspace</code>		
<code>\Umathprimeshiftdrop</code>		

12.9 Math spacing

Besides the parameters mentioned in the previous sections, there are also primitives to control the math spacing table (as explained in Chapter 18 of the \TeX book). This happens per class pair. Because we have many possible classes, we no longer have the many primitives that $\text{Lua}\TeX$ has but you can define then using the generic `\setmathspacing` primitive:

```
\def\Umathordordspacing {\setmathspacing 0 0 }
```

```
\def\Umathordordopenspacing {\setmathspacing 0 4 }
```

These parameters are (normally) of type `\muskip`, so setting a parameter can be done like this:

```
\setmathspacing 1 0 \displaystyle=4mu plus 2mu % op ord Umathopordspacing
```

The atom pairs known by the engine are all initialized by `initex` to the values mentioned in the table in Chapter 18 of the `TEXbook`.

For ease of use as well as for backward compatibility, `\thinmuskip`, `\medmuskip` and `\thickmuskip` are treated specially. In their case a pointer to the corresponding internal parameter is saved, not the actual `\muskip` value. This means that any later changes to one of these three parameters will be taken into account. As a bonus we also introduced the `\tinymuskip` and `\pettymuskip` primitives, just because we consider these fundamental, but they are not assigned internally to atom spacing combinations.

In `LuaMetaTEX` we go a bit further. Any named dimension, glue and mu glue register as well as the constants with these properties can be bound to a pair by prefixing `\setmathspacing` by `\inherited`.

Careful readers will realize that there are also primitives for the items marked * in the `TEXbook`. These will actually be used because we pose no restrictions. However, you can enforce the remapping rules to conform to the rules of `TEX` (or yourself).

Every class has a set of spacing parameters and the more classes you define the more pairwise spacing you need to define. However, you can default to an existing class. By default all spacing is zero and you can get rid of the defaults inherited from good old `TEX` with `\resetmathspacing`. You can alias class spacing to an exiting class with `\letmathspacing`:

```
\letmathspacing class displayclass textclass scriptclass scriptscriptclass
```

Instead you can copy spacing with `\copymathspacing`:

```
\copymathspacing class parentclass
```

Specific paring happens with `\setmathspacing`:

```
\setmathspacing leftclass rightclass style value
```

Unless we have a frozen parameter, the prefix `\inherited` makes it possible to have a more dynamic relationship: the used value resolves to the current value of the given register. Possible values are the usual mu skip register, a regular skip or dimension register, or just some mu skip value.

A similar set of primitives deals with rules. These remap pairs onto other pairs, so `\setmathatomrule` looks like:

```
\setmathatomrule oldleftclass oldrightclass newleftclass newrightclass
```

The `\letmathatomrule` and `\copymathatomrule` primitives take two classes where the second is the parent.

The `\setmathprepenalty` and `\setmathpostpenalty` primitives take a class and penalty (integer) value. These are injected before and after atoms with the given class where a penalty of 10000 is a signal to ignore it.

The engine control options for a class can be set with `\setmathoptions`. The possible options are discussed elsewhere. This primitive takes a class number and an integer (bitset). For all these setters the ConTeXt math setup gives examples.

Math is processed in two passes. The first pass is needed to intercept for instance `\over`, one of the few \TeX commands that actually has a preceding argument. There are often lots of curly braces used in math and these can result in a nested run of the math sub engine. However, you need to be aware of the fact that some properties are kind of global to a formula and the last setting (for instance a family switch) wins. This also means that a change (or again, the last one) in math parameters affects the whole formula. In LuaMeta \TeX we have changed this model a bit. One can argue that this introduces an incompatibility but it's hard to imagine a reason for setting the parameters at the end of a formula run and assume that they also influence what goes in front.

```
$
                                x \subscript {-}
\frozen\Umathsubshiftdown\textstyle 0pt x \subscript {0}
{\frozen\Umathsubshiftdown\textstyle 5pt x \subscript {5}}
                                x \subscript {0}
{\frozen\Umathsubshiftdown\textstyle 15pt x \subscript {15}}
                                x \subscript {0}
{\frozen\Umathsubshiftdown\textstyle 20pt x \subscript {20}}
                                x \subscript {0}
\frozen\Umathsubshiftdown\textstyle 10pt x \subscript {10}
                                x \subscript {0}
$
```

The `\frozen` prefix does the magic: it injects information in the math list about the set parameter.

In Lua \TeX 1.10+ the last setting, the 10pt drop wins, but in LuaMeta \TeX you will see each local setting taking effect. The implementation uses a new node type, parameters nodes, so you might encounter these in an unprocessed math list. The result looks as follows:

```
x x0x5x0x x x x x x
-      15 0 20 0      10 0
```

The `\mathatom` primitive is the generic one and it accepts a couple of keywords:

to be checked

keyword	argument	meaning
attr	int int	attributes to be applied to this atom
leftclass	class	the left edge class that determines spacing etc
rightclass	class	the right edge class that determines spacing etc
class	class	the general class
unpack		unpack this atom in inline math
source	int	a symbolic index of the resulting box
textfont		use the current text font
mathfont		use the current math font
limits		put scripts on top and below
nolimits		force scripts to be postscripts
nooverflow		keep (extensible) within target dimensions

<code>options</code>	<code>int</code>	bitset with options
<code>void</code>		discard content and ignore dimensions
<code>phantom</code>		discard content but retain dimensions

To what extent the options kick in depends on the class as well where and how the atom is used.

The original \TeX engines has three atom modifiers: `\displaylimits`, `\limits`, and `\nolimits`. These look back to the last atom and set a limit related signal. Just to be consistent we have some more of that: `\Umathadapttopleft`, `\Umathadaptright`, `\Umathuseaxis`, `\Umathnoaxis`, `\Umathphantom`, `\Umathvoid`, `\Umathsource`, `\Umathopenupheight`, `\Umathopenupdepth`, `\Umathlimits`, `\Umathnolimits`. The last two are equivalent to the lowercase ones with the similar names. All these modifiers are cheap primitives and one can wonder if they are needed but that also now also applies to the original three. We could stick to one modifier that takes an integer but let's not diverge too much from the original concept.

The `\nonscript` primitive injects a glue node that signals that the next glue is to be ignored when we are in script or scriptscript mode. The `\noatomruling` does the same but this time the signal is that no inter-atom rules need to be applied.

pdf

13 PDF

13.1 Introduction

There is no backend, not even a dvi one. In ConT_EXt the main backend is a pdf backend and it is written in Lua. The pdf format makes it possible to embed jpeg and png encoded images as well as pdf images. All these have to be dealt with in Lua. Although we can parse pdf files with Lua, the engine has a dedicated pdf library on board written by Paweł Jackowski.

A pdf file is basically a tree of objects and one descends into the tree via dictionaries (key/value) and arrays (index/value). There are a few topmost dictionaries that start at the document root and those are accessed more directly.

Although everything in pdf is basically an object we have to wrap a few in so called userdata Lua objects.

PDF	Lua
null	<t:nil>
boolean	<t:boolean>
integer	<t:integer>
float	<t:number>
name	<t:string>
string	<t:string>
array	<t:userdata>
dictionary	<t:userdata>
stream	<t:userdata>
reference	<t:userdata>

The interface is rather limited to creating an instance and getting objects and values. Aspects like compression and encryption are mostly dealt with automatically. In ConT_EXt users use an interface layer around these, if they use this kind of low level code at all as it assumes familiarity with how pdf is constructed.

13.2 Lua interfaces

13.2.1 Opening and closing

There are two ways to open a pdf file:

```
function pdf.open ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:pdf>  -- pdf file
end

function pdf.openfile( <t:file> filehandle )
    return <t:pdf>  -- pdf file
end
```

Instead of from file, we can read from a string:

```
function pdfc.new ( <t:string> somestring, <t:integer> somelength )
    return <t:pdf> -- pdfcfile
end
```

Closing the instance is done with:

```
function pdfc.close ( <t:pdf> pdfcfile )
    -- no return values
end
```

When we used pdfc.open the library manages the file and closes it when done. You can check if a document opened as expected by calling:

```
function pdfc.getstatus ( <t:pdf> pdfcfile )
    return <t:integer> -- status
end
```

A table of possible return codes can be queried with:

```
function pdfc.getstatusvalues ( )
    return <t:table> -- values
end
```

Currently we have these:

```
-2  is protected
-1  failed to open
0   not encrypted
1   is decrypted
```

An encrypted document can be decrypted by the next command where instead of either password you can give nil and hope for the best:

```
function pdfc.unencrypt (
    <t:pdf>    pdfcfile,
    <t:string> userpassword,
    <t:string> ownerpassword
)
    return <t:integer> -- status
end
```

13.2.2 Getting basic information

A successfully opened document can provide some information:

```
function pdfc.getsize( <t:pdf> pdfcfile )
    return <t:integer> -- nofbytes
end

function pdfc.getversion( <t:pdf> pdfcfile )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- major
```

```

        <t:integer> -- minor
end

function pdf.getnofobjects ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:integer> -- nofobjects
end

function pdf.getnofpages ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:integer> -- nofpages
end

function pdf.memoryusage ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- bytes
        <t:integer> -- waste
end

```

13.2.3 The main structure

For accessing the document structure you start with the so called catalog, a dictionary:

```

function pdf.getcatalog( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end

```

The other two root dictionaries are accessed with:

```

function pdf.gettrailer ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end

function pdf.getinfo ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end

```

13.2.4 Getting content

A specific page can conveniently be reached with the next command, which returns a dictionary.

```

function pdf.getpage ( <t:pdf> pdffile, <t:integer> pagenumber )
    return <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end

```

Another convenience command gives you the (bounding) box of a (normally page) which can be inherited from the document itself. An example of a valid box name is MediaBox.

```

function pdf.getbox ( <t:pdf> pdffile, <t:string> boxname )
    return <t:table> -- boundingbox
end

```

13.2.5 Getters

Common values in dictionaries and arrays are strings, integers, floats, booleans and names (which are also strings) and these are also normal Lua objects. In some cases a value is a userdata object and you can use this helper to get some more information:

```
function pdfc.type ( <t:whatever> value )
    return type -- string
end
```

Strings are special because internally they are delimited by parenthesis (often pdfdoc encoding) or angle brackets (hexadecimal or 16 bit Unicode).

```
function pdfc.getstring (
    <t:userdata> object,
    <t:string>    key | <t:integer> index
)
    return
        <t:string> -- decoded value
end
```

When you ask for more you get more:

```
function pdfc.getstring (
    <t:userdata> object,
    <t:string>    key | <t:integer> index,
    <t:boolean>  more
)
    return
        <t:string>, -- original
        <t:boolean> -- hexencoded
end
```

Basic types are fetched with:

```
function pdfc.getinteger ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:integer> -- value
end
```

```
function pdfc.getnumber ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:number> -- value
end
```

```
function pdfc.getboolean ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:boolean> -- value
end
```

A name is (in the pdf file) a string prefixed by a slash, like << /Type /Foo >>, for instance keys in a dictionary or keywords in an array or constant values.

```
function pdfc.getname ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:string> -- value
```

end

Normally you will use an index in an array and key in a dictionary but dictionaries also accept an index. The size of an array or dictionary is available with the usual `#` operator.

```
function pdf.getdictionary ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end
```

```
function pdf.getarray ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:userdata> -- array
end
```

```
function pdf.getstream ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return
        <t:userdata> -- stream
        <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end
```

These commands return dictionaries, arrays and streams, which are dictionaries with a blob of data attached.

Before we come to an alternative access mode, we mention that the objects provide access in a different way too, for instance this is valid:

```
print(pdf.open("foo.pdf").Catalog.Type)
```

At the topmost level there are Catalog, Info, Trailer and Pages, so this is also okay:

```
print(pdf.open("foo.pdf").Pages[1])
```

13.2.6 Streams

Streams are sort of special. When your index or key hits a stream you get back a stream object and dictionary object. The dictionary you can access in the usual way and for the stream there are the following methods:

```
function pdf.openstream ( <t:userdata> stream, <t:boolean> decode)
    return <t:boolean> okay
end
```

```
function pdf.closestream ( <t:userdata> stream )
    -- no return values
end
```

```
function pdf.readfromstream ( <t:userdata> stream )
    return
        <t:string> str,
        <t:integer> size
end
```

```
function pdf.readwholestream ( <t:userdata> stream, <t:boolean> decode)
    return
```

```

    <t:string> str,
    <t:integer> size
end

```

You either read in chunks, or you ask for the whole. When reading in chunks, you need to open and close the stream yourself. The decode parameter controls if the stream data gets uncompressed.

As with dictionaries, you can access fields in a stream dictionary in the usual Lua way too. You get the content when you 'call' the stream. You can pass a boolean that indicates if the stream has to be decompressed.

13.2.7 Low level getters

In addition to the getters described before, there is also a bit lower level interface available.

```

function pdf.getfromdictionary ( <t:userdata>, <t:integer> index )
    return
        <t:string>    key,
        <t:string>    type,
        <t:whatever> value,
        <t:whatever> detail
end

```

```

function pdf.getfromarray ( <t:userdata>, <t:integer> index )
    return
        <t:integer> type,
        <t:whatever> value,
        <t:integer> detail
end

```

The type is one of the following:

0	none	3	integer	6	string	9	stream
1	null	4	number	7	array	10	reference
2	boolean	5	name	8	dictionary		

This list was acquired with:

```

function pdf.getfieldtypes ( )
    return <t:table> -- types
end

```

Here detail is a bitset with possible bits:

0	plain	8	base16	32	utf16be
1	encoded	16	base85	64	utf16le
2	decoded				

This time we used:

```

function pdf.getencodingvalues ( )

```



```

    return <t:table> -- values
end

```

13.2.8 Getting tables

All entries in a dictionary or table can be fetched with the following commands where the return values are a hashed or indexed table.

```

function pdf.dictorytotable ( <t:userdata> )
    return <t:table> -- hash
end

```

```

function pdf.arraytotable ( <t:userdata> )
    return <t:table> -- array
end

```

You can get a list of pages with:

```

function pdf.pagestotable(<t:pdf> pdffile)
    return {
        {
            <t:userdata>, -- dictionary
            <t:integer>, -- size
            <t:integer>, -- objectnumber
        },
        ...
    }
end

```

13.2.9 References

In order to access a pdf file efficiently there is lazy evaluation of references so when you run into a reference as value or array entry you have to resolve it explicitly. An unresolved references object can be resolved with:

```

function pdf.getfromreference( <t:integer> reference ) -- NEEDS CHECKING
    return
        <t:integer>, -- type
        <t:whatever>, -- value
        <t:whatever> -- detail

```

So, as second value you can get back a new pdf userdata object that you can query.

nodes

14 Nodes

14.1 Introduction

The (to be) typeset content is collected in a double linked list of so called nodes. A node is an array of values. When looked at from the Lua end you can either see them as `<t:userdata>` or as `<t:integer>`. In the case of userdata you access fields like this:

```
local width = foo.width -- foo is userdata
```

while the indexed variant uses:

```
local width = nodes.direct.getwidth(foo) -- foo is an integer
```

In ConT_EXt we mostly use the second variant but it's a matter of taste so users can you whatever they like most. When you print a userdata node you see something like this:

```
<node : nil <= 214514 => nil : glyph unset>
<node : nil <= 358940 => nil : hlist unknown>
<node : nil <= 340402 => nil : glue userskip>
```

The number in the middle is the one you would also see if you use the indexed approach and often these numbers are kind of large. A number 13295 doesn't mean that we have that many nodes. The engine has a large array of memory words (pairs of 32 bit integers) and a node is a slice of then with the index pointing to where we start. So, if we have a node that has 5 value pairs, the slice runs from 13295 upto 13299 that consume 40 bytes.

In this chapter we introduce the nodes that are exposed to the user. We will discuss the relevant fields as well as ways to access them. Because there are similar fields in different nodes, we can share accessors.

It is important to notice that not all fields that can be accessed (set and get) are under full user control. For instance, in math we have a noad type that is actually shared between several construct (like atoms, accents and fences) and not all parameters make sense for each of them. Some properties are set while the formula is assembled. It fits in the LuaMetaT_EX concept to open up everything but abusing this can lead to side effects. It makes no sense to add all kind of safeguards against wrong or unintended usage because in the end only a few users will go that low level anyway.

Not all fields mentioned are accessible in the userdata variant. It is also good to notice that some fields are fabricated, for instance `total` is the sum of `height` and `depth`.

14.2 Lua node representation

As mentioned, nodes are represented in Lua as user data objects with a variable set of fields or by a numeric identifier when requested and we showed that when you print a node user data object you will see these numbers.

0	hlist	3	insert	6	boundary	9	par
1	vlist	4	mark	7	disc	10	dir
2	rule	5	adjust	8	whatsit	11	math

12 glue	18 noad	24 mathtextchar	31 alignrecord
13 kern	19 radical	25 subbox	32 attribute
14 penalty	20 fraction	26 submlist	33 gluespec
15 style	21 accent	27 delimiter	34 temp
16 choice	22 fence	28 glyph	35 split
17 parameter	23 mathchar	29 unset	

You can ask for a list of fields with `node.fields` and for valid subtypes with `node.subtypes`. There are plenty specific field values and you can some idea about them by calling `tex.get*values()` which returns a table if numbers (exclusive numbers or bits). We use these to get the tables that are shown with each node type.

There are a lot of helpers and below we show them per node type. In later sections some will come back organized by type of usage. Trivial getters and setters will not be discussed. It's good to know that some getters take more arguments where the second one can for instance trigger more return values. The number of arguments to a setter can also be more than a few. As with everything LuaMetaTeX the ConTeXt sources can also be seen as a reference.

14.3 Main text nodes

These are the nodes that comprise actual typesetting commands. A few fields are present in all nodes regardless of their type, these are: `next`, `id` and `subtype`. The `subtype` is sometimes just a dummy entry because not all nodes actually use the `subtype`, but this way you can be sure that all nodes accept it as a valid field name, and that is often handy in node list traversal. In the following tables `next` and `id` are not explicitly mentioned. Besides these three fields, almost all nodes also have an `attr` field, and there is a also a field called `prev`.

14.3.1 hlist and vlist, aka boxes

These lists share fields and subtypes although some subtypes can only occur in horizontal lists while others are unique for vertical lists.

fields

anchor	integer	height	dimension	shift	dimension
attr	attribute	hoffset	dimension	source	integer
axis	integer	id	integer	state	integer
depth	dimension	index	integer	subtype	integer
direction	integer	list	nodelist	target	integer
doffset	dimension	next	node	total	integer
except	nodelist	orientation	integer	width	dimension
exdepth	integer	post	nodelist	woffset	dimension
geometry	integer	postadjust	nodelist	xoffset	dimension
glueorder	integer	pre	nodelist	yoffset	dimension
glueset	integer	preadjust	nodelist		
gluesign	integer	prev	node		

subtypes

0	unknown	14	hdelimitter	28	scripts
1	line	15	vdelimitter	29	over
2	box	16	overdelimitter	30	under
3	indent	17	underdelimitter	31	accent
4	container	18	numerator	32	radical
5	alignment	19	denominator	33	fence
6	cell	20	modifier	34	rule
7	equation	21	fraction	35	ghost
8	equationnumber	22	nucleus	36	mathtext
9	math	23	sup	37	insert
10	mathchar	24	sub	38	local
11	mathpack	25	prime	39	left
12	hextensible	26	prepost	40	right
13	vextensible	27	degree	41	middle

directionvalues

0x00 lefttoright
 0x01 righttoleft

listgeometryvalues

0x01 offset
 0x02 orientation
 0x04 anchor

listanchorvalues

0x01 leftorigin	0x08 centerheight
0x02 leftheight	0x09 centerdepth
0x03 leftdepth	0x0A halfwaytotal
0x04 rightorigin	0x0B halfwayheight
0x05 rightheight	0x0C halfwaydepth
0x06 rightdepth	0x0D halfwayleft
0x07 centerorigin	0x0E halfwayright

listsignvalues

0x0100 negatex
 0x0200 negatexy

The shift is a displacement perpendicular to the character (horizontal) or line (vertical) progression direction.

The orientation, woffset, hoffset, doffset, xoffset and yoffset fields are special. They can be used to make the backend rotate and shift boxes which can be handy in for instance vertical typesetting. Because they relate to (and depend on the) the backend they are not discussed here (yet). The pre and post fields refer to migrated material in both list types, while the adjusted variants only make sense in horizontal lists.

direct helpers

addxoffset addyoffset appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange
findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries
flattenleaders freeze getanchors getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox
getclass getdepth getdirection getexcept getgeometry getglue getheight getid getindex
getinputfields getlist getlistdimensions getnext getnodes getnormalizedline
getoffsets getorientation getpenalty getpost getpre getprev getshift getspeciallist
getstate getsubtype gettotal getwhd getwidth getwordrange hasdimensions hasgeometry
hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar
isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid
iszeroglue kerning lastnode length ligaturing migrate mlisttohlist naturalhsize
naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes
prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipppable rangedimensions
removefromlist repack reverse setanchors setattributelist setattributes setboth
setbox setclass setdepth setdirection setexcept setgeometry setglue setheight
setindex setinputfields setlink setlist setnext setoffsets setorientation setpenalty
setpost setpre setprev setshift setspeciallist setsplit setstate setsubtype setwhd
setwidth showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect
traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: preadjust postadjust axis exdepth
no set: preadjust postadjust axis exdepth total

14.3.2 rule

Contrary to traditional $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ has more subtypes subtypes because we also use rules to store reuseable objects and images. However, in $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ these are gone but we reserve these subtypes. Apart from the basic rules a lot is up to the backend.

fields

attr	attribute	left	dimension	subtype	integer
char	integer	next	node	thickness	integer
data	integer	off	integer	total	dimension
depth	dimension	on	integer	width	dimension
fam	integer	options	integer	xoffset	dimension
font	integer	prev	node	yoffset	dimension
id	integer	right	dimension		

subtypes

0	normal	4	outline	8	fraction
1	empty	5	user	9	radical
2	strut	6	over	10	box
3	virtual	7	under	11	image

ruleoptionvalues

0x01	horizontal	0x04	thickness
0x02	vertical	0x08	running

The width, height and depth of regular rules defaults to the special value of -1073741824 which indicates a running rule that adapts its dimensions to the box that it sits in.

The left and type right keys are somewhat special (and experimental). When rules are auto adapting to the surrounding box width you can enforce a shift to the right by setting left. The value is also subtracted from the width which can be a value set by the engine itself and is not entirely under user control. The right is also subtracted from the width. It all happens in the backend so these are not affecting the calculations in the frontend (actually the auto settings also happen in the backend). For a vertical rule left affects the height and right affects the depth. There is no matching interface at the \TeX end (although we can have more keywords for rules it would complicate matters and introduce a speed penalty.) However, you can just construct a rule node with Lua and write it to the \TeX input. The outline subtype is just a convenient variant and the transform field specifies the width of the outline. The xoffset and yoffset fields can be used to shift rules. Because they relate to (and depend on the) the backend they are not discussed here (yet). Of course all this assumes that the backend deals with it. Internally fields with different names can use the same variable, depending on the subtype; dedicated names just make more sense.

direct helpers

addmargins addxoffset addyoffset appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries
collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute
findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph
flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth
getbox getchar getcharspec getdata getdepth getdiscpart getfam getheight getid
getnext getnodes getoffsets getoptions getpenalty getprev getruledimensions
getspeciallist getsubtype gettotal getwhd getwidth getwordrange hasdimensions
hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar
isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist invalid
kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth
newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead
protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist
repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setchar setcharspec
setdata setdepth setdiscpart setfam setfont setheight setlink setnext setoffsets
setoptions setpenalty setprev setruledimensions setruledimensions setspeciallist
setsplit getsubtype setwhd setwidth showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar
tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic
traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes
usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: thickness
no set: total thickness

14.3.3 insert

This node relates to the `\insert` primitive and support the fields:

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	prev	node
cost	integer	index	integer	subtype	integer
depth	dimension	list	nodelist		
height	dimension	next	node		

Here the subtype indicates the class of the insert and that number is also used to access the box, dimen and skip registers that relate to the insert, if we use inserts in the traditional way.

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
firstglyphnode firsttitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getdepth getdiscpart getheight getid
getindex getlist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype gettotal
getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext
isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist
isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing migrate mlisttohlist naturalhsize
naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes
prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipppable rangedimensions
removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setdepth
setdiscpart setheight setindex setlink setlist setnext setprev setspeciallist
setsplit setsubtype settotal showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode
tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traversегlyph traverseitalic
traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes
usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

14.3.4 mark

This one relates to the `\marks` primitive and only has a few fields, one being a token list as field which is kind of rare.

fields

attr	attribute	mark	tokenlist	prev	node
class	integer	next	node	subtype	integer
id	integer				

subtypes

0	set	1	reset
---	-----	---	-------

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
firstglyphnode firsttitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getdata getid getindex getnext getnodes
getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth
ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar
isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing
mlisttohtml naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable
rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth
setbox setdata setindex setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype
showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar
traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

14.3.5 adjust

This node results from `\vadjust` usage:

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	prev	node
depthafter	dimension	next	node	subtype	integer

subtypes

0	pre	2	local
1	post		

adjustoptionvalues

0x00	none	0x08	depthafter
0x01	before	0x10	depthcheck
0x02	baseline	0x20	depthlast
0x04	depthbefore	0x40	except

direct helpers

nothing (yet)

userdata helpers

nothing (yet)

userdata helpers

no get:

no set:

14.3.6 disc (discretionary)

The **\discretionary**, **\explicitdiscretionary** and **\automaticdiscretionary** primitives as well as the discretionary that comes from hyphenation all have the pre, post and replace lists. Because these lists have head and tail pointers the getters and setters handle this for you.

fields

attr	attribute	options	integer	prev	node
class	integer	penalty	integer	replace	nodelist
id	integer	post	nodelist	subtype	integer
next	node	pre	nodelist		

subtypes

0	discretionary	3	math
1	explicit	4	regular
2	automatic		

discoptionvalues

0x00000000	normalword	0x00000040	noitaliccorrection
0x00000001	preword	0x00000080	nozeroitaliccorrection
0x00000002	postword	0x00010000	userfirst
0x00000010	preferbreak	0x40000000	userlast
0x00000020	prefernobreak		

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries checkdiscretionary collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getclass getdisc getid getnext getnodes getoptions getpenalty getpost getpre getprev getreplace getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasdiscoption hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohtml naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyph protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setclass setdisc setlink setnext setoptions setpenalty setpost setpre setprev setreplace setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyph unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -

no set: -

14.3.7 math

Math nodes represent the boundaries of a math formula, normally wrapped between $\$$ and $\$$. The glue fields are only used when the surround field is zero.

fields

attr	attribute	pretolerance	integer	stretchorder	integer
id	integer	prev	node	subtype	integer
next	node	shrink	dimension	surround	integer
options	integer	shrinkorder	integer	tolerance	integer
penalty	integer	stretch	dimension	width	dimension

subtypes

0	beginmath	2	beginbrokenmath
1	endmath	3	endbrokenmath

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions effectiveglue endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders

freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getglue getid getkern getnext
 getnodes getoptions getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwidth getwordrange hasglyph
 hpack hyphenating ignoremathskip isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext
 isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist
 isvalid iszeroglue kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohlist naturalhsize
 naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes
 prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipppable rangedimensions
 removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setglue
 setkern setlink setnext setoptions setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype
 setwidth showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect
 traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
 unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: tolerance pretolerance

no set: tolerance pretolerance

14.3.8 glue

Skips are about the only type of data objects in traditional T_EX that are not a simple value. They are inserted when T_EX sees a space in the text flow but also by `\hskip` and `skip`. The structure that represents the glue components of a skip internally is called a `gluespec`. In LuaMetaT_EX we don't use the spec itself but just its values.

fields

attr	attribute	leader	odelist	shrinkorder	integer
callback	integer	next	node	stretch	dimension
data	integer	options	integer	stretchorder	integer
font	integer	prev	node	subtype	integer
id	integer	shrink	dimension	width	dimension

subtypes

0	userskip	12	tabskip	24	intermathskip
1	lineskip	13	spaceskip	25	ignored
2	baselineskip	14	xspaceskip	26	page
3	parskip	15	zerospaceskip	27	mathskip
4	abovedisplayskip	16	parfillleftskip	28	thinmuskip
5	belowdisplayskip	17	parfillskip	29	medmuskip
6	abovedisplayshortskip	18	parinitleftskip	30	thickmuskip
7	belowdisplayshortskip	19	parinitrightskip	31	conditionalmathskip
8	leftskip	20	indentskip	32	rulebasedmathskip
9	rightskip	21	lefthangskip	33	muglue
10	topskip	22	righthangskip	34	leaders
11	splittopskip	23	correctionskip	35	cleaders

36 xleaders

37 gleaders

38 uleaders

glueoptionvalues

0x00	normal	0x04	islimited
0x01	noautobreak	0x08	limit
0x02	hasfactor	0x10	uleadersline

Note that we use the key `width` in both horizontal and vertical glue. This suited the \TeX internals well so we decided to stick to that naming.

The effective width of some glue subtypes depends on the stretch or shrink needed to make the encapsulating box fit its dimensions. For instance, in a paragraph lines normally have glue representing spaces and these stretch or shrink to make the content fit in the available space. The `effectiveglue` function that takes a glue node and a parent (hlist or vlist) returns the effective width of that glue item. When you pass `true` as third argument the value will be rounded.

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
effectiveglue endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar
firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders
freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getdata getfont getglue getid
getleader getnext getnodes getoptions getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwhd
getwidth getwordrange getxscale getyscale hasdimensions hasglyph hpack hyphenating
isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar
isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid iszeroglue kerning lastnode length
ligaturing mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph
newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone
protrusionskipppable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist
setattributes setboth setbox setdata setfont setglue setleader setlink setnext
setoptions setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype setwhd setwidth showlist size
slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: callback
no set: callback

14.3.9 gluespec

Internally \LuaMetaTeX (like its ancestors) also uses nodes to store data that is not seen in node lists. For instance the state of expression scanning (`\dimexpr` etc.) and conditionals (`\ifcase` etc.) is also kept in lists of nodes. A glue, which has five components, is stored in a node as well, so, where most

registers store just a number, a skip register (of internal quantity) uses a pointer to a glue spec node. It has similar fields as glue nodes, which is not surprising because in the past (and other engines than Lua_T_E_X) a glue node also has its values stored in a glue spec. This has some advantages because often the values are the same, so for instance spacing related skips were not resolved immediately but pointed to the current value of a space related internal register (like `\spaceskip`). But, in Lua_T_E_X and therefore LuaMeta_T_E_X we do resolve these quantities immediately and we put the current values in the glue nodes.

fields

id	integer	shrinkorder	integer	stretchorder	integer
next	node	stretch	dimension	width	dimension
shrink	dimension				

You will only find these nodes in a few places, for instance when you query an internal quantity. In principle we could do without them as we have interfaces that use the five numbers instead. For compatibility reasons we keep glue spec nodes exposed but this might change in the future. Of course there are no subtypes here because it's just a data store.

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getglue getid getnext getnodes getprev
getspeciallist getsubtype getwidth getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth
ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar
isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid iszeroglue kerning lastnode length
ligaturing mlisttohtml naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph
newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone
protrusionskipppable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist
setattributes setboth setbox setglue setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit
setsubtype setwidth showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect
traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: next
no set: next

14.3.10 kern

The `\kern` command creates such nodes but for instance the font and math machinery can also add them.

fields

attr	attribute	kern	dimension	prev	node
expansion	integer	next	node	subtype	integer
id	integer				

subtypes

0	userkern	5	rightmarginkern	10	mathshapekern
1	accentkern	6	leftcorrectionkern	11	leftmathslackkern
2	fontkern	7	rightcorrectionkern	12	rightmathslackkern
3	italiccorrection	8	spacefontkern	13	horizontalmathkern
4	leftmarginkern	9	mathkern	14	verticalmathkern

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getexpansion getid getkern
 getkerndimension getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwidth
 getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext
 isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist
 isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth
 newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead
 protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable rangedimensions removefromlist
 repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setexpansion setkern
 setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype setwidth showlist size
 slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
 traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
 unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
 no set: -

14.3.11 penalty

The `\penalty` command is one that generates these nodes. There is not much to tell about them, apart from that in LuaMetaTeX they have options and a possible spread related `penalty` field that is used internally.

fields

attr	attribute	next	node	prev	node
id	integer	options	integer	subtype	integer
penalty	integer	penalty	integer		

subtypes

0	userpenalty	5	toddlerpenalty	10	beforedisplaypenalty
1	linebreakpenalty	6	singlelinepenalty	11	afterdisplaypenalty
2	linepenalty	7	finalpenalty	12	equationnumberpenalty
3	wordpenalty	8	mathprepenalty		
4	orphanpenalty	9	mathpostpenalty		

penaltyoptionvalues

0x0000	normal	0x0080	club
0x0001	mathforward	0x0100	broken
0x0002	mathbackward	0x0200	shaping
0x0004	orphaned	0x0400	double
0x0008	widowed	0x0800	doubleused
0x0010	clubbed	0x1000	factorused
0x0020	toddlered	0x2000	endofpar
0x0040	widow		

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firsttitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getid getnext getnodes getoptions
 getpenalty getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating
 isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar
 isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing
 mlisttohtml naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
 patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable
 rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth
 setbox setlink setnext setoptions setpenalty setprev setspeciallist setsplit
 setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect
 traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
 unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: nepalty

no set: nepalty

14.3.12 glyph

These are probably the mostly used nodes and although you can push them in the current list with for instance `\char` \TeX will normally do it for you when it considers some input to be text. Glyph nodes are relatively large and have many fields.

fields

attr	attribute	index	integer	scale	dimension
char	integer	language	integer	script	integer
control	integer	left	dimension	slant	integer
data	integer	lhmin	integer	state	integer
depth	dimension	next	node	subtype	integer
discpart	integer	options	integer	total	dimension
expansion	integer	prev	node	weight	integer
font	integer	properties	integer	width	dimension
group	integer	protected	integer	xoffset	dimension
height	dimension	raise	dimension	xscale	dimension
hyphenate	integer	rhmin	integer	yoffset	dimension
id	integer	right	dimension	yscale	dimension

subtypes

0	unset	8	relation	16	over
1	character	9	open	17	fraction
2	ligature	10	close	18	radical
3	delimiter	11	punctuation	19	middle
4	extensible	12	variable	20	prime
5	ordinary	13	active	21	accent
6	operator	14	inner		
7	binary	15	under		

glyphoptionvalues

0x00000000	normal	0x00000400	mathdiscretionary
0x00000001	noleftligature	0x00000800	mathsitalicstoo
0x00000002	norightligature	0x00001000	mathartifact
0x00000004	noleftkern	0x00002000	weightless
0x00000008	norightkern	0x00004000	spacefactoroverload
0x00000010	noexpansion	0x00008000	checktoddler
0x00000020	no protrusion	0x00010000	checktwin
0x00000040	noitaliccorrection	0x00020000	istoddler
0x00000080	nozeroitaliccorrection	0x00100000	userfirst
0x00000100	applyxoffset	0x40000000	userlast
0x00000200	applyyoffset		

glyphdiscvalues

0x01	normal	0x04	mathematics
0x02	explicit	0x05	syllable
0x03	automatic		

discpartvalues

0x00	unset	0x03	replace
0x01	pre	0x04	always
0x02	post		

glyphprotectionvalues

0x00	unset	0x02	math
0x01	text		

The width, height and depth values are read-only. In LuaTeX expansion has been introduced as part of the separation between front- and backend. It is the result of extensive experiments with a more efficient implementation of expansion. Early versions of LuaTeX already replaced multiple instances of fonts in the backend by scaling but contrary to pdfTeX in LuaTeX we now also got rid of font copies in the frontend and replaced them by expansion factors that travel with glyph nodes. Apart from a cleaner approach this is also a step towards a better separation between front- and backend.

direct helpers

addmargins addxoffset addxymargins addyoffset appendaftertail beginofmath
 checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange
 findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode
 firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist
 getattributes getboth getbox getchar getchardict getcharspec getclass getcontrol
 getcornerkerns getdata getdepth getexpansion getfont getglyphdata getglyphdimensions
 getheight getid getinputfields getlanguage getnext getnodes getoffsets getoptions
 getprev getscale getscales getscrip getslant getspeciallist getstate getsubtype
 gettotal getweight getwhd getwidth getwordrange getxscale getxyscales getyscale
 hasdimensions hasglyph hasglyphoption hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect
 isglyph isitalicglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar
 isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing
 mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
 patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyph protectglyphs protectglyphsnone
 protrusionskipppable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist
 setattributes setboth setbox setchar setchardict setcharspec setclass setcontrol
 setdata setexpansion setfont setglyphdata setinputfields setlanguage setlink setnext
 setoffsets setoptions setprev setscale setscales setscrip setslant setspeciallist
 setsplit setstate setsubtype setweight setwhd setxyscales showlist size slide
 softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
 traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyph
 unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack
 xscaled yscaled

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: raise
no set: total raise

14.3.13 boundary

This node relates to the `\noboundary`, `\boundary`, `\protrusionboundary`, `\wordboundary` etc. These are relative small nodes that determine what happens before and after them.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	prev	node
data	integer	next	node	subtype	integer

subtypes

0 cancel	4 page	8 par
1 user	5 math	9 adjust
2 protrusion	6 optional	
3 word	7 lua	

protrusionboundaryvalues

0x00 skipnone	0x02 skipprevious
0x01 skipnext	0x03 skipboth

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
firstglyphnode firsttitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getdata getid getnext getnodes getprev
getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar
isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph
issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohlist
naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipppable
rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth
setbox setdata setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist
size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -

no set: -

14.3.14 par

This node is inserted at the start of a paragraph. You should not mess too much with this one. They are also inserted when `\local...` primitives are used that relate boxes to positions in the line and overload certain parameters that play a role in the line break routine. There are many fields!

fields

adjacentedemerits	node	leftbox	node
adjdemerits	integer	leftboxwidth	dimension
adjustspacing	integer	leftskip	integer
adjustspacingshrink	integer	lefttwindemerits	integer
adjustspacingstep	integer	linebreakchecks	integer
adjustspacingstretch	integer	linepenalty	integer
attr	attribute	lineskip	glue
baselineskip	glue	lineskiplimit	dimension
brokenpenalties	node	looseness	integer
brokenpenalty	integer	middlebox	node
clubpenalties	node	next	node
clubpenalty	integer	orphanpenalties	node
dir	integer	parfillleftskip	glue
displaywidowpenalties	node	parfillrightskip	glue
displaywidowpenalty	integer	parindent	dimension
doublehyphendemerits	integer	parinitleftskip	glue
emergencyextrastretch	dimension	parinitrightskip	glue
emergencyleftskip	glue	parpasses	node
emergencyrightskip	glue	parshape	node
emergencystretch	dimension	pretolerance	integer
endpartokens	tokenlist	prev	node
exhyphenpenalty	integer	prevgraf	integer
finalhyphendemerits	integer	protrudechars	integer
fitnessclasses	node	rightbox	node
hangafter	integer	rightboxwidth	dimension
hangindent	dimension	rightskip	integer
hsize	dimension	righttwindemerits	integer
hyphenationmode	integer	shapingpenaltiesmode	integer
hyphenpenalty	integer	shapingpenalty	integer
id	integer	singlelinepenalty	integer
interlinepenalties	node	state	integer
interlinepenalty	integer	subtype	integer
lastlinefit	integer	toddlerpenalties	node

tolerance	integer
widowpenalties	node
widowpenalty	integer

subtypes

0 vmodepar	2 hmodepar	4 localbreak
1 localbox	3 parameter	5 math

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firsttitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getdirection getid getnext getnodes
 getparstate getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating
 isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar
 isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing
 mlisttohtmlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
 patchattributes patchparshape prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone
 protrusionskipppable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist
 setattributes setboth setbox setdirection setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist
 setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect
 traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
 unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont validpar verticalbreak
 vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: dir parpasses linebreakchecks state prevgraf hsize leftskip rightskip hangin-
 dent hangafter parindent parfillleftskip parfillrightskip adjustspacing protrudechars
 emergencystretch looseness lastlinefit linepenalty clubpenalty widowpenalty display-
 widowpenalty toddlerpenalties adjdemerits doublehyphendemerits finalhyphendemerits
 parshape interlinepenalties clubpenalties widowpenalties displaywidowpenalties bro-
 kenpenalties orphanpenalties singlelinepenalty baselineskip lineskip lineskiplimit
 adjustspacingstep adjustspacingshrink adjustspacingstretch endpartokens hyphenation-
 mode shapingpenaltiesmode shapingpenalty parinitleftskip parinitrightskip emergen-
 cyleftskip emergencyrightskip emergencyextrastretch fitnessclasses adjacentdemerits
 hyphenpenalty exhyphenpenalty lefttwindemerits righttwindemerits
 no set: dir parpasses linebreakchecks state prevgraf hsize leftskip rightskip hangin-
 dent hangafter parindent parfillleftskip parfillrightskip adjustspacing protrudechars
 emergencystretch looseness lastlinefit linepenalty clubpenalty widowpenalty display-
 widowpenalty toddlerpenalties adjdemerits doublehyphendemerits finalhyphendemerits
 parshape interlinepenalties clubpenalties widowpenalties displaywidowpenalties bro-
 kenpenalties orphanpenalties singlelinepenalty baselineskip lineskip lineskiplimit

adjustspacingstep adjustspacingshrink adjustspacingstretch endpartokens hyphenation-mode shapingpenaltiesmode shapingpenalty parinitleftskip parinitrightskip emergencyleftskip emergencyrightskip emergencyextrastretch fitnessclasses adjacentdemerits hyphenpenalty exhyphenpenalty lefttwindemerits righttwindemerits

14.3.15 dir

Direction nodes mark parts of the running text that need a change of direction and the `\textdirection` command generates them. Contrary to LuaTeX we only have two directions.

fields

attr	attribute	level	integer	prev	node
dir	integer	next	node	subtype	integer
id	integer				

subtypes

0	normal	1	cancel
---	--------	---	--------

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firsttitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getdirection getid getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setdirection setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: dir
no set: dir

14.3.16 whatsit

A whatsit node is a real simple one and it only has a subtype. It is even less than a user node (which it actually could be) and uses hardly any memory. What you do with it it entirely up to you: it's is real

minimalistic. You can assign a subtype and it has attributes. It is all up to the user (and the backend) how they are handled.

fields

attr	attribute	prev	node
id	integer	subtype	integer
next	node		

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getid getnext getnodes getprev
getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar
isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph
issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohlist
naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable
rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth
setbox setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide
softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

14.3.17 attribute

This is a small node but used a lot. When an attribute is set and travels with a node, we actually have a forward (only) linked list with a head node that keeps a reference count. These lists are (to be) sorted by attribute index. Normally you will *not* mess directly with these list because you can get unwanted side effects.

fields

count	integer	index	integer	subtype	integer
data	integer	next	node	value	integer
id	integer				

subtypes

0	list	1	value
---	------	---	-------

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getdata getid getnext getnodes getprev
getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar
isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph
issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohlist
naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable
rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth
setbox setdata setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist
size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

```
instock inuse todirect
```

userdata helpers

```
no get: index value
no set: data index value
```

14.3.18 alignrecord

This node can be encountered in alignments and will eventually become a `hlist` or `vlist` node. It therefore has the same size and fields as those nodes. However, the following fields are overloaded by other parameters: `woffset`, `hoffset`, `doffset`, `xoffset`, `yoffset`, `orientation`, `pre` and `post`. Be careful!

fields

id	integer	prev	node	subtype	integer
list	node	size	dimension	width	dimension
next	node				

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getid getnext getnodes getprev
getspeciallist getsubtype getwidth getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth
ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar
```

isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing
 mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
 patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable
 rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth
 setbox setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype setwidth showlist
 size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
 traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
 unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: list width size
 no set: list width size

14.3.19 unset

This node can be encountered in alignments and will eventually become a hlist or vlist node. It therefore has the same size and fields as those nodes. However, the following fields are (at least temporarily) there and they use the slots of wffset, hffset, doffset and orientation. Be careful!

fields

attr	attribute	next	node	span	integer
count	integer	prev	node	stretch	dimension
id	integer	shrink	dimension	subtype	integer

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getdepth getexcept getglue getheight
 getid getinputfields getlist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype
 gettotal getwhd getwidth getwordrange hasdimensions hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth
 ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar
 isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid iszeroglue kerning lastnode length
 ligaturing mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph
 newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone
 protrusionskipable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist
 setattributes setboth setbox setdepth setexcept setglue setheight setinputfields
 setlink setlist setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype setwhd setwidth
 showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar
 traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
 unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: attr span

no set: attr span

14.4 Math nodes

14.4.1 The concept

Many object fields in math mode are either simple characters in a specific family or math lists or node lists: `mathchar`, `mathtextchar`, `subbox` and `submlist` and `delimiter`. These are endpoints and therefore the `next` and `prev` fields of these subnodes are unused.

There is a subset of nodes dedicated to math called `noads`. These are used for simple atoms, fractions, fences, accents and radicals. When you enter a formula, \TeX creates a node list with regular (math) nodes and `noads`. Then it hands over the list the math processing engine. The result of that is a `nodelist` without `noads`. Most of the `noads` contain subnodes so that the list of possible fields is actually quite small. Math formulas are both a linked list and a tree. For instance in $e = mc^2$ there is a linked list `e = m c` but the `c` has a superscript branch that itself can be a list with branches.

Eventually I might give a more detailed description of the differences between the five `noad` variants but for now the following has to do. One will quite likely not set that many fields at the Lua end but running over the many sub lists can make sense. One has to know what the engine is doing anyway.

14.4.2 noad

First, there are the objects (the \TeX book calls them ‘atoms’) that are associated with the simple math objects: `ord`, `op`, `bin`, `rel`, `open`, `close`, `punct`, `inner`, `over`, `under`, `vcenter`. These all have the same fields, and they are combined into a single node type with separate subtypes for differentiation. However, before reading on you should realize that \LaTeX has an extended math engine. We have not only more classes, we also have many more keys in the nodes. We won't cover these details here.

fields

<code>analyzed</code>	integer	<code>mainclass</code>	integer	<code>scriptstate</code>	integer
<code>attr</code>	attribute	<code>next</code>	node	<code>source</code>	integer
<code>depth</code>	integer	<code>nucleus</code>	nodelist	<code>style</code>	integer
<code>extraattr</code>	attribute	<code>options</code>	integer	<code>sub</code>	nodelist
<code>fam</code>	integer	<code>prev</code>	node	<code>subpre</code>	nodelist
<code>height</code>	integer	<code>prime</code>	nodelist	<code>subshift</code>	integer
<code>hlist</code>	nodelist	<code>primeshift</code>	integer	<code>subtype</code>	integer
<code>id</code>	integer	<code>rightclass</code>	integer	<code>sup</code>	nodelist
<code>italic</code>	integer	<code>rightslack</code>	integer	<code>suppre</code>	nodelist
<code>leftclass</code>	integer	<code>scriptkern</code>	integer	<code>supshift</code>	integer
<code>leftslack</code>	integer	<code>scriptorder</code>	integer	<code>width</code>	integer

subtypes

0	ordinary	7	variable	14	middle
1	operator	8	active	15	prime
2	binary	9	inner	16	accent
3	relation	10	under	17	fenced
4	open	11	over	18	ghost
5	close	12	fraction	19	vcenter
6	punctuation	13	radical		

noadoptiovalues

0x00000001	axis	0x40000000	followedby space
0x00000002	noaxis	0x80000000	proportional
0x00000004	exact	0x100000000	sourceonnucleus
0x00000008	left	0x200000000	fixedsuperorsubscript
0x00000010	middle	0x400000000	fixedsuperandsubscript
0x00000020	right	0x800000000	autobase
0x00000040	adapttolleftsize	0x1000000000	stretch
0x00000080	adapttorightsize	0x2000000000	shrink
0x00000100	nosubscript	0x4000000000	center
0x00000200	nosuperscript	0x8000000000	scale
0x00000400	nosubprescript	0x10000000000	keepbase
0x00000800	nosuperprescript	0x20000000000	single
0x00001000	noscript	0x40000000000	norule
0x00002000	nooverflow	0x80000000000	automiddle
0x00004000	void	0x100000000000	reflected
0x00008000	phantom	0x200000000000	continuation
0x00010000	openupheight	0x400000000000	inheritclass
0x00020000	openupdepth	0x800000000000	discardshapekern
0x00040000	limits	0x1000000000000	realignscripts
0x00080000	nolimits	0x2000000000000	ignoreemptysubscript
0x00100000	preferfontthickness	0x4000000000000	ignoreemptysuperscript
0x00200000	noruling	0x8000000000000	ignoreemptyprimescript
0x00400000	indexedsubscript	0x10000000000000	continuationhead
0x00800000	indexedsuperscript	0x20000000000000	continuationkernel
0x01000000	indexedsubprescript	0x40000000000000	reorderprescripts
0x02000000	indexedsuperprescript	0x80000000000000	ignore
0x04000000	unpacklist	0x100000000000000	nomorescripts
0x08000000	nocheck	0x200000000000000	carryoverclasses
0x10000000	auto	0x400000000000000	usecallback
0x20000000	unrolllist		

In addition to the subtypes (related to classes) that the engines knows of, there can be user defined subtypes. Not all fields make sense for every derives noad: accent, fence, fraction or radical but there we (currently) only mention the additional ones. These additional fields are taken from a pool of extra fields. Not all fields are always accessible for these nodes.

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getanchors getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcharspec getclass getfam
 getid getnext getnodes getnucleus getoptions getprev getprime getscripts
 getspeciallist getsub getsubpre getsubtype getsup getsuppre getwordrange hasglyph
 hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph
 isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode
 length ligaturing mlisttoohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom
 newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs
 protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
 setanchors setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setcharspec setclass setfam
 setlink setnext setnucleus setoptions setprev setprime setscripts setspeciallist
 setsplit setsub setsubpre setsubtype setup setsuppre showlist size slide
 softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
 traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
 unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: hlist italic width height depth style scriptstate analyzed mainclass leftclass
 rightclass leftslack rightslack subshift supshift primeshift scriptkern extraattr
 no set: -

14.4.3 mathchar

The mathchar is the simplest subnode field, it contains the character and family for a single glyph object. The family eventually resolves on a reference to a font. Internally this nodes is one of the math kernel nodes.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	prev	node
char	integer	index	integer	properties	integer
fam	integer	next	node	subtype	integer
group	integer	options	integer		

kerneloptionvalues

0x01	noitaliccorrection	0x10	fulldiscretionary
0x02	noleftpairkern	0x20	ignoredcharacter
0x04	norightpairkern	0x40	islargeoperator
0x08	autodiscretionary	0x80	hasitalicshape

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firsttitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getchar getchardict getcharspec getfam
 getfont getid getnext getnodes getoptions getprev getspeciallist getsubtype
 getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext
 isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist
 isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohtml naturalhsize naturalwidth
 newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead
 protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable rangedimensions removefromlist
 repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setchar setchardict
 setcharspec setfam setlink setnext setoptions setprev setspeciallist setsplit
 setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect
 traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
 unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -

no set: -

14.4.4 mathtextchar

The mathtextchar is a special case that you will not normally encounter, it arises temporarily during math list conversion (its sole function is to suppress a following italic correction). Internally this node is one of the math kernel nodes.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	prev	node
char	integer	index	integer	properties	integer
fam	integer	next	node	subtype	integer
group	integer	options	integer		

kerneloptionvalues

0x01	noitaliccorrection	0x10	fulldiscretionary
0x02	noleftpairkern	0x20	ignoredcharacter
0x04	norightpairkern	0x40	islargeoperator
0x08	autodiscretionary	0x80	hasitalicshape

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getchar getchardict getcharspec getfam
 getfont getid getnext getnodes getoptions getprev getspeciallist getsubtype
 getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext
 isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist
 isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth
 newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead
 protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable rangedimensions removefromlist
 repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setchar setchardict
 setcharspec setfam setlink setnext setoptions setprev setspeciallist setsplit
 setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect
 traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
 unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -

no set: -

14.4.5 subbox

These subbox subnode is used for subsidiary list items where the list points to a 'normal' vbox or hbox.

fields

attr	attribute	list	nodelist	prev	node
id	integer	next	node	subtype	integer

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getid getlist getnext getnodes getprev
 getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar
 isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph
 issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohlist
 naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
 patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable
 rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth
 setbox setlink setlist setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist

size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
 traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
 unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -

no set: -

14.4.6 submlist

In submlist subnode the list points to a math list that is yet to be converted. Their fields

fields

attr	attribute	list	nodelist	prev	node
id	integer	next	node	subtype	integer

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getid getlist getnext getnodes getprev
 getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar
 isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph
 issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohtml
 naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
 patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable
 rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth
 setbox setlink setlist setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist
 size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
 traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
 unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -

no set: -

14.4.7 delimiter

There is a fifth subnode type that is used exclusively for delimiter fields. As before, the next and prev fields are unused, but we do have:

fields

attr	attribute	largefamily	integer	smallchar	integer
id	integer	next	node	smallfamily	integer
index	integer	prev	node	subtype	integer

The fields `largechar` and `largefamily` can be zero, in that case the font that is set for the `smallfamily` is expected to provide the large version as an extension to the `smallchar`.

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getchar getchardict getcharspec
getclass getfont getid getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype
getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext
isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist
isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohtml naturalhsize naturalwidth
newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead
protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable rangedimensions removefromlist
repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setchar setchardict
setcharspec setclass setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype
showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar
traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: index
no set: index

14.4.8 accent

Accent nodes deal with stuff on top or below a math constructs.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	subtype	integer
bottomaccent	nodelist	next	node	topaccent	nodelist
bottomovershoot	nodelist	overlayaccent	nodelist	topovershoot	nodelist
fraction	nodelist	prev	node		

subtypes

0	bothflexible	2	fixedbottom
1	fixedtop	3	fixedboth

For more fields see noad. At some point we might move fields from that list to here but only when the engine also gets that split.

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
firstglyphnode firsttitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
getanchors getattributelist getattributes getboth getbottom getbox getclass
getdelimiter getfam getid getnext getnodes getnucleus getoptions getprev getprime
getscripts getspeciallist getsub getsubpre getsubtype getsup getsuppre gettop
getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext
isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist
isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohtml naturalhsize naturalwidth
newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead
protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipppable rangedimensions removefromlist
repack reverse setanchors setattributelist setattributes setboth setbottom setbox
setclass setdelimiter setfam setlink setnext setnucleus setoptions setprev setprime
setscripts setspeciallist setsplit setsub setsubpre setsubtype setup setsuppre
settop showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar
traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: topovershoot bottomovershoot
no set: topovershoot bottomovershoot

14.4.9 style

These nodes are signals to switch to another math style. Currently the subtype is actually used to store the style but don't rely on that for the future.

fields

attr	attribute	prev	node	style	integer
id	integer	scale	integer	subtype	integer
next	node				

subtypes

mathstylenamevalues

0x00	display	0x04	script
0x01	crampeddisplay	0x05	crampedscript
0x02	text	0x06	scriptscript
0x03	crampedtext	0x07	crampedscriptscript

mathstylevalues

0x00	display	0x04	script
0x01	crampeddisplay	0x05	crampedscript
0x02	text	0x06	scriptscript
0x03	crampedtext	0x07	crampedscriptscript

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getid getnext getnodes getprev
 getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar
 isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph
 issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohlist
 naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
 patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable
 rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth
 setbox setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide
 softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
 traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
 unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: scale
 no set: -

14.4.10 parameter

These nodes are used to (locally) set math parameters. The subtype reflects a math style.

fields

id	integer	prev	node	subtype	integer
name	integer	style	integer	value	integer
next	node				

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firsttitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getid getnext getnodes getprev
 getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar
 isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph
 issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohlist
 naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph
 patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable
 rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth
 setbox setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide
 softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
 traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
 unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -

no set: -

14.4.11 choice

Most of the fields of this node are lists. Depending on the subtype different field names are used.

fields

attr	attribute	post	nodelist	scriptscript	nodelist
class	integer	pre	nodelist	subtype	integer
display	nodelist	prev	node	text	nodelist
id	integer	replace	nodelist		
next	node	script	nodelist		

subtypes

0 normal 1 discretionary

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getchoice getdisc getid getnext
 getnodes getpost getpre getprev getreplace getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange
 hasglyph hpack hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar
 isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid
 kerning lastnode length ligaturing mlisttohtml naturalhsize naturalwidth
 newcontinuationatom newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead
 protectglyphs protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist
 repack reverse setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setchoice setdisc
 setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide
 softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
 traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
 unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: class
 no set: class pre post replace

14.4.12 radical

Radical nodes are the most complex as they deal with scripts as well as constructed large symbols.
 Warning: never assign a node list to the nucleus, sub, sup, left, or degree field unless you are sure
 its internal link structure is correct, otherwise an error can be triggered.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	size	integer
bottom	nodelist	left	nodelist	subtype	integer
degree	nodelist	next	node	top	nodelist
depth	dimension	prev	node		
height	dimension	right	nodelist		

subtypes

0 normal	4 underdelimiter	8 delimited
1 radical	5 overdelimiter	9 hextensible
2 root	6 delimiterunder	
3 rooted	7 delimiterover	

For more fields see noad. At some point we might move fields from that list to here but only when the engine also gets that split.

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getanchors getattributelist getattributes getboth getbottomdelimiter getbox getclass
 getdegree getdelimiter getfam getid getleftdelimiter getnext getnodes getnucleus
 getoptions getprev getprime getrightdelimiter getscripts getspeciallist getsup
 getsubpre getsubtype getsup getsuppre gettopdelimiter getwordrange hasglyph hpack
 hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph
 isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode
 length ligaturing mlisttohtml naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom
 newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs
 protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
 setanchors setattributelist setattributes setboth setbottomdelimiter setbox setclass
 setdegree setdelimiter setfam setleftdelimiter setlink setnext setnucleus setoptions
 setprev setprime setrightdelimiter setscripts setspeciallist setsplit setsub
 setsubpre setsubtype setsup setsuppre settopdelimiter showlist size slide
 softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
 traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
 unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: size height depth
 no set: size height depth

14.4.13 fraction

Fraction nodes are also used for delimited cases, hence the left and right fields among.

fields

attr	attribute	middle	odelist	rule	dimension
denominator	odelist	next	node	subtype	integer
hfactor	integer	numerator	odelist	vfactor	integer
id	integer	prev	node		
left	odelist	right	odelist		

subtypes

0 over	3 skewed
1 atop	4 stretched
2 above	

For more fields see noad. At some point we might move fields from that list to here but only when the

engine also gets that split.

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
getanchors getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getclass getdelimiter
getdenominator getfam getid getleftdelimiter getnext getnodes getnumerator getoptions
getprev getrightdelimiter getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hpack
hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph
isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode
length ligaturing mlisttohtml naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom
newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs
protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
setanchors setattributelist setattributes setboth setbox setclass setdelimiter
setdenominator setfam setleftdelimiter setlink setnext setnumerator setoptions
setprev setrightdelimiter setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide
softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: rule hfactor vfactor
no set: rule hfactor vfactor

14.4.14 fence

Fence nodes come in pairs but either one can be a dummy (this period driven empty fence). Some of these fields are used by the renderer and might get adapted in the process.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	subtype	integer
bottom	integer	nestingfactor	integer	top	integer
bottomovershoot	dimension	next	node	topovershoot	dimension
delimiter	odelist	prev	node	variant	integer

subtypes

0 unset	2 middle	4 operator
1 left	3 right	5 no

For more fields see noad. At some point we might move fields from that list to here but only when the engine also gets that split.

direct helpers

appendaftertail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions
 endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
 firstglyphnode firsttitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
 getanchors getattributelist getattributes getboth getbottom getbottomdelimiter getbox
 getclass getdelimiter getdepth getfam getheight getid getnext getnodes getprev
 getspeciallist getsubtype gettop gettopdelimiter gettotal getwordrange hasglyph hpack
 hyphenating isboth ischar isdirect isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextglyph
 isprev isprevchar isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode
 length ligaturing mlisttohtml naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom
 newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead protectglyphs
 protectglyphsnone protrusionskipable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
 setanchors setattributelist setattributes setboth setbottom setbottomdelimiter setbox
 setclass setdelimiter setdepth setfam setheight setlink setnext setprev
 setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype settop settopdelimiter showlist size slide
 softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
 traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist unprotectglyphs
 unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: nestingfactor topovershoot bottomovershoot
 no set: nestingfactor topovershoot bottomovershoot

14.5 Helpers

14.5.1 Introduction

The userdata node variant has accessors on that object but when we use the indexed variant we use functions. As a consequence there are more helpers for direct nodes than for userdata nodes and many of them accept more arguments or have multiple return values. When you use ConT_EXt you will notice that instead of the `node.direct` namespace we use `nuts`. Among the reasons is that we had an intermediate variant in ConT_EXt MkIV before we had these direct nodes. That variant was more efficient than the userdata accessors and triggered the introduction of direct nodes after which we dropped the intermediate variant. So, for ConT_EXt users direct nodes are nuts.

14.5.2 Housekeeping

This function returns an array that maps node id numbers to node type strings, providing an overview of the possible top-level id types.

```

function node.types ( )
  return <t:table> -- identifiers
end

```

This shows the names of the nodes and their internal numbers. Not all nodes are visible unless one goes really deep down into lists. The next two convert a name to its internal numeric representation and vice versa. The numbers don't relate to importance or some ordering; they just appear in the order that is handy for the engine. Commands like this are rather optimized so performance should be ok but you can of course always store the id in a Lua number.

```
function node.id ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end

function node.type ( <t:integer> identifier )
    return <t:string> -- name
end
```

This function returns an indexed table with valid field names for a particular type of node. Some fields (like total) can be constructed from other fields.

```
function node.fields ( <t:integer> identifier | <t:string> name )
    return <t:table> -- fields
end
```

The hasfield function returns a boolean that is only true if n is actually a node, and it has the field. This function probably is not that useful but some nodes don't have a subtype, attr or prev field and this is a way to test for that.

```
function node.direct.hasfield ( <t:direct> n | <t:string> name )
    return <t:boolean> -- okay
end
```

The new function creates a new node. All its fields are initialized to either zero or nil except for id and subtype. Instead of numbers you can also use strings (names). If you pass a second argument the subtype will be set too.

```
function node.direct.new (
    <t:number> id | <t:string> name
)
    return <t:direct.> -- node
end

function node.direct.new (
    <t:number> id | <t:string> name,
    <t:number> | <t:string> subtype
)
    return <t:direct.> -- node
end
```

As already has been mentioned, you are responsible for making sure that nodes created this way are used only once, and are freed when you don't pass them back somehow.

The next one frees node n from TeX's memory. Be careful: no checks are done on whether this node is still pointed to from a register or some next field: it is up to you to make sure that the internal data structures remain correct. Fields that point to nodes or lists are flushed too. So, when you used their content for something else you need to set them to nil first.

```
function node.direct.free ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:direct> -- next
end
```

The free function returns the next field of the freed node, while the flushnode alternative returns nothing.

```
function node.direct.flush ( <t:direct> n )
  -- no return values
end
```

A list starting with node n can be flushed from T_EX's memory too. Be careful: no checks are done on whether any of these nodes is still pointed to from a register or some next field: it is up to you to make sure that the internal data structures remain correct.

```
function node.direct.flushlist ( <t:direct> n )
  -- no return values
end
```

When you free for instance a discretionary node, flushlist is applied to the pre, post, replace so you don't need to do that yourself. Assigning them nil won't free those lists!

This creates a deep copy of node n, including all nested lists as in the case of a hlist or vlist node. Only the next field is not copied.

```
function node.direct.copy ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:direct> -- copy
end
```

A deep copy of the node list that starts at n can be created too. If m is also given, the copy stops just before node m.

```
function node.direct.copyleft ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:direct> -- copy
end

function node.direct.copyleft ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> m )
  return <t:direct> -- copy
end
```

Note that you cannot copy attribute lists this way. However, there is normally no need to copy attribute lists because when you do assignments to the attr field or make changes to specific attributes, the needed copying and freeing takes place automatically. When you change a value of an attribute *in* a list, it will affect all the nodes that share that list.

```
function node.direct.write ( <t:direct> n )
  -- no return values
end
```

This function will append a node list to T_EX's 'current list'. The node list is not deep-copied! There is no error checking either! You might need to enforce horizontal mode in order for this to work as expected.

14.5.3 Manipulating lists

Unless there is a bug or a callback messes up a node list is dual linked. In original T_EX nodes had to be small so nodes only had a next pointer. If you run into an issue you can use the next helper to sure that the node list is double linked.

```
function node.direct.slide ( <t:direct> n)
    return <t:direct> -- tail
end
```

In most cases T_EX itself only uses next pointers but your other callbacks might expect proper prev pointers too. So, when you run into issues or are in doubt, apply the slide function before you return the list. You can also get the tail without sliding:

```
function node.direct.tail ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> -- tail
end
```

For tracing purposes we have a few counters. The first one returns the number of nodes contained in the node list that starts at *n*. If *m* is also supplied it stops at *m* instead of at the end of the list. The node *m* is not counted.

```
function node.direct.length (
    <t:direct> n
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

```
function node.direct.length (
    <t:direct> n,
    <t:direct> m
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The second one the number of nodes contained in the node list that starts at *n* that have a matching id field. If *m* is also supplied, counting stops at *m* instead of at the end of the list. The node *m* is not counted. This function also accept string id's.

```
function node.direct.count (
    <t:integer> id,
    <t:direct> n
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

```
function node.direct.count (
    <t:integer> id,
    <t:direct> n,
    <t:direct> m
)
    return <t:integer>
```

end

This function removes the node `current` from the list following `head`. It is your responsibility to make sure it is really part of that list. The return values are the new head and current nodes. The returned `current` is the node following the current in the calling argument, and is only passed back as a convenience (or `nil`, if there is no such node). The returned head is more important, because if the function is called with `current` equal to `head`, it will be changed. When the third argument is passed, the node is freed.

```
function node.direct.remove ( <t:direct> head, <t:direct> current )
  return
    <t:direct> head,
    <t:direct> current,
    <t:direct> removed
end
```

```
function node.direct.remove ( <t:direct> head, <t:direct> current, <t:boolean> free)
  return
    <t:direct> -- head,
    <t:direct> -- current
end
```

This function inserts the node `new` before `current` into the list following `head`. It is your responsibility to make sure that `current` is really part of that list. The return values are the (potentially mutated) head and the node `new`, set up to be part of the list (with correct next field). If `head` is initially `nil`, it will become `new`.

```
function node.direct.insertbefore (
  <t:direct> head,
  <t:direct> current,
  <t:direct> new
)
  return
    <t:direct>, -- head
    <t:direct> -- new
end
```

This function inserts the node `new` after `current` into the list following `head`. It is your responsibility to make sure that `current` is really part of that list. The return values are the head and the node `new`, set up to be part of the list (with correct next field). If `head` is initially `nil`, it will become `new`.

```
function node.direct.insertafter (
  <t:direct> head,
  <t:direct> current,
  <t:direct> new
)
  return
    <t:direct>, -- head
    <t:direct> -- new
end
```

You can also mess with the list by changing the next or prev fields, using:

```

function node.direct.setprev ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> prv ) end
function node.direct.setnext ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> nxt ) end
function node.direct.setboth ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> prv, <t:direct> nxt ) end

```

The next function pops the last node from $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$'s 'current list'. It returns that node, or nil if the current list is empty.

```

function node.direct.lastnode ( )
  return <t:direct> n
end

```

This helper returns the location of the first match at or after node n:

```

function node.direct.findnode ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> subtype )
  return <t:direct> -- n
end

function node.direct.findnode ( <t:direct> n )
  return
    <t:direct>, -- n
    <t:integer> -- subtype
end

```

14.5.4 Traversing

The easiest do-it-yourself approach to run over a list of nodes is to use one of the following functions:

```

function node.direct.getnext ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:direct> | <t:nil>
end

function node.direct.getprev ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:direct> | <t:nil>
end

function node.direct.getboth ( <t:direct> n )
  return
    <t:direct> | <t:nil>, -- prev
    <t:direct> | <t:nil> -- next
end

```

Instead of using these you can use one of the iterators that loops over the node list that starts at n.

```

function node.direct.traverse ( <t:direct> n )
  return
    <t:direct> t,
    <t:integer> id,
    <t:integer> subtype
end

```

Typically code looks like this:

```

for n in node.traverse(head) do
    -- whatever
end

```

which is functionally equivalent to:

```

do
    local n
    local function f (head,var)
        local t
        if var == nil then
            t = head
        else
            t = var.next
        end
        return t
    end
    while true do
        n = f (head, n)
        if n == nil then
            break
        end
        -- whatever
    end
end
end

```

It should be clear from the definition of the function `f` that even though it is possible to add or remove nodes from the node list while traversing, you have to take great care to make sure all the next (and prev) pointers remain valid.

If the above is unclear to you, see the section ‘For Statement’ in the Lua Reference Manual.

This is an iterator that loops over all the nodes in the list that starts at `n` that have a matching `id` field. See the previous section for details. The change is in the local function `f`, which now does an extra while loop checking against the upvalue `id`, kind of like:

```

local function f(head,var)
    local t
    if var == nil then
        t = head
    else
        t = var.next
    end
    while not t.id == id do
        t = t.next
    end
    return t
end
end

```

This and the previously discussed `traverse` are the only traverses provided for userdata nodes.

```

function node.direct.traverseid ( <t:integer> id, <t:direct> n )

```

```

return
    <t:direct> t,
    <t:integer> subtype
end

```

The `traversechar` iterator loops over the glyph nodes in a list. Only nodes with a subtype less than 256 are seen.

NEEDS CHECKING: protected check

```

function node.direct.traversechar ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- n
        <t:integer>, -- char
        <t:integer> -- font
end

```

The `traverseglyph` iterator loops over a list and returns the list and filters all glyphs:

```

function node.direct.traverseglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- n
        <t:integer>, -- char
        <t:integer> -- font
end

```

This iterator loops over the `hlist` and `vlist` nodes in a list. The four return values can save some time compared to fetching these fields but in practice you seldom need them all.

```

function node.direct.traverselist ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- n
        <t:integer>, -- identifier
        <t:integer>, -- subtype
        <t:direct> -- list
end

```

This iterator loops over nodes that have content: `hlist`, `vlist`, glue with leaders, glyph, disc and rule nodes.

```

function node.direct.traversecontent ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- n
        <t:integer>, -- identifier
        <t:integer>, -- subtype
        <t:direct> -- listorleader
end

```

The traversers also support backward traversal. An optional extra boolean triggers this. Yet another optional boolean will automatically start at the end of the given list. So, if we want both we use:

```

function node.direct.traverse (

```



```

    <t:direct> n,
    <t:boolean> reverse,
    <t:boolean> startatend
)
return
    <t:direct> t,
    <t:integer> id,
    <t:integer> subtype
end

```

14.5.5 Glyphs

Glyphs have a lot of parameters and there are many setters and getters that can access them. Some generic ones, like `getwidth` are discussed in other subsections, some are more specific to glyphs:

```

function node.direct.getslant ( <t:direct> g ) return <t:integer> end
function node.direct.getweight ( <t:direct> g ) return <t:integer> end

```

and

```

function node.direct.setslant ( <t:direct> g, <t:integer> slant ) end
function node.direct.setweight ( <t:direct> g, <t:integer> weight ) end

```

14.5.6 Glue

You can set the five properties of a glue in one go. If a non-numeric value is passed the property becomes zero.

```

function node.direct.setglue ( <t:direct> n )
    -- no return values
end

```

```

function node.direct.setglue (
    <t:direct> n,
    <t:integer> width,
    <t:integer> stretch,
    <t:integer> shrink,
    <t:integer> stretchorder,
    <t:integer> shrinkorder
)
    -- no return values
end

```

When you pass values, only arguments that are numbers are assigned so the next call will only adapt the width and shrink.

```
node.direct.setglue(n,655360,false,65536)
```

When a list node is passed, you set the glue, order and sign instead. The next call will return five values or nothing when no glue is passed.

```

function node.direct.getglue ( <t:direct> n )
  return
    <t:integer>, -- width
    <t:integer>, -- stretch
    <t:integer>, -- shrink
    <t:integer>, -- stretchorder
    <t:integer>  -- shrinkorder

```

When the second argument is false, only the width is returned (this is consistent with `tex.get`). When a list node is passed, you get back the glue that is set, the order of that glue and the sign.

This function returns true when the width, stretch and shrink properties are all zero.

```

function node.direct.iszeroglue ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:boolean> -- allzero
end

```

Glue is not only, well, glue. The to be filled space can also be occupied by a rule, boxes, glyphs and what more. You can get the list that makes this with:

```

function node.direct.getleader ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:direct> -- list
end

```

and set the list with

```

function node.direct.setleader ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> l | <t:nil> )
  -- no return values
end

```

14.5.7 Attributes

Assignments to attributes registers result in assigning lists with set attributes to nodes and the implementation is non-trivial because the value that is attached to a node is essentially a (sorted) sparse array of key-value pairs. It is generally easiest to deal with attribute lists and attributes by using the dedicated functions in the node library.

An attribute comes in two variants, indicated by subtype. Because attributes are stored in a sorted linked list, and because they are shared, the first node is a list reference node and the following ones are value nodes. So, most attribute nodes are value nodes. These are forward linked lists. Because there are assumptions to how these list are build you should rely on the helpers, also because details might change.

This returns the currently active list of attributes, if there is one.

```

function node.direct.currentattr()
  return <t:direct> -- list
end

```

The intended usage of `currentattr` is as follows (we use the `userdata` interface here):

```

local x1 = node.new("glyph")

```

```
x1.attr = node.currentattr()
local x2 = node.new("glyph")
x2.attr = node.currentattr()
```

or:

```
local x1 = node.new("glyph")
local x2 = node.new("glyph")
local ca = node.currentattr()
x1.attr = ca
x2.attr = ca
```

The attribute lists are reference counted and the assignment takes care of incrementing the count. You cannot expect the value `ca` to be valid any more when you assign attributes (using `tex.setattribute`) or when control has been passed back to \TeX .

```
<number> v = node.hasattribute ( <node> n, <number> id )
<number> v = node.hasattribute ( <node> n, <number> id, <number> val )
```

Tests if a node has the attribute with number `id` set. If `val` is also supplied, also tests if the value matches `val`. It returns the value, or, if no match is found, `nil`.

```
function node.direct.getattribute ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> id )
    return <t:integer> -- value
end
```

The previous function tests if a node has an attribute with number `id` set. It returns the value, or, if no match is found, `nil`. If no `id` is given then the zero attributes is assumed.

```
function node.direct.findattribute ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> id )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- value
        <t:direct>  -- node
end
```

Finds the first node that has attribute with number `id` set. It returns the value and the node if there is a match and otherwise nothing.

```
function node.direct.setattribute ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> id, <t:integer> value )
    -- no return values
end
```

Sets the attribute with number `id` to the value `value`. Duplicate assignments are ignored.

```
function node.direct.unsetAttribute ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> id )
    return <t:integer> -- value
end
```

```
function node.direct.unsetAttribute ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> id, <t:integer> value
)
    return <t:integer> -- value
end
```

Unsets the attribute with number `id`. If `value` is also supplied, it will only perform this operation if the value matches `value`. Missing attributes or attribute-value pairs are ignored. If the attribute was actually deleted, the function returns its old value, otherwise it returns `nil`.

14.5.8 Glyph handling

Processing a character stream into a visual representation using glyphs is one of the important processes in the engine. In $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}_{82}$ this happens in two places. When the text is read ligaturing and kerning takes place and the list can, if needed, be packed into a box because the dimensions are now known. When that list is to become a paragraph it might be that lines get split and when a word can be hyphenated the ligaturing and kerning is reverted, the word gets hyphenated, ligatures and kerns get reapplied and the process goes on.

In OpenType processing characters is way more complex. Even if we delegate this to a library, the fact that we have a mix of text and whatever, potential hyphenation as well as spaces turned glue, means that we need to do some juggling with nodes. For that reason hyphenation (of the whole list), ligaturing and kerning has been split into clearly separates stages. One can still apply the original $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ variants but in practice it is Lua that does the juggling of nodes in more complex situations. And we're not only talking of font processing. For instance, additional inter-character kerning can be done in Lua too.

This all means that we have quite a repertoire of helpers that deal with glyph processing efficiently.

We can locate the first node in the list starting at `n` that is a glyph node with a subtype indicating it is a glyph, or `nil`. If `m` is given, processing stops at (but including) that node, otherwise processing stops at the end of the list. The `char` and `glyph` variants check for the protected field being (yet) unset or (already) set.

```
function node.direct.firstglyphnode ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> -- n
end

function node.direct.firstglyphnode ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> m )
    return <t:direct> -- n
end
```

The next functions can be used to determine if processing is needed. We distinguish between a character (unprocessed) and a glyph (processed or unprocessed). When we check for a glyph there are three possible outcomes:

```
function node.direct.isglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:nil>,
        <t:nil>
end

function node.direct.isglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:false>,
        <t:integer> -- identifier
end
```

```

function node.direct.isglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- character
        <t:integer>  -- font
end

```

Checking for a processed character is more complicated. If the glyph has been processed and the protected property has been set, we get this:

```

function node.direct.ischar ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:false>
end

```

If that's not the case additional arguments are checked. If we don't pass a valid integer, the character value is returned:

```

function node.direct.ischar ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> font )
    return <t:integer> -- character
end

```

but when we passed a font identifier indeed we check if that one matches the one in the glyph and if not again we get:

```

function node.direct.ischar ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> font )
    return <t:false> --
end

```

From there on we check for more arguments to match the glyph fields:

```

function node.direct.ischar (
    <t:direct> n,
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> data
)
    return <t:false> | <t:integer> -- character
end

```

```

function node.direct.ischar (
    <t:direct> n,
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> data,
    <t:integer> state
)
    return <t:false> | <t:integer> -- character
end

```

```

function node.direct.ischar (
    <t:direct> n,
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> scale,
    <t:integer> xscale,

```

```

    <t:integer> yscale,
)
    return <t:false> | <t:integer> -- character
end

function node.direct.ischar (
    <t:direct> n,
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> data,
    <t:integer> scale,
    <t:integer> xscale,
    <t:integer> yscale,
)
    return <t:false> | <t:integer> -- character
end

```

There are reasons for these combined tests and they can be found in the ConT_EXt font handler. A related helper is one that compares the font, data, scale, xscale, yscale, slant and weight.

```

function node.direct.issimilarglyph ( <t:direct> one, <t:direct> two )
    return <t:boolean> -- similar
end

```

This function returns the first glyph or disc node in the given list:

```

function node.direct.hasglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> -- n
end

```

Traditional T_EX ligature processing can be achieved with the next helper. This assumes that the ligature information is present in the font. In ConT_EXt we call this base mode processing.

```

function node.direct.ligaturing ( <t:direct> first )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>, -- tail
        <t:boolean> -- success
end

function node.direct.ligaturing ( <t:direct> first, <t:direct> last )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>, -- tail
        <t:boolean> -- success
end

```

Traditional T_EX font kern processing can be achieved with the next helper. This assumes that the kern information is present in the font. In ConT_EXt we call this base mode processing.

```

function node.direct.kerning ( <t:direct> first )
    return

```

```

    <t:direct>, -- head
    <t:direct>, -- tail
    <t:boolean> -- success
end

function node.direct.kerning ( <t:direct> first, <t:direct> last )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>, -- tail
        <t:boolean> -- success
end

```

When processing is done, you can mark the glyph nodes as protected in order to prevent redundant processing, for instance because boxed material gets unboxed. Where in LuaT_EX the subtype gets changed by adding or subtracting 256, in LuaMetaT_EX we have a dedicated (small) protection field.

```

function node.direct.protectglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.protectglyphs ( <t:direct> first, <t:direct> last )
    -- no return values
end

```

The opposite action can also be done.

```

function node.direct.unprotectglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.unprotectglyphs ( <t:direct> first, <t:direct> last )
    -- no return values
end

```

The next function checks if protrusion is active at a line boundary, in which case the glyph node can be skipped. It's not that useful in the end.

```

function node.direct.protrusionskipable ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:boolean> -- skipable
end

```

Once we're done we can freeze leaders: apply the glue to the leader and freeze the boxes or whatever is at hand.

```

function node.direct.flattenleaders ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:integer> -- count
end

```

14.5.9 Discretionaries

Discretionaries and glyphs are the carriers of text. Where the core of glyph nodes are the font and char fields, in disc nodes we have to focus on the pre, post and replace fields. These point to linked lists that are a mix of glyph, kerns and (in LuaMetaTeX fixed width) glue. here are the accessors:²²

```
function node.direct.getpost ( <t:direct> d, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>  -- tail
end

function node.direct.getpre ( <t:direct> d, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>  -- tail
end

function node.direct.getreplace ( <t:direct> d, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>  -- tail
end

function node.direct.getdisc ( <t:direct> d, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- prehead
        <t:direct>, -- posthead
        <t:direct>, -- replacehead
        <t:direct>, -- pretail
        <t:direct>, -- posttail
        <t:direct>  -- replacetail
end
```

We also have setters:

```
function node.direct.setpost ( <t:direct> d, <t:direct> | <t:nil> ) end
function node.direct.setpre ( <t:direct> d, <t:direct> | <t:nil> ) end
function node.direct.setreplace ( <t:direct> d, <t:direct> | <t:nil> ) end
```

A major update can be done with this one:

```
function node.direct.setdisc (
    <t:direct>,          -- discretionary
    <t:direct> | <t:nil>, -- pre
    <t:direct> | <t:nil>, -- post
    <t:direct> | <t:nil>, -- replace
    <t:subtype> | <t:nil>, -- subtype
    <t:subtype> | <t:nil>  -- penalty
)
```

²² These are a bit more generic because they also return fields from choice nodes and possibly hlist and vlist nodes.


```

    -- no return values
end

```

From this you can deduce that we can also say:

```

function node.direct.getpenalty ( <t:direct> d )
    return <t:integer> -- penalty
end

function node.direct.setpenalty ( <t:direct> d, <t:integer> penalty )
    -- no return value
end

```

The next pair targets glyphs and normally you will not use the setter, because the engine takes care of setting that state.

```

function node.direct.getdiscpart ( <t:direct> g )
    return <t:integer> -- bitset
end

function node.direct.setdiscpart ( <t:direct> g, <t:integer> bitset )
    -- no return value
end

```

When you fool around with disc nodes you need to be aware of the fact that they have a special internal data structure. As long as you reassign the fields when you have extended the lists it's ok because then the tail pointers get updated, but when you add to list without reassigning you might end up in trouble when the linebreak routine kicks in. You can call this function to check the list for issues with disc nodes.

```

function node.direct.checkdiscretionary ( <t:direct> n )
    -- no return values
end

```

The plural variant runs over all disc nodes in a list, the singular variant checks one node only (it also checks if the node is a disc node).

```

function node.direct.checkdiscretionaries ( <t:direct> head )
    -- no return values
end

```

This function will remove the discretionaries in the list and inject the replace field when set.

```

function node.direct.flattendiscretionaries ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:integer> -- count
end

```

14.5.10 Packaging and dimensions

At some point a node list has to be packed in either a horizontal or vertical box. There are restrictions to what can get packed, for instance you cannot have glyphs in a vertical list.

The `hpack` function creates a new `hlist` by packaging the list that begins at node `n` into a horizontal box. With only a single argument, this box is created using the natural width of its components. In the three argument form, `info` must be either `additional` or `exactly`, and `w` is the additional (`\hbox` spread) or exact (`\hbox` to) width to be used. The second return value is the badness of the generated box.

```
function node.direct.hpack (
  <t:direct> list
)
  return
    <t:direct>, -- box
    <t:integer> -- badness
end

function node.direct.hpack (
  <t:direct> list,
  <t:integer> width,
  <t:string> info -- "additional" | "exactly"
)
  return
    <t:direct>, -- box
    <t:integer> -- badness
end

function node.direct.hpack (
  <t:direct> list,
  <t:integer> width,
  <t:string> info, -- "additional" | "exactly"
  <t:integer> direction
)
  return
    <t:direct>, -- box
    <t:integer> -- badness
end
```

The `vpack` function creates a new `vlist` by packaging the list that begins at node `n` into a vertical box. With only a single argument, this box is created using the natural height of its components. In the three argument form, `info` must be either `additional` or `exactly`, and `w` is the additional (`\vbox` spread) or exact (`\vbox` to) height to be used.

```
function node.direct.vpack (
  <t:direct> list
)
  return
    <t:direct>, -- box
    <t:integer> -- badness
end

function node.direct.vpack (
  <t:direct> list,
  <t:integer> height,
```

```

    <t:string> info -- "additional" | "exactly"
)
return
    <t:direct>, -- box
    <t:integer> -- badness
end

function node.direct.vpack (
    <t:direct> list,
    <t:integer> height,
    <t:string> info, -- "additional" | "exactly"
    <t:integer> direction
)
return
    <t:direct>, -- box
    <t:integer> -- badness
end

```

This function calculates the natural in-line dimensions of the node list starting at node `first` and terminating just before node `last` (or the end of the list, if there is no second argument). The return values are scaled points.

```

function node.direct.dimensions (
    <t:direct> first,
    <t:direct> last
)
return
    <t:integer>, -- width
    <t:integer>, -- height
    <t:integer> -- depth
end

```

This alternative calling method takes glue settings into account and is especially useful for finding the actual width of a sublist of nodes that are already boxed, for example in code like this, which prints the width of the space in between the `a` and `b` as it would be if `\box0` was used as-is:

```

\setbox0 = \hbox to 20pt {a b}

\directlua{print (node.dimensions(
    tex.box[0].glueset,
    tex.box[0].gluesign,
    tex.box[0].glueorder,
    tex.box[0].head.next,
    node.tail(tex.box[0].head)
)) }

```

You need to keep in mind that this is one of the few places in T_EX where floats are used, which means that you can get small differences in rounding when you compare the width reported by `hpack` with `dimensions`.

```

function node.direct.dimensions (
    <t:number> glueset,

```

```

    <t:integer> gluesign
    <t:integer> glueorder,
    <t:direct> first,
    <t:direct> last
)
return
    <t:integer>, -- width
    <t:integer>, -- height
    <t:integer> -- depth
end

```

This alternative saves a few lookups and can be more convenient in some cases:

```

function node.direct.rangedimensions (
    <t:direct> parent,
    <t:direct> first,
    <t:direct> last
)
return
    <t:integer>, -- width
    <t:integer>, -- height
    <t:integer> -- depth
end

```

If you only need the width, a simple and somewhat more efficient variant is this, where again last is optional:

```

function node.direct.naturalwidth (
    <t:direct> first,
    <t:direct> last
)
return <t:integer> -- width
end

```

More low level are the following helpers. They accept various kind of nodes hlist, vlist, unset, rule, glyph or glue (because these can have a leader).

```

function node.direct.getwhd ( <t:direct> n )
return
    <t:dimension>, -- width
    <t:dimension>, -- height
    <t:dimension> -- depth
end

```

In case of as glyph you can also get the expansion:

```

function node.direct.getwhd ( <t:direct> n, <t:true> expansion )
return
    <t:dimension>, -- width
    <t:dimension>, -- height
    <t:dimension>, -- depth
    <t:integer> -- expansion

```

end

The `getwidth` accepts even more node types: `hlist`, `vlist`, `unset`, `align`, `rule`, `glue`, `gluespec`, `glyph`, `kern` and `math` (`surround`).

```
function node.direct.getwidth ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:dimension> -- width
end
```

And for glyphs:

```
function node.direct.getwidth ( <t:direct> n, <t:true> expansion )
  return
    <t:dimension>, -- width
    <t:dimension> -- expansion
end
```

The getter for height operates on `hlist`, `vlist`, `unset`, `rule`, `insert` and `fence`.

```
function node.direct.getheight ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:dimension> -- height
end
```

For the depth we have a different repertoire: `hlist`, `vlist`, `unset`, `rule`, `insert`, `glyph` and `fence`.

```
function node.direct.getdepth ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:dimension> -- depth
end
```

For `hlist`, `vlist`, `unset`, `rule`, `insert_node`, `glyph` and `fence` we can get the total of height and depth:

```
function node.direct.gettotal ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:dimension> -- height + depth
end
```

Only `hlist` and `vlist` have a (vertical or horizontal) shift:

```
function node.direct.getshift ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:dimension> -- shift
end
```

This one is only valid for `glyph` and `kern` nodes:

```
function node.direct.getexpansion ( <t:direct> n )
  return <t:dimension> -- expansion
end
```

Before we move on we mention the setters:

```
function node.direct.setwidth      ( <t:direct> n, <t:dimension> width      ) end
function node.direct.setheight    ( <t:direct> n, <t:dimension> height    ) end
function node.direct.setdepth     ( <t:direct> n, <t:dimension> depth     ) end
function node.direct.setshift     ( <t:direct> n, <t:dimension> shift     ) end
```

```
function node.direct.setexpansion ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> expansion ) end
```

The combined one ignores values that are no number, so passing (e.g.) nil or (nicer) false will retain the value.

```
function nodedirect.setwhd (
  <t:direct> node,
  <t:dimension> width,
  <t:dimension> height,
  <t:dimension> depth,
  -- no return values
end
```

These hlist and vlist nodes (but others as well have) a field called list:

```
function node.direct.getlist ( <t:direct> b )
  return <t:direct> -- list
end

function node.direct.setlist ( <t:direct> b, <t:direct> list )
  -- nothing to return
end
```

When a list is packages, glue is resolved and the list node gets its glue properties set so that the backend can apply the stretch and shrink to the glue amount. There might be situations where you want to do this explicitly, which is why we provide:

```
function node.direct.freeze ( <t:direct> b )
  -- nothing to return
end
```

In LuaMetaTeX we can handle nested marks, inserts and adjusts, and pre and post material can get bound to a box. We can use these to access them:

```
function node.direct.getpost ( <t:direct> b, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
  return
    <t:direct>, -- head
    <t:direct> -- tail
end

function node.direct.getpre ( <t:direct> b, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
  return
    <t:direct>, -- head
    <t:direct> -- tail
end
```

and these to set them, although they are unlikely candidates for that.

```
function node.direct.setpost ( <t:direct> b, <t:direct> | <t:nil> ) end
function node.direct.setpre ( <t:direct> b, <t:direct> | <t:nil> ) end
```

14.5.11 Math

We start with the function that runs the internal ‘mlist to hlist’ conversion that turns a the yet unprocessed math list into a horizontal list. The interface is the same as for the callback `mlisttohlist`.

```
function node.direct.mlisttohlist (
    <t:direct> list,
    <t:string> displaytype,
    <t:boolean> penalties
)
    <t:direct> -- result
end
```

When you have a horizontal list with math you can locate the relevant portion with:

```
function node.direct.beginofmath ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> end
function node.direct.endofmath   ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> end
```

You can for instance use these helpers to skip over math in case you're processing text.

The math noads have a nucleus and scripts. In LuaMetaTeX we have the usual super- and subscript but also prescripts and a primescript, so five scripts in total so naturally we have getters for these:

```
function node.direct.getnucleus ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
function node.direct.getprime   ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
function node.direct.getsup     ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
function node.direct.getsub     ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
function node.direct.getsuppre  ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
function node.direct.getsubpre  ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
```

plus:

```
function node.direct.getscripts ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- primescript
        <t:direct>, -- superscript
        <t:direct>, -- subscript
        <t:direct>, -- superprescript
        <t:direct>  -- subprescript
end
```

These are complemented by setters. When the second argument is not passes (or nil) the field is reset.

```
function node.direct.setnucleus ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> nucleus ) end
function node.direct.setprime   ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> primescript ) end
function node.direct.setsup     ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> superscript ) end
function node.direct.setsub     ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> subscript ) end
function node.direct.setsuppre  ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> superprescript ) end
function node.direct.setsubpre  ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> subprescript ) end
```

And of course:

```

function node.direct.getscripts (
    <t:direct> primescript,
    <t:direct> superscript,
    <t:direct> subscript,
    <t:direct> superprescript,
    <t:direct> subprescript
)
    -- no return values
end

```

In the discretionaries subsection we mention accessing pre, post and replace fields. These functions can also be used for choice nodes. Discussing this is currently beyond this manual.

14.5.12 SyncTeX

You can set and query the SyncTeX fields, a file number aka tag and a line number, for a glue, kern, hlist, vlist, rule and math nodes as well as glyph nodes (although this last one is not used in native SyncTeX).

```

function node.direct.setsynctexfields ( <t:integer> fileid, <t:integer> line )
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.getsynctexfields ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- fileid
        <t:integer>  -- line
end

```

Of course you need to know what you're doing as no checking on sane values takes place. Also, the SyncTeX interpreter used in editors is rather peculiar and has some assumptions (heuristics) and there are different incompatible versions floating around. Even more important to notice is that the engine doesn't do anything with this so support is upto Lua.

14.5.13 Two access models

Deep down in TeX a node has a number which is a numeric entry in a memory table. In fact, this model, where TeX manages memory is real fast and one of the reasons why plugging in callbacks that operate on nodes is quite fast too. Each node gets a number that is in fact an index in the memory table and that number often is reported when you print node related information. You go from user data nodes and there numeric references and back with:

```

function node.todirect ( <t:node> n) return <t:direct> end
function node.tonode   ( <t:direct> d) return <t:node>   end

```

The user data model is rather robust as it is a virtual interface with some additional checking while the more direct access which uses the node numbers directly. However, even with user data you can get into troubles when you free nodes that are no longer allocated or mess up lists. If you apply tostring to a node you see its internal (direct) number and id.

The userdata model provides key based access while the direct model always accesses fields via functions:

```
local c = nodeobject.char
local c = getfield(nodenum, "char")
```

If you use the direct model, even if you know that you deal with numbers, you should not depend on that property but treat it as an abstraction just like traditional nodes. In fact, the fact that we use a simple basic datatype has the penalty that less checking can be done, but less checking is also the reason why it's somewhat faster. An important aspect is that one cannot mix both methods, but you can cast both models. So, multiplying a node number makes no sense.

So our advice is: use the indexed (table) approach when possible and investigate the direct one when speed might be a real issue. For that reason LuaTeX also provide the `get*` and `set*` functions in the top level node namespace. There is a limited set of getters. When implementing this direct approach the regular index by key variant was also optimized, so direct access only makes sense when nodes are accessed millions of times (which happens in some font processing for instance).

We're talking mostly of getters because setters are less important. Documents have not that many content related nodes and setting many thousands of properties is hardly a burden contrary to millions of consultations.

Normally you will access nodes like this:

```
local next = current.next
if next then
    -- do something
end
```

Here `next` is not a real field, but a virtual one. Accessing it results in a metatable method being called. In practice it boils down to looking up the node type and based on the node type checking for the field name. In a worst case you have a node type that sits at the end of the lookup list and a field that is last in the lookup chain. However, in successive versions of LuaTeX these lookups have been optimized and the most frequently accessed nodes and fields have a higher priority.

In the direct namespace there are more helpers and most of them are accompanied by setters. The getters and setters are clever enough to see what node is meant. We don't deal with whatsit nodes: their fields are always accessed by name. It doesn't make sense to add getters for all fields, we just identifier the most likely candidates. In complex documents, many node and fields types never get seen, or seen only a few times, but for instance glyphs are candidates for such optimization.

In previous sections we only show the functions in the `node.direct` namespace. The following functions are available in both `node` and `node.direct`:

<code>checkdiscretionaries</code>	<code>effectiveglue</code>	<code>free</code>
<code>checkdiscretionary</code>	<code>endofmath</code>	<code>getattribute</code>
<code>copy</code>	<code>fields</code>	<code>getcachestate</code>
<code>copylist</code>	<code>findattribute</code>	<code>getfield</code>
<code>count</code>	<code>flattendiscretionaries</code>	<code>getfielderror</code>
<code>currentattributes</code>	<code>flushlist</code>	<code>getglue</code>
<code>dimensions</code>	<code>flushnode</code>	<code>getpropertystable</code>

getproperty	mlisttohlist	tail
gluetostring	new	todirect
hasattribute	protectglyph	tonode
hasfield	protectglyphs	tostring
hasglyph	protrusionskippable	traverse
hpack	rangedimensions	traverseid
hyphenating	remove	type
id	serialized	types
insertafter	setattribute	unprotectglyph
insertbefore	setfield	unprotectglyphs
isnode	setfielderror	unsetattribute
iszeroglue	setglue	usedlist
kerning	setproperty	usesfont
lastnode	show	vpack
length	size	write
ligaturing	slide	
makeextensible	subtypes	

In ConT_EXt these are duplicated in `nodes.nuts` so that is the reference. Quite some functions gets mapped onto the `nodes` namespace. In addition we emulate some `userdata` functions and add some of our own. We show them here because this manual takes ConT_EXt as reference.

<code>node.direct</code>	<code>node</code>	<code>nodes</code>		
			<code>flattendiscretionaries</code>	*
			<code>flattenleaders</code>	
<code>addmargins</code>			<code>flushlist</code>	* *
<code>addxoffset</code>			<code>flushnode</code>	* *
<code>addxymargins</code>			<code>free</code>	*
<code>addyoffset</code>			<code>freeze</code>	
<code>appendaftertail</code>			<code>getanchors</code>	
<code>beginofmath</code>			<code>getattribute</code>	* *
<code>checkdiscretionaries</code>	*		<code>getattributelist</code>	
<code>checkdiscretionary</code>	*		<code>getattributes</code>	
<code>collapsing</code>			<code>getboth</code>	*
<code>copy</code>	*	*	<code>getbottom</code>	
<code>copylist</code>	*	*	<code>getbottomdelimiter</code>	
<code>copyonly</code>			<code>getbox</code>	*
<code>count</code>	*		<code>getcachestate</code>	*
<code>currentattributes</code>	*	*	<code>getchar</code>	*
<code>dimensions</code>	*		<code>getchardict</code>	
<code>effectiveglue</code>	*		<code>getcharspec</code>	
<code>endofmath</code>	*		<code>getchoice</code>	
<code>exchange</code>			<code>getclass</code>	
<code>fields</code>	*	*	<code>getcontrol</code>	
<code>findattribute</code>	*		<code>getcornerkerns</code>	
<code>findattributerange</code>			<code>getdata</code>	
<code>findnode</code>			<code>getdegree</code>	
<code>firstchar</code>			<code>getdelimiter</code>	
<code>firstglyph</code>			<code>getdenominator</code>	
<code>firstglyphnode</code>			<code>getdepth</code>	
<code>firstitalicglyph</code>			<code>getdirection</code>	

getdisc			getstate		
getdiscpart			getsub		
getexcept			getsubpre		
getexpansion			getsubtype		*
getfam			getsup		
getfield	*	*	getsuppre		
getfielderror	*		gettop		
getfont		*	gettopdelimiter		
getgeometry			gettotal		
getglue	*		getusage		
getglyphdata			getusedattributes		
getglyphdimensions			getweight		
getheight			getwhd		
getid		*	getwidth		
getindex			getwordrange		
getinputfields			getxscale		
getkern			getxyscales		
getkerndimension			getyscale		
getlanguage			gluetostring	*	
getleader		*	hasattribute	*	*
getleftdelimiter			hasdimensions		
getlist		*	hasdiscoption		
getlistdimensions			hasfield	*	*
getnext		*	hasgeometry		
getnodes			hasglyph	*	
getnormalizedline			hasglyphoption		
getnucleus			hasusage		
getnumerator			hpack	*	*
getoffsets			hyphenating	*	
getoptions			id	*	
getorientation			ignoremathskip		
getparstate			insertafter	*	*
getpenalty			insertbefore	*	*
getpost			isboth		
getpre			ischar		
getprev		*	isdirect		*
getprime			isglyph		
getpropertystable	*		isitalicglyph		
getproperty	*	*	isloop		
getreplace			isnext		
getrightdelimiter			isnextchar		
getruledimensions			isnextglyph		
getscale			isnode	*	*
getscales			isprev		
getscript			isprevchar		
getscripts			isprevglyph		
getshift			issimilarglyph		
getslant			isspeciallist		
getspeciallist			isvalid		

iszeroglue	*		setexpansion		
kerning	*		setfam		
lastnode	*		setfield	*	*
length	*		setfielderror	*	
ligaturing	*		setfont		*
makeextensible	*		setgeometry		
migrate			setglue	*	
mlisttohlist	*		setglyphdata		
naturalhsize			setheight		
naturalwidth			setindex		
new	*	*	setinputfields		
newcontinuationatom			setkern		
newmathglyph			setlanguage		
newtextglyph			setleader		*
patchattributes			setleftdelimiter		
patchparshape			setlink		*
prependbeforehead			setlist		*
protectglyph	*		setnext		*
protectglyphs	*		setnucleus		
protectglyphsnone			setnumerator		
protrusionskipable	*		setoffsets		
rangedimensions	*		setoptions		
remove	*	*	setorientation		
removefromlist			setpenalty		
repack			setpost		
reverse			setpre		
serialized	*	*	setprev		*
setanchors			setprime		
setattribute	*	*	setproperty	*	*
setattributelist			setreplace		
setattributes			setrightdelimiter		
setboth		*	setruledimensions		
setbottom			setscale		
setbottomdelimiter			setscales		
setbox		*	setscript		
setchar		*	setscripts		
setchardict			setshift		
setchoice			setslant		
setclass			setspeciallist		
setcontrol			setsplit		
setdata			setstate		
setdegree			setsub		
setdelimiter			setsubpre		
setdenominator			setsubtype		
setdepth			setsetup		
setdirection			setsuppre		
setdisc			settop		
setdiscpart			settopdelimiter		
setexcept			settotal		

setweight			traverseid	*	*
setwhd			traverseitalic		
setwidth			traverseleader		
show	*		traverselist		
size	*		type	*	
slide	*		types	*	
softenhyphens			unprotectglyph	*	
startofpar		*	unprotectglyphs	*	
subtypes	*	*	unsetattribute	*	*
tail	*	*	unsetattributes		
todirect	*		usedlist	*	*
tonode	*	*	usesfont	*	
tostring	*	*	verticalbreak		
tovaliddirect			vpack	*	*
traverse	*	*	write	*	*
traversechar			xscaled		
traversecontent			yscaled		
traverseglyph					

The following functions are in the ConT_EXt nodes namespace but don't come from the library. Again, we show them here because ConT_EXt is the reference.

nodes	nodes.nuts	node	locate	*
			maxboxwidth	
aligned			nopts	
append	*		packlist	
apply	*		points	
applyvisuals	*		prepend	*
astable			print	
basepoints			pts	
concat	*		rehpack	*
copy_node			repackhlist	*
countall	*		replace	*
delete	*		report	
firstdirinbox			rightmarginwidth	
flush	*		serialize	
fullhpack	*		serializebox	
getattr	*		setattr	*
idsandsubtypes			setattrlist	*
idstousing			setboxtonaturalwd	
insertlistafter	*		showboxes	
installattributehandler			showlist	
is_display_math	*		showsimplelist	
isnut	*		somepenalty	*
leftmarginwidth			somespace	*
link	*		splitbox	*
linked	*		stripdiscretionaries	
list			takeattr	*
listtoutf			takebox	*

tobasepoints		topoints	
tocentimeters		toscaledpoints	
tociceros		tosequence	*
todidots		totable	
todimen		totree	
toinches		toutf	
tomillimeters		upcomingproperties	
tonodes	*	vianodes	*
tonut	*	vianuts	*
topicas		visualizebox	

We have quite some helpers and some accept different node types. Here is the repertoire:

14.5.14 Properties

Attributes are a convenient way to relate extra information to a node. You can assign them at the T_EX end as well as at the Lua end and consult them at the Lua end. One big advantage is that they obey grouping. They are linked lists and normally checking for them is pretty efficient, even if you use a lot of them. A macro package has to provide some way to manage these attributes at the T_EX end because otherwise clashes in their usage can occur.

Each node also can have a properties table and you can assign values to this table using the `setproperty` function and get properties using the `getproperty` function. Managing properties is way more demanding than managing attributes.

Take the following example:

```
\directlua {
  local n = node.new("glyph")

  node.setproperty(n,"foo")
  print(node.getproperty(n))

  node.setproperty(n,"bar")
  print(node.getproperty(n))

  node.free(n)
}
```

This will print `foo` and `bar` which in itself is not that useful when multiple mechanisms want to use this feature. A variant is:

```
\directlua {
  local n = node.new("glyph")

  node.setproperty(n,{ one = "foo", two = "bar" })
  print(node.getproperty(n).one)
  print(node.getproperty(n).two)

  node.free(n)
}
```

This time we store two properties with the node. It really makes sense to have a table as property because that way we can store more. But in order for that to work well you need to do it this way:

```
\directlua {
  local n = node.new("glyph")

  local t = node.getproperty(n)

  if not t then
    t = { }
    node.setproperty(n,t)
  end
  t.one = "foo"
  t.two = "bar"

  print(node.getproperty(n).one)
  print(node.getproperty(n).two)

  node.free(n)
}
```

Here our own properties will not overwrite other users properties unless of course they use the same keys. So, eventually you will end up with something:

```
\directlua {
  local n = node.new("glyph")

  local t = node.getproperty(n)

  if not t then
    t = { }
    node.setproperty(n,t)
  end
  t.myself = { one = "foo", two = "bar" }

  print(node.getproperty(n).myself.one)
  print(node.getproperty(n).myself.two)

  node.free(n)
}
```

This assumes that only you use `myself` as subtable. The possibilities are endless but care is needed. For instance, the generic font handler that ships with ConT_EXt uses the `injections` subtable and you should not mess with that one!

There are a few helper functions that you normally should not touch as user: `getpropertystable` and will give the table that stores properties (using direct entries) and you can best not mess too much with that one either because LuaMetaT_EX itself will make sure that entries related to nodes will get wiped when nodes get freed, so that the Lua garbage collector can do its job. In fact, the main reason why we have this mechanism is that it saves the user (or macro package) some work. One can easily write a property mechanism in Lua where after a shipout properties gets cleaned up but it's not entirely trivial to make sure that with each freed node also its properties get freed, due to the fact

that there can be nodes left over for a next page. And having a callback bound to the node deallocator would add way to much overhead.

When we copy a node list that has a table as property, there are several possibilities: we do the same as a new node, we copy the entry to the table in properties (a reference), we do a deep copy of a table in the properties, we create a new table and give it the original one as a metatable. After some experiments (that also included timing) with these scenarios we decided that a deep copy made no sense, nor did nilling. In the end both the shallow copy and the metatable variant were both ok, although the second one is slower. The most important aspect to keep in mind is that references to other nodes in properties no longer can be valid for that copy. We could use two tables (one unique and one shared) or metatables but that only complicates matters.

When defining a new node, we could already allocate a table but it is rather easy to do that at the lua end e.g. using a metatable `__index` method. That way it is under macro package control. When deleting a node, we could keep the slot (e.g. setting it to false) but it could make memory consumption raise unneeded when we have temporary large node lists and after that only small lists. Both are not done because in the end this is what happens now: when a node is copied, and it has a table as property, the new node will share that table. The copy gets its own table with the original table as metatable.

A few more experiments were done. For instance: copy attributes to the properties so that we have fast access at the Lua end. In the end the overhead is not compensated by speed and convenience, in fact, attributes are not that slow when it comes to accessing them. So this was rejected.

Another experiment concerned a bitset in the node but again the gain compared to attributes could be neglected and given the small amount of available bits it also demands a pretty strong agreement over what bit represents what, and this is unlikely to succeed in the T_EX community. It doesn't pay off.

Just in case one wonders why properties make sense: it is not so much speed that we gain, but more convenience: storing all kinds of (temporary) data in attributes is no fun and this mechanism makes sure that properties are cleaned up when a node is freed. Also, the advantage of a more or less global properties table is that we stay at the Lua end. An alternative is to store a reference in the node itself but that is complicated by the fact that the register has some limitations (no numeric keys) and we also don't want to mess with it too much.

tokens

15 Tokens

15.1 Introduction

If a T_EX programmer talks tokens (and nodes) the average user can safely ignore it. Often it is enough to now that your input is tokenized which means that one or more characters in the input got converted into some efficient internal representation that then travels through the system and triggers actions. When you see an error message with T_EX code, the reverse happened: tokens were converted back into commands that resemble the (often expanded) input.

There are not that many examples here because the functions discussed here are often not used directly but instead integrated in a bit more convenient interfaces. However, in due time more examples might show up here.

15.2 Lua token representation

A token is an 32 bit integer that encodes a command and a value, index, reference or whatever goes with a command. The input is converted into a token and the body of macros are stored as linked list of tokens. In the later case we combine a token and a next pointer in what is called a memory word. If we see tokens in Lua we don't get the integer but a userdata object that comes with accessors.

Unless you're into very low level programming the likelihood of encountering tokens is low. But related to tokens is scanning so that is what we cover here in more detail.

15.3 Helpers

15.3.1 Basics

References to macros are stored in a table along with some extra properties but in the end they travel around as tokens. The same is true for characters, they are also encoded in a token. We have three ways to create a token:

```
function token.create ( <t:integer> value )
    return <t:token> -- userdata
end

function token.create ( <t:integer> value, <t:integer> command)
    return <t:token> -- userdata
end

function token.create ( <t:string> csname )
    return <t:token> -- userdata
end
```

An example of the first variant is `token.create(65)`. When we print (inspect) this in ConT_EXt we get:

```
<lua token : 476151 == letter 65>={
  ["category"]="letter",
```

```

["character"]="A",
["id"]=476151,
}

```

If we say `token.create(65,12)` instead we get:

```

<lua token : 476151 == other_char 65>={
  ["category"]="other",
  ["character"]="A",
  ["id"]=476151,
}

```

An example of the third call is `token.create("relax")`. This time get:

```

<lua token : 580111 == relax : relax 0>={
  ["active"]=false,
  ["cmdname"]="relax",
  ["command"]=16,
  ["cname"]="relax",
  ["expandable"]=false,
  ["frozen"]=false,
  ["id"]=580111,
  ["immutable"]=false,
  ["index"]=0,
  ["instance"]=false,
  ["mutable"]=false,
  ["noaligned"]=false,
  ["permanent"]=false,
  ["primitive"]=true,
  ["protected"]=false,
  ["tolerant"]=false,
}

```

Another example is `token.create("dimen")`:

```

<lua token : 467905 == dimen : register 3>={
  ["active"]=false,
  ["cmdname"]="register",
  ["command"]=121,
  ["cname"]="dimen",
  ["expandable"]=false,
  ["frozen"]=false,
  ["id"]=467905,
  ["immutable"]=false,
  ["index"]=3,
  ["instance"]=false,
  ["mutable"]=false,
  ["noaligned"]=false,
  ["permanent"]=false,
  ["primitive"]=true,
  ["protected"]=false,
}

```

```
["tolerant"]=false,
}
```

The most important properties are `command` and `index` because the combination determines what it does. The macros (here primitives) have a lot of extra properties. These are discussed in the low level manuals.

You can check if something is a token with the `next` function; when a token is passed the return value is the string literal token.

```
function token.type ( <t:whatever> )
  return <t:string> "token" | <t:nil>
end
```

A maybe more natural test is:

```
function token.istoken ( <t:whatever> )
  return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

Internally we can see variables like `cmd`, `chr`, `tok` and such, where the later is a combination of the first two. The create variant that take two integers relate to this. Of course you need to know what the magic numbers are. Passing weird numbers can give side effects so don't expect too much help with that. You need to know what you're doing. The best way to explore the way these internals work is to just look at how primitives or macros or `\chardef`'d commands are tokenized. Just create a known one and inspect its fields. A variant that ignores the current catcode table is:

```
\protected\def\MyMacro#1{\dimen 0 = \numexpr #1 + 10 \relax}
```

A macro like this is actually a little program:

467922	19	49	match	argument 1
580083	20	0	end match	

467931	121	3	register	dimen
580013	12	48	other char	0 (U+00030)
582314	10	32	spacer	
582312	12	61	other char	= (U+0003D)
580193	10	32	spacer	
582783	81	75	some item	numexpr
582310	21	1	parameter reference	
190952	10	32	spacer	
582785	12	43	other char	+ (U+0002B)
476151	10	32	spacer	
580190	12	49	other char	1 (U+00031)
582265	12	48	other char	0 (U+00030)
467939	10	32	spacer	
580045	16	0	relax	relax

The first column shows indices in token memory where we have a token combined with a next pointer. So, in slot 467931 we have both a token and a pointer to slot 580013.

There is another way to create a token.

```

function token.new ( <t:string> command, <t:integer> value )
    return <t:token>
end

function token.new ( <t:integer> value, <t:integer> command )
    return <t:token>
end

```

Watch the order of arguments. We not have four ways to create a token

```

<lua token : 580087 == letter 65>={
    ["category"]="letter",
    ["character"]="A",
    ["id"]=580087,
}

```

namely:

```

token.new("letter",65)
token.new(65,11)
token.create(65,11)
token.create(65)

```

You can test if a control sequence is defined with:

```

function token.isdefined ( <t:string> t )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end

```

The engine was never meant to be this open which means that in various places the assumption is that tokens are valid. However, it is possible to create tokens that make little sense in some context and can even make the system crash. When possible we catch this but checking everywhere would bloat the code and harm performance. Compare this to changing a few bytes in a binary that at some point create can havoc.

15.3.2 Getters

The userdata objects have a virtual interface that permits access by fieldname. Instead you can use one of the getters.

```

function token.getcommand ( <t:token> t ) return <t:integer> end
function token.getindex   ( <t:token> t ) return <t:integer> end
function token.getcmdname ( <t:token> t ) return <t:string>  end
function token.getcsname  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:string>  end
function token.getid      ( <t:token> t ) return <t:integer> end
function token.getactive  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end

```

If you want to know what the possible values are, you can use:

```

function token.getrange (
    <t:token> | <t:integer>
)

```

```

return
    <t:integer>, -- first
    <t:integer>  -- last
end

```

We can also ask for the macro properties but instead you can just fetch the bit set that describes them.

```

function token.getexpandable ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getprotected  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getfrozen     ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.gettolerant   ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getnoaligned  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getprimitive  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getpermanent  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getimmutable  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getinstance   ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getconstant   ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end

```

The bit set can be fetched with:

```

function token.getflags ( <t:token> t )
    return <t:integer> -- bit set
end

```

The possible flags are:

0x000001	frozen	0x000080	untraced	0x004000	conditional
0x000002	permanent	0x000100	global	0x008000	value
0x000004	immutable	0x000200	tolerant	0x010000	semiprotected
0x000008	primitive	0x000400	protected	0x020000	inherited
0x000010	mutable	0x000800	overloaded	0x040000	constant
0x000020	noaligned	0x001000	aliased	0x080000	deferred
0x000040	instance	0x002000	immediate		

The number of parameters of a macro can be queried with:

```

function token.getparameters ( <t:token> t )
    return <t:integer>
end

```

The three properties that are used to identify a token can be fetched with:

```

function token.getcmdchracs ( <t:token> t )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- command (cmd)
        <t:integer>, -- value   (chr)
        <t:integer>  -- index   (cs)
end

```

A simpler call is:

```

function token.getcstoken ( <t:string> csname )

```

```

    return <t:integer> -- token number
end

```

A table with relevant properties of a token (or control sequence) can be fetched with:

```

function token.getfields ( <t:token> token )
    return <t:table> -- fields
end

function token.getfields ( <t:string> csname )
    return <t:table> -- fields
end

```

15.3.3 Setters

The setmacro function can be called with a different amount of arguments, where the prefix list comes last. Examples of prefixes are global and protected.

```

function token.setmacro (
    <t:string> csname
)

function token.setmacro (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:string> csname
)
    -- no return values
end

function token.setmacro (
    <t:string> csname,
    <t:string> content
)
    -- no return values
end

function token.setmacro (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:string> csname,
    <t:string> content
)
    -- no return values
end

function token.setmacro (
    <t:string> csname,
    <t:string> content,
    <t:string> prefix
    -- there can be more prefixes
)
    -- no return values

```


end

```
function token.setmacro (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:string>   csname,
    <t:string>   content,
    <t:string>   prefix
    -- there can be more prefixes
)
    -- no return values
end
```

A macro can also be queried:

```
function token.getmacro (
    <t:string>   csname,
    <t:boolean>  preamble,
    <t:boolean>  onlypreamble
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

The various arguments determine what you get:

```
\def\foo#1{foo: #1}

\ctxlua{context.type(token.getmacro("foo"))}
\ctxlua{context.type(token.getmacro("foo",true))}
\ctxlua{context.type(token.getmacro("foo",false,true))}
```

We get:

```
foo: #1
#1->foo:
#1
```

The meaning can be fetched as string or table:

```
function token.getmeaning (
    <t:string>   csname,
)
    return <t:string>
end

function token.getmeaning (
    <t:string>   csname,
    <t:true>     astable,
    <t:boolean>  subtables,
    <t:boolean>  originalindices -- special usage
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

The name says it:

```
function token.undefinemacro ( <t:string> csname)
    -- no return values
end
```

Expanding a macro happens in a ‘local control’ context which makes it immediate, that is, while running Lua code.

```
function token.expandmacro ( <t:string> csname)
    -- no return values
end
```

This means that:

```
\def\foo{\scratchdimen100pt \edef\oof{\the\scratchdimen}}
% used in:
\startluacode
token.expandmacro("foo")
context(token.getmacro("oof"))
\stopluacode
```

gives: 100.0pt, because when getmacro is called the expansion has been performed. You can consider this a sort of subrun (local to the main control loop).

The next helper creates a token that refers to a Lua function with an entry in the table that you can access with `lua.getfunctionstable`. It is the companion to `\luadef`. When the first (and only) argument is true the size will preset to the value of `texconfig.functionsizesize`.

```
function token.setlua (
    <t:string> csname,
    <t:integer> id,
    <t:string> prefix
    -- there can be more prefixes
)
    return <t:token>
end
```

15.3.4 Writers

In the `tex` library we have various ways to print something back to the input and the these print helpers in most cases also accept tokens. The `token.putnext` function is rather tolerant with respect to its arguments and there can be multiple. As with most prints, a new input level is created.

```
function token.putnext ( <t:string> | <t:number> | <t:token> | <t:table> )
    -- no return values
end
```

Here are some examples. We save some scanned tokens and flush them

```
local t1 = token.scannext()
local t2 = token.scannext()
```

```

local t3 = token.scannext()
local t4 = token.scannext()
-- watch out, we flush in sequence
token.putnext { t1, t2 }
-- but this one gets pushed in front
token.putnext ( t3, t4 )

```

When we scan `wxyz!` we get `yzwx!` back. The argument is either a table with tokens or a list of tokens. The `token.expand` function will trigger expansion but what happens really depends on what you're doing where.

This putter is actually a bit more flexible because the following input also works out okay:

```

\def\foo#1{[#1]}

\directlua {
  local list = { 101, 102, 103, token.create("foo"), "{abracadabra}" }
  token.putnext("(the)")
  token.putnext(list)
  token.putnext("(order)")
  token.putnext(unpack(list))
  token.putnext("(is reversed)")
}

```

We get this:

```
(is reversed)efg[abracadabra](order)efg[abracadabra](the)
```

So, strings get converted to individual tokens according to the current catcode regime and numbers become characters also according to this regime. A more low level, single token push back is the next one, it does the same as when $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ itself puts a token back into the input, something that for instance happens when an integer is scanned and the last scanned token is not a digit.

```

function token.putback ( <t:token> )
  -- no return values
end

```

You can force an ‘expand step’ with the following function. What happens depends on the input and scanner states $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ is.

```

function token.expand ( )
  -- no return values
end

```

15.3.5 Scanning

The token library provides means to intercept the input and deal with it at the Lua level. The library provides a basic scanner infrastructure that can be used to write macros that accept a wide range of arguments. This interface is on purpose kept general and as performance is quite okay so one can build additional parsers without too much overhead. It's up to macro package writers to see how they can benefit from this as the main principle behind $\text{LuaMetaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ is to provide a minimal set of tools and no solutions. The scanner functions are probably the most intriguing.

We start with token scanners. The first one just reads the next token from the current input (file, token list, Lua output) while the second variant expands the next token, which can push back results and make us enter a new input level, and then reads a token from what is then the input.

```
function token.scannext ( )
    return <t:token>
end

function token.scannextexpanded ( )
    return <t:token>
end
```

This is a simple scanner that picks up a character:

```
function token.scannextchar ( )
    return <t:string>
end
```

We can look ahead, that is: pick up a token and push a copy back into the input. The second helper first expands the upcoming token and the third one is the peek variant of scannextchar.

```
function token.peeknext ( )
    return <t:token>
end

function token.peeknextexpanded ( )
    return <t:token>
end

function token.peeknextchar ( )
    return <t:token>
end
```

We can skip tokens with the following two helpers where the second one first expands the upcoming token

```
function token.skipnext ( )
    -- no return values
end

function token.skipnextexpanded ( )
    -- no return values
end
```

The next token can be converted into a combination of command and value. The second variant shown below first expands the upcoming token.

```
function token.sancmdchr ( )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- command a.k.a cmd
        <t:integer>, -- value   a.k.a chr
end
```

```

function token.scancmdchrexpanded ( )
  return
    <t:integer>, -- command a.k.a cmd
    <t:integer>, -- value   a.k.a chr
end

```

We have two keywords scanners. The first scans how T_EX does it: a mixture of lower- and uppercase. The second is case sensitive.

```

function token.scankeyword ( <t:string> keyword )
  return <t:boolean> -- success
end

function token.scankeywordcs ( <t:string> keyword )
  return <t:boolean> -- success
end

```

The integer, dimension and glue scanners take an extra optional argument that signals that an optional equal is permitted. The next function errors when the integer exceeds the maximum that T_EX likes: 2147483647.

```

function token.scaninteger ( <t:boolean> optionalequal )
  return <t:integer>
end

```

Cardinals are unsigned integers:

```

function token.scancardinal ( <t:boolean> optionalequal )
  return <t:cardinal>
end

```

When an integer or dimension is wrapped in curly braces, like {123} and {4.5pt}, you can use one of the next two. Of course unwrapped integers and dimensions are also read.

```

function token.scanintegerargument ( <t:boolean> optionalequal )
  return <t:integer>
end

function token.scandimensionargument (
  <t:boolean> infinity,
  <t:boolean> mu,
  <t:boolean> optionalequal
)
  return <t:integer>
end

```

When we scan for a float, we also accept an exponent, so 123.45 and -1.23e45 are valid:

```

function token.scanfloat ( )
  return <t:number>
end

```

Contrary to the previous scanner here we don't handle the exponent:

```
function token.scanreal ( )
    return <t:number>
end
```

In Lua a very precise representation of a float is the hexadecimal notation. In addition to regular floating point, optionally with an exponent, you can also have 0x1.23p45.

```
function token.scanluanumber ( )
    return <t:number>
end
```

Integers can be signed:

```
function token.scanluainteger ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

while cardinals (Modula2 speak) are unsigned: unsigned

```
function token.scanluacardinal ( )
    return <t:cardinal>
end
```

122345

```
function token.scanscale ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

A posit is (in LuaMetaTeX) a float packed into an integer, but contrary to a scaled value it can have exponents. Here 12.34 gives 1549208125 and Here 12.34e5 gives 2114670912. Because we have integers we can store them in LuaMetaTeX float registers. Optionally you can return a float instead of the integer that encodes the posit.

```
function token.scanposit (
    <t:boolean> optionalqual,
    <t:boolean> float
)
    return <t:integer> | <t:float>
end
```

In (traditional) TeX we don't really have floats. If we enter for instance a dimension in point units, we actually scan for two 16 bit integers that will be packed into a 32 bit integer. The next scanner expects a number plus a unit, like pt, cm and em, but also handles user defined units, like in ConTeXt tw.

```
function token.scandimension (
    <t:boolean> infinity,
    <t:boolean> mu,
    <t:boolean> optionalequal
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

A glue (spec) is a dimension with optional stretch and/or shrink, like 12pt plus 4pt minus 2pt or 10pt plus 1 fill. The glue scanner returns five values:

```
function token.scanglue (
    <t:boolean> mu,
    <t:boolean> optionalequal
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- amount
        <t:integer>, -- stretch
        <t:integer>, -- shrink
        <t:integer>, -- stretchorder
        <t:integer>  -- shrinkorder
end

function token.scanglue (
    <t:boolean> mu,
    <t:boolean> optionalequal,
    <t:true>
)
    return {
        <t:integer>, -- amount
        <t:integer>, -- stretch
        <t:integer>, -- shrink
        <t:integer>, -- stretchorder
        <t:integer>  -- shrinkorder
    }
end
```

The skip scanner does the same but returns a gluespec node:

```
function token.scanskip (
    <t:boolean> mu,
    <t:boolean> optionalequal
)
    return <t:node> -- gluespec
end
```

There are several token scanners, for instance one that returns a table:

```
function token.scantoks (
    <t:boolean> macro,
    <t:boolean> expand
)
    -- return <t:table> -- tokens
end
```

Here token.scantoks() will return {123} as

```
{
    "<lua token : 589866 == other_char 49>",
    "<lua token : 589867 == other_char 50>",
}
```

```
"<lua token : 589870 == other_char 51>",
}
```

The next variant returns a token list:

```
function token.scantokenlist (
    <t:boolean> macro,
    <t:boolean> expand
)
    return <t:token> -- tokenlist
end
```

Here we get the head of a token list:

```
<lua token : 590083 => 169324 : refcount>={
  ["active"]=false,
  ["cmdname"]="escape",
  ["command"]=0,
  ["expandable"]=false,
  ["frozen"]=false,
  ["id"]=590083,
  ["immutable"]=false,
  ["index"]=0,
}
```

This scans a single character token with specified catcode (bit) sets:

```
function token.scancode ( <t:integer> catcodes )
    return <t:string> -- character
end
```

This scans a single character token with catcode letter or other:

```
function token.scantokencode ( )
    -- return <t:token>
end
```

The difference between `scanstring` and `scanargument` is that the first returns a string given between `{}`, as `\macro` or as sequence of characters with catcode 11 or 12 while the second also accepts a `\cs` which then get expanded one level unless we force further expansion.

```
function token.scanstring ( <t:boolean> expand )
    return <t:string>
end

function token.scanargument ( <t:boolean> expand )
    return <t:string>
end
```

So the `scanargument` function expands the given argument. When a braced argument is scanned, expansion can be prohibited by passing false (default is true). In case of a control sequence passing false will result in a one-level expansion (the meaning of the macro).

The string scanner scans for something between curly braces and expands on the way, or when it sees a control sequence it will return its meaning. Otherwise it will scan characters with catcode letter or other. So, given the following definition:

```
\def\oof{oof}
\def\foo{foo-\oof}
```

we get:

name	result	
<code>\directlua{token.scanstring()}{foo}</code>	foo	full expansion
<code>\directlua{token.scanstring()}foo</code>	foo	letters and others
<code>\directlua{token.scanstring()}\foo</code>	foo-oof	meaning

The `\foo` case only gives the meaning, but one can pass an already expanded definition (`\edef'd`). In the case of the braced variant one can of course use the `\detokenize` and `\unexpanded` primitives since there we do expand.

A variant is the following which give a bit more control over what doesn't get expanded:

```
function token.scantokenstring (
    <t:boolean> noexpand,
    <t:boolean> noexpandconstant,
    <t:boolean> noexpandparameters
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

Here's one that can scan a delimited argument:

```
function token.scandelimited (
    <t:integer> leftdelimiter,
    <t:integer> rightdelimiter,
    <t:boolean> expand
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

A word is a sequence of what T_EX calls letters and other characters. The optional keep argument endures that trailing space and `\relax` tokens are pushed back into the input.

```
function token.scanword ( <t:boolean> keep )
    return <t:string>
end
```

Here we do the same but only accept letters:

```
function token.scanletters ( <t:boolean> keep )
    return <t:string>
end
```

```
function token.scankey ( )
```

```

    return <t:string>
end

```

We can pick up a string that stops at a specific character with the next function, which accepts two such sentinels (think of a comma and closing bracket).

```

function token.scanvalue ( <t:integer> one, <t:integer> two )
    return <t:string>
end

```

This returns a single (utf) character. Special input like back slashes, hashes, etc. are interpreted as characters.

```

function token.schar ( )
    return <t:string>
end

```

This scanner looks for a control sequence and if found returns the name. Optionally leading spaces can be skipped.

```

function token.scansname ( <t:boolean> skipspaces )
    return <t:string> | <t:nil>
end

```

The next one returns an integer instead:

```

function token.scancstoken ( <t:boolean> skipspaces )
    return <t:integer> | <t:nil>
end

```

This is a straightforward simple scanner that expands next token if needed:

```

function token.scantoken ( )
    return <t:token>
end

```

Then next scanner picks up a box specification and returns a [h|v]list node. There are two possible calls. The first variant expects a `\hbox`, `\vbox` etc. The second variant scans for an explicitly passed box type: `hbox`, `vbox`, `vbox` or `dbbox`.

```

function token.scanbox ( )
    return <t:node> -- box
end

```

```

function token.scanbox ( <t:string> boxtype )
    return <t:node> -- box
end

```

This scans and returns a so called ‘detokenized’ string:

```

function token.scandetokened ( <t:boolean> expand )
    return <t:string>
end

```

In the next function we check if a specific character with catcode letter or other is picked up.

```
function token.isnextchar ( <t:integer> charactercode )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

15.3.6 Gobbling

You can gobble up an integer or dimension with the following helpers. An error is silently ignored.

```
function token.gobbleinteger ( <t:boolean> optionalequal )
    -- no return values
end

function token.gobbledimension ( <t:boolean> optionalequal )
    -- no return values
end
```

This is a nested gobbler:

```
function token.gobble ( <t:token> left, <t:token> right )
    -- no return values
end
```

and this a nested grabber that returns a string:

```
function token.grab ( <t:token> left, <t:token> right )
    return <t:string>
end
```

15.3.7 Macros

This is a nasty one. It pick up two tokens. Then it checks if the next character matches the argument and if so, it pushes the first token back into the input, otherwise the second.

```
function token.futureexpand ( <t:integer> charactercode )
    -- no return values
end
```

The pushmacro and popmacro function are still experimental and can be used to get and set an existing macro. The push call returns a user data object and the pop takes such a userdata object. These object have no accessors and are to be seen as abstractions.

```
function token.pushmacro ( <t:string> csname )
    return <t:userdata>
end

function token.pushmacro ( <t:integer> token )
    return <t:userdata> -- entry
end

function token.popmacro ( <t:userdata> entry )
```

```
-- return todo
end
```

This saves a Lua function index on the save stack. When a group is closes the function will be called.

```
function token.savelua ( <t:integer> functionindex, <t:boolean> backtrack )
    -- no return values
end
```

The next function serializes a token list:

```
function token.serialize ( )
    return <t:string>
end
```

The function is somewhat picky so give van example in ConT_EXt speak:

```
\startluacode
    local t = token.scantokenlist()
    local s = token.serialize(t)
    context.type(tostring(t)) context.par()
    context.type(s)           context.par()
    context(s)                context.par()
\stopluacode {before\hskip10pt after}
```

The serialize expects a token list as scanned by `scantokenlist` which starts with token that points to the list and maintains a reference count, which in this context is irrelevant but is used in the engine to prevent duplicates; for instance the `\let` primitive just points to the original and bumps the count.

```
<lua token : 67912 => 584885 : refcount>
before\hskip 10pt after
before  after
```

You can interpret a string as T_EX input with embedded macros expanded, unless they are unexpandable.

```
function token.getexpansion ( <t:string> code )
    return <t:string> -- result
end
```

Here is an example:

```
        \def\foo{foo}
\protected\def\oof{oof}

\startluacode
context.type(token.getexpansion("test \relax"))
context.par()
context.type(token.getexpansion("test \\relax{!} \\foo\\oof"))
\stopluacode
```

Watch how the single backslash actually is a Lua escape that results in a newline:

```
test
```

```
elax
test \relax{!} foo\oof
```

You can also specify a catcode table identifier:

```
function token.getexpansion (
  <t:integer> catcodetable,
  <t:string> code
)
  return <t:string> -- result
end
```

15.3.8 Information

In some cases you signal to Lua what data type is involved. The list of known types are available with:

```
function token.getfunctionvalues ( )
  return <t:table>
end
```

0x00	none	0x04	skip	0x08	node
0x01	integer	0x05	boolean	0x09	direct
0x02	cardinal	0x06	float	0x0A	conditional
0x03	dimension	0x07	string		

The names of command is made available with:

```
function token.getcommandvalues ( )
  return <t:table>
end
```

0x00	escape	0x13	match
0x01	left_brace	0x14	end_match
0x02	right_brace	0x15	parameter_reference
0x03	math_shift	0x16	end_paragraph
0x04	alignment_tab	0x17	end_job
0x05	end_line	0x18	delimiter_number
0x06	parameter	0x19	char_number
0x07	superscript	0x1A	math_char_number
0x08	subscript	0x1B	mark
0x09	ignore	0x1C	node
0x0A	spacer	0x1D	xray
0x0B	letter	0x1E	make_box
0x0C	other_char	0x1F	hmove
0x0D	active_char	0x20	vmove
0x0E	comment	0x21	un_hbox
0x0F	invalid_char	0x22	un_vbox
0x10	relax	0x23	remove_item
0x11	alignment	0x24	hskip
0x12	end_template	0x25	vskip

0x26	mskip	0x57	register_attribute
0x27	kern	0x58	internal_posit
0x28	mkern	0x59	register_posit
0x29	leader	0x5A	internal_dimension
0x2A	legacy	0x5B	register_dimension
0x2B	local_box	0x5C	internal_glue
0x2C	halign	0x5D	register_glue
0x2D	valign	0x5E	internal_muglue
0x2E	vrule	0x5F	register_muglue
0x2F	hrule	0x60	lua_value
0x30	insert	0x61	iterator_value
0x31	vadjust	0x62	font_property
0x32	ignore_something	0x63	auxiliary
0x33	after_something	0x64	hyphenation
0x34	penalty	0x65	page_property
0x35	begin_paragraph	0x66	box_property
0x36	italic_correction	0x67	specification
0x37	accent	0x68	define_char_code
0x38	math_accent	0x69	define_family
0x39	discretionary	0x6A	math_parameter
0x3A	equation_number	0x6B	math_style
0x3B	math_fence	0x6C	set_font
0x3C	math_component	0x6D	define_font
0x3D	math_modifier	0x6E	integer
0x3E	math_fraction	0x6F	posit
0x3F	math_choice	0x70	dimension
0x40	vcenter	0x71	gluespec
0x41	case_shift	0x72	mugluespec
0x42	message	0x73	index
0x43	catcode_table	0x74	mathspec
0x44	end_local	0x75	fontspec
0x45	lua_function_call	0x76	specificationspec
0x46	lua_protected_call	0x77	association
0x47	lua_semiprotected_call	0x78	interaction
0x48	begin_group	0x79	register
0x49	end_group	0x7A	combine_toks
0x4A	explicit_space	0x7B	arithmic
0x4B	boundary	0x7C	prefix
0x4C	math_radical	0x7D	let
0x4D	math_script	0x7E	shorthand_def
0x4E	math_shift_cs	0x7F	def
0x4F	end_cs_name	0x80	set_box
0x50	char_given	0x81	undefined_cs
0x51	some_item	0x82	expand_after
0x52	internal_toks	0x83	no_expand
0x53	register_toks	0x84	input
0x54	internal_integer	0x85	lua_call
0x55	register_integer	0x86	lua_local_call
0x56	internal_attribute	0x87	begin_local

0x88	if_test	0x99	internal_muglue_reference
0x89	cs_name	0x9A	register_muglue_reference
0x8A	convert	0x9B	specification_reference
0x8B	the	0x9C	internal_box_reference
0x8C	get_mark	0x9D	internal_toks_reference
0x8D	call	0x9E	register_toks_reference
0x8E	protected_call	0x9F	specification_reference
0x8F	semi_protected_call	0xA0	unit_reference
0x90	constant_call	0xA1	internal_integer_reference
0x91	tolerant_call	0xA2	register_integer_reference
0x92	tolerant_protected_call	0xA3	internal_attribute_reference
0x93	tolerant_semi_protected_call	0xA4	register_attribute_reference
0x94	deep_frozen_end_template	0xA5	internal_posit_reference
0x95	deep_frozen_dont_expand	0xA6	register_posit_reference
0x96	deep_frozen_keep_constant	0xA7	internal_dimension_reference
0x97	internal_glue_reference	0xA8	register_dimension_reference
0x98	register_glue_reference		

The complete list of primitives can be fetched with the next one:

```
function token.getprimitives ( )
  return {
    { <t:integer>, <t:integer>, <t:string> }, -- command, value, name
    ...
  }
end
```

The numbers shown below can change if we add or reorganize primitives, although this seldom happens. The list gives an impression how primitives are grouped.

4	0	\aligntab	26	0	\mathchar
6	0	\parametermark	26	1	\Umathchar
6	0	\alignmark	26	2	\mathdictionary
16	0	\relax	26	3	\mathclass
16	1	\norelax	26	4	\nomathchar
18	1	\span	27	0	\mark
18	2	\omit	27	1	\marks
18	3	\aligncontent	27	2	\clearmarks
18	4	\noalign	27	3	\flushmarks
18	5	\realign	29	0	\show
18	6	\cr	29	1	\showbox
18	7	\crrcr	29	2	\showthe
22	0	\par	29	3	\showlists
22	3	\localbreakpar	29	4	\showgroups
23	0	\end	29	5	\showstack
23	1	\dump	29	6	\showcodestack
24	0	\delimiter	29	7	\showtokens
24	1	\Udelimiter	29	8	\showifs
25	0	\char	30	0	\box
25	1	\glyph	30	1	\copy

30	3	\lastbox	39	2	\vkern
30	4	\tsplit	40	0	\mkern
30	5	\vsplit	41	0	\leaders
30	6	\dsplit	41	1	\cleaders
30	7	\tpack	41	2	\xleaders
30	8	\vpack	41	3	\gleaders
30	9	\dpack	41	4	\uleaders
30	10	\hpack	42	0	\shipout
30	11	\vtop	43	0	\localleftbox
30	12	\vbox	43	1	\localrightbox
30	13	\dbox	43	2	\localmiddlebox
30	14	\hbox	43	4	\resetlocalboxes
30	15	\insertbox	44	0	\halign
30	16	\insertcopy	45	0	\valign
30	17	\localleftboxbox	46	0	\vrule
30	18	\localrightboxbox	46	1	\novrule
30	19	\localmiddleboxbox	46	2	\srule
31	0	\moveright	46	3	\virtualvrule
31	1	\moveleft	47	0	\hrule
32	0	\lower	47	1	\nohrule
32	1	\raise	47	3	\virtualhrule
33	0	\unhbox	48	0	\insert
33	1	\unhcopy	49	0	\vadjust
33	2	\unhpack	50	0	\ignorespaces
34	0	\unvbox	50	1	\ignorepars
34	1	\unvcopy	50	2	\ignorearguments
34	2	\unvpack	50	3	\ignoreupto
34	15	\insertunbox	50	4	\ignorenestedupto
34	16	\insertuncopy	50	5	\ignorereset
34	20	\pagediscards	51	0	\aftergroup
34	21	\splitdiscards	51	1	\aftergrouped
35	0	\unkern	51	2	\afterassignment
35	1	\unpenalty	51	3	\afterassigned
35	2	\unskip	51	4	\atendofgroup
35	3	\unboundary	51	5	\atendofgrouped
36	0	\hfil	51	6	\atendoffile
36	1	\hfill	51	7	\atendoffiled
36	2	\hss	52	0	\penalty
36	3	\hfilneg	52	1	\hpenalty
36	4	\hskip	52	2	\vpenalty
37	0	\vfil	53	0	\noindent
37	1	\vfill	53	1	\indent
37	2	\vss	53	2	\quitvmode
37	3	\vfilneg	53	3	\undent
37	4	\vskip	53	4	\snapshotpar
38	0	\mskip	53	5	\parattribute
38	1	\mathatomskip	53	6	\wrapuppar
39	0	\kern	54	0	\
39	1	\hkern	54	0	\explicititaliccorrection

54	1	\forcedleftcorrection	62	5	\atopwithdelims
54	2	\forcedrightcorrection	62	6	\Uabove
55	0	\accent	62	7	\Uabovewithdelims
56	0	\mathaccent	62	8	\Uover
56	1	\Umathaccent	62	9	\Uoverwithdelims
57	0	\discretionary	62	10	\Uatop
57	1	\explicitdiscretionary	62	11	\Uatopwithdelims
57	1	\-	62	12	\Uskewed
57	2	\automaticdiscretionary	62	13	\Uskewedwithdelims
58	0	\legno	62	14	\Ustretched
58	1	\eqno	62	15	\Ustretchedwithdelims
59	1	\left	63	0	\mathchoice
59	2	\middle	63	1	\mathdiscretionary
59	3	\right	63	2	\mathstack
59	4	\Uoperator	64	0	\vcenter
59	5	\Uvextensible	65	0	\lowercase
59	6	\Uleft	65	1	\uppercase
59	7	\Umiddle	66	0	\message
59	8	\Uright	66	1	\errmessage
60	0	\mathord	67	0	\savecatcodetable
60	1	\mathop	67	1	\restorecatcodetable
60	2	\mathbin	67	2	\initcatcodetable
60	3	\mathrel	68	0	\endlocalcontrol
60	4	\mathopen	69	0	\luafunctioncall
60	5	\mathclose	69	1	\luabytecodecall
60	6	\mathpunct	72	0	\begingroup
60	8	\mathinner	72	1	\beginsimplegroup
60	9	\underline	72	2	\beginmathgroup
60	10	\overline	73	0	\endgroup
60	18	\mathatom	73	1	\endsimplegroup
61	0	\displaylimits	73	2	\endmathgroup
61	1	\Umathlimits	74	0	\explicitSPACE
61	1	\limits	74	0	\
61	2	\Umathnolimits	75	0	\noboundary
61	2	\nolimits	75	1	\boundary
61	3	\Umathadapttoleft	75	2	\protrusionboundary
61	4	\Umathadapttoright	75	3	\wordboundary
61	5	\Umathuseaxis	75	4	\pageboundary
61	6	\Umathnoaxis	75	5	\mathboundary
61	7	\Umathphantom	75	6	\optionalboundary
61	8	\Umathvoid	75	7	\luaboundary
61	9	\Umathsource	76	0	\radical
61	10	\Umathopenupheight	76	1	\Uradical
61	11	\Umathopenupdepth	76	2	\Uroot
62	0	\above	76	3	\Urooted
62	1	\abovewithdelims	76	4	\Uunderdelimiter
62	2	\over	76	5	\Uoverdelimiter
62	3	\overwithdelims	76	6	\Udelimiterunder
62	4	\atop	76	7	\Udelimiterover

76	8	\Udelimited	81	24	\fontchardp
76	9	\Uhexensible	81	25	\fontcharic
77	0	\nonscript	81	26	\fontcharta
77	1	\noatomruling	81	27	\fontcharba
77	2	\subscript	81	28	\scaledfontcharwd
77	3	\superscript	81	29	\scaledfontcharht
77	4	\superprescript	81	30	\scaledfontchardp
77	5	\subprescript	81	31	\scaledfontcharic
77	6	\nosubscript	81	32	\scaledfontcharta
77	7	\nosuperscript	81	33	\scaledfontcharba
77	8	\nosubprescript	81	34	\fontspecid
77	9	\nosuperprescript	81	35	\fontspecscales
77	10	\indexedsubscript	81	36	\fontspecxscale
77	11	\indexedsuperscript	81	37	\fontspecyscale
77	12	\indexedsubprescript	81	38	\fontspecslant
77	13	\indexedsuperprescript	81	39	\fontspecweight
77	14	\primescript	81	40	\fontspecifiedsize
77	15	\nonscript	81	41	\fontmathcontrol
78	0	\Ustartmath	81	42	\fonttextcontrol
78	1	\Ustopmath	81	43	\mathscale
78	2	\Ustartdisplaymath	81	44	\mathstyle
78	3	\Ustopdisplaymath	81	45	\mathmainstyle
78	4	\Ustartmathmode	81	46	\mathparentstyle
78	5	\Ustopmathmode	81	47	\mathstylefontid
79	0	\endcsname	81	48	\mathstackstyle
81	0	\lastpenalty	81	49	\mathcharclass
81	1	\lastkern	81	50	\mathcharfam
81	2	\lastskip	81	51	\mathcharslot
81	3	\lastboundary	81	52	\scaledslantperpoint
81	4	\lastnodetype	81	53	\scaledinterwordspace
81	5	\lastnodesubtype	81	54	\scaledinterwordstretch
81	6	\inputlineno	81	55	\scaledinterwordshrink
81	7	\badness	81	56	\scaledexheight
81	8	\overshoot	81	57	\scaledemwidth
81	9	\luatexversion	81	58	\scaledextraspaces
81	10	\luatexrevision	81	59	\scaledmathaxis
81	11	\currentgrouplevel	81	60	\scaledmathexheight
81	12	\currentgrouptype	81	61	\scaledmathemwidth
81	13	\currentstacksize	81	62	\lastarguments
81	14	\currentiflevel	81	63	\parametercount
81	15	\currentifttype	81	64	\parameterindex
81	16	\currentifbranch	81	65	\insertprogress
81	17	\gluestretchorder	81	66	\leftmarginkern
81	18	\glueshrinkorder	81	67	\rightmarginkern
81	19	\fontid	81	68	\parshapelength
81	20	\glyphxscaled	81	69	\parshapeindent
81	21	\glyphyscaled	81	70	\parshapewidth
81	22	\fontcharwd	81	70	\parshapedimen
81	23	\fontcharht	81	71	\gluestretch

81	72	\glueshrink	84	38	\endlinechar
81	73	\mutoglu	84	38	\glyphxscale
81	74	\gluetomu	84	38	\hyphenationmode
81	75	\numexpr	84	38	\language
81	76	\floatexpr	84	38	\mathleftclass
81	77	\dimexpr	84	38	\localbrokenpenalty
81	78	\glueexpr	84	38	\eufactor
81	79	\muexpr	84	38	\mathdirection
81	80	\numexpression	84	38	\pardirection
81	81	\dimexpression	84	38	\glyphtextscale
81	82	\lastchknumber	84	38	\prebinoppenalty
81	83	\lastchkdimension	84	38	\mathendclass
81	84	\numericsscale	84	38	\protrudechars
81	85	\numericsscaled	84	38	\uchyph
81	86	\indexofregister	84	38	\binoppenalty
81	87	\indexofcharacter	84	38	\mathrightclass
81	88	\mathatomglue	84	38	\pretolerance
81	89	\lastleftclass	84	38	\newlinechar
81	90	\lastrightclass	84	38	\relpenalty
81	91	\lastatomclass	84	38	\localtolerance
81	92	\nestedloopiterator	84	38	\glyphscriptscale
81	93	\previousloopiterator	84	38	\mathbeginclass
81	94	\currentloopiterator	84	38	\localinterlinepenalty
81	95	\currentloopnesting	84	38	\adjustspacing
81	96	\lastloopiterator	84	38	\overloadmode
81	97	\lastpartrigger	84	38	\linedirection
81	98	\lastparcontext	84	38	\prerelpenalty
81	99	\lastpageextra	84	38	\setlanguage
82	0	\output	84	38	\localpretolerance
82	1	\everypar	84	38	\glyphweight
82	2	\everymath	84	38	\glyphscale
82	3	\everydisplay	84	38	\glyphoptions
82	4	\everyhbox	84	39	\tolerance
82	5	\everyvbox	84	40	\linepenalty
82	6	\everymathatom	84	41	\hyphenpenalty
82	7	\everyjob	84	42	\exhyphenpenalty
82	8	\everycr	84	43	\clubpenalty
82	9	\everytab	84	44	\widowpenalty
82	10	\errhelp	84	45	\displaywidowpenalty
82	11	\everybeforepar	84	46	\brokenpenalty
82	12	\everyeof	84	47	\predisplaypenalty
84	38	\discretionaryoptions	84	48	\postdisplaypenalty
84	38	\setfontid	84	49	\preinlinepenalty
84	38	\glyphslant	84	50	\postinlinepenalty
84	38	\catcodetable	84	51	\preshortinlinepenalty
84	38	\glyphscriptscriptscale	84	52	\postshortinlinepenalty
84	38	\textdirection	84	53	\shortinlineorphanpenalty
84	38	\outputbox	84	54	\interlinepenalty
84	38	\glyphscale	84	55	\doublehyphendemerits

84	56	\finalhyphendemerits	84	105	\floatingpenalty
84	57	\adjdemerits	84	106	\globaldefs
84	58	\doublepenaltymode	84	107	\fam
84	59	\delimiterfactor	84	108	\escapechar
84	60	\looseness	84	109	\spacechar
84	61	\time	84	110	\defaultthyphenchar
84	62	\day	84	111	\defaultskewchar
84	63	\month	84	112	\lefthyphenmin
84	64	\year	84	113	\righthyphenmin
84	65	\showboxbreadth	84	114	\holdinginserts
84	66	\showboxdepth	84	115	\holdingmigrations
84	67	\shownodedetails	84	116	\errorcontextlines
84	68	\hbadness	84	117	\nospaces
84	69	\vbadness	84	118	\parametermode
84	70	\pausing	84	119	\glyphdatafield
84	71	\tracingonline	84	120	\glyphstatefield
84	72	\tracingmacros	84	121	\glyphscriptfield
84	73	\tracingstats	84	122	\exhyphenchar
84	74	\tracingparagraphs	84	123	\adjustspacingstep
84	75	\tracingpages	84	124	\adjustspacingstretch
84	76	\tracingoutput	84	125	\adjustspacingshrink
84	77	\tracinglostchars	84	126	\predisplaydirection
84	78	\tracingcommands	84	127	\lastlinefit
84	79	\tracingrestores	84	128	\savingvdiscards
84	80	\tracingassigns	84	129	\savinghyphcodes
84	81	\tracinggroups	84	130	\matheqnogapstep
84	82	\tracingifs	84	131	\mathdisplayskipmode
84	83	\tracingmath	84	132	\mathscriptsmode
84	84	\tracinglevels	84	133	\mathlimitsmode
84	85	\tracingnesting	84	134	\mathnolimitsmode
84	86	\tracingalignments	84	135	\mathrulesmode
84	87	\tracinginserts	84	136	\mathrulesfam
84	88	\tracingmarks	84	137	\mathpenaltiesmode
84	89	\tracingadjusts	84	138	\mathcheckfencesmode
84	90	\tracinghyphenation	84	139	\mathslackmode
84	91	\tracingexpressions	84	140	\mathsurroundmode
84	92	\tracingnodes	84	141	\mathdoublescriptmode
84	93	\tracingfullboxes	84	142	\mathfontcontrol
84	94	\tracingpenalties	84	143	\mathdisplaymode
84	95	\tracinglooseness	84	144	\mathdictgroup
84	96	\tracinglists	84	145	\mathdictproperties
84	97	\tracingpasses	84	146	\predisplaygapfactor
84	98	\tracingfitness	84	147	\firstvalidlanguage
84	99	\tracingtoddlers	84	148	\automaticthyphenpenalty
84	100	\tracingorphans	84	149	\explicitthyphenpenalty
84	101	\tracingloners	84	150	\exceptionpenalty
84	102	\outputpenalty	84	151	\luacopyinputnodes
84	103	\maxdeadcycles	84	152	\automigrationmode
84	104	\hangafter	84	153	\normalizelinemode

84	154	\normalizemod	90	20	\glyphxoffset
84	155	\mathspacingmode	90	21	\glyphyoffset
84	156	\mathgroupingmode	90	22	\pxdimen
84	157	\mathgluemode	90	23	\tabsize
84	158	\mathinlinepenaltyfactor	90	24	\pageextragoal
84	159	\mathdisplaypenaltyfactor	90	25	\ignoredepthcriterion
84	160	\supmarkmode	90	26	\shortinlinemaththreshold
84	161	\autoparagraphmode	92	3	\initialpageskip
84	162	\shapingpenaltiesmode	92	3	\lineskip
84	163	\shapingpenalty	92	3	\initialtopskip
84	164	\singlelinepenalty	92	3	\additionalpageskip
84	165	\lefttwindemerits	92	4	\baselineskip
84	166	\righttwindemerits	92	5	\parskip
84	167	\alignmentcellsource	92	6	\abovedisplayskip
84	168	\alignmentwrapsource	92	7	\belowdisplayskip
84	169	\linebreakpasses	92	8	\abovedisplayshortskip
84	170	\linebreakoptional	92	9	\belowdisplayshortskip
84	171	\linebreakchecks	92	10	\leftskip
84	172	\variablefam	92	11	\rightskip
84	173	\mathpretolerance	92	12	\topskip
84	174	\mathtolerance	92	13	\splittopskip
84	175	\spacefactor	92	14	\tabskip
84	176	\spacefactorshrinklimit	92	15	\spaceskip
84	177	\spacefactorstretchlimit	92	16	\xspaceskip
84	178	\spacefactoroverload	92	17	\parfillsleftskip
84	179	\boxlimitmode	92	18	\parfillsrightskip
84	180	\scriptspacebeforefactor	92	18	\parfillskip
84	181	\scriptspacebetweenfactor	92	19	\parinitleftskip
84	182	\scriptspaceafterfactor	92	20	\parinitrightskip
90	0	\parindent	92	21	\emergencyleftskip
90	1	\mathsurround	92	22	\emergencyrightskip
90	2	\lineskiplimit	92	23	\mathsurroundskip
90	3	\hsize	92	24	\maththreshold
90	4	\vsize	94	1	\pettymuskip
90	5	\maxdepth	94	2	\tinymuskip
90	6	\splitmaxdepth	94	3	\thinmuskip
90	7	\boxmaxdepth	94	4	\medmuskip
90	8	\hfuzz	94	5	\thickmuskip
90	9	\vfuzz	98	0	\hyphenchar
90	10	\delimitershortfall	98	1	\skewchar
90	11	\nulldelimiterspace	98	2	\lcode
90	12	\scriptspace	98	3	\rcode
90	13	\predisplaysize	98	4	\efcode
90	14	\displaywidth	98	5	\cfcode
90	15	\displayindent	98	6	\fontdimen
90	16	\overfullrule	98	7	\scaledfontdimen
90	17	\hangindent	99	0	\spacefactor
90	18	\emergencystretch	99	1	\prevdepth
90	19	\emergencyextrastretch	99	2	\prevgraf

99	3	\interactionmode	102	7	\boxanchors
99	4	\insertmode	102	8	\boxsource
100	0	\hyphenation	102	9	\boxtarget
100	1	\patterns	102	10	\boxxoffset
100	2	\prehyphenchar	102	11	\boxyoffset
100	3	\posthyphenchar	102	12	\boxxmove
100	4	\preexhyphenchar	102	13	\boxymove
100	5	\postexhyphenchar	102	14	\boxtotal
100	6	\hyphenationmin	102	15	\boxshift
100	7	\hjcode	102	16	\boxadapt
101	0	\pagegoal	102	17	\boxrepack
101	1	\pagevsize	102	18	\boxfreeze
101	2	\pagetotal	102	19	\boxlimitate
101	3	\pagedepth	102	20	\boxfinalize
101	4	\pageexcess	102	21	\boxlimit
101	5	\pagelastheight	102	22	\boxstretch
101	6	\pagelastdepth	102	23	\boxshrink
101	7	\deadcycles	102	24	\boxattribute
101	8	\insertpenalties	102	25	\boxvadjust
101	9	\insertheights	103	0	\parshape
101	10	\insertstoring	103	0	\interlinepenalties
101	11	\insertdistance	103	0	\toddlerpenalties
101	12	\insertmultiplier	103	0	\parpasses
101	13	\insertlimit	103	0	\clubpenalties
101	14	\insertstorage	103	0	\orphanlinefactors
101	15	\insertpenalty	103	0	\parpassesexception
101	16	\insertmaxdepth	103	0	\orphanpenalties
101	17	\insertheight	103	0	\adjacentdemerits
101	18	\insertdepth	103	0	\brokenpenalties
101	19	\insertwidth	103	0	\displaywidowpenalties
101	20	\pagestretch	103	0	\mathbackwardpenalties
101	21	\pagefistretch	103	0	\widowpenalties
101	22	\pagefilstretch	103	0	\fitnessclasses
101	23	\pagefillstretch	103	0	\mathforwardpenalties
101	24	\pagefilllstretch	104	0	\catcode
101	25	\pageshrink	104	1	\lccode
101	26	\pagelaststretch	104	2	\uccode
101	27	\pagelastfistretch	104	3	\sfcode
101	28	\pagelastfilstretch	104	4	\hccode
101	29	\pagelastfillstretch	104	5	\hmcode
101	30	\pagelastfilllstretch	104	6	\amcode
101	31	\pagelastshrink	104	7	\cccode
102	0	\wd	104	8	\mathcode
102	1	\ht	104	9	\Umathcode
102	2	\dp	104	10	\delcode
102	3	\boxdirection	104	11	\Udelcode
102	4	\boxgeometry	105	0	\textfont
102	5	\boxorientation	105	1	\scriptfont
102	6	\boxanchor	105	2	\scriptscriptfont

106		\Umath...	123	3	\edivide
107	0	\displaystyle	123	4	\rdivide
107	1	\crampeddisplaystyle	123	5	\advanceby
107	2	\textstyle	123	6	\multiplyby
107	3	\crampedtextstyle	123	7	\divideby
107	4	\scriptstyle	123	8	\edivideby
107	5	\crampedscriptstyle	123	9	\rdivideby
107	6	\scriptscriptstyle	124	0	\frozen
107	7	\crampedscriptscriptstyle	124	1	\permanent
107	8	\alldisplaystyles	124	2	\immutable
107	9	\alltextstyles	124	3	\mutable
107	10	\allscriptstyles	124	4	\noaligned
107	11	\allscriptscriptstyles	124	5	\instance
107	12	\allmathstyles	124	6	\untraced
107	13	\allmainstyles	124	7	\global
107	14	\allsplitstyles	124	8	\tolerant
107	15	\allunsplitstyles	124	9	\protected
107	16	\alluncrampedstyles	124	10	\overloaded
107	17	\allcrampedstyles	124	11	\aliased
107	18	\currentlysetmathstyle	124	12	\immediate
107	19	\givenmathstyle	124	13	\deferred
107	20	\scaledmathstyle	124	14	\semiprotected
108	0	\nullfont	124	15	\enforced
109	0	\font	124	17	\inherited
119	0	\associateunit	124	18	\constant
120	0	\batchmode	124	19	\retained
120	1	\nonstopmode	124	20	\constrained
120	2	\scrollmode	124	21	\long
120	3	\errorstopmode	124	22	\outer
121	0	\float	125	0	\glet
121	1	\count	125	1	\let
121	2	\attribute	125	2	\futurelet
121	3	\dimen	125	3	\futuredef
121	4	\skip	125	4	\letcharcode
121	5	\muskip	125	5	\swapcsvalues
121	6	\toks	125	6	\letprotected
122	0	\etoks	125	7	\unletprotected
122	1	\toksapp	125	8	\letfrozen
122	2	\etoksapp	125	9	\unletfrozen
122	3	\tokspre	125	10	\letcsname
122	4	\etokspre	125	11	\gletcsname
122	5	\xtoks	125	12	\lettonothing
122	6	\gtoksapp	125	13	\glettonothing
122	7	\xtoksapp	125	14	\lettolastnamedcs
122	8	\gtokspre	126	0	\chardef
122	9	\xtokspre	126	1	\mathchardef
123	0	\advance	126	2	\Umathchardef
123	1	\multiply	126	3	\Umathdictdef
123	2	\divide	126	4	\floatdef

126	5	\countdef	132	7	\quitloop
126	6	\attributedef	132	8	\quitloopnow
126	7	\dimendef	135	0	\beginlocalcontrol
126	8	\skipdef	135	1	\localcontrol
126	9	\muskipdef	135	2	\localcontrolled
126	10	\toksdef	135	3	\localcontrolledloop
126	11	\luadef	135	4	\expandedloop
126	12	\integerdef	135	5	\unexpandedloop
126	13	\parameterdef	135	6	\localcontrolledrepeat
126	14	\positdef	135	7	\expandedrepeat
126	15	\dimensiondef	135	8	\unexpandedrepeat
126	16	\gluespecdef	135	9	\localcontrolledendless
126	17	\mugluespecdef	135	10	\expandedendless
126	18	\fontspecdef	135	11	\unexpandedendless
126	19	\specificationdef	136	2	\fi
127	0	\edef	136	3	\else
127	1	\def	136	4	\or
127	2	\xdef	136	5	\orelse
127	3	\gdef	136	6	\orunless
127	4	\edefcsname	136	7	\if
127	5	\defcsname	136	8	\ifcat
127	6	\xdefcsname	136	9	\ifnum
127	7	\gdefcsname	136	10	\ifabsnum
127	8	\cdef	136	11	\ifzeronum
127	9	\cdefcsname	136	12	\ifintervalnum
128	0	\setbox	136	13	\iffloat
130	0	\expandafter	136	14	\ifabsfloat
130	1	\unless	136	15	\ifzerofloat
130	2	\futureexpand	136	16	\ifintervalfloat
130	3	\futureexpandis	136	17	\ifdim
130	4	\futureexpandisap	136	18	\ifabsdim
130	5	\expandafterspaces	136	19	\ifzerodim
130	6	\expandafterpars	136	20	\ifintervaldim
130	7	\expandtoken	136	21	\ifodd
130	8	\expandcstoken	136	22	\ifvmode
130	9	\expand	136	23	\ifhmode
130	10	\expandtoks	136	24	\ifmmode
130	11	\expandactive	136	25	\ifinner
130	12	\semiexpand	136	26	\ifvoid
130	13	\expandedafter	136	27	\ifhbox
130	14	\expandparameter	136	28	\ifvbox
131	0	\noexpand	136	29	\iftok
132	0	\input	136	30	\ifcstok
132	1	\eofinput	136	31	\ifx
132	2	\endinput	136	32	\iftrue
132	3	\scantokens	136	33	\iffalse
132	4	\scantextokens	136	34	\ifchknun
132	5	\tokenized	136	35	\ifchknumber
132	6	\retokenized	136	36	\ifnumval

136	37	\ifcmpnum	138	9	\luafunction
136	38	\ifchkdim	138	10	\luabytecode
136	39	\ifchkdimension	138	11	\expanded
136	40	\ifdimval	138	12	\semiexpanded
136	41	\ifcmpdim	138	13	\string
136	42	\ifcase	138	14	\csstring
136	43	\ifdefined	138	15	\csactive
136	44	\ifcsname	138	16	\csnamestring
136	45	\ifincsname	138	17	\detokenized
136	46	\iffontchar	138	18	\detokened
136	47	\ifcondition	138	19	\romannumeral
136	48	\ifflags	138	20	\meaning
136	49	\ifempty	138	21	\meaningfull
136	50	\ifrelax	138	22	\meaningless
136	51	\ifboolean	138	23	\meaningasis
136	52	\ifnumexpression	138	24	\meaningful
136	53	\ifdimexpression	138	25	\meaningles
136	54	\iflastnamedcs	138	26	\tocharacter
136	55	\ifmathparameter	138	27	\luaescapestring
136	56	\ifmathstyle	138	28	\fontname
136	57	\ifarguments	138	29	\fontspecifiedname
136	58	\ifparameters	138	30	\jobname
136	59	\ifparameter	138	31	\formatname
136	60	\ifhastok	138	32	\luatexbanner
136	61	\ifhastoks	138	33	\fontidentifier
136	62	\ifhasxtoks	139	0	\the
136	63	\ifhaschar	139	1	\thewithoutunit
136	64	\ifinsert	139	2	\detokenize
136	65	\iffinalignment	139	3	\expandeddetokenize
136	66	\ifcramped	139	4	\protecteddetokenize
137	0	\csname	139	5	\protectedexpandeddetokenize
137	1	\lastnamedcs	139	6	\unexpanded
137	2	\begincsname	140	0	\currentmarks
137	3	\futurecsname	140	1	\topmarks
138	0	\number	140	2	\firstmarks
138	1	\tointeger	140	3	\botmarks
138	2	\tohexadecimal	140	4	\splitfirstmarks
138	3	\toscaled	140	5	\splitbotmarks
138	4	\tosparsescaled	140	6	\topmark
138	5	\todimension	140	7	\firstmark
138	6	\tosparsedimension	140	8	\botmark
138	7	\tomathstyle	140	9	\splitfirstmark
138	8	\directlua	140	10	\splitbotmark

This is a curious one: it returns the number of steps that a hash lookup took:

```
function token.locatemacro ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:integer> - steps
end
```

We used this helper when deciding on a reasonable hash size. Of the many primitives there are a few that need more than one lookup step:

steps	total	macros
1	1117	...
2	14	boxshrink dsplit dump everytab fontcharic fontmathcontrol glet glueshrink if lower number pagestretch tabskip vfil
3	3	cr etoksapp gluestretch

libraries

16 Libraries

16.1 Introduction

The engines has quite some libraries built in of which some are discussed in dedicated chapters. Not all libraries will be detailed here, for instance, so called optional libraries depend on system libraries and usage is wrapped in modules because we delegate as much as possible to Lua.

16.2 Third party

There is not much to tell here other than it depends on the Lua symbols being visible and the Lua version matching. We don't use this in ConT_EXt and have a different mechanism instead: optional libraries.

16.3 Core

The core libraries are those that interface with T_EX and MetaPost, these are discussed in dedicated chapters:

chapter	library
Lua	lua luac
T _E X	status tex texio
MetaPost	mp
Nodes	node
Tokens	token
Callbacks	callback
Fonts	font
Languages	language
Libraries	library

Some, like node, token and tex provide a lot of functions but most are used in more higher level ConT_EXt specific functions and interfaces. This means that in the code you will more often font nodes and tokens being used as well as functions that the macro package adds to the various built-in libraries.

16.4 Auxiliary

16.4.1 Extensions

These are the libraries that are needed to implement various subsystems, like for instance the backend and image inclusion. Although much can be done in pure Lua for performance reasons helpers make sense. However, we try to minimize this, which means that for instance the zip library provides what we need for (de)compressing for instance pdf streams but that unzipping files is done with Lua code wrapped around the core zip routines. The same is true for png inclusion: all that was done in pure Lua but a few critical helpers were translated to C.

Some libraries extend existing ones, like for instance file, io and os and string.

16.4.2 Extra file helpers

The original `lfs` module has been adapted a bit to our needs but for practical reasons we kept the namespace. In LuaMetaTeX we operate in utf8 so for MS Windows system interfaces we convert from and to Unicode16.

The attributes checker returns a table with details.

```
function lfs.attributes ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:table> -- details
end
```

The table has the following fields:

field	type	meaning
mode	string	file directory link other
size	integer	bytes
modification	integer	time
access	integer	time
change	integer	time
permissions	string	rw-rw-rw-
nlink	integer	number of links

If you're not interested in details, then the next calls are more efficient:

```
function lfs.isdir      ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.isfile    ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.iswriteabledir ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.iswriteablefile ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.isreadabledir  ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.isreadablefile ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
```

The current (working) directory is fetch with:

```
function lfs.currentdir ( )
    return <t:string> -- directory
end
```

These three return true is the action was a success:

```
function lfs.chdir ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.mkdir ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.rmdir ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
```

Here the second and third argument are optional:

```
function lfs.touch (
    <t:string> name,
    <t:integer> accesstime,
    <t:integer> modificationtime
)
    return <t:boolean> -- success
```

end

The `dir` function is a traverser which in addition to the name returns some more properties. Keep in mind that the traverser loops over a directory and that it doesn't run well when used nested. This is a side effect of the operating system. It is also the reason why we return some properties because querying them via attributes would interfere badly. The directory iterator has two variants:

```
for
  <t:string> name,
  <t:string> mode
in lfs.dir (
  <t:string> name
)
  -- actions
end
```

This one provides more details:

```
for
  <t:string> name,
  <t:string> mode,
  <t:integer> size,
  <t:integer> mtime
in lfs.dir (
  <t:string> name,
  <t:true>
)
  -- actions
end
```

Here the boolean indicates if we want a symlink (true) or hard link (false).

```
function lfs.link (
  <t:string> source,
  <t:string> target,
  <t:boolean> symlink
)
  return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

The next one is sort of redundant but explicit:

```
function lfs.symlink (
  <t:string> source,
  <t:string> target,
)
  return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

Helpers like these are a bit operating system and user permission dependent:

```
function lfs.setexecutable ( <t:string> name )
```

```

    return <t:boolean> -- success
end

function lfs.symlinktarget ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:string> -- target
end

```

16.4.3 Reading from a file

Because we load fonts in Lua and because these are binary files we have some helpers that can read integers of various kind and some more. Originally we did this in pure Lua, which actually didn't perform that bad but this is of course more efficient.

We have readers for signed and unsigned, little and big endian. All return a (64 bit) Lua integer.

```

function fio.readcardinal1 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal2 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal3 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal4 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end

function fio.readcardinal1le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal2le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal3le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal4le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end

function fio.readinteger1 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger2 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger3 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger4 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end

function fio.readinteger1le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger2le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger3le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger4le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end

```

These float readers are rather specific for fonts:

```

function fio.readfixed2 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number> end
function fio.readfixed4 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number> end
function fio.read2dot14 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number> end

```

Of these two the first reads a line and the second a string the C way, so ending with a newline and null character:

```

function fio.readcline ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:string> end
function fio.readcstring ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:string> end

```

The next set of readers reads multiple integers in one call:

```

function fio.readbytes (
    <t:file> handle
)

```



```

    return <t:integer> -- one or more
end

```

```

function fio.readintegertable (
    <t:file>    handle,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:integer> bytes
)
    return <t:table>
end

```

```

function fio.readcardinaltable (
    <t:file>    handle,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:integer> bytes
)
    return <t:table>
end

```

```

function fio.readbytetable (
    <t:file> handle
)
    return <t:table>
end

```

In case we need a random access the following have to be used:

```

function fio.setposition ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.getposition ( <t:file> handle                ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.skipposition ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> ) return <t:integer> end

```

The library also provide a few writers:

```

function fio.writecardinal1 ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
function fio.writecardinal2 ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
function fio.writecardinal3 ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
function fio.writecardinal4 ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end

function fio.writecardinal1le ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
function fio.writecardinal2le ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
function fio.writecardinal3le ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
function fio.writecardinal4le ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end

```

16.4.4 Reading from a string

These readers take a string and position. We could have used a userdata approach but it saves little. (Nowadays we can more easily store the position with the userdata so maybe some day ...).

```

function sio.readcardinal1 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readcardinal2 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readcardinal3 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end

```

```

function sio.readcardinal4 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end

function sio.readcardinal1le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readcardinal2le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readcardinal3le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readcardinal4le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end

function sio.readinteger1 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger2 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger3 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger4 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end

function sio.readinteger1le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger2le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger3le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger4le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end

```

Here are the (handy for fonts) float readers:

```

function sio.readfixed2 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:number> end
function sio.readfixed4 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:number> end
function sio.read2dot14 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:number> end

```

A C line (terminated by a newline) and string (terminated by null) are read by:

```

function sio.readcline ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:string> end
function sio.readcstring ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:string> end

```

```

function sio.readbytes (
    <t:string> str,
    <t:integer> pos
)
    return <t:integer> -- one or more
end

```

```

function sio.readintegertable (
    <t:string> str,
    <t:integer> pos,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:integer> bytes
)
    return <t:table>
end

```

```

function sio.readcardinaltable (
    <t:string> str,
    <t:integer> pos,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:integer> bytes
)
    return <t:table>
end

```

```
function sio.readbytetable (
    <t:string> str,
    <t:integer> pos
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

Here are a few straightforward converters:

```
function sio.tocardinal1 ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal2 ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal3 ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal4 ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end

function sio.tocardinal1le ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal2le ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal3le ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal4le ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
```

16.4.5 Extra file helpers

This function gobble characters upto a newline. When characters are gobbled. true is returned when we end up at a newline or when something is gobbled before the file ends, other wise we get false. A nil return value indicates a bad handle.

```
function io.gobble( <t:file> )
    return <t:boolean> | <t:nil>
end
```

Function like type io.open io.popen are patched to support files on MS Windows that use wide Unicode.

16.4.6 Extra operating system helpers

The os library has a few extra functions and variables so for complete overview you need to look in the Lua manual.

We can sleep for the given number of seconds. When the optional units arguments is (for instance) 1000 we assume milliseconds.

```
function os.sleep (
    <t:integer> seconds,
    <t:integer> units
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The os.uname function returns a table with specific operating system information acquired at runtime. The fields in the returned table are: machine, nodename, release, sysname, version.

```
function os.uname ( )
```

```
return <t:table>
```

The `os.gettimeofday` function returns the current ‘Unix time’, but as a float. Keep in mind that there might be platforms where this function is not available.

```
function os.gettimeofday ( )
    return <t:number>
end
```

When we execute a command the return code is returned. Interpretation is up to the caller.

```
function os.execute ( <t:string> )
    return <t:integer> -- return code
end
```

This one enable interpreting ansi escape sequences in the console. It is only implemented for MS Windows. In ConTEXt you can run with `--ansi`.

```
function os.enableansi ( )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

This one only returns something useful for MS Windows. One can of course just set your the system for utf8. It's just a reporter meant for debugging issues.

```
function os.getcodepage ( )
    return
        <t:integer> oemcodepage,
        <t:integer> applicationcodepage
end
```

The `os.setenv` function sets a variable in the environment. Passing `nil` instead of a value string will remove the variable.

```
function os.setenv (
    <t:string> key,
    <t:string> value
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The possible values of `os.type` are: `unix`, `windows`.

```
local currenttype = os.type
```

The `os.name` string gives a more precise indication of the operating system. The possible values are: `bsd`, `freebsd`, `generic`, `gnu`, `linux`, `macosx`, `windows`.

```
local currentname = os.name
```

On MS Windows the original `os.rename`, `os.remove` and `os.getenv` functions are replaced by variants that interface to and convert from Unicode16 to utf8.

16.4.7 Extra string helpers

The string library has gotten a couple of extra functions too, some of which are iterators. There are some Unicode related helpers too. When we started Lua had no utf8 function, now it has a few, but we keep using our own, if only because they were there before. We also add plenty extra functions in the string name space at the Lua end.

This first function runs over a string and pick sup single characters:

```
for <t:string> c in string.characters ( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end
```

```
\startluacode
for c in string.characters("τχ") do
    context("[%02X]",string.byte(c))
end
\stopluacode
```

gives: [CF][84][CE][B5][CF][87].

```
for <t:string> l, <t:string> r in string.characterpairs ( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end
```

```
\startluacode
for l, r in string.characterpairs("τχ") do
    context("[%02X %02X]",string.byte(l),string.byte(r))
end
\stopluacode
```

gives: [CF 84][CE B5][CF 87].

```
for <t:string> c in string.utfcharacters( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end
```

```
\startluacode
for c in string.utfcharacters("τχ") do
    context("[%s]",c)
end
\stopluacode
```

gives: [τ][ε][χ].

Instead of getting strings back we can also get integers.

```
for <t:integer> c in string.bytes ( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end
```

```
\startluacode
for b in string.bytes("τχ") do
```

```

    context("[%02X]",b)
end
\stopluacode

```

gives: [CF][84][CE][B5][CF][87].

```

for <t:integer> l, <t:integer> r in string.bytepairs ( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end

```

```

\startluacode
for l, r in string.bytepairs("τϵχ") do
    context("[%02X %02X]",l,r)
end
\stopluacode

```

gives: [CF 84][CE B5][CF 87].

```

for <t:integer> u in string.utfvalues( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end

```

```

\startluacode
for c in string.utfvalues("τϵχ") do
    context("[%U]",c)
end
\stopluacode

```

gives: [U+003C4][U+003B5][U+003C7].

The bytetable function splits a string in bytes.

```

function string.bytetable ( <s:string> s) do
    return <t:table> -- with bytes
end

```

Here is a line splitter:

```

function string.linetable ( <s:string> s) do
    return <t:table> -- with lines
end

```

This one converts an integer (code point) into an utf string:

```

function string.utfcharacter ( <t:string> s )
    return <t:string>
end

```

We also have a variant that takes a table. The table can have integers, strings, and subtables.

```

function string.utfcharacter ( <t:table> s )
    return <t:string>
end

```

This an utf8 variant of `string.byte` and it returns the code points of the split on the stack.

```
function string.utfvalue ( <t:string> s )
    return <t:integer> -- zero or more
end
```

Instead of a list on the stack you can get a table:

```
function string.utfvaluetable ( <t:string> s )
    return <t:table> -- indexed
end
```

The name says it all:

```
function string.utflength ( <t:string> s )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

Here we split a string in characters that are collected in an indexed table:

```
function string.utfcharactertable ( <t:string> s )
    return <t:table> -- indexed
end
```

In ConTeXt we mostly use `string.formatters` which is often more efficient then `string.format` and also has additional formatting options, one being for instance `N` which is like `f` but strips trailing zero and returns efficient zeros and ones. Here is a similar low level formatter:

```
function string.f6 ( <t:number> n )
    return <t:string>
end

function string.f6 ( <t:number> n, <t:string> f )
    return <t:string>
end
```

In the first case it returns a string with at most 6 digits while the second one uses given format but tail strips the result.

```
function string.tounicode16 ( <t:integer> code ) return <t:string> end

function string.toutf8 ( <t:table> codes ) return <t:string> end
----- string.toutf16 ( <t:table> codes ) return <t:string> end
function string.toutf32 ( <t:table> codes ) return <t:string> end
```

The next one has quite some variation in calling:

```
function string.utf16toutf8 ( <t:string> str, <t:true> )
    return <t:string> -- big endian
end

function string.utf16toutf8 ( <t:string> str, <t:false> )
    return <t:string> -- little endian
end
```

```

function string.utf16toutf8 ( <t:string> str, <t:nil>, <t:true> )
    return <t:string> -- check bom, default to big endian
end

function string.utf16toutf8 ( <t:string> str, <t:nil>, <t:false> )
    return <t:string> end -- check bom, default to little endian
end

function string.utf16toutf8 ( <t:string> str, <t:nil>, <t:nil> )
    return <t:string> end -- check bom, default to little endian
end

```

The next packer is used for creating bitmaps:

```

function string.packrowcolumns ( <t:table> data )
    return <t:string>
end

```

For example:

```

\startluacode
local t = {
    { 65, 66, 67 },
    { 68, 69, 70 },
}
context(string.packrowcolumns(t))
\stopluacode

```

gives: ABCDEF

While:

```

\startluacode
local t = {
    { { 114, 103, 98 }, { 114, 103, 98 } },
    { { 114, 103, 98 }, { 114, 103, 98 } },
}
context(string.packrowcolumns(t))
\stopluacode

```

gives: rbgbrgbrgb

A string with hexadecimals can be converted with the following. Spaces are ignored. We use this for instance in the MetaPost potrace interface to permits nice input.

```

function string.hextocharacters ( <t:string> data )
    return <t:string>
end

```

So:

```

\startluacode

```



```

local t = [[
    414243 44 4546 47
    414243 44 4546 47
]]

context(string.hextocharacters(t))
\stopluacode

```

gives: ABCDEFGABCDEFG

These take strings and return integers:

```

function string.octtointeger ( <t:string> octstr ) return <t:integer> end
function string.dectointeger ( <t:string> decstr ) return <t:integer> end
function string.hextointeger ( <t:string> hexstr ) return <t:integer> end
function string.chrtointeger ( <t:string> chrstr ) return <t:integer> end

```

16.4.8 Extra table helpers

This returns the keys of the given table:

```

function table.getkeys ( < t:table> )
    return <t:table>
end

```

16.4.9 Byte encoding and decoding

We use some helpers from pplib.

```

function basexx.encode16 ( <t:string> str, <t:boolean> newline )
    return <t:string>
end
function basexx.encode64 ( <t:string> str, <t:boolean> newline )
    return <t:string>
end
function basexx.encode85 ( <t:string> str, <t:boolean> newline )
    return <t:string>
end

function basexx.decode16 ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end
function basexx.decode64 ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end
function basexx.decode85 ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end

function basexx.encodeRL ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end
function basexx.decodeRL ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end

function basexx.encodeLZW ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end
function basexx.decodeLZW ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end

```

The last two functions accept an optional bitset with coder flags that we leave for the user to ponder about. The newline directive in the first three is optional.

16.4.10 png decoding

These function started out as pure Lua functions (extrapolated from the descriptions in the standard) but eventually became library helpers. It is worth noticing that pdf supports jpeg directly so there we can just use Lua to interpret the file and pass relevant data. Support for png is actually just support for png compression, so there we need to do more work and filter the content:

```
function decode.applyfilter (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> nx,
    <t:integer> ny,
    <t:integer> slice
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

We also need to split off the mask as ie becomes a separate object:

```
function decode.splitmask (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> nx,
    <t:integer> ny,
    <t:integer> bpp,
    <t:integer> bytes
)
    return
        <t:string>, -- bitmap
        <t:string> -- mask
end
```

If present we have to deinterlace:

```
function decode.interlace (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> nx,
    <t:integer> ny,
    <t:integer> slice,
    <t:integer> pass
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

And maybe expand compressed:

```
function decode.expand (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> nx,
    <t:integer> ny,
    <t:integer> parts,
    <t:integer> xline,
    <t:integer> factor
```

```
)
  return <t:string>
end
```

These are just helpers that permit integration in the ConT_EXt graphic ecosystem (including MetaPost):

```
function decode.tocmyk ( <t:string data )
  return <t:string>
end
```

For usage see the ConT_EXt sources.

```
function decode.tomask (
  <t:string> content,
  <t:string> mapping,
  <t:integer> xsize,
  <t:integer> ysize,
  <t:integer> colordepth
)
  return <t:string>
end
```

There are to variants:

```
function decode.makemask (
  <t:string> content,
  <t:integer> mapping
)
  return <t:string>
end
```

```
function decode.makemask (
  <t:string> content,
  <t:table> mapping
)
  return <t:string>
end
```

16.4.11 MD5 hashing

In the meantime we use some helpers from pplib because we have that anyway. These are useful when we need a reasonable unique hash of limited length:

```
function md5.sum ( <t:string> ) return <t:string> end
function md5.hex ( <t:string> ) return <t:string> end
function md5.HEX ( <t:string> ) return <t:string> end
```

Using a hexadecimal representation of the 16 byte calculated checksum is less sensitive for escaping. This:

```
\startluacode
context.type(md5.HEX("normally this is unique enough"))
```

\stopluacode

gives: 3C1F10E596B1D1972CF5D1078796C97D.

16.4.12 SHA2 hashing

Because pplib comes with some SHA2 support we can borrow its helpers instead of the Lua code we used before (which was anyway fun to write).

```
function sha2.digest256 ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.digest384 ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.digest512 ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.sum256     ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.sum384     ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.sum512     ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.hex256     ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.hex384     ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.hex512     ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.HEX256     ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.HEX384     ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.HEX512     ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
```

The number refers to bytes, so with 256 we get a 32 byte hash that we show in hexadecimal because that is less sensitive for escaping:

\startluacode

```
context.type(sha2.HEX256("normally this is unique enough"))
```

\stopluacode

gives: D1F1E826197E80BB3860BA279C2D46652C37D4D56B5B7CFD7881450FCF0161F4.

16.4.13 AES encryption

In the next encryption functions the key should be 16, 24 or 32 bytes long.

```
function aes.encode (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:string> key
)
    return <t:string>
end

function aes.decode (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:string> key
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

This returns a string. The default length is 16; the optional length is limited to 32.

```
function aes.random ( <t:integer> length )
    return <t:string>
end
```

Here is an example:

```
\startluacode
context.type ( basexx.encode16 ( aes.encode (
    "normally this is unique enough",
    "The key of live!"
) ) )
\stopluacode
```

This gives: 6A19333F6D2D25B4FF47C5B5631D825696454361601673C1ADFFE7161C7F00C3, where we hexed the result because it is unlikely to be valid utf8.

16.4.14 ZIP (de)compression

We provide the minimum needed to support compression in the backend but even this limited set makes it possible to implement a zip file compression utility which is indeed what we do in ConT_EXt. We use minizip as codebase, without the zip utility code. The meaning and application of the various arguments can be found (and are better explained) on the internet.

```
function xzip.compress (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> compresslevel,
    <t:integer> method,
    <t:integer> window,
    <t:integer> memory,
    <t:integer> strategy
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

```
function xzip.compresssize (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> buffersize,
    <t:integer> compresslevel,
    <t:integer> window
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

```
function xzip.decompress (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> window
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

```
function xzip.decompresssize (
```

```

    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> targetsizes,
    <t:integer> window
)
    return <t:string>
end

function xzip.adler32 (
    <t:string> buffer,
    <t:integer> checksum
)
    return <t:integer>
end

function xzip.crc32 (
    <t:string> buffer,
    <t:integer> checksum
)
    return <t:integer>
end

```

16.4.15 Potrace

The excellent potrace manual explains everything about this library therefore here we just show the interface. Possible fields in specification are: bytes, height, negate, nx, ny, swap, value, width

```

function potrace.new ( <t:table> specification )
    return <t:userdata> -- instance
end

function potrace.free ( <t:userdata> instance)
    -- no return values
end

```

The process is controlled by the specification: negate, optimize, policy, size, threshold, tolerance, value, where permitted policy values are black, left, majority, minority, random, right, white.

```

function potrace.process ( <t:userdata> instance, <t:table> specification )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end

```

Results are collected in a table that we can feed into MetaPost, The table has subtables per traced shape and these contain indexed tables with two (pair) or six (curve) entries. There is a boolean sign field and an integer index field. In the next function only the first argument is mandate.

```

function potrace.totable (
    <t:userdata> instance,
    <t:boolean> debug,
    <t:integer> first,
    <t:integer> last

```

```
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

16.4.16 Sparse hashes

The sparse library is just there because we use similar code to store all these character related codes that way (`\lccode`) and such). The entries can be 1, 2 or 4 bytes wide.

```
function sparse.new (
    <t:integer> bytes,
    <t:integer> default
)
    return <t:userdata>
end
```

You set a value by index. Optionally there can be the "global" keyword before the second argument.

```
function sparse.set (
    <t:userdata> instance,
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:integer> value
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

We get back integers as that is what we store:

```
function sparse.get ( <t:userdata> instance ) return <t:integer> end
function sparse.min ( <t:userdata> instance ) return <t:integer> end
function sparse.max ( <t:userdata> instance ) return <t:integer> end
```

The range is fetched with:

```
function sparse.range ( <t:userdata> instance )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- min
        <t:integer>  -- max
end
```

We can iterate over the hash:

```
for
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:integer> value
in sparse.traverse (
    <t:userdata> instance
) do
    -- actions
end
```

This is a somewhat strange one but it permits packing all values in a string. It's another way to create bitmaps.

```
function sparse.concat (
  <t:userdata> instance
  <t:integer> min,
  <t:integer> max,
  <t:integer> how -- 0=byte, 1=lsb 2=msb
)
  return <t:string>
end
```

Setting values obeys grouping in \TeX , but we can restore any time:

```
function sparse.restore ( <t:userdata> instance )
  -- nothing to return
end
```

We can also wipe all values:

```
function sparse.wipe (<t:userdata> instance )
  -- nothing to return
end
```

16.4.17 Posits

We implement posits as userdata . We use the library from the posit team, although it is not complete so we might roll out our own variant (as we need less anyway). The advance of userdata is that we can use the binary and relation operators.

Here are the housekeeping functions. Some are more tolerant with respect to arguments, take the allocator:

```
function posit.new ( ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.new ( <t:string> s ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.new ( <t:number> n ) return <t:posit> end
```

When a posit is expected a number or string is also accepted which is then converted to a posit.

```
function posit.copy      ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.tostring  ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:string> end
function posit.tonumber  ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:number> end
function posit.integer   ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:integer> end
function posit.rounded   ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:integer> end
function posit.toposit   ( <t:number> n ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.fromposit ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:number> end

function posit.NaN ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:boolean> end
function posit.NaR ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:boolean> end
```

Here are the logical operators:


```

function posit.bor ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.bxor ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.band ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end

```

Ans shifters:

```

function posit.shift ( <t:posit> p1, <t:integer> n ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.rotate ( <t:posit> p, <t:integer> n ) return <t:posit> end

```

There is a limited repertoire of math functions (basically what we needed for MetaPost):

```

function posit.abs ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.conj ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.acos ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.asin ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.atan ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.ceil ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.cos ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.exp ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.exp2 ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.floor ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.log ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.log10 ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.log1p ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.log2 ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.logb ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.round ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.sin ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.sqrt ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.tan ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end

```

```

function posit.modf ( <t:posit> p )
  return
    <t:posit>,
    <t:posit>
end

```

```

function posit.min ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.max ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.pow ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end

```

16.4.18 Complex numbers

```

function xcomplex.new ( )
  return <t:complex>
end

```

```

function xcomplex.new (
  <t:number> re,
  <t:number> im
)

```

```

    return <t:complex>
end

function xcomplex.tostring ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:string>
end

function xcomplex.topair ( <t:complex> z )
    return
        <t:number>, -- re
        <t:number>  -- im
end

```

There is a bunch of functions that take a complex number:

```

function xcomplex.abs    ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.arg    ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.imag   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.real   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.onj    ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.proj   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.exp     ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.log    ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.sqrt   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.sin    ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.cos     ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.tan    ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.asin   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.acos   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.atan   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.sinh   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.cosh   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.tanh   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.asinh  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.acosh  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.atanh  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end

function xcomplex.pow    ( <t:complex> z1, <t:complex> z2 ) return <t:complex> end

```

We added the cerf functions but none can wonder if we should carry that burden around (instead of just assuming a library to be used).

The complex error function $\text{erf}(z)$:

```

function cerf.erf ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:complex>
end

```

The complex complementary error function $\text{erfc}(z) = 1 - \text{erf}(z)$:

```

function cerf.erfc ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:complex>
end

```

end

The underflow-compensating function $\operatorname{erfcx}(z) = \exp(z^2) \operatorname{erfc}(z)$:

```
function cerf.erfcx ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:complex>
end
```

The imaginary error function $\operatorname{erfi}(z) = -i \operatorname{erf}(iz)$:

```
function cerf.erfi ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:complex>
end
```

Dawson's integral $D(z) = \sqrt{\pi}/2 * \exp(-z^2) * \operatorname{erfi}(z)$:

```
function cerf.dawson ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:complex>
end
```

The convolution of a Gaussian and a Lorentzian:

```
function cerf.voigt (
    <t:number> n1,
    <t:number> n2,
    <t:number> n3
)
    return <t:number>
end
```

The half width at half maximum of the Voigt profile:

```
function cerf.voigt_hwhm (
    <t:number> n1,
    <t:number> n2
)
    return <t:number>
end
```

16.4.19 Decimal numbers

Because in MetaPost we support the decimal number system, we also provide this at the T_EX end. Apart from the usual support for operators there are some functions available.

```
function xdecimal.new ( ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.new ( <t:number> n ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.new ( <t:string> s ) return <t:decimal> end

function xdecimal.copy ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.tostring ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:string> end
function xdecimal.tonumber ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:number> end

function xdecimal.setprecision ( <t:integer> digits )
```

```

    --nothing to return
end

function xdecimal.getprecision ( )
    return <t:integer>
end

function xdecimal.bor ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.bxor ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.band ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end

function xdecimal.shift ( <t:decimal> a, <t:integer> n ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.rotate ( <t:decimal> a, <t:integer> n ) return <t:decimal> end

function xdecimal.abs ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.trim ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.conj ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.abs ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.sqrt ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.ln ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.log ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.exp ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.minus ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.plus ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end

function xdecimal.min ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.max ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.pow ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end

```

16.4.20 Math helpers

The xmath library provides function and a few constants:

```

local infinty    = xmath.inf
local notanumber = xmath.nan
local pi         = xmath.pi

```

There are more helpers than the average used needs. We also use these to extend the MetaPost repertoire.

```

function xmath.acos ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.acosh ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.asin ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.asinh ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.atan ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.atan ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.atan2 ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.atan2 ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.atanh ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.cbrt ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.ceil ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end

```

```

function xmath.copysign ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.cos ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.cosh ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.deg ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.erf ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.erfc ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.exp ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.exp2 ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.expm1 ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.fabs ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.fdim ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.floor ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.fmax ( ... ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.fmin ( ... ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.fmod ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.frexp ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.gamma ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.hypot ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.isfinite ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.isinf ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.isnan ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.isnormal ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.j0 ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.j1 ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.jn ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.ldexp ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.lgamma ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.l0 ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.l1 ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.ln ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.log ( <t:number> a [,b]) return <t:number> end
function xmath.log10 ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.log1p ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.log2 ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.logb ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.modf ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.nearbyint ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.nextafter ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.pow ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.rad ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.remainder ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.remquo ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.round ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.scalbn ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.sin ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.sinh ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.sqrt ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.tan ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.tanh ( <t:number> a ) return <t:number> end

```

```

function xmath.tgamma      ( <t:number> a )          return <t:number> end
function xmath.trunc       ( <t:number> a )          return <t:number> end
function xmath.y0         ( <t:number> a )          return <t:number> end
function xmath.y1         ( <t:number> a )          return <t:number> end
function xmath.yn         ( <t:number> a )          return <t:number> end

function xmath.fma (
    <t:number> a,
    <t:number> b,
    <t:number> c
)
    return <t:number>
end

```

16.5 Optional

16.5.1 Loading

The optional libraries are (indeed) optional. Compilation of LuaMetaTeX doesn't depend on them being present. Loading (and binding) is delayed. In practice we only see a few being of interest and used, like `zint` for barcodes, `mysql` for database processing and `graphicmagick` for an occasional runtime conversion. Some are just there to show the principles and were used to test the interfaces and loading.

A library can be loaded, and thereby registered in the ‘optional’ namespace, assuming that `--permitloadlib` is given with:

```

function library.load (
    <t:string> filename,
    <t:string> openname,
)
    return
        <t:function>, -- target
        <t:string>    -- foundname
end

```

but there are no guarantees that it will work.

16.5.2 Management

```

foreign
optional

```

16.5.3 TDS (kpse)

The optional `kpse` library deals with lookups in the TeX Directory Structure and before it can be used it has to be initialized:

```

function optional.kpse.initialize ( <t:string> filename )

```

```

    return <t:boolean>
end

```

By setting the program name the library knows in what namespace to resolve filenames and variables.

```

function optional.kpse.set_program_name (
    <t:string> binaryname,
    <t:string> programname
)
    -- no return values
end

```

The main finder has one or more arguments. When the second and later arguments can be a boolean, string or number. The boolean indicates if the file must exist. A string sets the file type and a number does the same.

```

function optional.kpse.find_file(
    <t:string> filename,
    <t:string> filetype.
    <t:boolean> mustexist
)
    return <t:string>
end

```

You can also ask for a list of found files:

```

function optional.kpse.find_files (
    <t:string> userpath,
    <t:string> filename
)
    return <t:table>
end

```

These return variables, values and paths:

```

function optional.kpse.expand_path    ( <t:string> name ) return <t:string> end
function optional.kpse.expand_var     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:string> end
function optional.kpse.expand_braces  ( <t:string> name ) return <t:string> end
function optional.kpse.var_value      ( <t:string> name ) return <t:string> end

```

If possible this returns the (first found) filename that is readable:

```

function optional.kpse.readable_file ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:string>
end

```

The list of supported file types can be fetched with:

```

function optional.kpse.get_file_types ( )
    return <t:table>
end

```

16.5.4 Graphics

ghostscript

The ghostscript library has to be initialized:

```
function optional.ghostscript.initialize ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

A conversion is executed with the following command. Here the table is a mixed list of strings and numbers that represent the otherwise command like arguments.

```
function optional.ghostscript.execute ( <t:table> )
    return
        <t:boolean>, -- success
        <t:string>,  -- result
        <t:string>   -- message
end
```

graphicsmagick

The graphicsmagick library has to be initialized:

```
function optional.graphicsmagick.initialize ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

A conversion is executed with the following command.

```
function optional.graphicsmagick.execute (
    {
        inputfilename = <t:string>,
        outputfilename = <t:string>,
        blur          = {
            radius = <t:number>,
            sigma  = <t:number>,
        },
        noise        - {
            type      = <t:integer>,
        },
    }
)
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

The noise types can be fetched with:

```
function optional.graphicsmagick.noisetypes ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```


imagemagick

The imagemagick library is initialized with:

```
function optional.imagemagick.initialize ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

After that you can execute convert commands. The options table is a sequence of strings, numbers and booleans that gets passes, in the same order, but where a boolean becomes one of the strings true or false.

```
function optional.imagemagick.execute (
    {
        inputfilename = <t:string>,
        outputfilename = <t:string>,
        options       = <t:table>,
    }
)
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

zint

The zint library is initialized with:

```
function optional.zint.initialize ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

As with the other graphic libraries we execute a command but here we implement a converter a bit more specific because we want back a result that we can handle in a combination of T_EX and MetaPost.

```
function optional.zint.execute (
    {
        code    = <t:integer>,
        text    = <t:string>,
        option = <t:string>, -- "square"
    }
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

We get back a table that has graphic components, where each components table can zero or more subtables.

```
result = {
    rectangles = {
        { <t:integer> x, <t:integer> y, <t:integer> w, <t:integer> h }, ...
    },
    hexagons = {
        { <t:integer> x, <t:integer> y, <t:integer> d }, ...
    }
}
```

```

},
circles = {
  { <t:integer> x, <t:integer> y, <t:integer> d }, ...
},
strings = {
  { <t:integer> x, <t:integer> y, <t:integer> s, <t:string> t }, ...
}
}

```

16.5.5 Compression

lz4

The library is initialized with:

```

function optional.lz4.initialize ( )
  return <t:boolean> -- success
end

```

There are compressors and decompressors. If you want the more efficient decompressor, make sure to save the size with the compressed stream and pass that when decompressing.

```

function optional.lz4.compress (
  <t:string> data,
  <t:integer> acceleration -- default 1
)
  return <t:string>
end

function optional.lz4.decompresssize (
  <t:string> data,
  <t:integer> size
)
  return <t:string>
end

```

These are the frame based variants:

```

function optional.lz4.framecompress ( <t:string> data )
  return <t:string>
end

function optional.lz4.framedecompress ( return <t:string> )
  return <t:string>
end

```

lzma

The library is initialized with:

```

function optional.lzma.initialize ( )

```

```

    return <t:boolean> -- success
end

```

The compressor can take an estimated size which makes it possible to preallocate a buffer.

```

function optional.lzma.compress (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> level,
    <t:integer> size  -- estimated
)
    return <t:string>
end

```

The decompressor can be told what the final size is which is more efficient.

```

function optional.lzma.decompress (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> size  -- estimated
)
    return <t:string>
end

```

lzo

The library is initialized with:

```

function optional.lzo.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end

```

There is not much to tell about:

```

function optional.lzo.compress ( <t:string> data )
    return <t:string>
end

```

and

```

function optional.lzo.decompresssize (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> size
)
    return <t:string>
end

```

zstd

The library is initialized with:

```

function optional.zstd.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end

```

The compressor:

```
function optional.zstd.compress (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:integer> level
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

The decompressor:

```
function optional.zstd.decompress ( <t:string> data )
    return <t:string>
end
```

16.5.6 Databases

mysql

We start with the usual initializer:

```
function optional.mysql.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

Opening the database is done with:

```
function optional.mysql.open (
    <t:string> database,
    <t:string> username,
    <t:string> password,
    <t:string> host,
    <t:integer> port -- optional
)
    return <t:userdata> -- instance
end
```

The database is kept 'open' but can be closed with:

```
function optional.mysql.close ( <t:userdata> instance )
    -- no return values
end
```

A query is executed with:

```
function optional.mysql.execute (
    <t:userdata> instance,
    <t:string> query,
    <t:function> callback
)
    return <t:boolean> -- success
```

end

The callback is a Lua function that looks like this:

```
function callback(nofcolumns,values,fields)
    ...
end
```

It gets called for every row of the result. The fields table is only filled the first time, if at all.

This interface is rather minimalistic but in ConTeXt we wrap all in a more advanced setup. It's among the oldest Lua code in the distribution and evolved with the possibilities (client as well as external libraries) and is quite performing also due to the use of templates, caching, built-in conversions etc.

If there is an error we can fetch the message with:

```
function optional.mysql.getmessage ( <t:userdata> instance )
    return <t:string> | <t:nil> -- last error message
end
```

postgress

This library has the same interface as the mysql interface, so it can be used instead.

sqlite

This library has the same interface as the mysql interface, so it can be used instead. The only function that differs is the opener:

```
function optional.sqlite.open ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:userdata> -- instance
end
```

16.5.7 Whatever

cerf

This library is plugged in the xcomplex so there is no need to discuss it here unless we decide to move it to an optional loaded library, which might happen eventually (depends on need).

curl

The library is initialized with:

```
function optional.curl.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

The fetcher stays kind of close to how the library wants it so we have no fancy interface. We have pairs where the first member is an integer indicating the option. The library only has string and integer options so booleans are effective zeros or ones. A Lua boolean therefore becomes an integer.

```

function optional.curl.fetch (
  {
    <t:integer>, <t:string> | <t:integer> | <t:boolean>,
    ...
  }
)
end

```

A url can be (un)escaped:

```

function optional.curl.escape ( <t:string> data )
  return <t:string>
end

function optional.curl.unescape ( <t:string> data )
  return <t:string>
end

```

The current version of the library:

```

function optional.curl.getversion ( )
  return <t:string>
end

```

hb

This module is mostly there to help Idris Hamid (The Oriental T_EX Project develop his fonts in such away that they work with other libraries (also uniscribe). We need to initialize this library with the following function. Best have the library in the T_EX tree because either more are present or the operating system updates them. As we don't use this in ConT_EXt we're also not sure of things work ok but we can assume stable interfaces anyway. See the plugin module for more info.

```

function optional.hb.initialize ( )
  return <t:boolean> -- success
end

```

It probably makes sense to check for the version because (in the T_EXLive code base) it is one of the most frequently updated code bases and for T_EX stability and predictability (when working on a specific project) is important. When you initialize

```

function optional.hb.getversion ( )
  return <t:string>
end

function optional.hb.getshapers ( )
  return <t:table> -- strings
end

function optional.hb.loadfont (
  <t:integer> id,
  <t:string> name
)

```

```

    return <t:userdata> -- instance
end

```

A run over characters happens with the next one. You get back a list of tables that specify to be handled glyphs. The interface is pretty much the same as what Kai Eigner came up with at the time he wanted to compare the results with the regular font loader, for which the LuaT_EX and LuajitT_EX) ffi interfaces were used.

```

function optional.hb.shapestring (
    <t:userdata> font,
    <t:string>    script,
    <t:string>    language,
    <t:string>    direction,
    <t:table>     shapers,
    <t:table>     features,
    <t:string>    text
    <t:boolean>   reverse
    <t:integer>   utfbits, -- default 8
)
    return {
        {
            <t:integer>, -- codepoint
            <t:integer>, -- cluster
            <t:integer>, -- xoffset
            <t:integer>, -- yoffset
            <t:integer>, -- xadvance
            <t:integer>, -- uadvance
        },
        ...
    }
end

```

mujs

This is just a fun experiment that permits JavaScript code to be used instead of Lua. It was actually one of the first optional libraries I played with and as with the other optionals there is a module that wraps it. The library is initialized with:

```

function optional.mujs.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end

```

There are a few ‘mandate’ callbacks than need to be implemented:

```

function optional.mujs.setfindfile (
    function ( <t:string> name )
        return <t:string>
    end
)
    -- no return values
end

```

```

function optional.mujs.setopenfile (
  function ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:integer> id
  end
)
-- no return values
end

function optional.mujs.setclosefile (
  function ( <t:integer> id )
    -- no return values
  end
)
-- no return values
end

function optional.mujs.setreadfile (
  function ( <t:integer> id )
    return <t:string> | <t:nil>
  end
)
-- no return values
end

function optional.mujs.setseekfile (
  function ( <t:integer> id, <t:integer> position )
    return <t:integer>
  end
)
-- no return values
end

function optional.mujs.setconsole ( )
  function ( <t:string> category, <t:string> message )
    -- no return values
  end
)
-- no return values
end

```

The library implements a few JavaScript functions, like the ones printing to T_EX, they take an optional catcodes reference:

```

texprint (catcodes, ...)
texsprint(catcodes, ...)

```

and a reporter:

```

console (category, message)

```

The next function resets the interpreter:


```
function optional.mujs.reset ( )
  -- no return value
end
```

A snippet of JavaScript can be executed with:

```
function optional.mujs.execute ( <t:string> filename )
  -- no return value
end
```

This loads a JavaScript file:

```
function optional.mujs.dofile ( <t:string> filename )
  -- no return value
end
```

openssl

We use this module for some pdf features. Given the frequent updates to the (external) code base, it's for sure not something one wants in the engine. We use only a small subset of functionality. The library is initialized with:

```
function optional.openssl.initialize ( )
  return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

When signing succeeds the first return value is true and possibly there is a string as second return value. When false is returned the second argument is an error code.

```
function optional.openssl.sign (
  {
    certfile   = <t:string>,
    datafile   = <t:string>,
    data       = <t:string>,
    password   = <t:string>,
    resultfile = <t:string>,
  }
)
  return
    <t:boolean>, -- success
    <t:string> | <t:integer> | <t:nil>
end
```

Verifying needs similar data:

```
function optional.openssl.verify (
  {
    certfile - <t:string>,
    datafile - <t:string>,
    data     - <t:string>,
    signature- <t:string>,
    password - <t:string>,
  }
```

```
    }  
  )  
  return  
    <t:boolean>, -- success  
    <t:integer> | <t:nil>  
end
```

This needs no explanation:

```
function optional.openssl.getversion ( )  
  return <t:integer>  
end
```